Manual for

FOMA® N904i '07.5



Easy Search/ Contents/ Precautions
Before Using the Handset
Voice/ Videophone Calls
Push Talk
Phonebook
Sound/Screen/ Light Settings
Security Settings
Camera
i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel
Mail
i-αppli
Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa
GPS Function
Full Browser
Data Display/Edit/ Management
Music Channel/Music Playback
Other Convenient Functions
Character Entry
Network Services
Data Communication
Overseas Use
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting
Index/ Quick Manual

DoCoMo
W-CDMA System

Thank you very much for choosing the "FOMA N904i".

Please read this manual and users guides that come with the battery pack and other devices carefully before or during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover. FOMA N904i is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or out of range, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during a call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

For the first-time users of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used the FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Check the terms in "Precautions" (p.12)
2. Insert and charge the battery pack (p.41)
3. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.45)
4. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.24)
5. Check the meanings of icons displayed on the screen (p.28)
6. Check how to use the menus (p.31, 32)
7. Check how to make/receive a call (p.49)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.
●To download "Manual for FOMA N904i (PDF file)", access the following:
(http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html)
* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index  p.530

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Easy Search  p.4

The Easy Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index  Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Functions p.8

Refer to the Functions to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List p.486

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual p.538

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

Take Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) when using your FOMA terminal abroad.

- In this manual, the FOMA N904i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use a microSD memory card. To use these functions, the microSD memory card is required. microSD memory card→p.365
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the "Display setting" function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

→Find "Display setting"

Character input set 445
CHG input size 445
Clear learned 453
Guidance 444
Mode 1 (5-touch) 445
Mode 2 (2-touch) 454
Mode 3 (T9 input) 454
T9 change mode 455
Word prediction 447
Character stamp 350
Chara-den 84, 358
Action 358
Delete 377
Displaying 358
Guide to the Chara-den list 358
Image 346
Mail 273
Phonebook 123
DC adapter 43
Decorate PI 247
Create 298
Decorate PI Pocket 300
Entering 243, 449
List 500
Decoration 87
Deco-mail 247
Delete
Bookmark 220, 221
Chara-den 377
Desktop icon 151
Website 218, 328
Display design 141
Display home 214
Display setting 87, 135
Disp. call/receive No. 155
Disp. phonebook image 138
DoCoMo keitai datalink 474
Document viewer 389
Delete 377
Guide to the document list 390
Operations 390
Scroll 391
Text search 391

Looking up in the Easy Search

The Easy Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

→Find "Change standby screen"

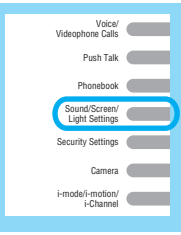
To change/learn display

- Mark (icon) on the display p.28 Icons on the display and indicator display
- Change standby screen p.135 Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen p.137
- Change menu display setting p.141 Menu display set
- Change font size p.148 Font*

*: You can also set font size by using the function menu of "Phonebook" or "My Profile" (p.114, p.115, p.429), "i-mode settings" (p.227), "Mail settings" (p.276) or "Character input set" (p.445).

Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order "Cover" → "Chapter page (first page of the chapter)" → "Description page". The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.



Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone..... Manner mode 132
Customizing Manner Mode..... Manner mode set 133
Display/Lighting settings
Changing the Display Settings..... Display setting 135
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ..... Disp. phonebook image 138
Avoiding Others from Seeing Your Screen..... Privacy angle 139
Setting the Indicator Display Mode ..... Indicator display 139
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ..... Backlight 140
Changing the Display Color..... Display design 141

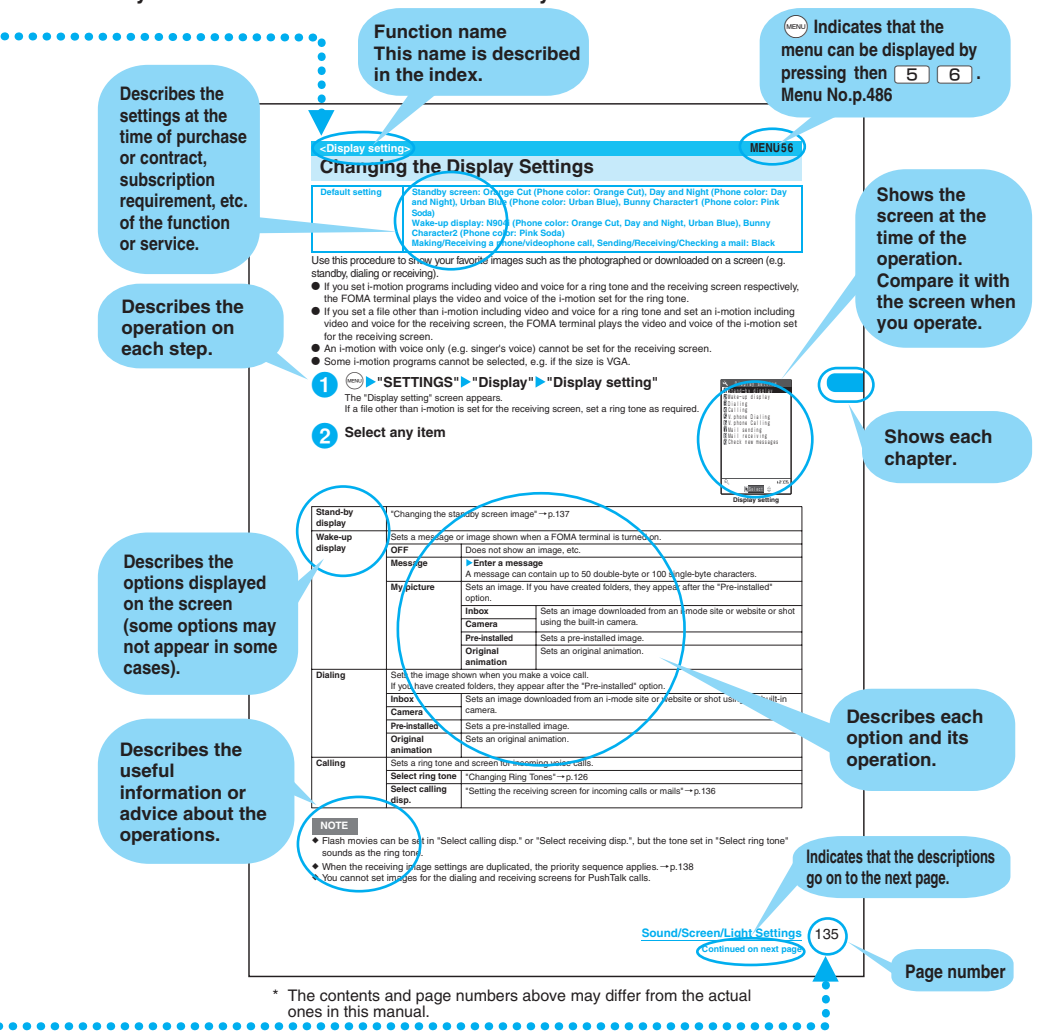
Key description

Key operations are illustrated in this manual. The illustrations are simplified as follows:

Actual key	Described in this manual
1	[1]

Actual display	Described in this manual
C	i C

This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.



* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for " バイリンガル " (Select language). Set "English" for " バイリンガル " (Select language) beforehand.
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" with texts in white and the standby screen in black, in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- The color pattern of the main menu and screens is described in the phone's color Orange Cut set at the time of purchase.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images.
- This manual describes "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting IC Card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli".

Easy Search

● **Find out a function with easy words from the Easy Search index below.**

To find out useful functions for talking

- Notify or hide your caller ID to the other party p.48 Caller ID Notification
- Switch voice call to videophone call p.55
- Adjust the volume during a call p.74 Volume
- Hold incoming call p.76 Holding



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold incoming call p.75 Answer hold
- Notify the caller that you should refrain from talking on a phone p.77 Public mode (Driving mode) p.78 Public mode (power off)
- Have your party record voice message p.80 Record message



Change display or ring melody

- Adjust the ring volume p.74 Ring volume
- Set ring tone to specific party p.119 Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody p.126 Select ring tone
- Set vibration to notify incoming call or mail p.129 Vibrator
- Mute keypad sound p.129 Keypad sound
- Set manner mode p.132 Manner mode
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp p.147 Illumination



To change/learn display

- Mark (icon) on the display p.28 Icons on the display and indicator display
- Change standby screen p.135 Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen p.137
- Change menu display setting p.141 Menu display set
- Change font size p.148 Font*

*: You can also set font size by using the function menu of "Phonebook" or "My Profile" (p.114, p.115, p.429), "i-mode settings" (p.227), "Mail settings" (p.276) or "Character input set" (p.445).

Master mail

- Send Deco-mail p.247 Deco-mail
- Send image or melody p.252 Attach file
- Sort and save mail automatically p.268 Auto-sort



Master camera



- Change the size of image to shoot p.189
- Use light to shoot p.203
- Display the shot p.342 My picture
- Save the shot on microSD memory card p.376

To use your phone without worries



- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand p.161 Omakase Lock*1
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data p.163 Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Reject unidentified call p.178 Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook p.180 Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of the data p.181 Data Security Service*2

*1: Omakase Lock is a pay service.
*2: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to this service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)

Other useful features

- Save battery life p.140 Backlight (power save mode)
- Scan QR code or barcode p.204 Bar code reader
- Use microSD memory card p.365
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal p.378 Infrared data exchange/iC communication/OBEX
- Enjoy music p.395 Music Channel/Music Playback
- Use as alarm clock p.422 Alarm
- Use as calculator p.434 Calculator
- Use FOMA terminal overseas p.476
- Update software p.518 Software Update
- Update security p.524 Scanning function



For more information about other operation guides, see "How to Use This Manual". →p.1
Also, "Quick Manual" instructs you how to operate often-used functions. →p.538

Contents

How to Use This Manual 1
Easy Search 4
Contents 6
Features of the FOMA N904i 8
Mastering the FOMA N904i! 10
Precautions 12
Handling with Care 18
Intellectual Property Right 20
Main Components and Optional Equipment 22

Before Using the Handset ☞p.23	• Component names and functions • Icons on the display and indicator display • Using menus and other basic operations • FOMA card (UIM) • Inserting/Removing the battery pack • Charging • Turning the FOMA terminal on • Initial setting • Setting time • Caller ID Notification, etc.
Voice/Videophone Calls ☞p.49	• Making a voice/videophone call • Changing a call between voice and videophone • Hands-free • Redial/Received calls • Chaku-moji • WORLD CALL • Receiving a voice/videophone call • Volume • Ring volume • On hold tone • Public mode (Driving mode/Power off) • Record message • Videophone settings, etc.
Push Talk ☞p.93	• What is PushTalk? • Making/Receiving a PushTalk call • PushTalk phonebook • PushTalk settings, etc.
Phonebook ☞p.105	• Adding phonebook entries • Group setting • Search phonebook • Editing/deleting phonebook entries • Copying phonebook entries • Discern connect/Discern group • Choku-Den, etc.
Sound/Screen/Light Settings ☞p.125	• Ring tone • Vibrator • Manner mode • Display setting • Privacy angle • Indicator display • Backlight • Display design • Kisekae Tool • Neuropointer • 3D display setting, etc.
Security Settings ☞p.157	• Security code • PIN code • Dial lock • Omakase Lock • Secret mode/Secret folder • Original lock • Keypad lock • IC card authentication • Face authentication • Data Security Service, etc.
Camera ☞p.183	• Photo mode • Movie mode • Settings for shooting • Bar code reader • Access reader, etc.
i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel ☞p.211	• What is i-mode? • Viewing sites • i-mode password • Internet access • Bookmark • Message services • Downloading i-motion • Using i-Channel, etc.
Mail ☞p.239	• What is i-mode mail? • Creating and sending i-mode mail • Deco-mail/Auto Deco-mail • Attaching files • Receiving mails • Check new messages • Replying/Forwarding mails • i-motion mail • Using mail boxes • Mail settings • Chat mail • SMS (Short Message), etc.

i-αppli ☞ p.291	• What is an i-αppli? • Downloading an i-αppli • Launching an i-αppli • Pre-installed software • i-αppli standby screen • Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ☞ p.305	• What is Osaifu-Keitai? • What is iC transfer service? • Using Osaifu-Keitai • What is ToruCa? • Acquiring ToruCa • Viewing ToruCa • IC card lock, etc.
GPS Function ☞ p.313	• What is GPS? • Checking the current location • Using GPS i-αppli • Providing location information • Notifying the current location • Location history, etc.
Full Browser ☞ p.327	• Displaying website designed for PC • Viewer type • Viewer type setting • Standard type • Standard type setting
Data Display/Edit/ Management ☞ p.339	• Data box • Still image • Movie/i-motion • Chara-den • Melody • Kisekae Tool • microSD memory card • Infrared data exchange/iC communication • Viewing PDF data • Viewing documents • Printing images, etc.
Music Channel/ Music Playback ☞ p.395	• Music Channel • Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® • Playing music, etc. * "Chaku-Uta-Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
Other Convenient Functions ☞ p.415	• Multi access • Multitask • Alarm • Schedule • To Do list • My Profile • Checking Call data • Calculator • Text memo • Dictionary • Reset settings • Initialize, etc.
Character Entry ☞ p.443	• Selecting character entry mode • 5-touch • Common phrases • Copying, cutting and pasting text • Own dictionary • Download dictionary • 2-touch • T9 input, etc.
Network Services ☞ p.457	• Voice Mail service • Call Waiting service • Call Forwarding service • Nuisance Call Blocking • Caller ID Request service • Dual Network Service • Multi Number, etc.
Data Communication ☞ p.471	• Data communication available for FOMA terminal, etc. * For details, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.
Overseas Use ☞ p.475	• WORLD WING • Available overseas service • Checking before using overseas • Making/Receiving a call abroad • NW search mode, etc.
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting ☞ p.485	• Menu function list • Data stored at the time of purchase • Key assignment • Symbols, pictographs, smiley face symbols and common phrases • Multi access/Multitask combination patterns • Options/Accessories • Troubleshooting • Error message • Software Update • Main specifications, etc.
Index/Quick Manual ☞ p.529	• Index • Quick Manual • Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

Features of the FOMA N904i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode
i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode compatible sites or to send and receive mails by using an i-mode terminal display.
* i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Features of N904i

i-mode mail, Deco-mail, Decorate PI
→p.240, 247

In addition to the text body, you can attach up to 10 files such as JPEG, ToruCa and PDF within a total of 2M bytes. Deco-mail and Decorate PI are also supported, enabling you to change the font color, font size or background color of message text to create richly expressive mails.

Chaku-Uta-Full®/Uta-hodai
→p.401

Using the Chaku-Uta-Full® service, you can download the entire track from an online music distribution site and play or set the track to ring tone. Uta-hodai is another service that you can download the entire track from an online membership-based music distribution site as many as you want with fixed monthly charge.

Mega i-αppli/i-αppli DX
→p.291

Downloading an i-αppli from a site enables you to enjoy a game or automatically update information such as share prices or weather report. Your FOMA terminal supports large-sized mega i-αppli programs that allow you to enjoy high-resolution 3D games and full-length roll playing games.
i-αppli DX can be linked to the information such as phonebook entries or mails stored in an i-mode terminal.

Video clip
→p.234

FOMA terminal supports i-motion up to 10M bytes, in the H.264 format with the high compression efficiency. You can enjoy music clips of the entire track, or video clips of movie or animation in high quality.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
→p.305

By downloading an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, you can transmit electric money from the site into the IC card in your FOMA terminal or check the accountant balance or transaction history. The i-αppli of the DoCoMo credit service "DCMX" is pre-installed in your FOMA terminal. Using the application enables you to use your FOMA terminal as more efficient tool, "Osaifu-Keitai". "iC transfer service" is also supported so that you can easily move your IC card data to a new terminal when replacing your FOMA terminal.
ToruCa is an electric card that can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via a mail, Infrared data exchange or the microSD memory card.

GPS settings
→p.313

Enables you to acquire the location information of your FOMA terminal using radio waves transmitted from the GPS satellite. With the acquired location information, you can search for the map of or information about your present location, attach the present location information to a mail to send or have your FOMA terminal to guide you to the destination (a navigation i-αppli is pre-installed in your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase).
* If "Permit to send loc." under "Request menu" is set to "ON", location information may be sent and notified to the searcher even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

International roaming
→p.476

The FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address you use in Japan are also available overseas (only in 3G areas). You can use voice call, videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services.

Omakase Lock
→p.161

If you lost your FOMA terminal, you can lock it or release the lock condition on your request. For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.
Omakase Lock is a pay service. You do not need to pay for the charge if you subscribe to this service when or while you temporarily stop using the FOMA terminal.
* Omakase Lock is a service where a FOMA terminal is locked by a request from the subscriber. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

Data Security Service
→p.181

This is a data backup service that you can store your data such as phonebook entries, images and messages on the Data Security Center and if your FOMA terminal happens to be lost, the Center will help you retrieve the stored data to a mobile phone. Moreover, you can edit or manage those stored data using a PC and reflect the edited data to your mobile phone. For details of the "Data Security Service", see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.
* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Wide variety of network services (p.457)

- Voice Mail (pay)*
- Call Waiting (pay)*
- Call Forwarding (free)*
- Nuisance Call Blocking (free)*
- Caller ID Request (free)
- Dual Network (pay)*
- English Guidance (free)
- Multi Number (pay)*
- 2in1 (pay)*

* You need to subscribe to this service.

●●●●● Wide variety of functions ●●●●●

3.0 inch wide VGA (WVGA) LCD

Incorporates a high-resolution LCD of 480 dots wide × 854 dots high (higher by 1.5 times than N903i). Displays files such as PDF, Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel clearly.

Camera →p.183

- Incorporates the digital shake correction function that allows you to shoot images under low light condition or to shoot movies where your hand jiggles easily.
- The CMOS (rear camera) featuring the auto focus function of effective 3.2 million pixels enables you to shoot large images of 2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high.

Music player →p.401

Convert tracks in your music CD to WMA (Windows Media Audio) data or SD-Audio data in your PC, and save in microSD memory card so that you can play the tracks with your FOMA terminal.

IC card authentication →p.172

Instead of entering a security code, putting your FOMA terminal close to a contactless IC card supporting FeliCa performs user authentication to release Dial lock or Keypad lock.

Face authentication →p.174

Face authentication is available to identify the user when releasing Keypad lock or IC card lock.

Original lock/Keypad lock →p.167, 171

- You can lock functions such as phonebook or mail that handle personal data or restrict making/receiving of calls or sending/receiving of mails (Original lock).
- You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal (Keypad lock).

PDF viewer/Document viewer →p.384, 389

- With the PDF viewer, you can easily see useful information such as a map, catalogue or time table on your i-mode terminal.
- The document viewer that allows you to view document files of Microsoft® Word, Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® PowerPoint is incorporated.

Full Browser →p.327

Full Browser displays websites for PC, which provide you with more information than only i-mode sites do.

Choku-Den →p.121

By storing frequently used phonebook entry to Choku-Den, you can make a call or send a mail quickly. Choku-Den supports the entry of up to 5 mail addresses. If any data is stored, you can compose i-mode mail or chat mail to all the members easily.

Privacy angle →p.139

Blocks others from seeing your screen at the oblique angle. You can use your FOMA terminal without concerns for others' view.

Kisekae Tool →p.144, 364

Enables you to change ring tones, the standby screen, menu display, battery and antenna icons, etc. at one time.

Auto Deco-mail →p.249

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion expressed on the message you enter, and chooses the best suited decoration to your message in self-decorating.

Emotion-expressing mail →p.256

An icon pops up and shows an emotion matching the contents of a received mail.

PictBridge print →p.392

Connecting your FOMA terminal to a printer supporting PictBridge enables you to directly print photos shot with the front camera, etc.

iC communication →p.378

Putting FeliCa marks ( ) of sending and receiving FOMA terminals close to each other enables you to exchange data.

Infrared data exchange/Infrared remote control →p.378, 384

You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using Infrared data exchange. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

microSD memory card available →p.365

- You can back up data such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, mails and images onto the microSD memory card.
- Data such as downloaded i-motion programs can be copied to the microSD memory card (Cannot be copied if not permitted by the provider).

Multi access/Multitask →p.416, 417

Multi access function allows you to use a voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time. Multitask function allows you to use multiple functions at the same time by switching them.

Text entry →p.443

Displays candidates for texts you will enter (including pictographs and face symbols). You can select one of four font sizes for the message edit screen, etc.

Dictionary →p.435

Equips Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries.

Bar code reader →p.204

You can scan bar codes or QR codes with your FOMA terminal and use the information to store it into the phonebook or compose i-mode mails, etc.

FM transmitter →p.413

Allows playing tracks in Music Player with car audio using FM airwave.

Mastering the FOMA N904i!

Send and receive real-time movie while talking
"Videophone"

Videophone call→p.50

You can talk to the other party seeing his/her face. Your FOMA terminal is set to emit other party's voice through the speaker by default so that you can start talking immediately when makingor answering a call. Furthermore, you can change the call mode from voice to videophone without having to end the call.



Enjoy talking with your fellows
"PushTalk"

PushTalk→p.93

Just select the parties from the PushTalk phonebook and then press the PushTalk key. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) at the same time.

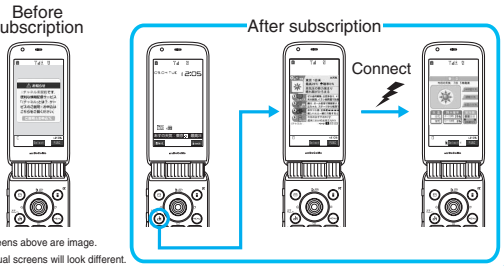


The telop appears on the standby screen when the latest information is distributed
"i-Channel"

i-Channel→p.236

You can receive graphical information such as news or weather reports. Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information that consists of Flash movies (see p.217 for the details).

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

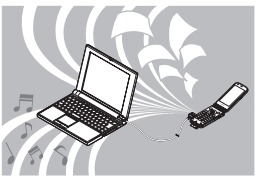


* The screens above are image.
The actual screens will look different.

High-speed communication is realized
"FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area communication"

"FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area communication"

The FOMA terminal is compatible with high-speed communication at the download speed of up to 3.6Mbps and uplink speed of up to 384kbps.
You can check the connection status with "FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ " (FOMA communication environment check application).

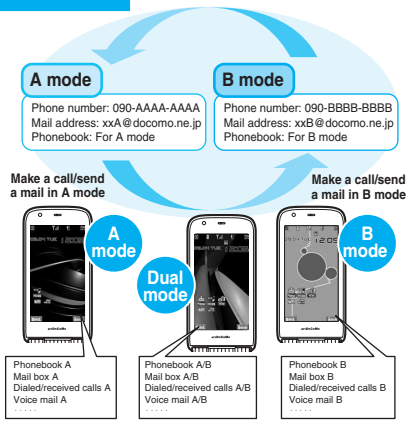


Use 2 phone numbers and e-mail addresses for your FOMA terminal

"2in1"

● 2in1→p.466

You can separately use 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses on your FOMA terminal as if you have 2 terminals. You can manage the data in your FOMA terminal, such as Phonebook, mail boxes, Dialed calls or standby screen, separately in "A mode" and "B mode", or all together of A/B mode in "Dual mode.

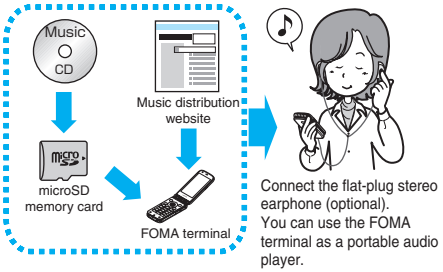


"Napster®" compatible

"Music player"

● Music player→p.401

"Napster®" service provides you of copying songs downloaded from sites or on music CDs to the microSD memory card using a PC and play music on the FOMA terminal. Since "Chaku-Uta-Full®" is supported, you can download the entire track from an online music distribution site to play it. Other functions include BGM playback, which allows you to listen to music while you use other functions, display of album cover images and lyric sheets, and creation of the playlist on the FOMA terminal.



● Music Channel→p.396

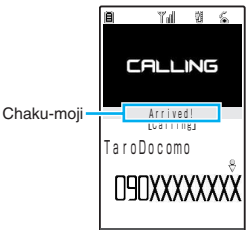
Music program that is set for delivery is automatically downloaded at night, and you can enjoy a long program for up to about one hour using the provided music player.

Notify the arrival of your phone call or e-mail with an animation before answering

"Chaku-moji"

● Chaku-moji→p.63

When calling someone, you can show a message on the screen of the other party's phone. The other party can see your business or feeling from the message before answering the call.



Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■ **To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read "Precautions" carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.**

■ **The precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.**

■ **The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.**

⚠ DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

■ **The following symbols indicate specific directions:**

Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

■ **"Precautions" are categorized into the following:**

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)..... 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal..... 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack 15
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)..... 16
5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 17
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

⚠DANGER



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N16
Desktop Holder N13
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
Data Communications Adapter N01
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA Rechargeable USB Cable 01

* For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock. Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

⚠WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do not use the FOMA terminal or other devices in a place (gas (petrol) station, etc.) where there is a risk of ignition or explosion.

Using the FOMA terminal in a dusty environment or near flammable gas such as propane or gasoline may cause explosion or fire.



Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

⚠CAUTION



If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.



Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time. Using i-αppli or videophone for a long period of time with the FOMA terminal being charged may raise the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.



Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.



Keep the devices out of young children' reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.

Continued on next page

Do

When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones. If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.

Do

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.

Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.

Do

Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

*Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Don't

If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.

Do

Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.

Do

If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.

Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

Doing so may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.

Don't

Keep the display light away from a person's eyes.

The light may affect eyesight. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

⚠CAUTION

Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.

Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the microSD memory card slot.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Do

Take care when attaching or removing the microSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to a person's eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to a person's eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

Doing so may cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect his/her eyes. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not use the light for use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. If you use it for purposes other than shooting with the built-in camera (e.g. using it as an electronic torch), the light is suddenly turned off, which may cause an accident.



Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.

The metal is used in the following locations:

Location	Material	Surface treatment
Multi-function keys	Aluminum alloy	Alumite treatment
Neuropointer key		



Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so will cause injury or damage.



If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.



Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.

The FeliCa reader/writer function of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.



Use the IC card authentication function in Japan.

The IC card authentication function of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.



Use the FM transmitter in Japan.

The FM transmitter of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas. This function must be switched off whilst in Europe. For other countries check local regulations before use.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.**

Message	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery

⚠DANGER



Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Continued on next page



If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

⚠WARNING



If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately halt the use of the battery pack and rinse your skin or clothing fully with clean water.

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.

⚠CAUTION



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

⚠WARNING



Use the specified socket and voltage.

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. For overseas use, charge with an AC adapter designed for overseas use.

AC Adapter: AC 100V

DC Adapter:

DC 12/24V (only for cars with negative ground)

AC adapter designed for overseas use:

AC 100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the power cord.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch a FOMA terminal and an adapter (including a charger).

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.
Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug the power cord from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.
Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.
Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.
Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.
Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

⚠CAUTION



Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (including the charger) cord or power cord.
Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



When unplugging the adapter (including the charger) from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter (including the charger) cord or power cord but grasp the power plug.
Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

⚠CAUTION



Be careful about a cut surface or other parts when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).
This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not throw the FOMA card into fire.
Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ **The following precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:**

⚠WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.
- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (for the purpose of home treatment, etc.) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.
Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**
  The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and the FOMA card (UIM) are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places (e.g. a bathroom) or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, you will be charged for the repair.
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
  - The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.
  - Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.
- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**
  Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**
  Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.
- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**
  Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter, charger and desktop holder carefully.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5°C to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- **Usually keep the Earphone/Microphone terminal cover, external connector cover and microSD memory card slot cover closed.**
  Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.
- **Do not leave the camera exposed to direct sunlight.**
  Doing so may discolor or burn the element.
- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**
  Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal. Also, it may damage to the FOMA terminal.
- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**
  Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**
  Doing so may damage the display.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**
  When the operating time of the battery pack decreases significantly, though it is fully charged, which varies by usage state or other factor, battery pack exchange is preferable. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**
- **The operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the deterioration level of the battery pack.**
- **Depending on the conditions under which it is used, the battery pack may swell as the life comes close to the end, but this causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**

- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
  Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
  If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
  If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal or adapter and charger, and keep it in a plastic bag.
- **If the battery pack of your FOMA terminal has got any trouble due to an external impulse, such as a deformation or damage caused by falling.**

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near your landline, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
  Doing so may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

- **The FOMA card may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card to a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5°C to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**
  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop the FOMA card or subject it to strong impacts.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **When attaching/removing the FOMA card, do not apply unnecessary force.**

Handling the microSD Memory Card

Do not remove the microSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while using the microSD memory card.
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the In-Car Holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the In-Car Holder.

Handling the Camera

If you cause a nuisance to others using the FOMA terminal in a public place, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).

> Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Handling the FeliCa Reader/Writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer function of a FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves that require no licensing of radio stations.**
- **The 13.56MHz frequency band is used. If there is another reader/writer around, keep enough distance between your FOMA terminal and the reader/writer. Also, make sure that there is no other radio equipment using the same frequency band nearby.**

Handling the FM Transmitter

- **The FM transmitter of a FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves that require no licensing of radio stations.**
- **The 86.1 to 87.3MHz frequency band is used. When in use, select a frequency that does not interfere with the broadband signals from the FM broadcasting stations in your local area in order to prevent any effect on your neighboring FM radio listeners.**

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.
It may be prohibited to shoot or record a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.
Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "i-αppli", "i-αppliDX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-area", "i-motion", "mopera", "mopera U", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short Mail", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "V-live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "iD", "DCMX", "Music Channel", IMCS", "OFFICEED", "2in1", "FOMA" logo, "i-mode" logo, "i-αppli" logo, "ToruCa" logo, "iD" logo, "DCMX" logo, "Music Channel" logo, "WORLD WING" logo, and "HIGH-SPEED" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- McAfee® and マカフィー are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee,Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- microSD logo is a trademark.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LCフォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademark of Sharp Corporation.
- T9®and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. in the UK.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows media and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- AudioEngine™ AudioEngine LSI by YAMAHA is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.
- "カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ" is a trademark of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD and D2 Communications Inc.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- The other company names and product names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Other

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purposes and for nonprofit purposes only when you:
  - Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities
  - Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- This product is equipped with Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash, Flash Lite and Macromedia are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
  Copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

- This product contains with Adobe Reader of Player technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright© 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  All rights reserved. Patents pending.
  Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following US Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other countries:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
  5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
  5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
  5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
  5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- Content owners protect copyrighted intellectual properties by WMDRM (Windows Media digital rights management) technology. This product uses the WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software is unable to protect contents, the content owners request Microsoft to disable the WMDRM function of the software for playing or copying protected contents. No contents other than protected ones are affected by disabling the function. Please note that, if downloading the license to use protected contents, Microsoft may include the revocation list in the license. Content owners may request upgrading of the WMDRM software when you access the contents. If rejecting the upgrade, contents requiring the upgrade cannot be accessed.
- NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD. is installed in this product to provide Internet functionality.
  NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with NetFront Document Viewer ACCESS as the document viewer by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront
  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and all JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
  Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
  JBlend and JBlend logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation.
- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and infrared data exchange.
  IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Full Browser is realized by Picsel Technologies.
  picsel
  Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Browser, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies.
- Dialog Clarity, SRS and the symbol SRS Dialog Clarity are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity technology is industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- BBE M3 technology is industrialized based on the license from BBE Sound, Inc.
- Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752/5736897 of the United States Patents. BBE and the BBE logo are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL・LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is antibacterial.
  The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).

  Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)
- ©2007 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.
  ©2007 ZENRIN CO., LTD.
- ©HUDSON SOFT
- ©Disney
- ©TAITO CORP.2005.2006.2007
- ©ALESSI

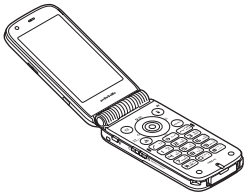
Description of Windows

- The description of each OS (in Japanese edition) is abbreviated as shown below.
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista™ (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

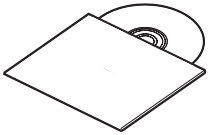
Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N904i
(Including the warranty and Back Cover N20)

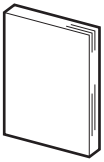


FOMA N904i CD-ROM



* This CD-ROM contains "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) and "Kuten Code List" (PDF).

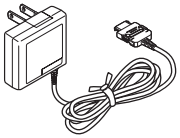
Manual for FOMA N904i
(This manual)



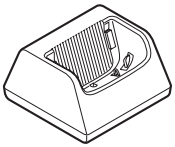
* The Quick Manual starts on p.538.

<Optional Equipments>

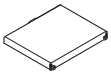
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N13
(Including manual)



Battery Pack N16
(Including manual)



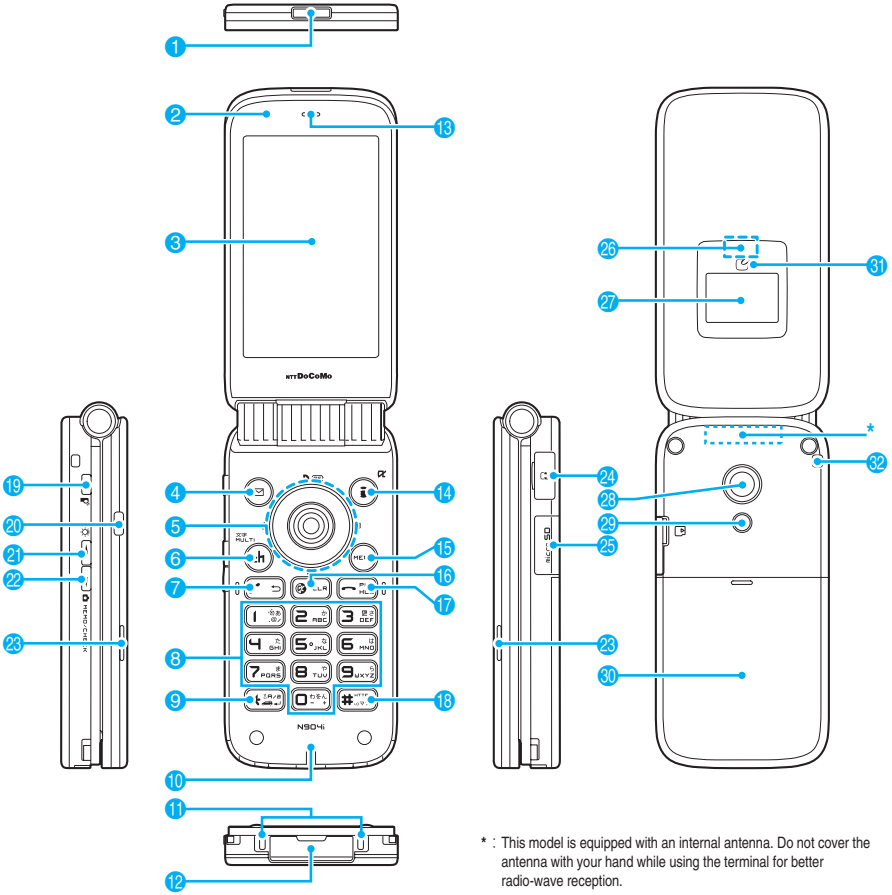
Other options and accessories→p.504

Before Using the Handset

Component Names and Functions 24
Icons on the Display and Indicator Display 28
Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display) 30
Main Menu 31
Using Menus 32
Using the FOMA Card (UIM) 38
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack 41
Charging the FOMA Terminal 43
Checking the Battery Level 45
Turning the FOMA Terminal on/off 45
Switching Language Mode ..... Select language 46
Performing Initial Settings ..... Initial setting 46
Setting Date and Time ..... Set time 47
Setting the World Clock ..... World watch 48
Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party ..... Caller ID Notification 48
Checking Your Phone Number ..... My Profile 48

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N904i FOMA terminal:



* : This model is equipped with an internal antenna. Do not cover the antenna with your hand while using the terminal for better radio-wave reception.

■ Functions

1. Infrared data port
   - Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. →p.378
2. Front camera
   - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.
3. Display
4. Function key 1
   - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. →p.26
5. Multi-function keys

   Up key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
   - Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Displays Choku-Den detail screen.
   - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

   Down key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
   - Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Opens the search phonebook screen.
   - Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

   Left/Received call record key
   - Moves the cursor to the left.
   - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
   - Shows the Received calls record. →p.62

   Right/Redial key
   - Moves the cursor to the right.
   - Scrolls to the next screens by page.
   - Shows the Redial record. →p.60

   Neuropointer key
   - Using the Neuropointer →p.27

6 Channel/Multi-key [ch]
- Shows the channel list on the standby screen. →p.237
- Opens the task change screen. →p.418
- Switches the input mode on the text entry screen. →p.447

7 Send key
- Makes voice calls. →p.51
- Answers voice/videophone calls. →p.70
- Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during text entry. →p.444

8 Dial keys [0] to [9]
- Used to enter phone numbers or text, perform menu items, etc.

9 ✱/Public mode (Driving mode) key [✱]
- Enter "✱". →p.496
- Sets/releases Public mode (Driving mode).
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. →p.447

10 Mouthpiece/Microphone
- Allows you to convey your voice. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. Doing so may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".

11 Charging terminals

12 External connector
- Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.

13 Earpiece
- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

14 Function key 2
- Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom - right of a screen. →p.26

15 Menu key [MENU]
- Displays the main menu. →p.31

16 Back (Clear) key [CLR]
- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. →p.76
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. →p.54, 450
- Runs the software set for the i-αppli standby screen. →p.302

17 Power/End of operation/Hold key
- Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. →p.45
- Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. →p.46
- Ends a call. →p.51
- Puts an incoming call on hold. →p.75

18 #/Manner key [#]
- Enters "http://" or "#" or other character strings and symbols. →p.496
- Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.82

19 PushTalk key [PTT]
- Used for a PushTalk call. →p.95
- Shows the PushTalk phonebook on the standby screen.

20 Assist key*
- Checks for missed calls, new mail, etc. with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.80
- Reads out received mails or the alarm information of "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list". →p.418
- Performs the music player operations. →p.411

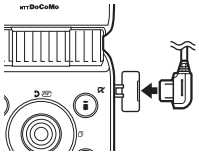
21 Volume up/[▲][☼]*
- Checks for missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.30
- Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.228) using i-mode.
- Pressing while the FOMA terminal is folded will display the indicator display.
- Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. →p.74
- Turns the light on when using the camera.
- Hides the i-Channel ticker on the indicator display.
- Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.

22 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/[▼][📷]*
- Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.82
- Plays recorded messages. →p.82
- Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. →p.74
- Displays the indicator display and reads out the current time when pressed while the FOMA terminal is folded. →p.80
- Hides the i-Channel ticker on the indicator display.
- Scrolls to the next screen by page.

23 Stereo speaker
- Allows you to hear sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.

24 Earphone/Microphone terminal
- Connects a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc.

<Connecting the flat-plug earphone/microphone (optional)>



25 microSD memory card slot
- Slot for inserting a microSD memory card. →p.366

26 Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp
- Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, etc. Lights red while charging.

27 Indicator display
- Shows the FOMA terminal condition using messages and icons.

28 Rear camera
- Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.

29 Light
- Provides light when pictures are taken with the camera.

30 Back cover

31 FeliCa mark
- The IC card is built-in. Pass the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit to use the IC card function. This IC card cannot be removed.
- Used to transfer data via iC communication.

32 Through-hole for strap

*: [▲], [▼] and Assist key are collectively called external keys in this manual.

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Function	Refer to page	Key	Function	Refer to page
○	Opens the received address list.	p.275	○	Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.74
○	Opens the sent address list.	p.275			
1	Displays current location using the GPS function. (while on the standby screen)	p.316	(MEMO/ CHECK)	Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.431
				Opens the Photo mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.192
2	Changes the mode of 2in1 settings (while on the standby screen)	p.466			
3	Sets IC card lock. (while on the standby screen)	p.311		Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.50
5	Turns the display light on/off.	p.140		Uses the IC card authentication. (while in Dial lock/Keypad lock)	p.172
8	Switches Privacy angle (when not editing text or running i-αppli)	p.139	○	Checks new messages. (while on the standby screen)	p.230 p.257
0	Enters "+". (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.57	○	Opens the i-αppli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.295
#	Sets/Releases Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.132	○	Switches the main screen display. (during a videophone call)	p.50
ch (MULTI)	Opens the switching task screen. (while tasks are activated)	p.418	Assist key	Activates/quits the music player. (while on the standby screen, etc.)	p.411
MENU	Opens the standby screen. (during Multitask)	p.417			
*	Sets external keys to valid/invalid (while on the main menu)	p.174			
	Sets/Releases Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.77			
	Enters p (pause). (while editing pause dial data)	p.67			
	Enters a line feed " ↵ ".	p.448			

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (○, ●, ○) and directional icons corresponding to the Multi-function keys (○) appear.

■**To run a command corresponding to the software key 1**

Press ○ to run the command indicated on the software key 1.

1 includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (ON), etc.

■**To run a command corresponding to the software key 2**

Press ● to run the command indicated on the software key 2.

2 includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■**To run a command corresponding to the software key 3**

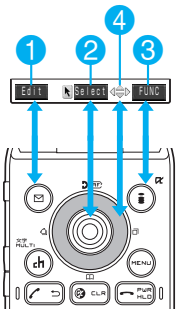
Press ○ to run the command indicated on the software key 3.

3 includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press ○ while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. →p.36

■**To move/scroll in the directions shown in 4**

Use ○ to move or scroll in the directions shown in 4.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.



Neuropointer

Sliding the Neuropointer to move the pointer enables you to quickly select icons or items. When a list or function menu consists of multiple pages, you can switch the pages with the Neuropointer.

- When appears at the bottom of the standby or another screen, slide the Neuropointer to show the pointer ( ).
- The design of the pointer can be changed. →p.146

Using the Neuropointer to switch pages

1 Slide ● to show ▶Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

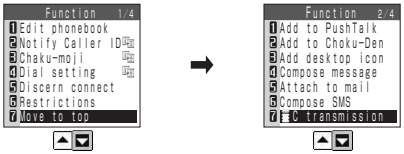
The pointer changes to .

■ When moving the pointer to the top

The pointer changes to .

2 Press ●

The next page appears.



■ To show the previous page

▶Slide ● leftward to change to ▶Press ●

Using the Neuropointer to scroll

You can scroll using the Neuropointer on the My picture (p.342), PDF data (p.387) or document view screen (p.391) or site screen in i-mode (p.215) or Full Browser (p.329). When Scroll mode is set on a site screen in i-mode or Full Browser, changes to and an icon such as appears, which allow you to scroll.

NOTE

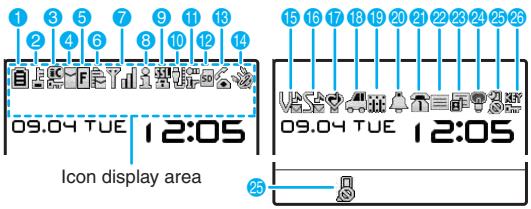
◆ Neuropointer may be unavailable for selecting the menu screens of some Flash movies.

Icons on the Display and Indicator Display

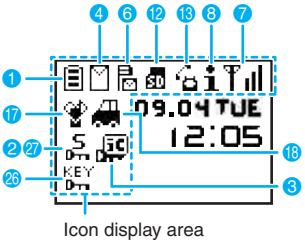
The symbols (, , , etc.) shown on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar, etc. can be set on the display. →p.137

■ Display



■ Indicator display



Icon display area

● The following table shows the icon images for the display. Some icons on the indicator display may differ from them.

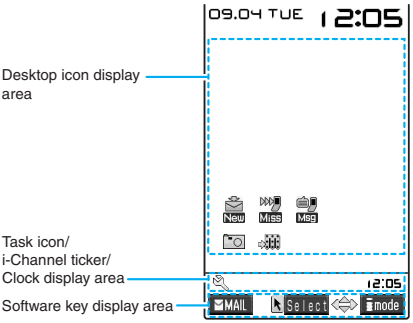
	Icon	Description
❶		Battery level →p.45
❷		Dial lock set →p.161
		Secret mode or Secret data only mode set →p.163
		Original lock set →p.167
		"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released →p.167
		Original lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set →p.163, 167
		When setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode while "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock is temporarily released →p.163, 167
❸		IC card lock set →p.311
❹	(white)	Unread mail →p.254
	(red)	Inbox is full →p.255
		FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full →p.289
	(white)	Unread mail/FOMA card memory for SMS is full →p.289
	(red)	Inbox is full/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full →p.255, 289
❺	R (white)	Unread MessageR →p.229
	R (red)	Memory for MessageR is full →p.229
	F (white)	Unread MessageF →p.229
	F (red)	Memory for MessageF is full →p.229
	R F (R, F: white)	Unread MessageR/Unread MessageF →p.229
	R F (R, F: red)	Memory for MessageR is full/Memory for MessageF is full →p.229
	R F (R: red, F: white)	Memory for MessageR is full/Unread MessageF →p.229
	R F (R: white, F: red)	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full →p.229

	Icon	Description
❻	(white)	Mail kept at the i-mode Center →p.258
	(red)	Memory for mail at the i-mode Center is full →p.258
		Mail kept at the i-mode Center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" →p.256
	R (white)	MessageR kept at the i-mode Center →p.231
	R (red)	Memory for your MessageR kept at the i-mode Center is full →p.231
	F (white)	MessageF kept at the i-mode Center →p.231
	F (red)	Memory for MessageF at the i-mode Center is full →p.231
❼		Signal strength →p.46
		Appears when out of the service area or in an area where there is no reception. →p.46
	self	Self mode set →p.180
❽		i-mode in progress →p.212
		i-mode communication in progress →p.212
		Packet communication in progress →p.472
		Packet communication in progress (outgoing) →p.472
		Packet communication in progress (incoming) →p.472
		Packet communication in progress (sending data) →p.472
		Packet communication in progress (receiving data) →p.472
		PushTalk call in progress →p.95
❾	SSL	SSL-compatible page shown →p.215
❿		Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
		Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	H	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	H	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	SD	microSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374

Icon	Description
	microSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	microSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	microSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.69, 374
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	MTP mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	MTP mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.374
	MTP mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
	MTP mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.69, 374
⑪	Infrared data exchange in progress →p.378
	Infrared remote control being operated →p.384
	IC card being authenticated →p.172
	iC communication in progress (sending/receiving data) →p.378
⑫	microSD memory card inserted →p.366
	Disabled microSD memory card inserted →p.366
	When using the microSD reader/writer →p.373
	microSD being accessed →p.390
⑬	During a voice call →p.51
	64K data communication in progress →p.472
	During a videophone call →p.52
	Switching between voice call and videophone call →p.55
⑭	GPS location being positioned →p.315
	Permit to send loc. in the GPS function set to ON →p.321

Icon	Description
⑮	Vibrator set →p.129
⑯	Ring volume set to "Silent" →p.74 Mail/Msg. ring time set to "OFF" →p.132
⑰	Manner mode set →p.132
	Remote monitoring set →p.90
⑱	Public mode (Driving mode) set →p.77
⑲	Music channel reservation set →p.396
⑳	Alarm set →p.420
㉑	Voice Mail message* →p.459
㉒	Record message set* →p.80
㉓	Record message (Record VP message) set* →p.80
㉔	Backlight set to "OFF" →p.140
	Privacy angle set to "ON" →p.139
	Privacy angle set to "ON", backlight set to "OFF" →p.139, p.140
㉕	Keypad lock set/waiting →p.171
	Keypad lock activated →p.171
㉖	External keys guard set to "ON" →p.174
㉗	Keypad lock activated →p.171
	Both Original lock and Keypad lock activated →p.171
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and Keypad lock activated →p.171
	Keypad lock activated in Secret mode or Secret data only mode →p.171
	Keypad lock activated both in Original lock and in Secret mode or Secret data only mode →p.171
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and both Keypad lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode activated →p.171

*: Only an icon for set mode appears when 2in1 is set.



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
New etc.	Desktop icons that give notice →p.152

Continued on next page

Icon	Description
etc.	Added desktop icons →p.149

Task icon/i-Channel ticker/clock display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Task icons →p.417
i-Channel ticker	Ticker running on the standby screen →p.237
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen →p.149 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the Clock display setting)

NOTE

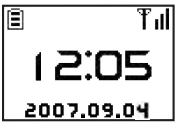
- The FOMA terminal's display adopts state-of-the-art technology; due to its characteristics, some dots (points) may not light up while others may always light up. This is not a failure.
- Press MENU 3 6 to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

The indicator display indicates an incoming call/mail or alarm in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening the FOMA terminal.

- "Setting the Indicator Display Mode" →p.139
- You can view the i-Channel information on the indicator display if "i-Channel setting" (p.238) is set.

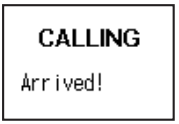
Sample images



Clock (Digital 3)



Alarm ringing



Chaku-moji



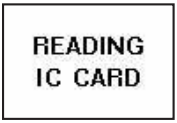
Receiving call



GPS running



Emotion-expressing mail



Reading IC card



Switching voice/videophone calls



Ticker of the i-Channel (twice)

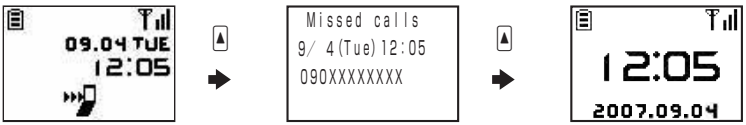
Checking a caller or sender

Press ▲ to check details.

- When performing the tool group operation (p.31), you cannot check missed calls on the indicator display.

■Missed call

You can only check the latest missed call.



The clock reappears.

■ **New mail**

When receiving several mails at the same time, you can only check the latest one.



When "Mail" is set to "ON" in "Indicator display", the sender, sent date and time and subject appear.

The clock reappears.

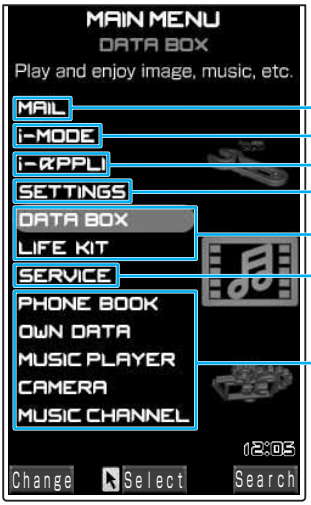
NOTE

◆ The indicator display turns off after the time set in "Display time" (p.139) elapses. Press ▲ to reactivate the indicator display.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access the main item of each function from the main menu. Press (MENU) to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:

* The main menu is listed in the phone's color, Orange Cut.



Mail group

i-mode group

i-αppli group

Settings group

Tools group

Settings group

Tools group

<Mail group>

●MAIL/Mail
View sent/received mail, compose and send new mail.

<i-mode group>

●i-MODE/i-mode
Connect to sites and use i-mode service.

<i-αppli group>

●i-αPPLI/i-αppli
Recall and enjoy various software.

<Tools group>

●DATA BOX/Data box
Enjoy images and music.

●PHONE BOOK/PHONEBOOK/Phonebook
Register, search and set phonebook entries.

●LIFE KIT/LIFEKIT/LifeKit
Use useful functions such as music channel, camera, alarm and data exchange.

●OWN DATA/Own data
Check and maintain personal data and history.

<Settings group>

●SETTINGS/Settings
Perform settings for various FOMA terminal functions.

●SERVICE/Service
Check and set network services.

Continued on next page

"Multitask" →p.417
The FOMA terminal supports "Multitask" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from each main menu group. While in a Multitask operation, the active menu groups are enclosed with a box.



Using Menus

Open a screen from the main menu, original menu or light menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing (MENU): accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.486). This "Manual for FOMA N904i" describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press . It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, press CLR to go back to the operation screen shown before the message appears.
- Frequently used menus such as Mail menu (p.242) or i-mode menu (p.212) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press (✉) (MAIL) to access the Mail menu or (●) (i-mode) to access the i-mode menu.
- If (✉) (Change) appears, you can change the menu design. If (●) (Search) appears, you can search for an item by entering text.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Setting country code in "Int'l dial assistance">

1 Select "SETTINGS" with (MENU)▶◈, highlight "Dialing" using ●▶◈ and press ●

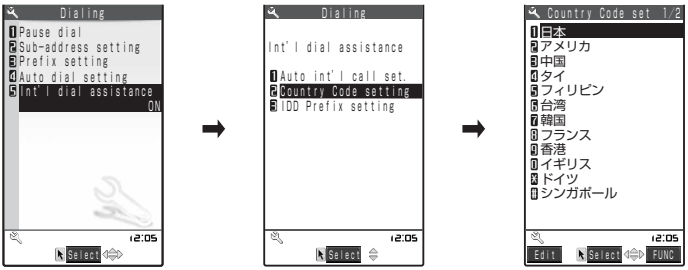


■ **To scroll continuously**
▶Keep holding ◈

■ **To use the Neuropointer**
"Neuropointer" →p.27

■ **If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears**
The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

2 Press ○ to highlight "Int'l dial assistance" and press ●. Highlight "Country Code setting" with ○ and press ●



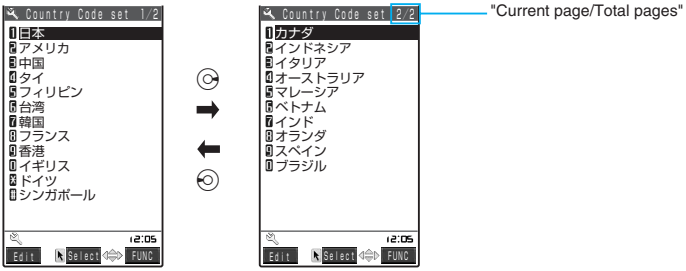
NOTE

◆ The icon you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu is opened (Last one function).This function is only available when "Memory focus" under "Menu display set" is set to "ON".

● If items span multiple pages

1 Use ○ to switch pages

Pressing ○ (or 4) returns to the previous page. ○ (or 6 (MEMO/CHECK)) switches to the next page.



■ To switch using ○

When the highlight is at the top, press ○ to return to the previous page. When the highlight is at the bottom, press ○ to switch to the next page.

2 Press ●

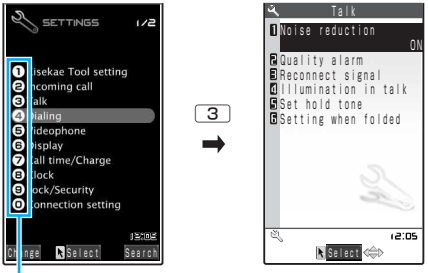
The selected item is set.

3 Press ⌐ after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears. While Multitask is being performed, another active screen appears.

Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press 0 to 9 ✳ corresponding to the item No.



The number corresponding to the dial key

Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Use ◉ to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF"), and press ●

The selected item is set.



Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. →p.158

1 Enter your 4 to 8 digit security code and press ●

The entered security code appears as "_".
The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.



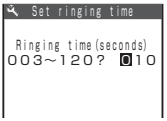
■ **If the entered security code is incorrect**

A message appears notifying that the security code is incorrect. Re-enter the security code.

Entering numbers

1 Press 0 to 9 to enter numbers

To enter 1 or 2 digits in a 3-digit entry screen
First press 0 twice or once.



■ **To enter "3"**

▶0, 0, 3

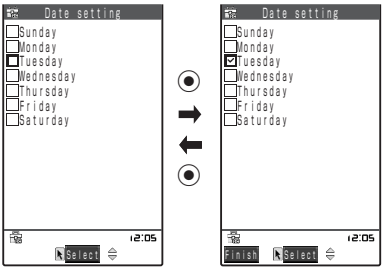
■ **To enter "12"**

▶0, 1, 2

Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use ◉ to highlight checkbox (☐) and press ●

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This indicates that the checkbox is selected. Press ● to toggle ☐ and ☑.
If "Finish" appears as a software key, press ✉ (Finish) to set the selected item.
If "FUNC" appears as a software key, you can press ⓘ (FUNC) to use functions such as "Select all" or "Release all".



Changing the main menu display mode

1 (MENU)▶(✉) **(Change)▶Select any item**

Main menu theme →p.142

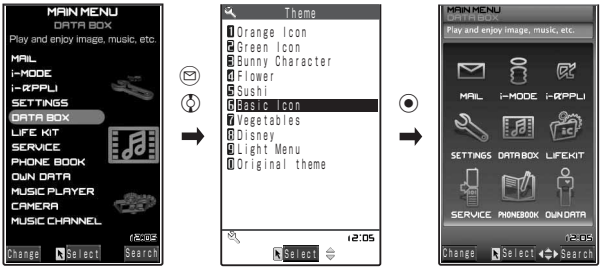
■ **To create an original menu**

▶"Original theme"

"Changing the main menu screen design" →p.143

■ **To change the menu display mode**

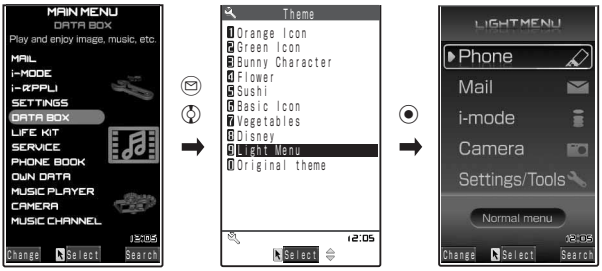
"Setting the menu display mode" →p.141



Changing to Light menu

The display mode can be changed to "Light menu" that displays only often-used menu items.

1 (MENU)▶(✉) **(Change)▶"Light Menu"**



■ **To change to the normal main menu**

To display all menu items, change to the normal main menu.

▶Select "Normal menu" on the Light menu screen



Searching for menu items

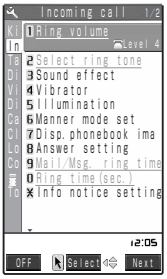
1 (MENU) ▶ (i) (Search) ▶ Enter search terms ▶ (●)

The search result appears with the searched item selected.

Press (✉) (OFF) to end searching.

■ **If multiple search results come out**

Press (i) (Next) to show the next search result.



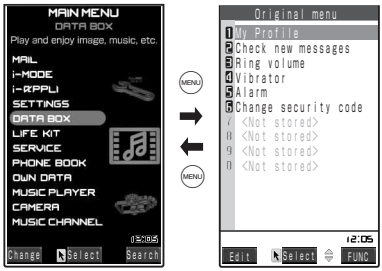
Searched "RING"

Selecting a function from your original menu

- Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (✉) (Edit) to edit the original menu.
- The original menu appears in a "List".
- Adding items to the original menu →p.144

1 **Press** (MENU) ▶ (MENU)

Press (MENU) to switch between the main menu and original menu.

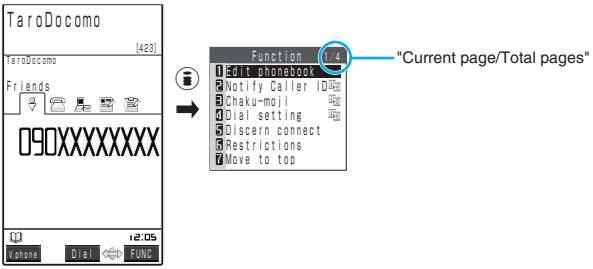


NOTE

- When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press (MENU), the main menu appears.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message appears asking whether to add functions to the original menu.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, " FUNC " appears as a software key. Press (i) (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use (○) to highlight an item to perform, and press (●) to select it.



- When items span multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. When the top item is highlighted, press (○) to show the previous page. When the bottom item is highlighted, press (○) to show the next page. Pressing (○) (or (▲)) switches to the previous page and (○) (or (▼) (MEMO/CHECK)) switches to the next page.

- "  " appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
- The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
- You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below. The operation (extract) for selecting "Remote monitoring" from "Videophone" under "SETTINGS" is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

1 (MENU) ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Videophone"▶"Remote monitoring" ▶Enter your security code▶"Other ID"

2 Select "<Not recorded>"

⋮

Actual operations:

1 Press (MENU) on the standby screen

2 Use ◉ on the main menu to highlight "SETTINGS" and press ●

3 Use ◉ on the "SETTINGS" menu to highlight "Videophone" and press ●

4 Use ◉ on the "Videophone" menu to highlight "Remote monitoring" and press ●

5 Enter your security code and press ●

6 Highlight "Other ID" on the "Remote monitoring" menu and press ●

7 Use ◉ on the "Other ID" menu to highlight "<Not recorded>" and press ●

Operation with 1

Operation with 2

⋮

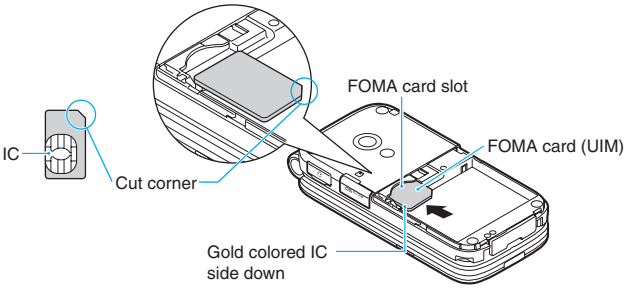
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

● Inserting/Removing the FOMA card (UIM)

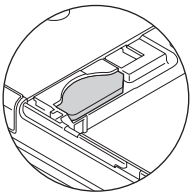
Insert the FOMA card (UIM) as illustrated below.

1 Insert the FOMA card (UIM) into the FOMA card slot with the IC facing down as illustrated



2 Push in until the FOMA card (UIM) is in place

To remove FOMA card (UIM), gently pull out straight.



Properly installed

NOTE

- Using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) after removing it from a FOMA terminal.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, an error message (p.509) appears.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM). →p.158

FOMA card operational restriction function

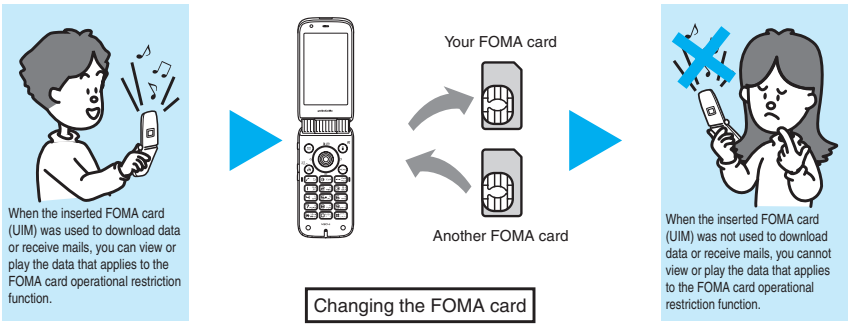
Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:

Files attached to i-mode Mail (except for ToruCa)	Compatible data for Movable contents
Screen memo	i-motion
Images inserted into Deco-mail messages or Signature	Chara-den
i-αppli (including i-αppli standby screen)	Chaku-Uta®*, Chaku-Uta-Full®
Images (including animation, Flash movie)	PDF data
Melody	Kisekae Tool
Word/Excel/PowerPoint data	Record VP messages
Images for ToruCa (detail)	Mail templates which include operational restriction
Images that were downloaded from the Phonebook Data Security Center	Download dictionary
Music channel programs	MessageR/MessageF with files (melodies, images) attached or pasted

*: "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as "your FOMA card (UIM)" and other FOMA cards as "another FOMA card (UIM)" hereinafter.



Changing the FOMA card

NOTE

- If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, "" is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in "Display setting" or "Select ring tone".
- If data or a file with this function set is selected for "Display setting" or "Select ring tone" and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as news received through the i-Channel service.
- Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, iC communication function, data transmission (OBEX) function, a microSD memory card or Bar code reader, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- Pre-installed i-αppli programs are subject to this function if they were upgraded or re-downloaded from sites after they had been deleted.
- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text on the i-mode mail detail screen to launch an i-αppli program.
- If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-Channel compatible terminal, ticker does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press ch to display the channel list. Ticker will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
"Select language" (p.46)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
"SMS center selection" (p.288)	
"SMS validity period" (p.276)	
"PIN setting" (p.159)	
"Host selection" under "Connection setting" (p.228)	
"Caller ID setting" for PushTalk (p.103)	"OFF" is set regardless of the previous settings.
i-Channel setting (p.238)	Restores the original menu to default.
"Access setting" for Full Browser (p.335)	"NO" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Cookie settings" for Full Browser (p.336)	"Invalid" is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).
"Set program" under Music Channel (p.396)	Settings before inserting the new FOMA card (UIM) are invalid. Set programs again from the music channel screen.

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

FOMA card (UIM) (blue) and the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) differ in the following ways.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)
Max. number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

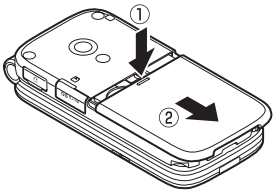
WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls with the FOMA card (green/white) inserted into a compatible terminal.
N904i is only available in DoCoMo 3G roaming service areas. In GSM service areas, use a GSM-compatible terminal.

- If you started to use FOMA services on or after September 1, 2005, you do not need to apply for "WORLD WING". However, if you did not wish to use it at the time of subscription to FOMA services, you need to make an application at your nearest DoCoMo Shop etc.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or before August 31, 2005 and have not applied for "WORLD WING" yet, you need to apply for the services separately.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- In case your FOMA card (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact DoCoMo to take procedures to stop the use of it. For contact information, see "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual. Note that communication fee that have been made after the terminal is lost or stolen will be charged to you.

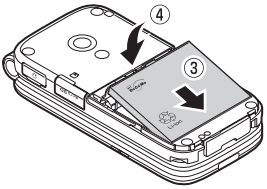
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

● Turn the FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

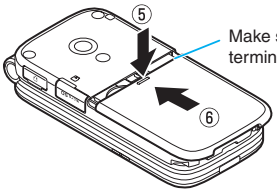
● Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



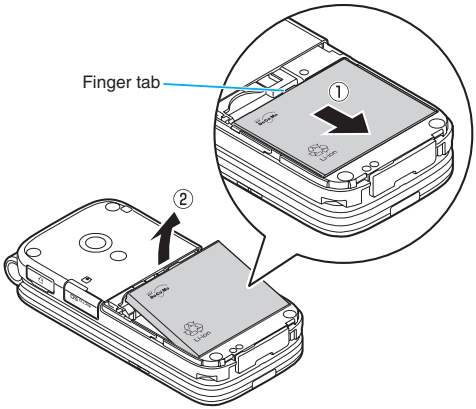
With the side of the battery pack where the product name is printed facing up, insert the pack in direction ③ so that the metal terminal of the pack fits that of the FOMA terminal (Phone), then press the pack down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely inserted.

Lift the back cover about 2 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

● Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

◆ Using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on the FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N16 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N16 for the FOMA terminal.
If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use/FOMA AC Adapter 02 with you. Before using the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use/FOMA AC Adapter 02, check the voltage available in a country or area you will stay.→p.478

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was new, it is time to replace it with a new one. Depending on the conditions under which it is used, the battery pack may swell as the life comes close to the end, but this causes no problem.
- Using i-αppli or videophone for a long period of time with the FOMA terminal being charged may shorten the life of the battery pack.

Li-ion

To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if "Charging" in "Backlight" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication in a high temperature environment, the FOMA terminal's temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. In this case, stop any running functions and wait for the temperature to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with the FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice Communications: Approx. 180 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.	Stationary: Approx. 610 hours Stationary: Approx. 460 hours

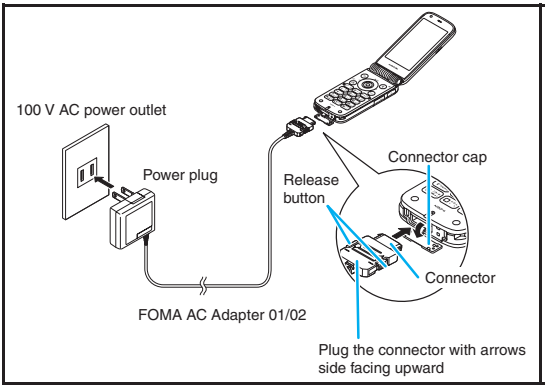
- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time at maximum power when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode message, run downloaded i-αppli, launch the i-αppli standby display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will also be less when using i-mode or data communication, performing Multi access, using the camera, playing movies, i-motion or music.
- Continuous standby time for stationary is an average estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average estimate of the standby time in "stationary", "in transit" and "out of the service area" states when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will also be less when you insert a microSD memory card, run data communication or multi access, or use the camera or light.

Charging the FOMA Terminal

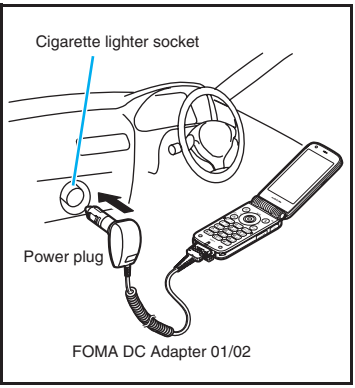
● You can charge the FOMA terminal using the AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the terminal by connecting the AC adapter and desktop holder (optional). For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

■ AC adapter



■ DC adapter



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal

3 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet
Plug the DC adapter into a cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button

5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car

6 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

◆ When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) is turned off, and " " disappears from the screen and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" appears, remove the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and battery pack from the FOMA terminal then set them again to recharge. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

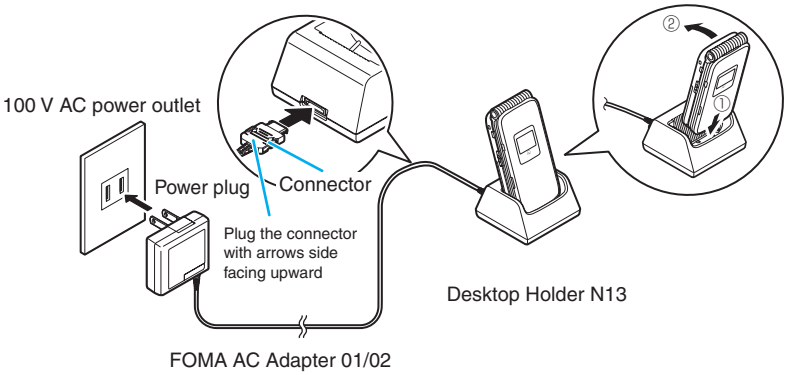
◆ Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.

◆ The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.

Continued on next page

◆ The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Charging with the desktop holder



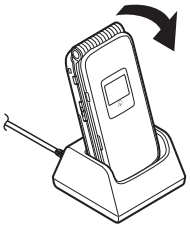
1 Plug the AC adapter connector horizontally into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above

2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet

3 Hold down the desktop holder and place the FOMA terminal securely in the direction of ②, with the FOMA terminal sticking in the direction of ①, as shown above

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, hold down the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow



NOTE

◆ Set a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder. Take care not to trap the strap.
◆ The charge lamp lights red during charging. When the charge lamp turns off, the FOMA terminal is fully charged. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, " " flashes while charging and " " lights when charging ends.
◆ If the FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends. However, while "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set or when "Charge sound" is set to "OFF", the "Charge sound" does not sound.
◆ The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is inserted in the FOMA terminal.
◆ If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking with a battery level icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

(white): Full charge

(white): Partial charge

(red): Almost empty. Recharge battery.



Checking with sound and animation

MENU71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶Battery level"

The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

"3 short beeps" : Full charge
"2 short beeps" : Partial charge
"1 short beep" : Almost empty. Recharge battery.

NOTE

◆ The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop the alarm, press any key other than ▲, ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) assist key or [ ].



NOTE

◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. The call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about the next one minute.

◆ While "Manner mode" is set and "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set or while "LVA tone" is set to "OFF" in "Original", the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning the FOMA Terminal on/off

● Before using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

Turning the FOMA terminal on

● Before turning a FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.

● When you turn on the power for the first time after purchase, " " appears on the upper right of a screen.

1 ( ) **(1 second or longer)**

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just inserted the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the "UN ATTIMO" (Wait a minute) message may appear for a short period of time.

Continued on next page

■ **When " " appears**

You are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. "" appears. The reception levels appear as follows:

Good ⟷ Poor

■ **When PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON"**

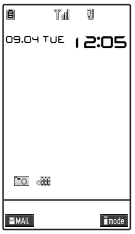
The PIN1 code entry screen appears. →p.160

■ **When Auto reset total cost is set to "ON"**

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ **If the initial settings screen appears**

Perform the initial settings. → p.46



Standby

NOTE

◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is exchanged, enter your 4 to 8-digit security code after turning the power on. The standby screen appears after the correct security code is entered. The power turns off if you enter the wrong security code five times (however, you will be able to turn the power back on).

Turning the FOMA terminal off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown message "ARRIVEDERCI" (See you) appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

◆ Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that "" is shown when using the FOMA terminal.

◆ After turning the FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

〈Select language〉 MENU15

Switching Language Mode

Default setting: Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or indicator display.

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Select language"▶"English"

■ **To change from Japanese to English**

▶"English"



Japanese

■ **To change from English to Japanese**

▶"日本語"



English

NOTE

◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.

◆ Selecting "English" for "Select language" gives you two options "ON" and "OFF" for "Display" under "Clock display" and for "Info notice setting".

For same guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English. →p.463

〈Initial setting〉

Performing Initial Settings

After turning the FOMA terminal on, set "Set time", "Change security code", "Character size", "Permit to send loc.", "Keypad sound", "Neuropointer" ("Simple" only) and "PushTalk Caller ID" as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function's setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 8 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform "Reset settings" after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens. →p.160

1 "Initial setting screen"▶"YES"



Initial setting

2 Set time

Date and time are not set by default. Setting time →p.47

3 Change the security code

The default setting is "0000". "Changing Your Security Code" →p.159

4 Set the font size

Setting the font size →p.148

5 Set whether to send location information via the GPS function

If "Permit to send loc." is set to "ON", enter your security code. Setting location request →p.321

6 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound →p.129

7 Set the Neuropointer speed

Only the "Simple" settings under "Neuropointer" can be performed. Neuropointer →p.146

8 Set whether to show your PushTalk caller ID

PushTalk Caller ID →p.103

NOTE

- Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press [ ] or [CLR], the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- If you set PushTalk Caller ID to "ON" and then make a PushTalk call, all participant phone numbers are shown to all participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when showing them.

〈Set time〉 **MENU31**

Setting Date and Time

Default setting
Auto time set ON

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. The date and time can be set to be automatically corrected (to Japan Standard Time).

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen or indicator display and allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. "Alarm" and "Schedule").
- The data and time that can be set is from 00:00 January 1, 2004 to 23:59 December 31, 2037. Date and time does not display after 23:59 December 31, 2037.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Set time"▶Select any item

Auto time set ON	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting "Auto time set ON" receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set time different from the actual time.

■ When "Auto time set OFF" is selected



Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).
<Example: To set September 04, 2007, 12:05>
Use ⊙ to move the highlight, and press dial keys to enter numbers.
In this case, press [2], [0], [0], [7], [0], [9], [0], [4], [1], [2], [0], [5].

NOTE

- Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set "Auto time set OFF" with the battery pack which has been removed for a long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- Although the time may not be automatically corrected depending on the signal status, it is corrected based on the time information received from the DoCoMo network when:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned on
  - " " turns to " ", etc. on the standby screen indicating that radio waves can be received, and other function is not running

Continued on next page

- Charging starts when the standby screen appears and other function is not running
- "Auto time set ON" is set

◆ The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when " " appears.
◆ If "i-αppli standby screen" is set, the time may not be corrected depending on the set i-αppli.
◆ A several-second difference may occur.

〈World watch〉

Setting the World Clock

Default setting	Time zone: GMT+00 (City: London) Summer time: OFF

You can show the time of a city in the world instead of the Japan date and time set in "Set time". You can also set summer time, if necessary.

● Setting the world clock on the standby screen →p.149

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"World watch"▶Select any item

Time zone	▶**Select a time zone** Press (Change) to change the city shown in the time zone. (You cannot change the city name in some time zones.)
Summer time	▶**"ON" or "OFF"** If "ON" is set, the time which is one hour ahead of "World watch" time appears.

〈Caller ID Notification〉 MENU17

Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF	Subscription: Not required	Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

● You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification when " " appears.
● This function is only available when the other party's phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
● If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to "ON" and make a call again.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Caller ID Notification"▶Select any item

Activate/Deactivate	Network security code →p.158	
	ON	▶**Enter your network security code**
	OFF	▶**Enter your network security code**
Check setting	▶**Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press** ●	

NOTE

◆ You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from "Phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls". →p.67
◆ When making a PushTalk call, this function is not available. "Caller ID setting" under "PushTalk setting" will apply. →p.103

〈My Profile〉 MENU0

Checking Your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"My Profile"



NOTE

◆ By default, only your own number is shown.
◆ Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored. Storing and showing your personal data→ p.428
◆ You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu▶"Menu"▶"English iMenu"▶Options"▶"Mail Settings"▶"Confirm Mail Address"
◆ Quote information from "My Profile" to easily enter owner information (name, e-mail address, etc.) on a website. → p.428
◆ when 2in1 is set to Dual mode, you can switch My Profile display with .
◆ Reset My Profile in B mode when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM) while using 2in1. →p.429

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls

What is Videophone? ... 50
Making a Voice/Videophone Call ... 51
Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone ... 55
Making International Calls ... WORLD CALL 56
Switching to Hands-free Operation ... Hands-free 59
Using the Redial/Received Calls Record ... 60
Using Chaku-moji ... Chaku-moji 63
Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls ... 186／184 66
Sending Push Signals Quickly ... Pause dial 67
Setting Prefix Numbers ... Prefix setting 68
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ... Sub-address setting 69
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection ... Reconnect signal 69
Blocking Out Ambient Noise ... Noise reduction 69
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car ... In-car hands-free 69

Receiving voice/videophone calls

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call ... 70
Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone (the Other Party) ... 72
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls ... Answer setting 73
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls ... Setting when folded 73
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ... Volume 74
Adjusting the Ring Volume ... Ring volume 74

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately ... Answer hold 75
Putting Ongoing Calls on Hold ... Holding 76
Setting the Hold Tone ... Set hold tone 76
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode) ... Public mode (Driving mode) 77
Using Public Mode (Power off) ... Public mode (power off) 78
Checking Missed Calls ... Info notice setting 79
Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video ... Record message 80
Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call ... Quick message 82
Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos ... 82
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages ... VP message 83

Videophone settings

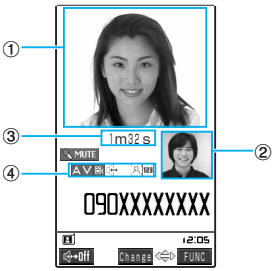
Using Chara-den ... 84
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party ... 85
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls ... Hands-free switch 87
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call ... 87
Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call ... Ntfy switch-mode 88
Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode ... V-phone while packet 88
Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls ... 89
Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal ... Remote monitoring 90

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M*2 standard set down in the international 3GPP*1 standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.
  - *1: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
    A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
  - *2: 3G-324M
    An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K (64kbps) or 32K (32kbps), Videophone call at the speed of 32K is not available on the FOMA terminal.

Videophone screen



① Main screen. By default, this shows a camera image from the other party's phone.
② Sub-screen. By default, this shows a camera image from your phone.
③ Shows the call duration.
④ Shows the videophone function settings.

- : Sending/receiving voice
- : Voice transmission error
- : Sending/receiving video
- : Video transmission error
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending the substitute image selected in "Select image"
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Hands-free ON
- MUTE : Microphone mute in progress
- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode
- : Key operation/Whole action mode*
- : Key operation/Parts action mode*

*: Action mode→p.84

- : Sending Chara-den
- : Visual check in progress

Control key	Videophone operation
●	Switches between the front and rear cameras
● (1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen→p.53
○ (▲), ○ (▼(MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume
○	Adjusts zoom ratio
○	Switches on/off hands-free
○	Displays a function menu
▼ (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)	Records other party's voice during a call
CLR	Puts a call on hold
▲ (1 second or longer)	Microphone mute

Making a Voice/Videophone Call

Making a voice call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Phone number entry" screen appears.
Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code − Local code − Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.

■ To call a mobile phone

090 − xxxx − xxxx
or
080 − xxxx − xxxx

■ To call a PHS phone

070 − xxxx − xxxx



Phone number entry

Function menu➡p.51

2 [Call]

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.
The " " icon flashes during dialing and remains lit during a call.
The "In-call" screen appears.

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing a call from voice to videophone"→p.55

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press [End], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear the message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press [End], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear the message requesting your caller ID

The other party has set the Caller ID Request service to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.

■ If you set "2in1 setting" to "Dual mode"

The outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.



In-call

Function menu➡p.52

3 To end the call, press [End]

NOTE

- You can make calls while in i-mode or sending or receiving mails.
- A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a call to be made. The Chaku-moji message appears on the screen of the other party's phone when it rings if the terminal supports Chaku-moji.→p.63
- You cannot make calls during 64K data communication, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. However, if the other party's FOMA terminal can change the call mode, you can change a call from videophone to voice by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)→p.55
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail).→p.246
- While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, an image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- You can talk in hands-free mode during a call.→p.59
- You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).→p.436

Function menu (Phone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	"Showing your phone number to the other party"→p.67
Prefix numbers	▶**Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.65
Int'l call	"Making an international call with international call codes added"→p.57
Multi Number	"Multi Number"→p.465
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the Phonebook"→p.107

Continued on next page

Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call"→p.85 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot create a message.

Function menu (In-call screen)

Speed photo mail*	"Sending a still image shot in talking"→p.246
Disp photo mail	Shows a received speed photo mail.
Check new messages	Checks for new i-mode messages.→p.230, 257

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot use this function.

Making a videophone call

1 Phone number entry screen (p.51)▶ (V.phone)

The "Videophone in-call" screen appears.
You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation"→p.59
The "" icon flashes during dialing and remains lit during a videophone call.



You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Videophone in-call

Function menu➡p.53

■ **To switch to a voice call during a videophone call**

"Changing a call from videophone to voice"→p.55

■ **To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call**

▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ **To send an image from the rear camera during a videophone call**

▶●

Each time you press ● during a videophone call, you can switch between the front camera and the rear camera (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To mute voice to send during a videophone call (microphone mute)**

▶ (1 second or longer)

" MUTE " appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.
To cancel mute, press again for 1 second or longer.

■ **If using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**

You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ **If a videophone call is not connected→p.54**

2 To end the call, press

NOTE

- A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a videophone call to be made. If the phone of the other party supports Chaku-moji, the Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen of the other party.→p.63
- International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service.→p.56
- A FOMA terminal sends a camera image when making a call unless Chara-den is set in "Select image" in the function menu of the Phone number entry screen.→p.52
- It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.
- When you are talking on a videophone call using the rear camera while charging, the message notifying that the camera will be turned off might appear and the camera might be automatically turned off, depending on the temperature of the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. These mails are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after the videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "カメラオフ Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- Digital call charges still apply when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.

Function menu (Videophone in-call screen)

Petit message	"Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed)"→p.88		
Decoration	"Decorating the videophone screen"→p.87		
Off decoration	Erases the displayed message or stamp.		
Substitute image, My side	Switches between a camera image and a substitute image.		
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. This setting is only retained during a call.		
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen"→"Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen"→"Displaying only the image from the other party's camera"→"Displaying only the image from your own camera".		
Visual check, Visual check off	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call"→p.86		
V. phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.		
	Visual prefer.	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
		Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
		Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
	Brightness	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the brightness**▶●  Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to 0 to +2.	
	White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions.→p.199	
		Auto (default)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
		Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Sets a normal image.
		Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	Photo mode	Sets a mode suited to the scene being shot. Cannot be changed when using the front camera.	
		Portrait (default)	Suitable for shooting people.
		Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery
		Close-up	Suitable for close-up shooting.
Chara-den set.	Chara-den→p.84 Cannot be changed when a camera image is sent.		
	Switch Chara-den	▶**Select a character** Select a character to display.	
	Action List	▶**Check the actions and keys** Shows the available actions and corresponding keys. Pressing ✳ shows the action list.	
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.	
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display.→p.85	
Display light	Sets lighting of the display light.		
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on.	
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.	

Continued on next page

FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON (default)	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.	
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.	
Change to voice	"Changing a call from videophone to voice"→p.55	
Loc. notification	"Selecting a party to notify of location information"→p.324	

If you entered a wrong phone number

To insert a number

Press ⊙ to move highlight to the number on the left of the insert position and enter the number.

To delete a number

Press ⊙ to move highlight to the number to delete and press CLR.
Pressing CLR for 1 second or longer deletes the highlighted number and all numbers on the left side of the highlighted number.

To reenter a number

Move highlight to the beginning or end of the number and press CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call is not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, an explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the other party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used.
Busy*	The line is busy.
Busy with packet transmission	Packet communication is in progress on the other party.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's phone is out of service or the power is turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	The call is connected without showing your caller ID (when dialing visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone that complies with 3G-324M).
Redial using voice call	The forwarded party is non-videophone-terminal.
Please activate caller ID before dialing again	The Caller ID Request service is set on the other party.
At the user's request, your call can not be connected	The Nuisance Call Blocking service is set on the other party.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You attempted to make a videophone call to watch V-live without browsing the i-mode official site.

*: This message may also appear during packet communication depending on the type of other party's terminal.

NOTE

- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from a FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone call, or if the other party's phone supports videophone call but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone call and "Auto redial as voice" (p.85) is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation may not be carried out if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of April 2007). Note that the call charge may apply in some cases.

◆ If "Auto redial as voice" (p.85) is set to "ON" and a videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically changed to a voice call. The operation of the "Auto redial as voice" is as follows.

"Auto redial as voice" set to "ON"	Switches to voice call mode.
"Auto redial as voice" set to "OFF"	Ends the voice call.

Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone

- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you "Ntfy switch-mode" beforehand. →p.88
- You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.

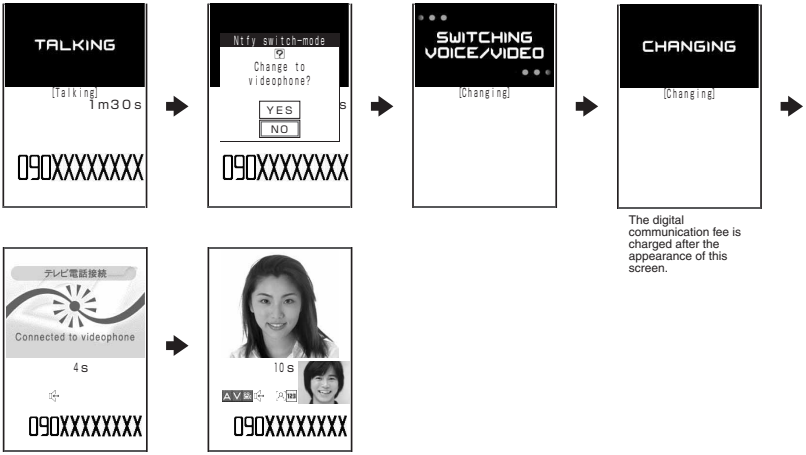
Changing a call from voice to videophone

You can change the call mode during a voice call you dialed.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, "V.phone" appears during a voice call and you can change the call mode between voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)

1 In-call screen▶● (V.phone)▶"YES"

While a voice call is being changed to a videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.
Select "NO" on the "Ntfy switch-mode" message screen to return to the in-call screen.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.

Changing a call from videophone to voice

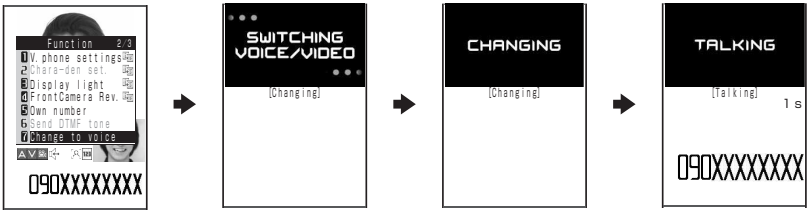
The caller can change the call mode to voice during a videophone call.

- If the handset of other party is a FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "Change to voice" can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call and you can change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)

Continued on next page

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.52)▶(FUNC)▶"Change to voice"

While the call mode is being changed from videophone to voice, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

- It takes about 5 seconds to change the call mode. Note that signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change the call mode in the following cases:
  - The other party is holding a call.
  - The other party has activated Record message.
- The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call. The time used for changing the call mode is excluded from the shown time.
- Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
- If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is logged to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is logged to the Received calls record.
- You are not charged while "SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO" appears.
- If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in "Call data" may differ from the one you will pay.

<Change from voice to videophone>

- If you attempt to change the call mode, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select an image to send from camera image or substitute image. →p.72
- If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No switch" meaning you cannot change to a videophone call. The voice call continues.
- The hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the "Hands-free switch" setting when the call mode is changed, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change. →p.87
- You cannot change the call mode when "Call Waiting" is activated.

<Change from videophone to voice>

- Changing the call mode sets hands-free to OFF.

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers have also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).

* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.

- WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Since communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MY LINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the "MY LINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing ✉ (Vphone) to make a call after following the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information about accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make an international call

1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130→010→(country code)→(area code (long distance code))→(the other party's phone number)

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2 [Call]

An international call is made.

3 To end the call, press [End]

Using "+" to make an international call

Using the "+" prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial an IDD prefix code (e.g. 009130-010).

- "Auto int'l call set." in "Int'l dial assistance" is set to "ON" (automatically added) at the time of purchase so that a FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1 On the standby screen, dial the following: + ([0] (1 second or longer))→(country code)→(area code (long distance code))→(other party's phone number)

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2 [Call]▶**"Dial"**

An international call is made.

■ **To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code**

▶"Original phone No."

* This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ **To cancel a call**

▶"Cancel"

Making an international call with international call codes added <Int'l call>

Add a country code or IDD prefix code to a phone number to make an international call.

- You can set a country code or IDD prefix code in "Int'l dial assistance".→p.58
- This function is available on the phone number entry screen and the detail screens of phonebook, Received calls, Dialed calls and Redial.

<Example: To use the Int'l call function on the phone number entry screen>

1 Enter the other party's phone number

2 ☰ (FUNC)▶"Int'l call"▶Select a country code▶Select an international access name (IDD prefix code)

The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. If "イタリア" (Italy) is selected for the country code, the zero is not deleted.

3 [Call]

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int'l dial assistance>

Default setting	Auto Int'l call set.: ON (auto conversion) Country Code setting: 日本 (Country code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can change the settings for dialing international calls or edit country codes. You can set the following:

Auto int'l call set.	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered "+" is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
Country Code setting	Edits country names and country codes used when you make international calls. 22 names and codes are stored at the time of purchase.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.

● Converting "+" automatically

Set this function to convert "+" automatically when making international calls.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"Auto int'l call set."▶"ON"**

■ **Not to convert automatically**
▶"OFF"

2 **Select a country code▶Select an IDD prefix code**

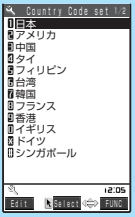
● Editing a country code

See the DoCoMo website for more information about country codes.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"Country Code setting"**
The "Country Code set" screen appears.

2 **Highlight an item and press (✉) (Edit)**

3 **Enter a country name▶Enter a country code**



Country Code set

Function menu➡p.58

Function menu (Country Code set screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
	Delete selected	**▶Use (◎) to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple country code settings.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored country code settings.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the country code set in "Auto int'l call set.". When "ON" (automatically added) is set in "Auto int'l call set.", you cannot perform "Delete selected" or "Delete all".

● Storing an IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"IDD Prefix setting"**

The "IDD Prefix setting" screen appears.

2 **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored item**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

3 **Enter an international access name▶Enter the IDD prefix code**



IDD Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.59

Function menu (IDD Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits the IDD prefix code.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted IDD prefix code.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code set in "Auto int'l call set.". When "ON" (automatically added) is set in "Auto int'l call set.", you cannot perform "Delete all".

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

1 **In-call screen (p.51)▶ (ON)**

Pressing (ON) while a FOMA terminal is ringing also allows you to switch to hands-free.

" " appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.



Example: Voice call

■ **To cancel the hands-free operation**

▶Press (Off) during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and " " disappears during a voice or PushTalk call or " " changes to " " during a videophone call.

Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- The other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

Using the Redial/Received Calls Record

Dialing a previously dialed number <Redial/Dialed calls>

Information such as a phone number, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- If you have dialed to the same phone number twice or more, only the latest call is logged in the Redial record while all the calls are logged in the Dialed calls record.
- When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during a videophone call.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls →p.96

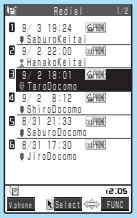
1 On the standby screen▶○

The "Redial (list)" screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶On the standby screen▶(MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls (list)" screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu➡p.61

2 Select a Redial/Dialed calls record entry to check

The "Redial (detail)" or "Dialed calls (detail)" screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, the "Current entry/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use ○ to move to the previous (more recent) number or ○ to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (detail)

Function menu➡p.61

3 [ ] or ●

■ To make a videophone call

▶(✉) (Vphone)

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶[ ][PTT]

4 To end the call, press [ ]

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, or lock "Dialed calls" in "Original lock".
- Press [ ] and ○ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.

◆ If you have selected "Multi Number" from the function menu to make a call, the items selected when making the call ("Basic Number" or the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) are shown on the Redial (detail) or Dialed calls (detail) screen.
◆ Setting "Restrict dialing" erases all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
◆ The phone numbers you have called are also logged in the "Dialed calls" record. Even when two or more calls are made to the same number, history is recorded as a separate entry in the "Dialed calls" record.
◆ The Redial record of PushTalk calls (group) is updated only if you have selected the same members from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call. If at least one member is different, the call is logged as another record entry.
◆ When 2in1 is activated, up to 30 entries can be recorded for each phone number. When Dual mode is set, up to 30 records each for Redial/Dialed calls (up to 60 records in total) are displayed.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed/Received calls screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the record.
● The function menus of Redial/Dialed/Received calls screen are the same between the list and the detail.

Notify Caller ID[*1]	"Showing your phone number to the other party"→p.67	
Prefix numbers[*1*2]	▶**Select the prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68	
Chaku-moji[*1*2]	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.65	
Int'l call[*1*2]	"Making an international call with international call codes added"→p.57	
2in1/Multi Number[*1*2*4]	"2in1"→p.466 "Multi Number"→p.465	
Select PushTalk[*3*5]	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls"→p.96	
Ring time	Shows the Missed calls record entries with the ring times. This setting is available only when the Received calls (list) screen appears.	
Add to phonebook	**Add to phonebook**	"Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.110
	Add to PushTalk[*5]	
	Add to PushTalk Gr[*5]	
Look-up phonebook[*2]	"Searching phonebook entries from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records"→p.113	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149	
Compose message[*2*5]	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243	
Compose SMS[*2*5]	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.286	
Sent address[*6]	Shows the Sent address list only on the Redial/Dialed calls screen.	
Received address	Shows the Received address list only on the Received calls screen.	
Select image[*2]	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call"→p.85 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".	
Delete	Deletes the calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted entry.
	Delete selected	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶**✉(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple entries.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the entries.

*1: Only available for the detail screen
*2: Unavailable for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*3: Only available for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*4: Only available when 2in1 is set to Dual mode
*5: Only available when the 2in1 is set to A mode or Dual mode and records for A mode is selected
*6: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode

NOTE

◆ Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with the mail address stored in a phonebook entry with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.
◆ Performing "Delete all" on the Redial or Dialed calls screen deletes all the entries logged in the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that performing "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for Redial record entries does not delete any entry of the Dialed calls record, or vice versa. Use the function menu on the Dialed calls record screen to delete the Dialed calls record, or the function menu on the Redial screen to delete the Redial record.
◆ Dialed calls/Received calls through packet or 64K data communication cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

Continued on next page

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
PHONE	Voice call	INT'L PHONE	International videophone call
INT'L PHONE	International call	PACKET	Packet communication call
PHONE	Videophone call	64k	64K data communication call
	PushTalk (one-to-one) call		PushTalk (group) call
B*	Call in B mode for 2in1 setting		

*: Only available when 2in1 is set to Dual mode.

● Using Received calls record <Received calls>

MENU24

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone numbers and the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during a videophone call.
- If you have changed the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls →p.96

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Received calls"▶Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the Received calls record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the Received calls record list

The "Received calls (list)" screen appears.



Received calls (list)

Function menu➡p.61

3 Select an entry to check in detail

The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, "Current entry/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.



Received calls (detail)

Function menu➡p.61

■ To check the earlier or later Received call record entries

Use ◉ to move to the previous (more recent) number or ◉ to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.

4 [ ] or ●

■ To make a videophone call

▶✉ (V.phone)

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶[ ][ ]

5 To end the call, press [ ]

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone numbers, delete the Received calls record entries or lock "Received calls" in "Original lock".
- When you have set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time (sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the call does not appear in the Received calls record. →p.179
- Pressing ⊙ on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- Press ⌐ and ⊙ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- If a caller uses "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" may be displayed.
- If a phone number shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are logged in the Received calls record. If the phone number has not been shown, the reason for hiding the number (p.178) is shown in the Received calls record. Even if the shown phone number is stored in the phonebook, while "Restrict dialing" is set, the name and phone number appear only if the phone number is specified in "Restrict dialing". Only the phone number appears for the phone number not specified in "Restrict dialing".
- If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record. →p.112
- When 2in1 is activated, up to 30 entries can be recorded for each phone number. When Dual mode is selected, up to 30 records each for Received calls (up to 60 records in total) are displayed.

■ Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls	REMOTE	Received remote monitoring calls
INT'L PHONE / INT'L MISS / INT'L MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls	INT'L PHONE / INT'L MISS / INT'L MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls	PACKET / MISS / MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
/ MISS / MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (one-to-one) calls	64k / MISS / MISS	64Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
/ MISS / MISS	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (group) calls	NO CONNECT	Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that have been received without an external unit connected
MSG / MSG	Voice record message/ videophone message recorded		Calls with Chaku-moji messages
B*	Incoming calls to B mode for 2in1 setting		

*: Only available when 2in1 is set to Dual mode.

<Chaku-moji>

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting	MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID 3D message display: ON

When making a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- The compatible models are 902iS series, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, SH902iSL, 702iS series (excluding N702iS, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series, 601i series (excluding L601i), D800iDS.
- The Chaku-moji function is incompatible with PushTalk calls.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Chaku-moji"▶Select any item

Create message	"Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently"→p.64	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.
3D message display	Sets whether to use 3D animations to show Chaku-moji messages.	

NOTE

- The "MSG display settings" setting affects the indicator display. However, setting "Called" in "Indicator display" to "OFF" does not show Chaku-moji messages on the indicator display.
- 3D animations are not used for the indicator display even if "3D message display setting" is set to "ON".

● Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.

- Five messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
- Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Chaku-moji"▶"Create message"

The "Create message" screen appears.

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit) or ●

■ **To edit a stored Chaku-moji message**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message



Create message

Function menu➡p.64

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE

- If ●(Set) is pressed without any changes on the screen for editing a pre-installed message, the pre-installed one will remain.
- You cannot delete pre-installed Chaku-moji messages. If a pre-installed message is edited and the edited message is deleted, the pre-installed one will be restored.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

Chaku-moji messages can be added to voice calls or videophone calls that are made by dialing or using "Phonebook" entries, "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record.

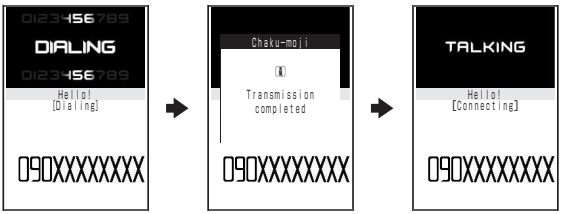
<Example: To add a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a call>

1 Phone number entry screen (p.51)▶(FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶Select any item

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2

When the other party's terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, "Transmission completed" appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message

▶(V.phone)

■ To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)

▶(FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶"Create message"▶Delete all the entered Chaku-moji messages and press

NOTE

- Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message has been sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten from the oldest one.
- If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, the sending result message "Transmission failed" appears and no charges apply to the sending.
  - The terminal does not support Chaku-moji.
  - "MSG display settings" that hides received Chaku-moji messages is set on the phone.
- If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The messages cannot be logged in the Received calls record on the callee's phone.)
  - Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
  - 0 seconds is set as the ring time for Record message.
  - The phone is out of service area or turned off.
- Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee's terminal. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
- If "Auto redial as voice" (p.85) is set to "ON" and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
- If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using "Select message", the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed on the "Create message" screen.
- Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent or received overseas.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The ringing screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.

- 3D animations are used to display Chaku-moji messages.
- Chaku-moji messages are shown on the indicator display when a FOMA terminal is folded.



Example: Voice call

NOTE

- 3D animations may be unavailable for some pictographs.
- Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of the caller's or callee's phone. In this case, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
- If you received a call whose ring time is shorter than the time set in "Set mute seconds" in "Ring time (sec.)", the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message is logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.
- If Chaku-moji is locked in Original lock, a Chaku-moji message is not displayed on the receiving screen even when a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives. In this case, the Chaku-moji message is logged in the Received calls record after the lock is released.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.62)▶Select an entry with "✎"

The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record is not sent.

〈186/184〉

Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.

- "PushTalk setting" is available for setting whether to show your caller ID when making PushTalk calls. →p.103

Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a call.	p.48
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.66
Notify Caller ID	Accesses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.67

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's caller ID

To show your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu. →p.67

■ To show your caller ID

Voice call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [✆]
Videophone call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [✉] (Vphone)

■ To hide your caller ID

Voice call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [✆]
Videophone call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [✉] (Vphone)

NOTE

◆ If you hear the message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again with "186" prefix.
◆ If you make a call with "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

Showing your phone number to the other party <Notify Caller ID>

Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "OFF" or "ON".

● This function is available on the phone number entry screen and the detail screens of phonebook, Received calls, Dialed calls and Redial.

<Example: To make a call on the phone number entry screen>

1 Enter the other party's phone number

2 (FUNC)▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"OFF" or "ON"

■ **To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting**
▶"Cancel prefix"
When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Activate/Deactivate" (p.48) setting is applied.

3 [Call]

<Pause dial> MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting p (pause) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

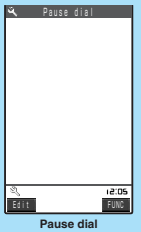
● You can store one dialing data entry that consists of up to 128 characters.
● Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and p (pause).
● You cannot enter p (pause) in succession or at the beginning of dialing data.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Pause dial"
The "Pause dial" screen appears.

■ **If there is dialing data already stored**
The stored dialing data appears.

2 (Edit)▶Enter the dialing data
Press [0] to [9], [#] or [*] to enter dialing data.

■ **To enter p (pause)**
▶[*] (1 second or longer)



Pause dial

Function menu➡p.67

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the dialing data**
Send pause dial	**▶Enter the destination phone number▶[Call] or (●)** Each time you press [Call] or (●), the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as Pause dial

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Pause dial"

2 ●▶Dial the destination phone number

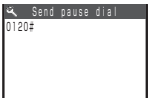
■ **To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using part of the number**
▶Dial a part of a phone number▶Press ◎ to search the phonebook

■ **To select a phonebook search mode to search for a phone number**
▶◎▶Select a search mode on the Search phonebook screen

■ **To search for a phone number from the Received calls/Redial record**
▶◎▶Search from the Received calls
▶◎▶Search from the Redial record

3 [ ] or ●

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and shows the dialing data up to the first p (pause) while the dialed phone is ringing. The p (pause) is not shown.



4 [ ] or ●

Each time you press [ ] or ●, the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ **To transmit all the dialing data at once**
▶◎ (1 second or longer)▶"Send at one time"
It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

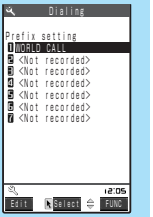
Default setting
WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can then add a preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number when making a call by dialing or using "Phonebook", "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. For example, it is useful to set the "186" or "184" prefix.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, ✱ and +.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Prefix setting"

The "Prefix setting" screen appears.



Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.69

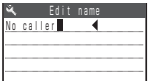
2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press ✉ (Edit)

■ **To edit a stored prefix**
▶Highlight an item to edit and press ✉ (Edit)

■ **To check a stored prefix**
▶Select an item to check

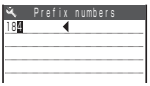
3 Enter a name

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.



4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

The number can contain up to 10 digits.



Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all prefixes.

<Sub-address setting>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting
ON

This function enables you to set "✗" contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following "✗" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communication devices or to select contents in "V-live".

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"**▶**"Dialing"**▶**"Sub-address setting"**▶**"ON"**

■ **To cancel the sub-address setting**
▶"OFF"

NOTE

◆ In the following cases, "✗" does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including "✗" is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
- "✗" is at the beginning of a phone number.
- "186/184" is followed by "✗" at the beginning of a phone number.
- "✗" follows the number entered in "Prefix numbers".
- "✗590#/✗591#/✗592#/✗593#" is included in a phone number.

<Reconnect signal> MENU77

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting
High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the extent that the call drops out, a FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

● The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"**▶**"Talk"**▶**"Reconnect signal"**▶**"No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"**

NOTE

◆ A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.
◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction> MENU76

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting
ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"**▶**"Talk"**▶**"Noise reduction"**▶**"ON"**

■ **Not to use the noise reduction**
▶"OFF"

<In-car hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as "In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01" (optional) or a car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device.
For information about how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

Continued on next page

NOTE

- To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to "Communication mode".→p.374
- The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice, videophone and PushTalk calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the "Public mode" settings.
- When Record message is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, "Setting when folded" is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, the call condition does not change regardless of "Setting when folded".

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

Receiving a voice call

1 When a call arrives, press [ ] or ●

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the "Ringing" screen appears.
Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call.
The indicator display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller's name.→p.30

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the screen. You may know the contents beforehand.→p.63

2 To end the call, press [ ]



Ringing



Ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.70

Function menu (voice/videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends the call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls.

NOTE

- Besides [ ] and ●, you can set up your FOMA terminal to enable you to answer calls by pressing any of [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [ ], [ ], [ ] or the assist key (Any key answer). However, pressing [ ] or the assist key when a FOMA terminal is folded puts a call on hold. A hold tone sounds when "Setting when folded" is set to "Tone on" and does not sound when it is set to "No tone" or "End the call". You can also set a FOMA terminal to stop only the ring tone when a key is pressed (Quick silent).
- Pressing [#] or [ ] (MEMO/CHECK) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates "Record message" to record the other party's message. (Pressing [#] also sets Manner mode.)→p.82
- When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller's phone number and name. The name of the other party is displayed under Keypad lock. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for hiding the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears.→p.112
- Up to 30 received calls can be logged in the "Received calls" record. If a caller shows the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. If a caller who shows the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.

◆ Enabling "Set in-call arrival" and setting "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer" allow a FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep ("bibip") when there is an incoming call while you are on call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
- If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail" service, you can forward the incoming call to the Voice Mail service center.
- If you have subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" service, you can forward the incoming call to the call forwarding number.

Furthermore, if you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting", set "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer" and then activate "Call Waiting", you can put the ongoing call on hold and answer the incoming call. For more information, see p.460.

◆ When "PushTalk arrival act" (p.104) is set to "Answer", you can receive calls while talking on a PushTalk call.
◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
◆ You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook. →p.180
◆ You can specify the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook. →p.179
◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which "Call rejection" is set in the phonebook. When setting "Call acceptation" for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number. →p.177
◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. →p.59

Receiving a videophone call

Use this procedure to receive an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call with your camera image, you can receive the call showing the caller a substitute image instead of your camera image.

1 When a videophone call arrives, press (V.phone) or

The "videophone in-call" screen (p.52) appears.
You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation" →p.59



Videophone ringing



Videophone ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.70

■ **If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives**
A Chaku-moji animation appears on the videophone ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand. →p.63

■ **To answer using a substitute image**
▶●
A substitute image appears on the caller's display.
After sending a substitute image, you can still change it to a camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ **If using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**
▶Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
You can answer using your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", a FOMA terminal automatically answers a call using a substitute image once the specified ring time has elapsed.
You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ **To switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call**
▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ **To send an image from the rear camera during a videophone call**
▶●
Each time you press ● during a videophone call, you can switch between the front camera and the rear camera (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To mute voice to be sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)**
▶ (1 second or longer)
"MUTE" appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.
To cancel mute, press again for 1 second or longer.

2 To end the call, press

NOTE

◆ Digital call charges still apply to a caller when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.
◆ Even if "Call Forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible (p.50) videophone. Check the forwarding destination device before setting up call forwarding.
◆ If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the caller sees the movie announcement showing that the call has been rejected and then the call ends.
◆ Pressing # or (MEMO/CHECK) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates "Record message" to record the other party's message. (Pressing # also sets Manner mode.) →p.82
◆ Incoming call operations for a videophone call during i-mode communication follows the settings of "V-phone while packet". →p.88

Continued on next page

◆ You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. These mails are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after the videophone call ends.
◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
◆ When you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the ongoing call to answer the new call.
◆ If the "Recharge battery" low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "カメラオフ Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
◆ Depending on the settings on the other party's phone, you may receive a substitute image instead of a camera image.

Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone (the Other Party)

The mode of a call you have received can be changed by the caller (the other party).

● You can only change the call mode when you are a caller. When you have received a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
● To enable a caller to change the call mode, "Ntfy switch-mode" must be set to "Indication ON" on the caller's phone beforehand. →p.88

● Changing a call from voice to videophone (the other party)

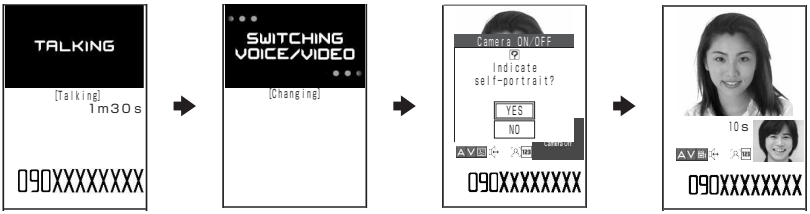
1 In-call screen (p.51)▶The other party changes the call mode▶"YES"

While the call mode is being changed from voice to videophone, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.
The call mode is changed to videophone and a camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send a substitute image to the caller

▶"NO"

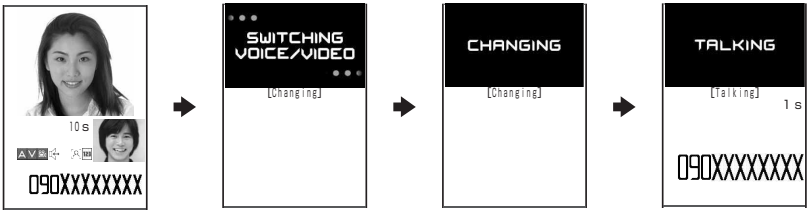
The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



● Changing a call from videophone to voice (the other party)

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.52)▶The other party changes the call mode

While the call mode is being changed from videophone to voice, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

◆ When the call mode is changed from voice to videophone, the hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the "Hands-free switch" setting, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change. →p.87
◆ Changing the call mode from videophone to voice deactivates the hands-free operation.

<Answer setting> MENU58

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

Default setting: Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

- Pressing ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) or # while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the caller's message.p.82

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Answer setting"▶Select any item

Any key answer	Press one of the following keys to answer a call: Voice call: ☎, ●, 0 to 9, ✱, CLR, ✉, ▲ or assist key Videophone call: ☎, ● (Subst.), ✉ (V.phone) PushTalk call: [PTT], ☎, ●, 0 to 9, ✱, CLR, ✉, ▲ or assist key
Quick silent	Press one of the following keys or open a FOMA terminal to stop a ring tone or vibrator. When you stop a ring tone or vibrator in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. Voice call*,PushTalk*: 0 to 9, ✱, CLR, ✉, ▲, assist key or ✉ Videophone call*: 0 to 9, ✱, CLR, ✉, ▲ or assist key *: To answer a call, press ☎, ●, ✉ (V.phone) (only for videophone) or [PTT] (only for PushTalk). When answering a videophone call, press ☎ or ✉ (V.phone) to send a camera image or ● to send a substitute image.
OFF	Press one of the following keys to answer a call: Voice call: ☎ or ● Videophone call*: ☎, ● or ✉ (V.phone) PushTalk call: [PTT], ☎ or ● *: Press ● to answer with a substitute image.

NOTE

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, it works as "Any key answer" while in "Manner mode".
- Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is set, pressing 5 (the display light on/off) or 8 (the Privacy angle on/off) for 1 second or longer does not activate "Any key answer" or "Quick silent".
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can answer voice calls, videophone calls (with a camera image) or PushTalk calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- When "Any key answer" is set and a FOMA terminal is folded, press ▲ or the assist key to put a voice call on hold. If you do so, a hold tone sounds when "Setting when folded" is set to "Tone on" and does not sound when it is set to "No tone" or "End the call".
- When "Ext. keys guard" is set to "ON" and a FOMA terminal is folded, pressing ▲ or the assist key does not lead "Any key answer" or "Quick silent".

<Setting when folded> MENU18

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting: End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Setting when folded"▶Select any item

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and a "substitute image" is sent to the caller. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
Tone on	Puts a call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If a FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Set hold tone". While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Set hold tone" and sees a hold image.→p.76,85 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and played through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎.	

*: If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if "Speaker ON" is set.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and folding a FOMA terminal does not change call condition. However, during a videophone call using a camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to a substitute.
- Even if "Tone on" is set, folding a FOMA terminal leads to the "No tone" operation while "Call Waiting" is activated.
- This setting is disabled for PushTalk calls. The "Setting when folded" under "PushTalk setting" will apply. →p.103

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

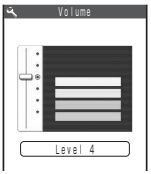
Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between "Level 1" (quietest) and "Level 6" (loudest) during a call.

● If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting will be retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call▶Press ▲ or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the volume



You can also adjust the volume by pressing ⊙ or ⊙ for 1 second or longer. To adjust the volume in succession, press ▲ or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.
If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.

■ **To switch to hands-free**

▶✉ (ON)

Hands-free →p.59

NOTE

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone, PushTalk or hands-free call.
- Pressing ⊙ or ⊙ also allows you to adjust the volume during a videophone call. However, you cannot adjust the volume in succession even if pressing ▲ or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

1 On the standby screen▶⊙ or ⊙ (1 second or longer)▶Press ⊙ or ⊙ to adjust the volume

Press ⊙ or ⊙ for 1 second or longer to adjust the volume in succession.
If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

<Ring volume>

MENU50

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of a ring tone given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF. There are six volume settings for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring volume"▶Select any item

Phone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Adjusts the ring tone volume for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.

2 ● or ○▶●

■ **To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)**

▶In "Level 6", press ●▶●

When you receive a call with "Step" set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at "Level 1" and increasing to "Level 6".

■ **To set a silent ring tone**

▶In "Level 1", press ○▶●

When the silent ring tone is set, a FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.
See icons on the standby screen to check for which the "Silent" ring tone is set.

: Appears when "Silent" is set for one or more of "Phone", "Videophone" and "PushTalk" calls.

: Appears when "Silent" is set for one or more of "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF".

: Appears when both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

◆ The ring volume set in "Phone" in this function is also applied to "Select ring tone" for voice calls and the alarm tones for "Schedule" and "To Do list".

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

1 When a call arrives▶

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.
The caller hears the message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.
You can set the message played while a call is held in "Set hold tone".



■ **To hang up while a call is on hold**

▶

■ **If a caller hangs up while on hold**

The call ends.

2 Press or ● to resume the call or

When "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer, you can also answer the call by pressing 0 to 9, *, CLR, ○, ✉, ▲ or the assist key. Furthermore, pressing ▼ (MEMO/CHECK), # or ● also enables you to answer the call.

■ **To answer a call while a videophone call is on hold**

Press ✉ (Vphone) or to answer a videophone call using a camera image, or ● to answer the call using a substitute image.

NOTE

◆ Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
◆ If "Phone" or "Videophone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or a FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol." is not "Silent".
◆ If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, selecting "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" from the function menu when a call arrives either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.
◆ If you fold a FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the indicator display shows the call is held.

<Holding>

Putting Ongoing Calls on Hold

1 During a call▶CLR

The other party hears the on-hold tone. If you put a videophone call on hold, the hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the other party's videophone screen.



■ **To end the held call**

▶

■ **If the held party hangs up**

The call ends.

2 Press CLR, or ● to resume the call

■ **To answer a call while a videophone call is on hold**

Press ✉ (Vphone) or to answer a videophone call using a camera image, or ● to answer using a substitute image. Press CLR to answer the call in the condition before holding.

NOTE

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use "Set hold tone" to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- A hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the hold tone does not sound when "Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected "Original" in "Manner mode set" in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".)

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Set hold tone"▶Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when an incoming call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
	Voice announce 2*	
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	"Mary Had A Little Lamb" is played.
	Melody 2	"Symphony No.25 in G minor" is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
	Voice announce 2*	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- Pressing ✉ (Play) on the message selection screen allows you to check the selected message.
- Even if you set "English" in "Select language", the messages of "Tone 1" and "Tone 2" are given in Japanese.

<Public mode (Driving mode)>

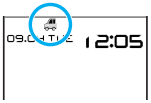
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers the message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or canceled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or cancelled when " " appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While Caller ID Request service is set to "Activate", receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)

Public mode is set and " " appears.
When a call arrives, the message (in Japanese) saying "I can't answer the call because I'm driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later." is sent to the caller.



■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

While Public mode is set, press for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
Public mode is canceled and " " disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if "Record message" is set to "ON", Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- ◆ When Manner mode is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- ◆ If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- ◆ The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tone for voice/videophone/PushTalk calls
  - Ring tone for MessageR/F
  - Alarm tone for Alarm
  - To Do list alarm tone
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - Sound of i-αppli programs
  - Search request alarm tone for GPS function
  - Mail ring tone
  - Chat mail ring tone
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
  - Charge sound
  - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone

● If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when a voice, videophone or PushTalk call arrives. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- A videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and "Connection failed" appears on the screen of the caller who made the PushTalk call. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the message showing you are driving appears on the members' phones.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when " " appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for " ". To PushTalk call members, a "Disconnected" response will be made.
- ◆ When a mail arrives, the "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

When Public mode is set while network services are activated, voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement.*1	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.*2 • Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement.*3
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.
*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.
*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the terminal turned off, the caller hears the announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call ends.

1 On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 1 ▶ ☎

Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).
If Public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller hears an announcement that "I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on.".

■ **To cancel Public mode (power off)**

▶On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 0 ▶ ☎

Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ **To check the Public mode (power off) setting**

▶On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 9 ▶ ☎

You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting remains unchanged until you dial "✱25250" to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.
The caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and "Connection failed" appears on the screen of the caller who made the PushTalk call. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the message showing you are absent appears on the members' phones.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If Public mode (power off) is set while network services are activated, voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.*1	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.*2 • Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.*3
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.
*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.
*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Info notice setting> MENU65

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting: ON

Pressing the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, record messages or voice mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

● This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the "Missed calls", "New mail", "Chat mail", "Record message" or "Voice Mail" desktop icon appears. →p.152

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Info notice setting"▶Select "ON" or "OFF"

ON	Uses "Bibip, bibip" electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

NOTE

◆ If the reading of caller or sender's name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the FOMA terminal does not read out the name even if "ON" is set under "ボイス" (voice).

Checking for missed calls, new mails or new chat mails

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails or new chat mails		When you have no missed call, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and 1-second vibration*1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail" in "Illumination". When you have a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color*2	"Bibibip" tone and 0.2-second vibration*1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in "Color 12".

*1: A FOMA terminal vibrates when "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF".
*2: If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in "Illumination", the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mails and "Color 3" for new chat mails.

NOTE

- When External keys guard is set to "ON", you cannot check missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded even by pressing the assist key.
- To activate the assist key to have a FOMA terminal read out mails, set "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting) in Japanese mode. When "電子音" (electronic tone) or "ボイス" (voice) is set, press the assist key again during or after the notification of new mails or chat mails to have the terminal read out the mails. When "OFF" is set, pressing the assist key once enables the terminal to read out mails. The voice notification "This mail is from ***" is given in Japanese before reading out mail even when "OFF" is set in "ボイス" (voice) under "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting).
Reading out mail messages→p.419
- This function is unavailable to check missed calls or mails while music is played with the music player/music channel.
- The "電子音" (electronic tone) or "ボイス" (voice) volume is determined in the "Phone" under "Ring volume". When "Silent" or "Step" is set, "Level 2" is applied.
- In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected "Original" in "Manner mode set" in which "Phone vol." is not set to "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode Center.
- Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

- When "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting) is set to "ボイス" (voice) and (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed with a FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

<Record message> MENU55

Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting | **Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ring time: 13 seconds**

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image of the other party's phone is also recorded.

- You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	• Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages • Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages	• Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages • Videophone call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	• Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. • Setting "Record message" to "ON"	• Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. • Activating the Voice Mail service (p.458)

Setting Record message

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Record message"▶Select any item

ON	Selects the type of answer message.	
	Japanese 1	"I can't answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep." is played in Japanese.
	Japanese 2	"Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep." is played in Japanese.
	English	"I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you." is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
OFF	Cancels the "Record message" setting.	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and "[icon]" and "[icon]" appear on the standby screen.

■ **To set the displayed time**

▶Without entering a time, press ●

NOTE

- If the numbers of recorded voice messages and videophone messages have already reached the maximum respectively, Record message cannot be set to "ON".
- Pressing ✉ (Play) on the answer message selection screen allows you to check the selected answer message.
- If "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in "Voice announce" setting, "Japanese 1" is set for the answer message.
- To give priority to "Record message" when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- If the mute time set in "Ring time (sec.)" is longer than the ring time set for Record message, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have the ring tone sound before Record message starts, set a longer ring time for Record message than the mute time.
- You can use "Discern connect" to set an answer message for each phone number or "Discern group" for each group.→p.119

If a call arrives when "Record message" is set to "ON"

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.

- When a voice call arrives, the answer message is given and recording starts.
- When a videophone call arrives, the "Preparing" image is sent, the answer message is given, "Recording" image is sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

- The recording screen appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



Example: Voice Call

■ **To answer a voice call during recording**

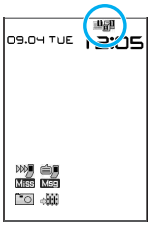
▶[icon] or ●

■ **To answer a videophone call during recording**

▶Press [icon] or ✉ ([V.phone]) to answer with a camera image or ● to answer with a substitute image

Continued on next page

■ When message recording ends



- The original screen reappears and the "Missed calls" and "Record message" desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details.→p.152
- When one voice message is recorded, "" changes to "". "" appears for two messages, "" for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one videophone message is recorded, "" changes to "". "" appears for two video messages.

NOTE

- Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, a FOMA terminal cannot use Record message to record the next message.
- If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller's voice during recording.
- You cannot receive other calls while a message is being recorded.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming voice or videophone call simply by pressing one key.

1 When a call arrives▶▼ (MEMO/CHECK)

The Record message recording starts.
Pressing # instead of ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) sets Manner mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

- You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON" using this function.
- This function is enabled even when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Record message" is set to "OFF".
- If a voice or videophone call arrives when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message) recorded, Record message is not activated and a FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing # allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in "Manner mode set".)

Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase msg." screen if a voice record message or voice memo is recorded.

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Play/Erase msg."

The "Play/Erase msg." screen appears.



Play/Erase msg.

Function menu➡p.83

2 Select an item to play

A FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

▶▼ (MEMO/CHECK)
Each time you press ▼ (MEMO/CHECK), the next most recent message is played.

■ To stop playback

▶● or CLR

■ **To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed during playback**

▶[ ], [ ] or [ ]

Pressing [ ] makes a voice call, [ ] makes a videophone call or [ ] makes a PushTalk call. Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

■ **To erase a message being played**

▶[ ] (FUNC)▶"Erase"▶"YES"

NOTE

- When a record message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- Pressing [ ] (MEMO/CHECK) on the standby screen also plays memos. Voice memos are played last.
- When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, "★" does not appear on the message recorded with the unused phone number. When Dual mode is set, "★" appears on the message recorded with both phone numbers.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the record messages.
Delete all	Erases all the record messages and voice memos.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase VP msg." screen if a videophone message is recorded.

1 [MENU]▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Play/Erase VP msg."

The "Play/Erase VP msg." screen appears.



Play/Erase VP msg.

Function menu➡p.84

2 Select an item to play

The "VP msg. playback" screen appears.



■ **To play the previous or next message**

▶[ ] or [ ]

Each time you press [ ] or [ ], the previous or next message is played.

■ **To stop playback**

▶[ ]

■ **To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed during playback**

▶[ ], [ ] or [ ]

Pressing [ ] makes a voice call, [ ] makes a videophone call or [ ] makes a PushTalk call. Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

■ **To erase a message being played**

▶[ ] (FUNC)▶"Erase"▶"YES"

Continued on next page

■ **To turn on/off the speaker during playback**

▶(FUNC)▶"Speaker ON" or "Speaker OFF"

NOTE

- When a videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- Press (▲) or (▼) (MEMO/CHECK)) to adjust the volume during playback.
- When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, "★" does not appear on the message recorded with the phone number which is not used. If "Dual mode" is set, "★" appear on the messages recorded with both of the phone numbers.

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

■ **Important**

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Using Chara-den

This function enables you to send a cartoon character instead of your camera image during a videophone call.

- You can pre-check the actions available for Chara-den or shoot Chara-den as a image or video to enjoy it. →p.358
- To use Chara-den, set the following functions first. Specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or "Discern connect" also allows you to use Chara-den.
  - Setting "Chara-den" in "Substitute image" in "Select image" →p.85

<Example: If you receive a videophone call from a caller not stored in the phonebook>

1 When a videophone call arrives, press ●

2 Control your character by pressing dial keys

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ **To change the action mode**

You can switch between "Whole" and "Parts" using "Chara-den set." from the function menu. →p.53

"Whole" action mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Press 1 to 9 or # 1 to # 9 to control Chara-den.

"Parts" action mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Press 1 1 to 9 9 to control Chara-den.



Chara-den

■ **To check an action**

Pressing ✳ shows the action list.

Use (▲▼) to select an action to run.



Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Videophone"

The "Videophone settings" screen appears.



Videophone settings

2 Select any item

Visual preference	Sets the image quality for videophone call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call"→p.85	
Auto redial as voice	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call cannot be connected.	
	ON	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	OFF (default)	The message notifying that the videophone call could not be connected appears and the standby screen reappears.
Remote monitoring	"Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal"→p.90	
Display setting	"Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call"→p.87	
Ntfy switch-mode	"Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call"→p.88	
Hands-free switch	"Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls"→p.87	
V-phone while packet	"Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode"→p.88	

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (Dimo) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed

Use this procedure to select an image to send in place of a camera image.

- This function allows you to set a JPEG image of 854 dots wide x 854 dots high or smaller or GIF image of 854 dots wide x 480 dots high or smaller, whose file size is 100K bytes or smaller.
- The setting of this function is still retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"Select image"▶Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send when a call is on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets an image to send while recording a videophone message.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while preparing a videophone message.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while recording a voice memo.

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and message. ■**To change the setting** ▶(i) **(FUNC)▶"Change setting"▶Select a folder▶Select an image**

Continued on next page

Chara-den	This option appears only when "Substitute image" is selected. Sends the Chara-den character set in "Substitute image". "Chara-den list function menu"→p.359 Priority sequence for Chara-den setting→p.109 ■**To change the setting** ▶(i) **(FUNC)▶"Change setting"▶Select an image**

■ Messages to be sent

The messages to be sent are as follows:

For answer hold : "応答保留中 On Hold"
For holding : "保留 Holding"
For sending the substitute image : "カメラオフ Camera Off"
For recording videophone message : "伝言メモ録画中 Recording"
For preparing videophone message : "伝言メモ準備中 Preparing"
For recording voice memo : "音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only"

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- You can change this setting using the function menu during a videophone call. However, the setting reverts to the original value when the videophone call ends.
- If signal status deteriorates during a videophone call, an image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the "Visual preference" setting.

<Select image>

- Images with file restrictions cannot be set for "Original".→p.343
- Some GIF images may not be set in "Original".
- You can switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- To check an image, select an item you want to check and press (✉) (Play).
- Changing the setting from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den" does not delete the stored image.
- The set image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party's terminal. However, the answer message for Recorded message is only sent to the other party's terminal.
- You cannot delete the "Original" setting. Setting "Set as display" (p.344) in My picture also allows you to change the "Original" setting. If the original image of the pasted is deleted, the "Pre-installed" image is displayed on (sent to) the other party's terminal.
- When the Chara-den character set as a substitute image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitute image cannot be displayed, the "Dimo" stored at the time of purchase is sent. If you have already deleted "Dimo", a "Pre-installed" image is sent as a substitute image.

<Auto redial as voice>

- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the "Redial" or "Dialed calls" record.
- Even if "Auto redial as voice" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.52)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Visual check"

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.
"" appears during visual check.
A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 (i) (FUNC)▶"Visual check off"

Visual check ends. The screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging an image to send

During a videophone call, you can enlarge your camera image that is sent to the other party.

- You can enlarge an image from the rear camera up to 9 times (in 16 steps), and an image from the front camera up to twice (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge an image while sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call▶○▶Zoom in or out



<Hands-free switch>

Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting
ON

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically switch to the hands-free mode when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"Hands-free switch"▶"ON" or "OFF"

NOTE

◆ Even if Hands-free switch is set to "ON", you can cancel the hands-free operation by pressing ✉ (Off) during a call.
◆ Even if Hands-free switch is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal does not automatically switch to the hands-free mode in the following situations:
- Manner mode is set.
- A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected. (However, the microphone works according to the "Select microphone" setting.)
- The Answer hold or Record message function is activated when a call arrives.

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting an image to display on the main screen and how to display a camera image <Display setting>

Default setting	Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"Display setting"▶Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays an image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	My side	Displays an image from your own camera on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displays in mirror image.
	OFF	Displays in normal image.

Decorating the videophone screen <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps.

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.52)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Decoration"▶Select any item

Frame	▶**Select a frame** Places a frame around the videophone screen.
Stamp	▶**Select a stamp**▶**Use ✣ to decide the location**▶● Places a stamp on the videophone screen.

■ To remove a frame or stamp

"Off decoration" in the "Videophone in-call function menu"→p.53

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆ Pressing (Play) on each selection screen allows you to check the selected frame, stamp or face stamp.
◆ When "FrontCamera Rev." (p.54) is set to "OFF", an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.52)▶ (FUNC)▶"Petit message"▶Enter a message

A message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.

■ **To cancel message entry**

▶Erase the entire message▶CLR

2

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

■ **To erase a message manually**

▶CLR (1 second or longer)

You can also erase a message by selecting "Off decoration" from the function menu.

NOTE

◆ When "FrontCamera Rev." (p.54) is set to "OFF", an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read characters correctly.

<Ntfy switch-mode>

Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting: Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.

● When you receive a call with this function set to "Indication ON", your FOMA terminal notifies the other party that your terminal supports the change function so that the other party can change the call mode.
● You cannot set this function during a call or while " " appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"Ntfy switch-mode"▶Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Check Indication	Shows the status of the "Ntfy switch-mode" setting.

<V-phone while packet>

Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode

Default setting: V-phone priority

● The multi access function is unavailable for videophone so that incoming videophone calls are handled according to the "V-phone while packet" setting during i-mode communication or mail transmission. →p.501

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"V-phone while packet"▶Select any item

V-phone priority	Moves to the videophone ringing screen. Answering the videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
Packet downld priority	Rejects incoming videophone calls.
V-phone answerphone	Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail service center if you have subscribed to the service. The call is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
Call forwarding	Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding number set for the Call Forwarding service if you have subscribed to the service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".

NOTE

- Even if having set "V-phone priority", you cannot answer an incoming videophone call when using the multi access function such as i-mode communication during a voice call.
- If you have set "Packet downld priority", "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding", an incoming videophone call is logged as "Missed calls" in the "Received calls" record.
- Even if you have set "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding", the "Packet downld priority" is performed when you have not subscribed to the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service or the forwarding number is not set.
- Even if you have set "V-phone priority" or "Packet downld priority", the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is enabled when the ring time for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set to 0 (zero) seconds.

Receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication

Setting "V-phone while packet" to "V-phone priority" beforehand allows you to receive a videophone call during i-mode communication or mail transmission.

1 When a videophone call arrives during i-mode communication, press (V.phone) or

■ To answer using a substitute image

▶●

i-mode communication is disconnected and the Connected videophone screen appears.

2 To end the call, press

■ To continue i-mode communication

Even when "V-phone while packet" is set to "V-phone priority", you can continue i-mode communication by selecting "Call Rejection", "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail" from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.

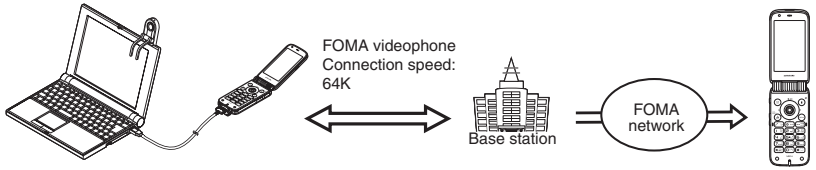
Function menu (videophone ringing screen)→p.70

Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls using an external device such as a PC by connecting it to your FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
To enable this function, install a videophone application in a PC or other exclusive device and prepare equipment such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera (marketed) that will be connected to the PC.

- Set USB mode setting to "Communication mode". No setting is required for connecting to an external device.
- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions provided with an external device.
- "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005" (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. This application can be downloaded on the following site:
  (for details about use in PC, check the support page on the website.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Only in Japanese)



NOTE

- You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- If you have subscribed to the Call Waiting service and a videophone call arrives from an external device during a voice call, end the voice call to answer the videophone call. For a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call that arrives from an external device during a videophone call, a FOMA terminal acts in the same way.

<Remote monitoring>

Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal

Default setting	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 seconds Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with the 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either of a dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be carried out when the phone number of the monitoring phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote monitoring and Remote monitoring is set to "ON".

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and delay until the remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving remote monitoring.

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.85)▶"Remote monitoring"▶Enter your security code▶"Other ID"

The "Other ID" screen appears.



Other ID

Function menu➡p.90

2 Select "<Not recorded>"

■ **To change a recorded ID**

▶Select an ID to change

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone▶●▶CLR

The remote monitoring screen reappears.

4 "Ringing time"▶Enter a ring time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ring time.

■ **To set the displayed time**

▶Without entering a time, press ●

5 "Set"▶"ON"

Remote monitoring is set and "📞" appears on the standby screen.

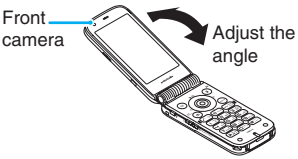


■ **To turn Remote monitoring off**

▶"OFF"

6 Position a FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, an image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.
Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.
If the FOMA terminal is left folded, voice and a substitute image overlapped with "カメラオフ Camera off" are sent instead of camera images.



NOTE

- The ring time set for Remote monitoring cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ring time set for "Call Forwarding" on the receiving phone is shorter than the one set for Remote monitoring, "Call Forwarding" takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set a shorter ring time than the "Call Forwarding" setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the phone number of the other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a number stored in the phonebook.
	Dialed calls	Stores a number stored in the Dialed calls record.
	Received calls	Stores a number stored in the Received calls record.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID.	
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. Deleting all IDs sets "Set" to "OFF".	

Starting/Ending remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, always make a videophone call with the phone number (caller ID) shown from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive remote monitoring calls, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone

After the ring time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins. Video images from the receiving phone are displayed on the dialing phone and sound is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone.



Dialing phone

■ To answer a videophone call (with a camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

▶Press (✉) (Vphone) or (📞) before the ring time elapses

Press (●) to answer with a substitute image.

2 To end remote monitoring, press (📵)

The call duration appears and remote monitoring ends.

Pressing (📵) on the receiving phone also ends remote monitoring.

NOTE

- ◆ You can receive a remote monitoring call even when "Dial lock" or "Omakase Lock" is set.
- ◆ A call with the caller ID hidden is received as a normal videophone call instead of a remote monitoring call.
- ◆ Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
  - • Public mode (Driving mode) • Manner mode • Call rejection/acceptation* • Reject unknown*
  - *: When "Call acceptation" is set for a phone number other than the Other ID number, "Call rejection" is set for the Other ID phone number or the Other ID number is not stored in the phonebook and "Reject unknown" is set
- ◆ Even if Remote monitoring and Record message or Automatic answer are set at the same time and the ring time set for Record message or Automatic answer is shorter than the one set for Remote monitoring, remote monitoring starts when a call arrives from the phone number set for remote monitoring.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, sound is played through the earphone and speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- ◆ The ring tone specifically set for remote monitoring is used and it cannot be changed.
- ◆ The ring tone sounds at the volume set in "Videophone" in "Ring volume". However, if the volume is set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the ring tone for remote monitoring sounds at "Level 2".
- ◆ When a remote monitoring call arrives, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Gradation" color and "Standard" pattern, regardless of the "Illumination" setting.
- ◆ You cannot set Answer hold when a remote monitoring call arrives. Press (📵) to end the call.
- ◆ A remote monitoring call is logged in the "Received calls" record as a "remote monitoring call". If remote monitoring was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed videophone call.
- ◆ The receiving phone cannot receive voice or videophone calls during remote monitoring. Voice or videophone calls made to the receiving phone during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When a FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the terminal operates as specified in "Setting when folded". However, if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Setting when folded" setting is ignored and a substitute image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- ◆ The cameras cannot be switched on the receiving phone during remote monitoring.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

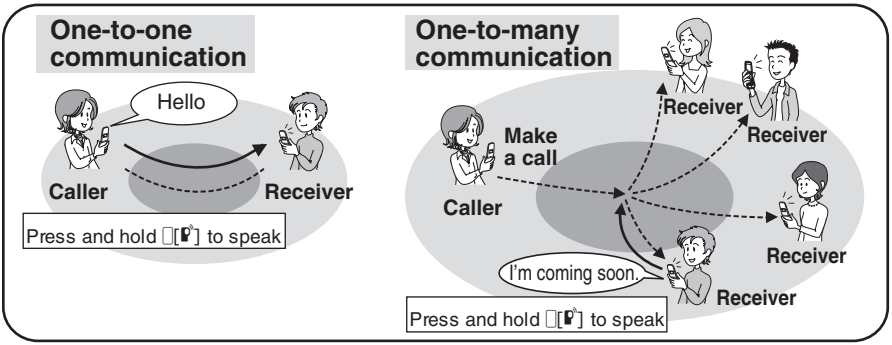
Push Talk

What is PushTalk? 94
Making a PushTalk Call ..... Make PushTalk 95
Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call..... 96
Receiving a PushTalk Call ..... Receive PushTalk 97
Ending a PushTalk Call..... End PushTalk 98
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook.... Add to PushTalk 99
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call..... 101
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook... Delete PushTalk 102
Making the PushTalk Settings..... PushTalk setting 103

What is PushTalk?

Press the PushTalk key ([]) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing [].The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press []. The speaker can keep speaking while pressing and holding [], and other members only listen while he/she is speaking.
The screen displays the status of the members, e.g. who is speaking now.
This feature is useful when you want to contact group members or relay a short message.
The compatible models:902i series, 902iS series, 903i series, 904i series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 702i series (except SH702iD, N702iD, F702iD, D702i, SA702i, SO702i), 702iS series (except N702iS, D702iF, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ, N703iμ)
You can add a member during a Push Talk call or call a disconnected member again for the following models*.

*: 904i series, 903i series, 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ, N703iμ)

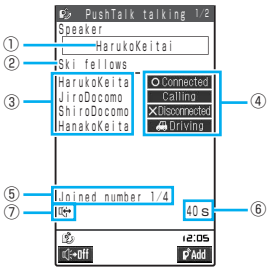


PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus allows a call among up to 20 people including yourself, using the pre-registered network phonebook. This service makes the PushTalk more useful, e.g. you can check the status of members. The PushTalkPlus requires a separate subscription.

● For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



① Current speaker's name*1
("Myself" appears when you are speaking, or "?" when the speaker is unknown.)
② Group name specified at the time of dialing
(It is left blank if a group is not specified.)
③ Participants' names (excluding yourself)*1
④ Status of members*2
Calling: Calling the party.
Connected: The party is participating.
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party's terminal is out of range or turned off.
Driving: The party's terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode).
⑤ Number of participants (excluding yourself)
⑥ Time elapsed after starting the PushTalk call
⑦ Hands-free ON

*1: If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.103) or "Set Caller ID" (p.102) to "ON", the name stored in the phonebook appears. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" or "Set Caller ID" to "OFF", "User unset" appears on the receivers.
*2: "Calling", "Driving" and "Disconnected" appear only if three or more people are talking.

NOTE

◆ If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.103) or "Set Caller ID" (p.102) to "ON" and then makes a PushTalk call, the participants' phone numbers are notified to all the other participants (including participants added during a PushTalk call). Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when notifying them.

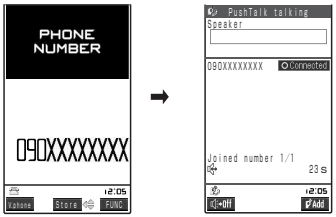
<Make PushTalk>

Making a PushTalk Call

● Dialing makes a one-to-one call between you and the other party. To make a group call, use the PushTalk phonebook and dial. →p.101

1 Enter the other party's phone number▶[PTT]

When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears, then his/her voice comes out of the speaker.



PushTalk talking

■ **To cancel the hands-free operation**

▶[Off]

Hands-free →p.59

2 To end the call, press [End]

Ending a PushTalk call →p.98

NOTE

◆ You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
◆ Making a PushTalk call during i-mode communication disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PushTalk call while running an i-αppli causes the i-αppli to be exited.
◆ When a voice call is received during a PushTalk call, the operation follows the "PushTalk arrival act" settings. →p.104
◆ When receiving a videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication during a PushTalk call, the missed record will be logged and the current PushTalk call will continue.
◆ The PushTalk call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 119, 118).
◆ When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the outgoing number selection screen is displayed. Select the number for Number A.
◆ When 2in1 is set to B mode, PushTalk is not available.

● Speaking during a PushTalk call

1 During a PushTalk call▶Keep holding [PTT]

The start tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now.
An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.

2 Keep holding [PTT] to speak

Keep holding [PTT] after you start holding [PTT] in Step 1 until you finish speaking.
Releasing [PTT] ends your speech, which means that another participant can speak now.

NOTE

◆ The other participants hear your voice only while you press and hold [PTT] to have the right to speak. Releasing [PTT] releases the right to speak, and the release tone sounds.
◆ The speaker's name appears on the screen during the speech.
◆ The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. When the time is about to elapse, a confirmation tone sounds and then the right expires.
◆ If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PushTalk call ends.
◆ You can adjust the volume during a PushTalk call. →p.74
◆ Even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, press and hold [PTT] to speak.
◆ When a participant presses [PTT] and a confirmation tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk charge (each time he/she has the right to speak).

● Joining a PushTalk call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PushTalk call in progress later on if you left the call or if you make a "Disconnected" response while receiving the PushTalk call:

Continued on next page

<Example: Joining a PushTalk call in progress from "Redial">

1 "Redial screen" (p.60)▶Use ◎ to select a PushTalk call, then press [P]

The "PushTalk talking" screen (p.94) appears.

NOTE

- If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, follow the step above to join (rejoin) the call in progress.
- You cannot join a call in progress if it is one-to-one call or if it is already finished. In this case, you make a PushTalk call (p.95) to parties selected in the step above.

Other ways to make a call

The followings are also available for making a PushTalk call:

Use the PushTalk phonebook	If members are registered to the PushTalk phonebook, you can select and dial up to four members.→p.101
Select a group	Selecting a group stored in the PushTalk phonebook allows you to make a call to all the members of the group.→p.101
Use the phonebook*	Select a phone number stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or of the FOMA card (UIM). **▶"Phonebook list screen" (p.112)/"Phonebook detail screen" (p.112)▶Select a phone number then press [P]**
Use Redial/Dialed calls/ Received calls	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls"→p.96
Use the Phone To function*	"Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions"→p.226

*: Only one-to-one call can be made to the other party.

Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls

- The PushTalk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are logged separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is saved as one record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be launched from each record:

Item	One-to-one call record (, MISS, etc.)	Group call record (, MISS, etc.)
Make a one-to-one PushTalk call	○	○*3
Make a group PushTalk call*1*2	×	○
Make a voice call/videophone call	○	×
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	○	○

*1: You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.
*2: Even when you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can use the Received calls to join the call if other members keep talking.→p.95
*3: Selecting "Select PushTalk" from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.

Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call

The caller can call other members during a PushTalk call to join the conversation when he/she forgot to select the members, wants to call the members to stimulate the conversation, etc.

- Participants other than the caller cannot add a member during a PushTalk call.

1 During a PushTalk call▶◎(P Add)▶Select any item

Phonebook	**▶"Phonebook list screen" (p.112)/"Phonebook detail screen" (p.112)▶Select a phone number** Selects a phone number from the phonebook of the FOMA terminal or of the FOMA card (UIM).

PushTalk phonebook	**To select a member from the PushTalk phonebook** **▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)** **■To select a member from a group on the PushTalk phonebook** **▶Display a group list▶Use ◎ to select a group▶Use ◎ to select a check box (□)**
Redial	**▶Display a record list▶Select a record**
Received calls	**■To select a member from the group PushTalk record** **▶Display a record list▶Select the group PushTalk record▶● (Select) ▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉ (Finish)**
Direct input	**▶Enter a phone number**

2 ✉(Dial)

A PushTalk call is made to the selected members.
When you make a PushTalk call, their names appear on the "PushTalk talking" screen.



NOTE

- When other members are added, whether to show the phone numbers to the other members (including added members) depends on the settings. Whether to show or hide the Caller ID of only the added members cannot be set.
- Up to 3 members can be added. Up to 5 participants including the caller can join the PushTalk call simultaneously. Members can be added repeatedly until the number of participants reaches 5.
- When 5 participants join the PushTalk call, no more members can be added. Even if one of the participants disconnects the call, new member cannot be added.
- The added members are not recorded to the caller's Redial/Dialed calls record and the other participants' Received calls record.
- A user using a phone with no function of adding members can also be added. However, the added members do not appear on the screen of a phone with no function of adding members and a tone does not sound when the user joins or leaves a PushTalk call. The caller who uses a phone with no function of adding members cannot add a member.
- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode and a member is added from "Enter client", the outgoing number selection screen is displayed. Select Number A.

<Receive PushTalk>

Receiving a PushTalk Call

Answer and join an incoming PushTalk call.

- Receiving a PushTalk call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call).

1 A PushTalk call incoming▶□[]



and ● are available to answer the call.
Answering the call sounds the participation tone.
Speaking during a PushTalk call→p.95

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

▶Press while receiving a call

Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking.→p.95

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

▶✉ [Off]

Hands-free→p.59

2 To end the call, press

Ending a PushTalk call→p.98

Continued on next page

NOTE

- While "Any key answer" is set, the following keys are also available to answer the call: [ ], [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [✉], [●], [ ] and Assist key
- Pressing [ ](MEMO/CHECK) or [#] disconnects an incoming call ("quick message" is unavailable. Pressing [#] sets the Manner mode). Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- A "Disconnected" response can also be made by launching the function menu while receiving a PushTalk call and then selecting "Call Rejection".
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, "Driving" appears on the other members' screens indicating that you are driving.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can press [ ][ ], [ ] or Assist key to answer an incoming call in hands-free mode.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, pressing the switch also allows you to answer a call.
- When receiving a PushTalk call, pressing [ ] does not allow "On hold". Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- A "Disconnected" response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown".
- Members added during a PushTalk call appear on the "PushTalk talking" screen, but are not logged to the "Group calls" ( ) on Received calls.
- You cannot answer an incoming PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PushTalk call, the missed calls record is logged.
- If a PushTalk call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the "Set i-mode arrival act" settings.
→p.228

● Automatically answering an incoming PushTalk call <Auto answer setting>

Default setting: OFF

You can set to automatically answer an incoming PushTalk call in hands-free mode.

● Setting the Auto answer setting to "ON" sets the hands-free ON when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

1 "PushTalk phonebook screen" (p.101)▶ (FUNC)▶"PushTalk setting" ▶"Auto answer setting"

Select "ON" or "OFF".

NOTE

- The "ON" setting is unavailable in the Manner mode.
- While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the "Auto answer setting", but the participants will know that you are driving.
- The "Auto answer setting" set to "ON" has priority over the settings of "Automatic answer" or "Ring time setting" (p.103) under the PushTalk setting.

<End PushTalk>

Ending a PushTalk Call

1 During a PushTalk call▶[ ]

■ **If it is a group call**

If it is a group call, pressing [ ] does not end the PushTalk call, but the participants will know that you left the call.

If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, you can join (rejoin) the call in progress.
→p.95

NOTE

- A confirmation tone sounds when one of the participants leaves the PushTalk call.
- If "Setting when folded" (p.103) is set to "End the call", a PushTalk call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, however, communication continues.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer enables you to end the PushTalk call.

<Add to PushTalk>

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

- Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Up to 1,000 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen▶[PTT]

The "PushTalk phonebook screen" (p.101) appears.

2 (New)▶"View phonebook"▶Search for an entry to add

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112

■ To enter directly

▶(New)▶"Direct input"▶Add an entry



Member list

3 Display the Phonebook detail screen ▶Use ○ to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.

■ To add from the phonebook list screen

▶Highlight a phone number and press (Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.

4 "YES"

A new member is added to the member list.

■ If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select "YES" to overwrite.

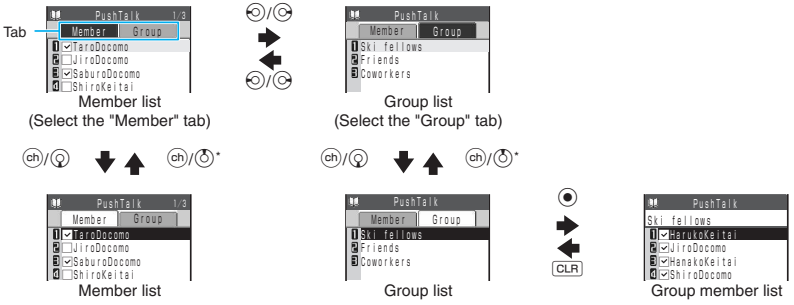
NOTE

- The PushTalk phonebook can be displayed by selecting (MENU)▶"PHONE BOOK"▶"PushTalk".
- Members in the member list appear as follows:
  - When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
  - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.
- You can also add a member by selecting "Add to PushTalk" from the "Phonebook detail" function menu.→p.114
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, the PushTalk phonebook is not available.

Adding a member to a group

A "group" created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

- You can change the PushTalk phonebook display as follows:



*: The display mode is available only when you highlight the first item on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- Use ○ to change pages on the same tab. Use ▲ and ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.

● Creating a group

● Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 "PushTalk phonebook screen" (p.101)▶(FUNC)▶"Group setting"▶"Compose group"

2 Enter a group name and press ●

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

● Add a member to the member list beforehand. →p.99
● A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to four members of the group.

<Example: To add from the group list>

1 On the group list▶Use ◎ to highlight a group, then press (FUNC)▶"Group setting"▶"Add member"

The "Select group member" screen appears.

2 Use ◎ to select a member▶(Finish)

The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

◆ Group members appear as follows:
- When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
- When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.

◆ A member cannot be added to the group if the phone number is the same as that of an existing member.
◆ A member can be added separately to different groups.

Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

You can add a member and group from "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial".

<Example: To add newly to a PushTalk group from "Received calls" of voice calls>

1 Received calls screen (detail) (p.62)▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

■ To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls (group calls)
▶"Add to phonebook"▶"Add to PushTalk"▶Use ◎ to select a member (phone number)

2 "Add to PushTalk Gr"

■ To add a PushTalk member
▶"Add to PushTalk"

■ To add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the FOMA card (UIM)
▶"Add to phonebook"
"Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.110

3 "New"▶Press (Finish) to finish adding

■ To add to an existing phonebook entry
▶"Add"▶Search for a phonebook entry to add▶Display the phonebook detail screen ▶● (Select) ▶Press (Finish) to finish adding▶"YES"

4 Select a group

■ To add a new group
▶<New>▶Enter a group name

NOTE

- A new phone number is also added to the phonebook on the FOMA terminal (Phone) at the same time.
- If a phone number cannot be added to the PushTalk phonebook from the "Redial"/"Dialed calls"/"Received calls" of PushTalk (group calls), "" appears.

Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call

Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PushTalk call.

● You can make a call to a maximum of four members.

1 On the standby screen▶[]

The "PushTalk phonebook screen" appears.



PushTalk phonebook

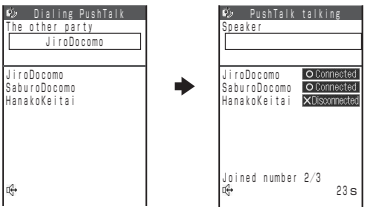
Function menu➡p.102

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶[]

1 to 0 are available to select the corresponding checkboxes. A PushTalk call will be made to the members selected.

When one of the other parties answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears. You can check the status of the members on this screen.→p.94

Speaking during a PushTalk call→p.95



PushTalk talking

■ **To check the selected members**

▶Before pressing [] to make a call, press ● (FUNC)▶"Members to call"

■ **To cancel the hands-free operation**

▶✉ [Off]

Hands-free→p.59

NOTE

- If no checkbox is selected, a call will be made to the highlighted member.
- When you select two or more parties to make a call, those parties will be saved as one record to the "Redial"/"Dialed calls". You can use the record to make another PushTalk call.→p.96
- If all the other members receiving the call are "Disconnected", the PushTalk call will end.

Making a PushTalk call from a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶Use ◎ to highlight a group, then press []

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ **To select members from the group**

▶Select a group▶Use ◎ to deselect members you do not want to dial from the group member list▶[]

NOTE

- If five or more members are registered to the selected group, a call cannot be made. In this case, select up to 4 members in the group, so that you can make a call.
- If a group is selected, a call is not made to the members stored as secret data. To make a call to the members stored as secret data as well, set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode". To make a call only to the members stored as secret data, set "Secret data only mode".
- In Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the names of members stored as secret data in the phonebook do not appear on the dialing screen.

Function menu (PushTalk phonebook screen)

● The options are available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New	Adds an entry to the PushTalk phonebook.	
	View phone book	Searches for a phone number from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook then adds it to the PushTalk phonebook.
	Direct input	Adds a new entry to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook. The phone number is automatically added to the PushTalk phonebook.
Set Caller ID	Select "ON" or "OFF" for whether to notify calling members of all members' (including added members') phone numbers. ■**To release "ON" or "OFF" of "Set Caller ID"** ▶**"Cancel prefix"** If "Cancel prefix" is selected, the "Caller ID setting" under "PushTalk setting" applies.	
Members to call	Displays a list of members.	
PushTalk setting	Makes the PushTalk settings. →p.103	
Network connection	Connects to the network to use the "PushTalkPlus". →p.94 Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.	
Sort	Uses the method to sort the lists.*1	
Group setting	Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name. →p.99	
Release all	Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.	
No. of PushTalk	Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.*2	
Delete	"Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook." →p.102	

*1: Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.
*2: To change displays, use ⊛, 1 and 7(MEMO/CHECK)

NOTE

<No. of PushTalk>
◆ In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", the number of secret members also can be checked.

<Delete PushTalk>

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

Delete an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.
● If "Original phonebook" under "Delete this" is selected, the entry is deleted from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

1 On the member list▶(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	■**To delete only from the PushTalk phonebook** ▶**Select an entry to delete**▶**"PushTalk phonebook"**▶**"YES"** ■**To delete also from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook** ▶**Select an entry to delete**▶**"Original phonebook"**▶**"YES"** Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete selected	▶**Use ⊛ to select a checkbox (□)**▶**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the members.

NOTE

◆ If a deleted member is registered to some groups, the member will be deleted from all the groups containing the member.

● Deleting a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group.
Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple groups.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the groups.

NOTE

◆ All the members stored in the group are also to be deleted. The members are not deleted from the member list.

● Deleting a group member

1 On the group member list▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group member.
Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple group members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the group members in the group.

NOTE

◆ The members are deleted only from the current group. They are not deleted from another group or the member list.

<PushTalk setting>

Making the PushTalk Settings

Make the PushTalk settings.

● After making the settings, press CLR to return to the "PushTalk phonebook" screen.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.101)▶ (FUNC)▶"PushTalk setting"▶Select any item

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)	"Automatically answering an incoming PushTalk call"→p.98	
Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)	▶**Enter the ring time (01-60 seconds)** The ring tone keeps ringing for the specified time. When the specified time has elapsed, a "Disconnected" response is automatically made and the ring tone stops.	
Setting when folded	Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PushTalk call.	
	Speaker talk (default)	Continues a call in hands-free mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.
	End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing . Ending a PushTalk call→p.98
Caller ID setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to notify receivers of all members' (including added members') phone numbers each time you make a PushTalk call.	

Continued on next page

PushTalk arrival act	Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making/receiving a PushTalk call or during a PushTalk call.	
	Answer (default)	Moves to the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PushTalk call. "Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call"→p.104
	Call Rejection	Rejects an incoming voice call.
	Voice Mail	Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail service if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
	Call Forwarding	Forwards an incoming voice call to the designated forwarding number if you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
Hands-free setting (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically set hands-free on each time you make a PushTalk call.	

NOTE

<Ring time setting>
- If "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time (sec.)" is set to "ON", the ring tone sounds for the ring time specified in "Ring time setting" after the specified mute time has elapsed.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, priority is given to the shorter time setting of between "Ring time setting" and "Automatic answer".

<Setting when folded>
- This setting is available only for PushTalk and does not follow "Setting when folded" (p.73) of a voice call and videophone call.
- If "Speaker talk" is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets hands-free ON regardless of the Manner mode setting.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status.

<Caller ID setting>
- This setting is available only for making a PushTalk call and does not follow "Caller ID Notification" (p.48) of the Network services or "186/184" setting (p.66).
- If "Notify Caller ID" (p.51) or "Set Caller ID" (p.102) is selected from the function menu or Notify/Not notify appears on the Redial/Dialed calls detail screen, each setting will apply.

<Hands-free setting>
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and does not automatically set hands-free on.
- "OFF" is set in the Manner mode regardless of the "Hands-free setting".

Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call

Setting "PushTalk arrival act" to "Answer" beforehand allows you to receive a voice call during a PushTalk call.

1 When receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call, press [ ] or ●

The PushTalk call ends, and the "Voice in-call" screen appears.

2 To end the call, press [ ]

■ To continue a PushTalk call

Even when "PushTalk arrival act" is set to "Answer", you can continue a PushTalk call by selecting "Call Rejection", "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail" from the function menu of the ringing screen.

Ringing function menu→p.70

NOTE

- Pressing [ ] on the voice call ringing screen (the PushTalk call ends) and then pressing [ ] or ● also switches the screen to the voice in-call.

Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal 106
Adding Information to the Phonebook ..... Add to phonebook 107
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records 110
Renaming Groups..... Group setting 110
Making a Call from the Phonebook..... Search phonebook 111
Editing a Phonebook Entry ..... Edit phonebook 116
Deleting a Phonebook Entry..... Delete data 116
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card .... UIM operation 116
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status..... No. of phonebook 118
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address ..... Discern connect/Discern group 119
Using Choku-Den ..... Choku-Den 121
Using Dialing Shortcuts ..... Two-touch dialing 122
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites ..... Automatic display 122
Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center ..... Data Security Service 123

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

● Besides phonebooks described above, you can create the "PushTalk" phonebook available for PushTalk calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create the PushTalk phonebook. →p.99

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 1000 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*1	Categorizes into No group, or from 01 to 19.	Categorizes into No group, or from 01 to 10.
Phone number storage*2	The phonebook will hold up to 4,000 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in the PushTalk phonebook.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons, " ", " ", etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or office phone number.	Icons cannot be selected. The " " icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 3,000 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons, " ", " ", etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's home or office e-mail address.	Icons cannot be selected. The " " icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one Chara-den character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact's name, reading, ZIP code, street address, location information, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1: You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently. →p.110

*2: You can enter 0 to 9, #, ✱, p (pause) and + for a phone number. To use a sub-address (p.69), enter ✱.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- You can add an entry as Choku-den which allows you to make a call or send a mail quickly. →p.121
- You can specify an entry to memory numbers (000 to 009) to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 key operations. →p.122
- You can use the "Discern connect" and "Discern group" functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number or e-mail address. →p.119
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. →p.177
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. →p.163
- "Setting your secret code in the phonebook" →p.115
- You can add a member to the PushTalk phonebook. →p.99
- You can store location information using GPS. →p.314

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Since the UIM phonebook data is stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can use your phonebook with other FOMA terminals by inserting the FOMA card (UIM). It is convenient when you use more than one FOMA terminal.

Displaying names

■ Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the caller ID stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. phonebook image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size.
The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

■ i-mode mail and SMS

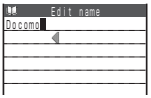
When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender's name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens.
The person's name also appears on the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the Phonebook

- You can choose the phonebook from FOMA terminal (Phone), FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook and FOMA card (UIM). The entry information you can store will be different according to each phonebook.
- Always enter a name in the "Name" field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 (MENU)▶"PHONE BOOK"▶"Phonebook"▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶Select a phonebook▶Enter a name



■ If the entry is to be saved to the "Phone" or "All Phonebook"

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.

■ If the entry is to be saved to the "UIM"

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.

2 Check the reading

■ If the reading is incorrect ("Phone" or "All Phonebook")

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters. "Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

■ If the reading is incorrect ("UIM")

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols. Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used. "Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters

GR Group	▶Select a group If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to "No Group".

Continued on next page

Phone number	**■If the entry is to be saved to the "Phone" or "All Phonebook"** **▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon** A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Once you have stored the first phone number, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area. **■If the entry is to be saved to the "UIM"** **▶Enter a phone number** Phone number up to 20 digits can be stored on a blue UIM and up to 26 digits on a green/white UIM. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	**■If the entry is to be saved to the "Phone" or "All Phonebook"** **▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon** An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. **■If the entry is to be saved to the "UIM"** **▶Enter an e-mail address** An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
Address*1	**▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address** A ZIP code can be stored up to 7 single-byte digits. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Location information*1	Stores location information. Select "From position loc." to get the present location information. Select "From location history" to store location information from location history list. Select "From image" to store the location information in an image. Select "Location Info detail" to check the latitude, longitude, geodetic system (Datum) and accuracy on the location info detail screen stored. Select "Delete location Info" to delete the location information.
Birthday*1	**▶Enter a birthday** Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums*1	**▶Enter a memo** A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image*1	Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting "Photo mode" activates the "Photo mode" screen on which you can shoot a still image.→p.191
Chara-den*1	Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.
Memory No. *1	**▶Enter a memory number** A memory number is automatically*2 assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 999, as desired. Press ○, ○ or # to automatically*2 assign an available number.

*1: It does not appear when selecting the phonebook on the "UIM".
*2: The least of available numbers between 010 and 999 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 999, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

4 ✉ (Finish)

■ To store in the "All Phonebook"

When a phone number is added to the FOMA terminal (Phone), it is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook. If multiple phone numbers are added, select one to store in the PushTalk phonebook. You can add PushTalk phone number or PushTalk group on the PushTalk phonebook.
"Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook"→p.99

NOTE

◆ If you enter "わ , ワ " (double-byte, lower case) in a name in the phonebook on "Phone" or "All Phonebook", the reading will be displayed as "ワ" (single-byte, upper case). Only when you use dial keys, * or # in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.

◆ If you enter "わ , ワ " (double-byte, lower case) in a name in the phonebook on the FOMA card (UIM), the reading will be displayed as "ワ" (double-byte, upper case). However, "ワ " (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you use dial keys, ✱ or # in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.
◆ Phonebook entries with symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly such as at data transfer.
◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is a part of e-mail address that follows "@" symbol. (E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
◆ To store an e-mail address in the "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
◆ If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
◆ To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set "Disp. phonebook image" to "ON".→p.138
◆ When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in "Calling" in "Display setting", the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
◆ When you select "Move to top" from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers/mail addresses stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number/mail address is stored as the first.
◆ You can transfer the phonebook data attached to received i-mode mail to the FOMA terminal (Phone), FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook, UIM and microSD memory card.→p.261
◆ Depending on the setting in "2in1 setting", Phonebook 2in1 setting is set as follows. When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, setting property of "Phonebook 2in1 setting" (A ／ B ／ AB) is displayed on the phonebook list/detail screen. However, Phonebook 2in1 setting is not transmitted when you attach a phonebook entry to an e-mail or copy a phonebook entry.

Mode	Phonebook mode
Dual mode	A
A mode	A
B mode	B
OFF	A

You can change the mode in "2in1 setting".
"Using 2in1"→p.466



Phonebook list screen



Phonebook detail

<Priority sequence for Chara-den setting>
◆ The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
①Chara-den setup in Discern connect→p.119 ②Chara-den setup in Discern group→p.119
③Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry ④"Substitute image" in "Select image"→p.85

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 MENU ▶"PHONE BOOK"▶"Phonebook"▶ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶Select a phonebook▶"Recall"



If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using Multitask, the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted.
If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.

■ To store a new phonebook entry
▶"New"

NOTE
◆ Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
◆ If you receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
During a voice call or PushTalk call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing ch (MULTI) to display the task change screen (p.418) and selecting "Add to phonebook". After a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call ends, the original edit screen reappears.

■ Important
- It is recommended to back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a microSD memory card or note the information down separately.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.
Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.
It is recommended to use DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Access reader" or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number to the phonebook.

<Example: To add information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.62)▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "Add to phonebook"

■ **To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls (group calls)**

▶Use ◎ to select a party (phone number)

■ **To add to the PushTalk phonebook**

▶"Add to PushTalk" or "Add to PushTalk Gr"

"Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records"→p.100

3 "Phone"

■ **To add to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook**

▶"All Phonebook"

■ **To add to the FOMA card (UIM)**

▶"UIM"

4 "Add"▶Search for an entry to add the information to

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112

■ **To store a new phonebook entry**

▶"New"

■ **To add to the FOMA card (UIM)**

▶"New" or "Overwrite"

5 Display the phonebook detail screen▶● (Select)

The phone number is automatically entered and the "Phonebook edit" screen appears.
Editing the phonebook→p.116

6 When you finish editing, press (Finish)

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data**

▶"YES"

NOTE

- The "Notify Caller ID" setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting> MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting	FOMA terminal (Phone): Group 01-19 FOMA card (UIM) : Group 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.
The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable group	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Group 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Group 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

● "No Group" cannot be renamed.

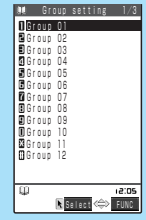
1 (MENU)▶"PHONE BOOK"▶"Phonebook"▶(FUNC)▶"Group setting"

The "Group setting" screen appears.

2 Select a group▶Enter a group name

The " " icon indicates UIM group.

If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), they appear as separate groups.



Group setting

Function menu➡p.111

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	"Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address"→p.119
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

NOTE

- Resetting a group name does not cancel the "Discern group" settings specified for the group.
- If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

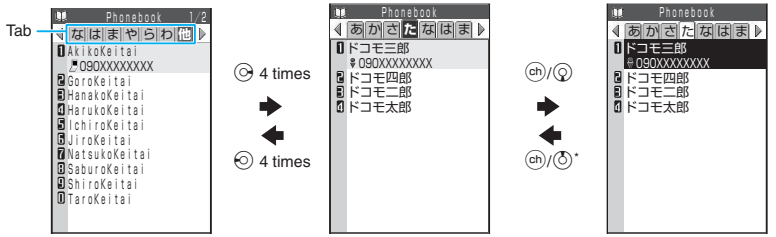
<Search phonebook>

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.

<Example: To switch tabs from "他 (Others)" to "Ta-column" in Alphabet tab display>



Phonebook list screen (Selecting "他 (Others)" tab)

Phonebook list screen (Selecting "Ta-column" tab)

Phonebook list screen

The display mode is available only when you highlight the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- Use ⟲ to change pages on the same tab. Use ▲ and ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.
- 50When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see "Search column" (p.113) in the search method list.
- When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in FOMA card (UIM), add " ✻ " before the Group No.).

Opening the other party's entry to make a call

1 (MENU)▶"PHONE BOOK"▶"Phonebook"

The "Phonebook list screen" appears.



Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.113

■ **To make a call on the list screen**

▶Highlight an entry you want to make a call and press ☎ or ✉ (V.phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call and ✉ (V.phone) to make a videophone call.

If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

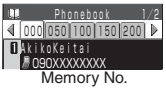
■ **To switch tabs**

▶● (FUNC)▶"Change Display"

You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".



Alphabet



Memory No.



Group

2 **Select a desired phonebook entry**

The "Phonebook detail screen" appears.



Phonebook detail

Function menu➡p.114

3 ☎ or ✉ (V.phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call and ✉ (V.phone) to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.

■ **If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry**

Use ⊙ to display other stored phone numbers.

NOTE

◆ You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers.→p.114

◆ Press ⊙ during a call to display the Search group screen, and ⊙ to display the Search column screen.

Specifying a method to search for an entry

To search for a desired entry, you can select one of 8 search criteria: reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group, column in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.) and all.

■ **Viewing the search results**

Except for memory number search, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the readings entered when entries were stored. If Search all is performed with no search criterion, "A-column" is shown in Alphabet tab display.

Japanese syllabary [reading beginning with a space, ア, ァ, イ, ィ, ……ン]

↓

Alphabetic letters [A, a, B, b...Z, z]

↓

Numbers [0 to 9]

↓

Symbols

↓

Entries without reading

1 On the standby screen▶○▶Select the search method



You can also search phone numbers by displaying the phone number entry screen (p.51)▶Enter a part of the phone number▶○ or ○.

■ **To display your preferred search**

▶Highlight a search method you want to display preferentially▶✉ (Prefer)▶●

A star (★) appears next to the preferred search method.

Next time you search the phonebook, pressing ○ on the standby screen will display your preferred search method screen.

■ **To cancel your preferred search method setting**

▶On the standby screen▶○▶CLR▶Highlight a search method with a star (★)▶✉ (Reset)

2 Search the phonebook

When a search ends, the "Phonebook list" screen that meets the search criterion appears. "" appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that meets the search criterion is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	▶**Enter part of a reading**▶○ **or** ○ Enter a reading from the beginning in the order of family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	▶**Enter part of a name**▶▮ **(Exit)**▶○ **or** ○ Start with the surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.
Search phone No.	▶**Enter part of a phone number**▶○ **or** ○ You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	▶**Enter part of a e-mail address**▶○ **or** ○
Search memory No.	▶**Enter a 3-digit memory number** You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	▶**Select a desired group** The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
Search column	▶**Press the key for the "column" you want to search** 1 : "a" column tab 2 : "ka" column tab 3 : "sa" column tab 4 : "ta" column tab 5 : "na" column tab 6 : "ha" column tab 7 : "ma" column tab 8 : "ya" column tab 9 : "ra" column tab 0 : "wa" column tab ✱ : "others" tab
Search all	Displays the alphabet of all the entries stored in the phonebook.

NOTE

◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing ○ displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Searching phonebook entries from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

To easily make a call and send an e-mail, you can search for a desired entry from each detail screen of "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address".

<Example: To refer to an entry from "Received calls" of voice calls>

1 Received calls screen (detail) (p.60)▶▮ (FUNC)▶"Look-up phonebook"

The "Phonebook detail" screen appears.

Function menu (Phonebook list screen)

● Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the Phonebook"→p.107

Continued on next page

Connect to Center	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶✉ (Finish)** Keeps the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Data Security Service→p.124, 181	
Sort*1	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".	
Discern connect	"Checking the Discern connect settings"→p.120	
Restrictions	"Checking the restriction settings"→p.178	
Group setting	"Renaming Groups"→p.110	
Copy to microSD*3	Copies the phonebook data to the microSD memory card.	
	Copy this*2	Copies the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Copy selected	**▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** You can copy the multiple phonebook entries.
	Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"** Copies all the phonebook entries and My Profile.
iC transmission*2*3	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381	
iC trans. all*3	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382	
Send Ir data*2*3	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381	
Send all Ir data*3	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382	
No. of phonebook	"Checking the Phonebook Storage Status"→p.118	
Attach to mail*3	Displays a New mail screen with phonebook data attached.	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	
microSD phonebook, Original phonebook	Refers to the phonebook on microSD memory card and FOMA terminal (Phone).	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this*2	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	**▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"** Deletes all the phonebook entries.

*1: Not available when tabs are displayed.
*2: Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.
*3: Not available when the phonebook is stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If "Delete all" is performed, the UIM phonebook and PushTalk phonebook entries are also deleted.
- Selecting "Copy all" or "Copy selected" in "Copy to microSD" also copies the storage information of PushTalk phonebook.

Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)

Edit phonebook	"Editing a Phonebook Entry"→p.116	
Notify Caller ID	"Showing your phone number to the other party"→p.67	
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.65	
Dial setting	**Prefix numbers**	**▶Select the prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68
	Int'l call	"Making an international call with international call codes added"→p.57
	2in1*1/ Multi Number	"2in1"→p.466 "Multi Number"→p.465
	Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call"→p.85
Discern connect*2	"Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address"→p.119	
Restrictions*2	"Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers"→p.177	
Move to top*2	Specifies the selected phone number/e-mail address as the first number/address when multiple phone number/e-mail addresses are stored in an entry.	
Add to PushTalk*2*3	"Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook"→p.99	

Add to Choku-Den[*2]	"Adding to Choku-Den"→p.121	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149	
Compose message[*3]	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243	
Attach to mail[*2*3]	Displays a New mail screen with phonebook data attached.	
Compose SMS[*3]	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.286	
iC transmission[*2]	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381	
iC trans. all[*2]	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382	
Send Ir data[*2]	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381	
Send all Ir data[*2]	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382	
Automatic display[*2]	"Specifying phone number to display automatically"→p.123	
Copy to microSD[*2]	Copies the selected phonebook entry to the microSD memory card.	
Copy	**Name**	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
	Phone number[*4]	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Secret code[*2]	**▶Enter your security code▶Select any item** "Setting your secret code in the phonebook"→p.115	
	Set code	**▶Enter a 4-digit number▶"YES"** Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
Set secret, Release secret[*2*5]	"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.163	
Copy to UIM[*6]	Copies phonebook data.	
Run i-αppli[*2]	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.	
Read a map[*2]	Displays a map around from the location information with connecting to the i-mode site (location site).	
Paste to mail[*2*3]	Displays a New mail screen with a location information URL stored in the phonebook inserted.	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	
Delete data	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry"→p.116	

*1: "2in1" is only available when the mode is set to Dual mode.
*2: Not available for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.
*3: This option is unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*4: Depending upon what you have selected, "Mail address/address/location information/birthday/memo" is displayed.
*5: If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, "Release secret" appears.
*6: If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, "Copy from UIM" appears.

NOTE

<Multi Number, 2in1>
◆ When 2in1 is set to ON, "2in1" is displayed, and if it is set to OFF, "Multi Number" is displayed.

<Add to PushTalk>
◆ When an entry is added to the PushTalk phonebook, "  " appears on the phonebook detail screen and "★" appears on the function menu.

<Add to Choku-Den>
◆ When an entry is added to Choku-Den, "★" appears on the function menu.

<Big font, Standard font>
◆ When "Big font" is selected, only the name appears large on the phonebook detail screen.

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp" with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify "[phone-number + secret-code]@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address. If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode message.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You can only set a secret code to e-mail address "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp" or a phone number.
- You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
- Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
- Do not set a secret code using this function if you already stored the owner's "[phone-number + secret-code]" or "[phone-number + secret-code]@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry

● Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit phonebook"▶Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as "Add to phonebook".
Adding information to the phonebook→p.107

■ **To assign a new memory number**

▶"No."▶Enter a memory number (000 to 999) that has not already been stored
The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 When you finish editing, press (Finish)▶"YES"

■ **To add information to the FOMA card (UIM)**

▶ (Finish)▶"Overwrite" or "Add"
Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.
Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

- If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den, the entry is automatically edited in the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den.
- If you edit the memory number of an entry which is stored in the member list or group list in the PushTalk phonebook, the edited entry does not take over the storage information for the PushTalk phonebook.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete data"▶Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, location information, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

*: Depending upon what you have selected, "Delete mail add.", "Delete address", "Delete loc. Info", "Delete birthday", "Delete memorandums", "Delete image" or "Delete Chara-den" is displayed.

NOTE

- You can delete a phonebook entry on the phonebook list screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.
- If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number or mail address is deleted, the next phone number or mail address appears.
- If you select "Delete phone No." or "Delete this" for a phone number or entry that is stored in the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den, the phone number or entry is also deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls, or send/receive mails while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
  Items and number of entries that can be copied→p.106

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"UIM operation"▶Enter your security code

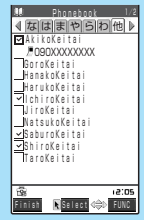
Once you enter your security code, "" appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

2 "Copy"▶"Phone→UIM" or "UIM→Phone"▶Select any item

Phonebook	▶**Search the phonebook** Displays a list screen of the phonebook entries. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

3 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"

If you select "Phonebook" in step 2 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (copy)
Example: Phonebook (Search all)

Function menu➡p.118

NOTE

- You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
- Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts "katakana" included in name and reading to double-byte. Name is copied up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters and reading is up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in "No Group".
- You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). "Replied to" or "Transferred" icons are also changed to "Read".
- If you copy SMS in added folders, i-αppli mail folders, "Chat" folder or "Trash box" folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"UIM operation"▶Enter your security code

2 "Delete"▶"Phone" or "UIM"▶Select any item

Phonebook	▶**Search the phonebook** Displays a list screen of the phonebook entries. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

3 Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"

If you select "Phonebook" in step 2 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (delete)
Example: Phonebook (Search all)

Function menu➡p.118

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

<No. of phonebook> MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶(▤) (FUNC)▶"No. of phonebook"

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/1000 (storage limit)

Secret : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
Image : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)
Chara-den : Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Discern connect/Discern group>

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

Default setting
All Release

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful if you want to have ring tone or illumination inform you of the caller, etc.

- These functions cannot be set to "No Group" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The "Discern connect" and "Discern group" functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the "Caller ID Request service".→p.462

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Discern connect"

The "Discern connect" screen appears.
"★" appears next to the selected function.
Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.

■ Setting this function for each group

▶Group setting screen (p.111)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Discern group"



Discern connect

2 Select any item

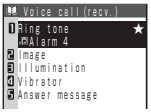
Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number or group.
V.phone (dial/recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

3 Select any item

"★" appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶Highlight a function with "★" and press (Reset)
The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone[*1]	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. "Changing Ring Tones"→p.126
Image[*2]	Sets images to distinguish callers. "Changing the Display Settings"→p.135
Chara-den setup[*3]	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. "Chara-den set."→p.53
Illumination[*1]	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails"→p.147
Vibrator[*1]	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives"→p.129
Answer message[*2]	Sets an answer message played when Record message[*4] and Quick record message starts for each caller. "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video"→p.80

*1: Available for 64K data communication calls.
*2: Displayed when "Voice call (recv.)" or "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*3: Displayed when "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*4: To use this function, set "Record message" to "ON" beforehand.

Continued on next page

■ **When you set "Discern connect"**

The following icons appear on the phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:

: "Ring tone" for voice/videophone calls

: "Ring tone" for mails

: "Illumination" for voice/videophone calls

: "Illumination" for mails

: "Vibrator" for voice/videophone calls

: "Vibrator" for mails

: "Image" for voice/videophone calls

: "Answer message" for voice/videophone calls

: "Chara-den setup" for videophone calls



Example: Videophone setting

NOTE

- The "Ring tone", "Illumination" or "Vibrator" in "Mail (recv.)" that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp" format. When you receive a mail from other addresses, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary entries. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Discern connect/Discern group settings duplicate the ones specified for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with differing settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination perform as shown below.

	Operation of the ring tone and illumination
When receiving multiple e-mails	The FOMA terminal operates in the conditions set to the last item of mail received. If a chat message is included in the received mails, the ring tone set for the chat message rings.
When receiving MessageR and MessageF at the same time	The FOMA terminal operates in the conditions set for the MessageR.
When receiving a mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time	The FOMA terminal operates in the conditions set to the last item of mail received. If a chat message is included in the received mails, the ring tone set for the chat message rings.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated→p.147

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated→p.129

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated→p.128
- Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated→p.255, 287

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated→p.138

Checking the Discern connect settings

MENU62

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in "Discern connect" by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶"Discern connect"

The "Discern connect checking" screen appears.
A star "★" appears next to the item for which the function is set.

2 Select a function or item for which "★" appears on the "Discern connect" screen▶Highlight the function or item with"★"* and press (FUNC)▶Select any item

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Choku-Den>

Using Choku-Den

By storing frequently used phonebook entries to Choku-Den, you can make a call or send a mail quickly.

- You can store up to 5 Choku-Den members by quoting the data (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- When mail addresses are stored to Choku-Den, you can compose i-mode mail or chat mail to all the members easily.
- You cannot use this function in Secret data only mode.
- You can use this function in Secret mode, but you cannot add the phonebook stored as secret data to Choku-Den.

Adding to Choku-Den

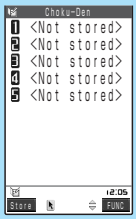
- As the detail screen of the first entry of Choku-Den appears when ⏲ is pressed on the standby screen, it is useful to store the most frequently used phonebook as the first entry.

1 (MENU)▶**"OWN DATA"**▶**"Choku-Den"**

The "Choku-Den list" screen appears.

■ **To add Choku-Den for the first time**

Pressing ⏲ on the standby screen also displays the "Choku-Den list" screen.



Choku-Den list

Function menu➡p.122

2 **Highlight "<Not stored>"▶(✉) (Store)▶Search phonebook**

Searching the phonebook→p.111

3 ● **(Select)**

The "Quote phonebook" screen appears.



Quote phonebook

4 **Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)**

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, select only one number/mail address to store.

5 (✉) **(Finish)**

The name, selected phone number and mail address are added to Choku-Den.

NOTE

◆ When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, setting property of "Phonebook 2in1 setting" (A ／ B ／ AB) is displayed on the Choku-den list/detail screen.

Making a call/composing a mail from Choku-Den

<Example: To make a call>

1 **On the standby screen▶⏲**

The "Choku-Den detail" screen of the first Choku-Den entry appears.

When no entry is stored in Choku-Den, the Choku-Den list screen appears. "Adding to Choku-Den"→p.121

2 **Display the Choku-Den detail screen to make a call with ◎**

3 **Select "CALL" with ◎**

■ **To compose a mail**

▶Select "MAIL" with ◎▶● (Select)

The new mail screen with the mail address entered to the address appears.

"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243



Choku-Den detail

Function menu➡p.122

4 (📞)**(voice call)/**(✉) **(V.phone) (videophone call)**

Function menu (Choku-Den list screen)

Store	"Adding to Choku-Den"→p.121
Edit	Displays the quote phonebook screen and quotes another phone number or mail address.
Broadcast mail*	Displays the new mail screen with all mail addresses stored to Choku-Den are entered to the address. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Broadcast chat*	Displays the chat screen with all mail addresses stored to Choku-Den are entered to the chat members. "Composing and Sending Chat Mail"→p.281
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted Choku-Den entry.
Delete all	▶**Enter the security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all Choku-Den entries.

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, Choku-den is not available.

NOTE

◆ Even when you delete a Choku-Den entry, the phonebook entry of the FOMA terminal (Phone) is not deleted.

Function menu (Choku-Den detail screen)

Edit	Displays the quote phonebook screen and quotes another phone number or mail address.
Image	Changing the image displayed in Choku-Den by selecting an image from "My picture".

NOTE

◆ Choku-Den image can be registered and displayed only on the Choku-Den detail screen.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys 0 to 9 and then pressing .

1 0 **to** 9 ▶

■ **To make a videophone call**

▶ (Vphone)

■ **To make a PushTalk call**

▶ ( )

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

NOTE

◆ If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, a call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
◆ When the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of "000" to "009" assigned.
◆ When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing", two-touch dialing cannot be used.

<Automatic display>

MENU47

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting
OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to that number simply by pressing , (Vphone) or ( ).

● You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for a mail address.
● You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or PushTalk phonebook.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Automatic display"▶"ON"

■ **To deactivate the automatic display function**

▶"OFF"

Specifying phone number to display automatically

1 **Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶ "Automatic display"**

A star (★) appears next to "Automatic display" in the function menu of the "Phonebook detail" screen.

■ **If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry**

▶Use ◎ to highlight phone number to display automatically

■ **To cancel the automatic display setting**

▶Repeat Step 1

The setting is cancelled and a star "★" disappears.

NOTE

◆ Press ●, ⌐, CLR or ▲ while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.

◆ The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:

- Secret data only mode is set
- You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
- Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number

◆ You cannot make a call to multiple members at one time, when you make a PushTalk call while the phone number set in automatic display appears.

<Data Security Service>

Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center

This service enables you to keep the data stored in your FOMA terminal (e.g. phonebook entries, images, mails) at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

● To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".

● If you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.

Data Security Service→p.181

● When "" appears, the Data Security Service operations are not available.

● The packet communication charges apply to data update performed during Data Security Service operations. The charges vary depending on the amount of updated data.

● If a videophone or PushTalk call arrives during a Data Security Service operation, the operation is interrupted. After the call ends, the data backup resumes from where it was interrupted.

● If the memory allotted to your FOMA terminal becomes full at the Data Security Center, data backup is interrupted. If this is the case, the data already backed up are saved.

● Data types supported by Data Security Service

Data		Item to be saved	Refer to
Phonebook	FOMA terminal phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Street address, Location information, Birthday, Memo, Image, Secret store, Group number, Group name, PushTalk phone number, PushTalk group name, Phonebook 2in1 setting	p.124
Mail	i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS in Outbox/Inbox/Draft	Unread/Read, Message type, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message	p.273
image	Images in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail and user-created folders	Images in JPEG format (including progressive JPEG) or GIF format, title	p.346

* Phonebook entries or SMS that are stored in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be saved at the Data Security Center. Also, the Data Security Center cannot keep the data stored in Secret folders or the microSD memory card.

● Saving phonebook entries at the Data Security Center

You can save entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook at the Data Security Center.

● If you already saved your phonebook to the Data Security Center and perform this procedure, it will be updated to the current FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook contents.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Data Security serv."▶"Connect to Center"

■ **To specify whether to send images stored in phonebook entries**

▶"Sndg img in Phonebook"▶"ON" or "OFF"

The default setting is "OFF". Select "ON" to save images stored in phonebook entries to the Data Security Center.

2 Enter your security code▶"YES"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start updating phonebook data.

3 (✉) (Finish)

NOTE

◆ Note that a phonebook entry with an image whose size is more than 100K bytes cannot be saved or updated.

■ Restoring/Updating phonebook data

Phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. Furthermore, you can edit the phonebook data kept at the center from a PC and automatically update the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

◆ Phonebook data may not be updated if another function is activated during the update operation. In this case, "UPDATE" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

◆ When the phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center are restored to a FOMA terminal, the icons registered in a phone number or mail address may change to "☎" or "✉" depending on their types.

● Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center

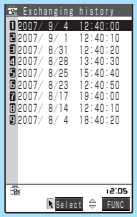
● Up to 30 communication logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.

● On the communication log detail screen, transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, results of sending to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Data Security serv."▶"Exchanging history"

The "Exchanging history" screen appears.

2 Select a log item



Exchanging history

Function menu➡p.124

NOTE

◆ The data size shown on the Exchanging history detail screen is only as a guide.

Function menu (Exchanging history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted communication log.
Delete selected	**▶Use (●) to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple communication logs.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all communication logs.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Tone settings

Changing Ring Tones ..... Select ring tone 126
Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies..... Sound effect 128
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives... Vibrator 129
Setting the Keypad Sound ..... Keypad sound 129
Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function 130
Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging..... Charge sound 131
Setting the Clock Alarm Tone ..... Clock Alarm Tone set 131
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out ..... Quality alarm 131
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails..... Mail/Msg. ring time 132
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker..... Earphone 132
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone..... Manner mode 132
Customizing Manner Mode..... Manner mode set 133

Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings..... Display setting 135
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ..... Disp. phonebook image 138
Avoiding Others from Seeing Your Screen ..... Privacy angle 139
Setting the Indicator Display Mode ..... Indicator display 139
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ..... Backlight 140
Changing the Display Color ..... Display design 141
Changing the Menu Display..... 141
Setting Kisekae Tool Package ..... Kisekae Tool setting 144
Setting the Neuropointer..... Neuropointer 146
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails ..... Illumination 147
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call.. Illumination in talk 148
Lighting Lamps When Using IC Card Function ..... IC card Illumination 148
Changing the Font ..... Font 148
Setting the Clock Display..... Clock display 149
Using Desktop Icons..... Desktop icon 149
Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message ..... 3D display setting 153
Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen .... Icons setting 154
Changing the Font Color for Dialing/Receiving Display 155

<Select ring tone> MENU13

Changing Ring Tones

Default setting	Phone: Pattern1 Videophone: Pattern3 PushTalk: Pattern4 Mail, Chat mail: Alarm 2 (Phone color: Orange Cut, Pink Soda), Alarm 3 (Phone color: Day and Night, Urban Blue) MessageR, MessageF: Alarm 3 (Phone color: Orange Cut, Pink Soda), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Day and Night, Urban Blue)

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails and MessageR/MessageF respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively. →p.119

- In addition to the pre-installed ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs, melodies and Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be set as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is VGA.
- Melody list →p.362

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Select ring tone"▶Select any item

Phone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)
PushTalk	Sets a ring tone for incoming PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming chat mails. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageR. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageF. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.135)

2 "Select ring tone"▶Select any item

Melody	Selects a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the "Pre-installed" folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from "Inbox" or a folder you have created.	
i-motion	Selects an i-motion, Chaku-Uta® downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from "Inbox", "Camera", "Movable contents" or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the "Pre-installed" folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when a call or mail arrives (Chaku-motion).	
Music	Selects a Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded to the FOMA terminal from "Inbox", "Movable contents" or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full® from the "Pre-installed" folder. If the Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that the provider offers for a ring tone, the following settings are available:	
	Fullsong ring tone	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
	Point ring tone	**■If a folder that is not "Movable contents" is selected** **▶Use ◎ to select a part to set as a ring tone and press ●** **■If the "Movable contents" folder is selected** **▶Use ◎ to select a part to set as a ring tone and press ●▶"YES"▶Select a folder** The selected part is saved as an i-motion and set as a ring tone.
Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2".	
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When a call or mail arrives, the FOMA terminal selects one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.	
OFF	Plays no ring tone.	

A FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press ☎, #, ✉ or ⓘ to stop playing the melody.
After setting a ring tone, set the receiving screen if necessary.

■ To check settings

▶✉ (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display	3D sound compatible
Pattern1 - 4	—
Melody 1	○
Melody 2	○
Melody 3	○
Melody 4	○
Melody 5	○
Melody 6	○
Melody 7	○
Melody 8	○
Melody 9	○
Melody 10	○
Alarm 1	○
Alarm 2	—
Alarm 3	—
Alarm 4	—
Alarm 5	○
Alarm 6	○
Alarm 7	○
Alarm 8	○

Recording patent No.: T-0720105

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

"エレクトリカルスピーカー " is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "i-motion".

Pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®

"Cosmic Globe" is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "Music".

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion with video only or with ticker cannot be set as a ring tone.
- ◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.
- ◆ Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- ◆ If you copy a melody available for a ring tone to the microSD memory card, the copied melody can no longer be set as a ring tone (except as copied it back to a FOMA terminal).
- ◆ Movies or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
  - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
  - They are copied from the microSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When an i-motion in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the i-motion is moved to the "Inbox" folder in "i-motion" and set as a ring tone.
- ◆ When an Chaku-Uta-Full® in the "Movable contents" folder is selected and "Fullsong ring tone" is selected, the Chaku-Uta-Full® is moved to the "Inbox" folder in "Music" and set as a ring tone. If "Point ring tone" is selected, the selected part is clipped as an i-motion, saved in the "i-motion" folder and then set as a ring tone.
- ◆ If "Point ring tone" is used to set a Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) as a ring tone, the selected part is set as a ring tone instead of being clipped as an i-motion.
- ◆ The volume level applied to the playback during ring tone selection is the one set in "Ring volume". If "Silent" is set to "Ring volume", tones are not played.
- ◆ A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. →p.362
- ◆ The "Ring tone" settings in "Melody" under Data box affect the settings of this function. →p.363
- ◆ The "Select ring tone" settings in "i-motion" under Data box affect the settings of this function.p.352
- ◆ The "Select ring tone" settings in "Music" under Data box affect the settings of this function. →p.404, 407
- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ The ring tone for voice calls with the hidden caller ID can be set in the "Call setting w/o ID" menu. The ring tone for videophone calls with the hidden caller ID is set according to the "Videophone" setting in this function.
- ◆ When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set to the default in "Mail". The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.
- ◆ Even if you have set a Chaku-Uta-Full® with the jacket image, the image does not appear when a call or mail arrives.

Continued on next page

<Ring tone priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

①Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2)→p.465
②Ring tone for Discern connect→p.119 ③Ring tone for Discern group→p.119
④Ring tone for B mode of 2in1 setting→p.467
⑤Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting (videophone call)→p.126, 144
⑥Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID→p.178
⑦Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting (except videophone call)→p.126, 144

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion for Image
③i-motion (without video, such as singer's voice), melody or Chaku-Uta-Full® for Ring tone

Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated→p.255, 287

What is 3D sound?

The 3D sound function uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce 3 dimensional and resonating sounds. This function allows you to enjoy i-αppli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sounds.

How to enjoy 3D sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, positioning a FOMA terminal in front of you and holding it approximately 20 to 30 cm away from you will produce the best results.
- If you listen at an off-center position or you are too close or too far away from a FOMA terminal, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set "Surround" and "3Dsound" (p.128) all to "OFF".



<Sound effect> MENU64

Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default setting	Surround: OFF 3Dsound: ON

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when a FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for voice, videophone and PushTalk calls, sound effects and i-motion sound.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Sound effect"▶Set "ON" or "OFF" for the following

Surround	Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of 2 speakers.
3Dsound	Plays 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion with sound effects, the effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs with sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the movie list screen.→p.343

<Vibrator> MENU54

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

Default setting: All OFF

You can set a FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails and MessageR/MessageF respectively.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Vibrator"▶Select any item

Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls or 64K data communication.
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Sets vibration for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as the ring tone or Chaku-Uta-Full®, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.
The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call arrives.

: Shows that vibration starts when a mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF arrives.

: Shows that both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

- To enable "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in "Vibrator", set the respective items in "Mail/Msg. ring time" to "ON".
- When "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- When "Ring volume" is set to other than "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls or mails. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- When "Melody linkage" is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated:
  ① Vibrator for Discern connect→p.119 ② Vibrator for Discern group→p.119
  ③ Vibrator setting

<Keypad sound> MENU30

Setting the Keypad Sound

Default setting: ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
  - Warning tone
  - Tone emitted when you start adjusting the earpiece volume
  - Battery low warning tone
  - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad sounds at the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
  - You press the assist key or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded
  - You shoot a picture (shutter sound, Auto focus lock sound)
  - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
  - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad sound in "Initial setting" (p.46), select "ON" or "OFF".

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Keypad sound"▶"ON"

■ To mute the keypad sound

▶"OFF"

Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function

Set the notification tone for Position location, Location notification and request.

- If "Permit to send loc." under "Request menu" (p.321) is set to ON and the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, location information is sent, while the notification tone, vibrator and illumination do not work.

Setting the volume

Default setting
Level 4

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"GPS"▶"GPS settings"

The "GPS settings" screen appears.

2 "Tone/Vibrator"▶"Ring volume"▶Select an item to set▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume▶● (Set)



GPS settings

Selecting the tone

Default setting
Alarm 8

1 GPS settings screen (p.130)▶"Tone/Vibrator"▶"Select ring tone"▶Select an item to set▶Select any item

Melody	**▶Select a folder▶Select a melody**
OFF	Does not play a tone.

Setting the vibrator

Default setting
Pattern 1

Select the vibration pattern.

1 GPS settings screen (p.130)▶"Tone/Vibrator"▶"Vibrator"▶Select an item to set▶Select any item

Pattern 1 to 3	Vibrates the FOMA terminal in the selected pattern.
Melody linkage	Vibrates the FOMA terminal in the pattern of the melody set as a ring tone.
OFF	Does not vibrate the FOMA terminal.

Setting the ring time

Default setting	**Position location: OFF Location notification: ON (5 seconds) Loc. request/permit: ON (5 seconds) Loc. request/confirm: ON (5 seconds)**

Set the ring time and whether to ring the tone.

1 GPS settings screen (p.130)▶"Tone/Vibrator"▶"Ring time"▶Select an item to set▶Select any item

ON	**▶Enter the ring time**
OFF	Does not perform the notification operation (does not operate the tone or vibrator). Illumination works in the set color.

● Setting the illumination

Default setting
Color 5

Select the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.

1 GPS settings screen (p.130)▶"Illumination"▶Select an item to set▶Select any item

Color 1 to 12	Flashes the lamp in the selected color.
Gradation	Lights the lamp in order from Color 1 to 12.
OFF	Does not flash the lamp.

NOTE

◆ "OFF" cannot be set for "Loc. request/permit" or "Loc. request/confirm".

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging

Default setting
ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

● The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:

- You are dialing
- You are on a voice or PushTalk call
- Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- Voice announce is being recorded
- The FOMA terminal is turned off
- A call arrives
- Manner mode is set
- Standby voice memo is being recorded
- Data is sent or received
- The screen is not standby

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Charge sound"▶"ON"

■ To mute the charge sound

▶"OFF"

<Clock Alarm Tone set>

Setting the Clock Alarm Tone

Default setting
Alarm Tone

This setting enables you to change the clock alarm tone set for Alarm, Schedule or To Do list.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Clock Alarm Tone set"▶Select any item

Melody	**▶Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.→p.126
i-motion	**▶Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.→p.126
Music	**▶Select a folder** Selects a music file.→p.126
Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
OFF	Does not sound the clock alarm.

<Quality alarm>

MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting
High tone

A FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

● A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Quality alarm"▶"No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"

<Mail/Msg. ring time> MENU68

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails

Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Use this function to specify whether a FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail or a MessageR/MessageF. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Mail/Msg. ring time"▶Select any item

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.

2 Specify whether to ring the tone

ON	**▶Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds)** A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time.
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

◆ When "OFF" is selected for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", "" appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone> MENU51

Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone+Speaker

You can set ring tone, alarm tone and such to sound through earphones and a speaker, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. is connected to the FOMA terminal.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"External connection"▶"Earphone"▶"Earphone+Speaker" or "Earphone (only)"

NOTE

◆ Even if "Earphone (only)" is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker when no earphone/microphone is connected. Even when a earphone/microphone is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the FOMA terminal's speaker.

◆ Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

<Manner mode>

Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad sound through the speaker.

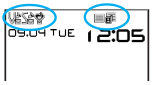
● When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:
- Ring tone*1
- Alarm, Schedule, To Do list and Notice designate calls alarm tones*2
- Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded

*1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

*2 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Phone" in "Vibrator". If "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

● For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select "Manner mode", "Super silent" or "Original" in "Manner mode set". →p.133

1 On the standby screen or you are talking▶# (1 second or longer)



Manner mode is set and " " appears.
During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.
While in Manner mode, the icon indicating the specified "Manner mode set" setting appears together with " ".

: "Vibrator" works when a call arrives, etc.
, , : "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
to : "Record message" is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.
to : "Record VP message" is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many videophone messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Press # for 1 second or longer on the standby screen or while you are talking.
Manner mode is canceled and " " disappears from the screen.
During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.

NOTE

- Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound or Auto focus lock sound when you take a picture with the built-in camera.
- Ring tone or alarm sound rings when earphones are connected even while in Manner mode.

<Manner mode set> MENU20

Customizing Manner Mode

Default setting
Manner mode

This feature allows you to select FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.

● The default settings of "Original" manner mode are:

- Record msg.: OFF
- Mail vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- LVA tone: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Phone vol.: Silent
- i-αppli vol.: Silent
- Mic sensitiv.: Up

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Manner mode set

Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when (MEMO/CHECK)) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set.

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.133)▶"Original"▶Select any item▶To finish the setting, press (Finish)

Record msg.	Sets whether to activate Record message.
Vibrator	Specifies whether to activate the vibrator.
Phone vol.	**▶Use to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication.

Continued on next page

Mail vol.	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF.
Alarm vol.	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the alarm tone volume.
i-αppli vol.	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the i-αppli volume. "Step" is not available.
VM tone	Sets whether to activate confirmation tones for "Record message" and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Sets whether to activate the keypad sound.
Mic sensitiv.	Selects "Normal" or "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets whether to activate the low-voltage alarm.

● When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		"Record msg." setting
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" setting
Ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF	Silent		"Mail vol." setting
Alarm volume (including the snooze function)	Silent		"Alarm vol." setting
i-αppli volume	Silent		"i-αppli vol." setting
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/Notice designate calls	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for Record message, Voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" setting
Keypad sound	OFF		"Keypad sound" setting
Microphone sensitivity during a call*1	Up		"Mic sensitiv." setting
Holding tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" when an option other than "Silent" is set.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*2
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" setting Even when "ON" is set, the low-voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" for this function.
Reading out received mails	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.74)*3		
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*2
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*4
Confirmation tone/alarm tone for GPS function	Silent		All off regardless of the "Original" setting

*1: If the microphone sensitivity during a call is set to "Up", the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.
*2: Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
*3: Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set. However, even if "Read out received mail" in "Read out setting" is set to "ON", mails are not read. Select "Read out message" from the function menu on the received mail detail screen to perform reading of mails.
*4: Sounds at the "Level 4" volume when "Step" is set.

● When an earphone is connected

The table below lists the settings applied when an earphone is connected.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.74)*		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.74)*		"Phone vol." setting Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
Volume of the music player	Music player volume setting (p.406)		

*: Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

NOTE

- Regardless of the "Record message" (p.80) setting, Record message is activated when "Record msg." in "Original" is set to "ON" and Manner mode is set.
- If the Record message set in "Original" starts while in Manner mode, message recording starts after the ring time set in "ON" in "Record message" (p.80) elapses. (When "OFF" is set, recording starts in 13 seconds.)
- If a FOMA terminal is set to vibrate to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting> MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting	Standby screen: Orange Cut (Phone color: Orange Cut), Day and Night (Phone color: Day and Night), Urban Blue (Phone color: Urban Blue), Bunny Character1 (Phone color: Pink Soda) Wake-up display: N904i (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Bunny Character2 (Phone color: Pink Soda) Making/Receiving a phone/videophone call, Sending/Receiving/Checking a mail: Black

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is VGA.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Display setting"

The "Display setting" screen appears.
If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.



Display setting

2 Select any item

Stand-by display	"Changing the standby screen image"→p.137		
Wake-up display	Sets a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.		
	OFF	Does not show an image, etc.	
	Message	▶**Enter a message** A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.	
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
		Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.		
	Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones"→p.126	
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails"→p.136	

Continued on next page

V.phone Dialing	Sets a screen shown when you make a videophone call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
V.phone Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones"→p.126
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails"→p.136
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send an i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails and SMS.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones"→p.126
	Select receiving disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails"→p.136
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: To set the receiving screen for incoming calls>

1 Display setting screen (p.135)▶"Calling"▶"Select calling disp."▶Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox **Camera**	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.

*: "i-motion" does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ **To check settings**

▶✉ (Play)

NOTE

◆ Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.
◆ Movies or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
- They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
- They are copied from the microSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).

◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence applies. →p.138
◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for PushTalk calls.

<Priority sequence for screen>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:
①Automatic display ②i-αppli stand-by display ③Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting

Changing the standby screen image

● The "Pre-installed" folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display.
Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display →p.493
● This function is available for the standby screen setting when 2in1 is set to A mode or "2in1 setting" is OFF. The setting is not applied when "B mode" or "Dual mode" is set. You can set in "Standby display" (p.467) or "2in1 setting".

1 Display setting screen (p.135)▶"Stand-by display"▶Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.		
Calendar	Sets a calendar.		
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox / **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera. Also sets how to display the image.
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.
	No background	Shows a calendar only.	
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox / **Camera**	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera. Also sets how to display the image.	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation. Also sets how to display the image.	
i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.		
	Inbox / **Camera**	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.	
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.	
i-αppli display	Sets the i-αppli standby screen. When the i-αppli standby screen is set, a star (★) appears. "Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen" →p.302		
Random display	Specify a folder. Opening the FOMA terminal shows an image in the folder at random. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some images cannot be displayed.		
	Inbox / **Camera**	Shows an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera. Also sets how to display the image.	
	Pre-installed	Shows a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.	

Continued on next page

■ When a screen to set a display style is displayed

You can select Centering disp. (centering an image on the screen), Fit in disp. (enlarging or reducing an image to fit the height or width into the screen size), Arrange disp. (arranging images from the upper left) or Full-screen disp. (enlarging, reducing or clipping an image to fit it into the screen size).

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.
Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Pressing ● on the standby screen or sliding your finger over ● to place the pointer over calendar selects the calendar. (If pressing ● selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use ◎ to select the calendar.) Press ● again. Pressing ◎ opens the previous month or ◎ to opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press ◎ or ◎ to show the previous month or next month and press ● to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press [ ], [CLR], [ ], [ ], [ ], [ ], [●], the assist key or [ ] ([ ]) to stop playing. While in Manner mode, only the image appears (without sound). When playback ends, the first frame of the movie or i-motion appears on the standby screen.
- If a Flash movie or animation GIF image is set for the standby screen, perform any of the following to play the movie or image (without the melody):
  - Open the FOMA terminal. • Press [CLR] on the standby screen. • Return to the standby screen.
- When the playback of the Flash movie set as the standby screen ends, the last frame appears on the standby screen. Pressing [CLR] or [ ] during the Flash movie playback ends the playback, and the image at the point where the playback ends appears on the standby screen.
- When a playback of an animation GIF image ends, the first frame appears on the standby screen. Pressing [CLR] or [ ] during the animation playback ends the playback, and the first frame of the animation appears on the standby screen.
- Even if "Random display" is set, the image on the standby screen is restored the default setting when:
  - Deleting the specified folder
  - Deleting or moving all the images in the specified folder
  - There is no image to be set for the standby screen in the specified folder
- Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that is set for the standby screen restores the default standby screen.

<Disp. phonebook image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting
ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to show the image when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number stored in the phonebook with an image.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Disp. phonebook image"▶"ON"

■ To hide images stored in the phonebook

▶"OFF"

NOTE

- Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- If a caller does not show the caller ID, the image does not appear.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data do not appear.

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the indicator display when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

①Image for Discern connect→p.119 ②Image for Discern group→p.119
③Image for Add to phonebook→p.106 ④Image for B mode of 2in1 setting→p.467
⑤i-motion for Select ring tone→p.126 ⑥Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting→p.135, 144

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion (including ones only with video), image for the received display

<Privacy angle>

Avoiding Others from Seeing Your Screen

Default setting: OFF

You can avoid others around you from seeing contents on your display.

1 On the standby screen▶8 (1 second or longer)

Privacy angle is set and "" appears on the screen.

■ **To release Privacy angle**

▶8 (1 second or longer)

Privacy angle is released and "" disappears.

<Indicator display> MENU 93

Setting the Indicator Display Mode

Default setting	Setting: ON Disp. clock only: OFF Clock type: Digital 3 Called: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON Background i-αppli: OFF Display time: 15 sec.

You can set the message display mode, clock, etc. for the indicator display.

● "Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)"→p.30

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Indicator display"▶"ON"

■ **To deactivate the indicator display**

▶"OFF"

2 Select any item▶✉ (Finish)

Disp. clock only	Specifies whether to fix the indicator display mode. When "ON" is set, a message for incoming calls or mails or an animation such as an alarm notification does not appear on the indicator display..	
Clock type	Selects the clock type from "Digital 1 to 4".	
Called	Sets whether to show the phone number of an incoming call.	
	ON	Shows the phone number or image.
	OFF	Does not show the phone number or image.
Mail	Sets whether to show the contents of a mail. When "ON" is set, the sender, date and time, and subject are shown when you receive a mail.	
Connection	Sets whether to show conditions such as dialing a voice, videophone or PushTalk call, talking, Infrared data exchange/iC communication in progress or IC card authentication in progress using an image or animation.	
	ON	Shows conditions.
	OFF	Does not show conditions.
Background i-αppli	Sets background i-αppli to ON or OFF.	
Display time	Selects the display time for the indicator display from "15 seconds", "30 seconds" and "60 seconds"	

NOTE

- When "OFF" is set for the indicator display, nothing appears on the indicator display except when you use some functions.
- When "Digital 1" to "Digital 2" is set for "Clock type", a clock is shown on the entire indicator display. While selecting those clocks, a signal strength level and icons (e.g. Manner mode) do not appear except when you have a missed call or new mail or the i-Channel information ticker appears.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the message appears on the indicator display following the receiving indication (such as caller's phone number and image) (The Chaku-moji message and receiving indication appear alternately.). If "Called" is set to "OFF", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the indicator display regardless of the "Chaku-moji" settings.
- Even if Mail is set to "ON", the sender, date and time, and subject may not be shown depending on the settings for Mail security or "Original lock".
- When an i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS is received, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the contents of the received mail appears. Even if "3D display setting" is set to "ON", 3D animation is not used for the emotion-expressing mail icon shown on the indicator display.→p.256
  You can also set your FOMA terminal to pop up an icon when receiving a mail including the specified keyword. →p.281
- When a FOMA terminal receives multiple mails at the same time, the mail address, sender name, date and time and subject of the latest mail appear.→p.30

<Backlight> MENU70

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting	Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 3 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Backlight"▶Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal display light operation. If "OFF" is set, " " appears on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	**▶Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and indicator display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
	OFF	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	**▶Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and indicator display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
Charging	Specifies the display light operations during charging.		
	Standard	The display light lights according to the "ON" setting in "Lighting".	
	All time ON	The display light stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the display light area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from "Level 3 to 1".		

NOTE

- Pressing 5 for 1 second or longer also turns the display light on or off. However, if "Area" is set to "LCD+Keys", the backlight of the keypad stays on for a while after turning off the display light.
- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the display light stays on while a call is being received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when a FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The display light also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select "OFF", the display light does not turn on. However, the display light stays on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- If "Charging" is set to "All time ON", the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the "Area" setting ("LCD+Keys" or "LCD"). If "Charging" is set to "Standard", the display light operates following the "Lighting" setting.
- Even if "Charging" is set to "All time ON" while charging, the brightness of the display light is set to "Level 1" in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for roughly 15 seconds.
- The time for lighting the message of a mail or MessageR/MessageF varies depending on the length of the message.
- During a voice call, the display light operates following the power saver mode setting in "Lighting". Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.

<Display design> MENU86

Changing the Display Color

Default setting	Color pattern: Pattern 5 Background: OFF Battery icon in Icon pattern: Standard (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue,), Green (Phone color: Pink Soda) Antenna icon in Icon pattern: Standard (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Carrot (Phone color: Pink Soda) Soft key: Standard

Use this procedure to change the designs of the text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Display design"▶Select any item

Color pattern	Selects a color pattern from Pattern 1 to 5. The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.
Background	Selects a background pattern (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among "OFF" (not displayed) "Mesh", "Soap", "STRIPE", "B-POP", "P-POP", "ORANGE", "BLACK", and "WHITE". The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.
Icon pattern	Selects the types of the battery level icon and signal strength level icon that are shown on the icon display area respectively from "Standard", "Orange", "Blue", "Green" (only for battery icons), "Carrot" (only for antenna icons), "Sushi", and "Disney".
Soft key	Selects a background pattern for the software keys from "Standard", "Orange" and "Green". The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.

NOTE

◆ The change of this function does not affect the colors of icons (except for the battery level and signal strength) and images. Furthermore, there are some screens or functions that are not affected by the change of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

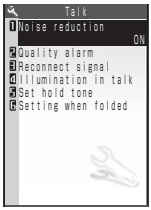
Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set> MENU57

Default setting	Menu display: List Theme: Orange Icon (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night), Green Icon (Phone color: Urban Blue), Bunny Character (Phone color: Pink Soda) Memory focus: ON

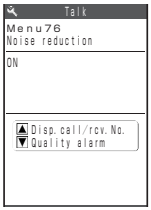
This function enables you to set the display mode of the branch menus (functions) under "SETTINGS", change the main menu design and set the Last one function for the main menu.

● Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

■ Menu display



"List"



"Detail"

Continued on next page

■ Theme



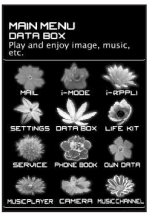
"Orange Icon"



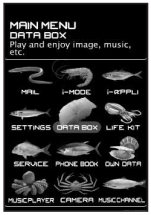
"Green Icon"*



"Bunny Character"



"Flower"



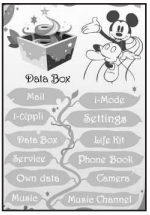
"Sushi"



"Basic Icon"



"Vegetables"



"Disney"



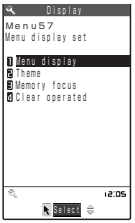
"Light Menu"

*: Selecting [clock] shows up to 5 last-selected items.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Menu display set"

The "Menu display set" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Menu display set

Menu display	Selects the display mode for branch menus from "List" and "Detail".	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.	
	Orange Icon	Sets Orange Icon.
	Green Icon	Sets Green Icon.
	Bunny Character	Sets Bunny Character.
	Flower	Sets Flower.
	Sushi	Sets Sushi.
	Basic Icon	Sets Basic Icon.
	Vegetables	Sets Vegetables.
	Disney	Sets Disney.
	Light Menu	Sets Light Menu.
	Original theme	"Changing the main menu screen design"→p.143
Memory focus	Sets whether to highlight the icon you selected the last time when opening the main menu (Last one function).	

Clear operated*	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Resets the Last one function.

*: Only available on the menu displays that support this function.

NOTE

◆ Last one function memorizes the icon of the main menu after a branch menu is displayed. The icon is not memorized when the operation is interrupted by displaying a sub item.

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image on the main menu screen.

1 Menu display set screen (p.142)▶"Theme"▶"Original theme"

The "Original theme" screen appears.
Select an image from Inbox, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created in My picture.

2 Select any item



Original theme

Function menu➡p.143

Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
i-αppli	Sets an i-αppli icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image.

■ **To set the Multitask group frame**

▶Highlight "Background image"▶(Play)▶(Frame)▶Use to select a color from the color palette

While selecting colors, press (Change) to switch the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

◆ Pressing (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the image of the selected item.
◆ If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.39) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
◆ You can set a JPEG image whose size is up to 100K bytes with 854 dots wide x 854 dots high, GIF image that is up to 854 dots wide x 480 dots high or 480 dots wide x 854 dots high or animation GIF image. If an image is larger than the display area (icon: 64 dots wide x 80 dots high, background: 240 dots wide x 427 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the proportion. If an image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
◆ An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default setting.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Original menu>

MENU52

Default setting	My Profile, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change security code

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access those functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for "MAIL", "i-MODE" and "i-αPPLI", and the medium and branch settings (functions) for "SETTINGS", "DATA BOX", "LIFE KIT", "SERVICE", "PHONE BOOK" and "OWN DATA".
- You cannot add the same function twice.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Original menu"

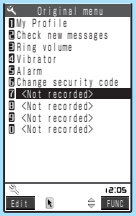
The "Original menu" screen appears.

2 **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)▶Use to select a menu item to add**

You can only select main menu items from "Mail/i-mode/i-αppli".

■ To change an already stored function

▶Highlight a stored item



Original menu

Function menu➡p.144

NOTE

◆ Pressing (MENU)▶(MENU) also opens the original menu and you can add or sort items.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds an item to the original menu.
Sort	**▶Use to select a position and press ●** Rearrange the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

<Kisekae Tool setting>

Setting Kisekae Tool Package

Setting a package downloaded from a site enables you to change settings such as ring tones, the standby screen and main menu of a FOMA terminal at a time.

- Downloading from sites→p.225
- The following settings can be performed at a time:
  - "Display setting" (p.135)
  - "Select ring tone" (p.126)
  - "Select ring tone*" in "Tone/Vibrator" in "GPS settings" (p.130)
  - "Clock Alarm Tone set" (p.131)
  - "Theme" in "Menu display set" (p.141)
  - "Clock display" (p.149)
  - "Clock type*" in "Indicator display" (p.139)
  - "Display design" (p.141)
  - "Pointer icon setting" in "Neuropointer" (p.146)
  - "Ticker color setting" in "i-Channel setting" in "i-mode settings"(p.238)
  - "Change skin" in "Music".

  *:Only available for data with "".
- When 2in1 is set, Kisekae Tool set in any mode is applied to all modes/phone numbers/mail addresses except for the following.
  - Standby screen is applied only to A mode.
  - Ring tones for voice call and videophone call are applied only to A mode.
  - Ring tone for mail is applied only to A mode.

Setting a package

- The data that matches the phone color and "Sushi" are stored at the time of purchase. "Sushi" is stored in the "Kisekae Tool" folder in Data box.
  Guide to the package list →p.364
- If storing the current settings in "お気に入り" (My favorite) before setting a package, you can restore the stored settings later.→p.145

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Kisekae Tool setting"

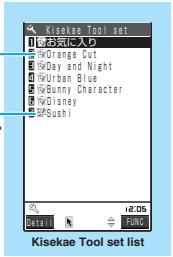
The "Kisekae Tool set list" screen appears.

2 Select an item▶"YES"

No item is set in "お気に入り" at the time of purchase.

■ To check settings

▶Highlight an item▶✉ (Detail)▶Highlight an item▶✉ (Play)



Data that matches the phone color

Package data in the "Kisekae Tool" folder

Kisekae Tool set list

Function menu➡p.145

NOTE

- Items to be changed vary depending on the package.
- The following items are automatically shown on screens if highlighted while settings are checked:
  - "Sub clock type" appears on the indicator display.
  - "Color pattern", "Background" and "Soft key" appear as the background on the shown screen.
- When a package is set, the color of "Disp. call/receive No." may be changed.
- When "i-αppli display" is set, the i-αppli standby screen have precedence in the standby screen settings.
- When "Discern connect" or "Discern group" is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
- If a package is set and then the items set at a time are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have precedence.
- Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to check the settings even in the items set.

Function menu (Kisekae Tool set list screen)

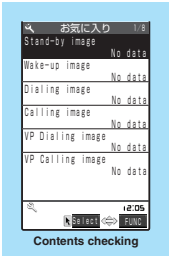
Edit title	Edits a title.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the "お気に入り" settings.

Bookmarking the current settings

1 Kisekae Tool set list screen (p.145)▶Highlight "お気に入り"▶✉ (Detail)

The items that are currently registered in "お気に入り" appear.
"No data" appears for unregistered items.

2 (FUNC)▶"Take Setting info"▶"YES"



Contents checking

Function menu➡p.146

● Changing "お気に入り" settings

You can change the items registered in "お気に入り" on the contents checking screen.

1 Contents checking screen (p.145)▶Select an item▶Change the setting

NOTE

- The settings of "Sushi" or of a downloaded Kisekae Tool package cannot be added in "お気に入り".
- Images, i-motion programs or melodies that have been downloaded from sites or attached to mails may not be added in "お気に入り" or not be set at a time.
- "Stand-by display" in which "i-αppli display" is set is not registered in "Stand-by image" in "お気に入り".
- If an image, i-motion or melody that is added in "お気に入り" is deleted, it is also deleted from "お気に入り" and "No data" appears.
- You cannot change settings on the contents checking screen of other than "お気に入り".

Function menu (Contents checking screen)

Set all[*1]	Sets the registered items at a time.
Finish[*2]	
Take Setting info[*2]	Registers the current settings in "お気に入り".
Reset Setting info[*2]	Deletes the items registered in "お気に入り".

*1: Appears on the Contents checking screen for data with " ".

*2: Appears on the Contents checking screen for data with " ".

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting	**Pointer: ON Speed: Normal** **Pointer icon setting: Simple Shape (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Carrot (Phone color: Pink Soda)**

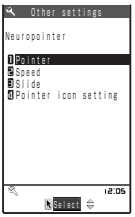
For easier use of the pointer controlled by the Neuropointer key (●), specify whether to turn the pointer on/off, the speed and design.

- To set the Neuropointer speed from "Initial setting" (p.46), select "Normal" or "High" in "Simple" (p.147).
- The pointer is available when " " appears on the screen.
- The pointer icon has two colors, which are decided by whether it is followed by the cursor or not. When "Simple Shape" is set for "Pointer icon setting", moving the blue pointer ( ) automatically selects the cursor. When the pointer is white ( ), moving it does not select the cursor.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Neuropointer"

The "Neuropointer" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Neuropointer

Pointer	Sets whether to show the pointer (whether to use the Neuropointer).	
Speed	"Changing the pointer speed"→p.147	
Slide	**Adjust**	**▶"YES"▶Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key following the instructions** Sets the limit of the Neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer effectively.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to default.
Pointer icon setting	Changes the pointer icon design. Selecting an item changes the selected icon design. To check an icon design before selecting it, press (Play). Use the function menu to change the list format (Title name or Picture) for the selection screen.	

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (p.146)▶"Speed"▶Select any item

Simple	▶**"Normal" or "High"**▶**"YES"** Chooses between two speeds.	
Detail	Sets a speed for each screen.	
	Standard[*1]	▶**Use ⊙ to select "I", "L" or "H"**▶**Use ⊙ to adjust the speed**▶**"OK"** Speed can be controlled in the range of level 0 (leftmost) to level 11 (rightmost). The more you move the slide to the right, the faster the speed becomes. The more to the left, the slower it does.
	MainMenu	
	T9/Prediction	
	Software[*2]	
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to default.	

*1: Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as the list or icon selection.
*2: The settings may not be applicable depending on the i-αppli.

<Illumination> MENU89

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting	**Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Color setting: Color 1 to 12 Missed info: ON**

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails or MessageR/MessageF.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses or groups.→p.119
- The flash pattern for ✉ and ⓘ is the same as for the incoming call lamp.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Illumination"▶Select any item

Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for "Phone", "Videophone", "PushTalk", "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF". The incoming call lamp flashes in the highlighted color.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 sec interval).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Adjust color	Sets the color.	
	Edit color name	▶**Select a color**▶**Enter the color name** A color name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
	Adjust color tone	▶**Select a color**▶**Use ⊙ to adjust the color tone**
Missed info	Sets whether the incoming call lamp keeps flashing while the icon for missed calls or new mails (i-mode mail, chat mail, SMS) is displaying (The flashing interval is longer in power saver mode).	

NOTE

- If "Pattern 1" to "Pattern 4" is selected for a ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for a ring tone or Chaku-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® is set, the "Standard" pattern is used regardless of the "Melody linkage" setting.
- While you are operating data on a microSD memory card from a PC in "microSD mode" (p.374), the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" (green) regardless of the settings of this function.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when the incoming settings are duplicated:
  ①Illumination for Discern connect→p.119 ②Illumination for Discern group→p.119
  ③Illumination

<Illumination in talk>

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting: OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Illumination in talk"▶Select a color

OFF : The incoming call lamp does not flash.
Color 1 to 7 : The lamp flashes in the selected color.
Gradation 1 : The lamp flashes changing the color.
Gradation 2 : The lamp lights up changing the color.
Gradation 3 : The lamp color quickly changes.

NOTE

◆ While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played, the answer message is played or an incoming call is held, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<IC card Illumination>

Lighting Lamps When Using IC Card Function

Default setting: ON

Set this function to light up the light when using the IC card function.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"IC card Illumination"▶"ON" or "OFF"

<Font> MENU66

Changing the Font

Default setting	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Bold Character size: Standard

Use this procedure to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on the display or indicator display.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Font"▶Select any item

Type	Selects the font type between "Font 1" and "Font 2". A sample of the highlighted font appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Thickness	Selects the thickness between "Thin" and "Bold". A text sample using the highlighted thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Character size	Sets the font size for the following screens: Text entry (edit), mail detail, webpage, screen memo, MessageR/MessageF detail, Full Browser, phonebook list, phonebook detail and My Profile	
	Standard	Sets the standard font size.
	Large	Sets the large font size.
	Separate setting	Sets the font size for character entry, mail, i-mode, Full Browser and phonebook respectively.

NOTE

◆ This function is not available to set the font color for clock display and phone number entry screen.
◆ "Font 2" is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using "Font 1".
◆ Changing this function does not affect the thickness and font size of text on the indicator display.
◆ Setting "Standard" or "Large" in "Character size" changes the font sizes for all functions subject to "Character size" at a time.
◆ The font size set in "Full brw." in "Separate setting" in "Character size" is only applied to the font in Mobile layout mode. You cannot change the font size in the Original layout mode.→p.332
◆ The font size set in "Phonebook" in "Separate setting" in "Character size" is also applied to the My Profile screen.

<Clock display> MENU39

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting	Display: ON Size: Big Color: White (Phone color: Orange Cut, Urban Blue, Pink Soda), Black (Phone color: Day and Night) Display type: World watch OFF

You can set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days shown on the standby screen, the clock display size or color or whether to show the world clock. You can also hide the date and clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. →p.30

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Clock display"▶Select any item

Display	Selects "ON" or "OFF".	
Size	**Big**	Shows the date and large clock.
	Small	Shows the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Shows the small clock at the bottom of the screen.
Color	Selects "Black" or "White".	
Display type	Selects "World watch OFF" or "World watch ON".	

NOTE

- The world clock is only available when "Size" is set to "Small".
- When "Size" is set to "Down Small" and "Ticker display setting" for i-Channel is set to "ON" or "Receiving", the clock is hidden while the ticker appears.
- When the clock display on the indicator display is set other than "Digital", the clock is displayed in English regardless of the "Display" setting of this function.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Default setting	Photo mode, Music Channel, Full Browser

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu on the screen, list screen or detail screen of the function you want to add.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons.
- Up to 15 icons can be added to Theme 1 to 3 respectively. →p.151

Continued on next page

Category	Icon (Type)	Icon title*1
Access data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if the icon has no title)
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if the icon has no title)*2
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if the icon has no title)*2
	(i-mode)	i-mode page title (URL excluding "http://" or "https://" if the icon has no title)
	(Full Browser)	Full Browser page title (URL excluding "http://" or "https://" if the icon has no title)
	(Melody)*3	Melody title ("Melody" if the icon has no title)
	(Image)*3	Image title ("Image" if the icon has no title)
	(Movie or i-motion)*3	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if the icon has no title)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if the icon has no title)
	(PDF document)	PDF document title ("Document" if the icon has no title)
	(i-αppli program)	Program name
	(GPS)	Title of Location notification ("Location notification" if the icon has no title)
Access function*4	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/ (Voice mode)/ (To Do list)/ (Schedule)/ (Text memo)/ (Access reader)/ (Bar code reader)/ (i-Channel)/ (Music Channel)/ (Music player)/ (Receive Ir data)/ (Dictionary)/ (Original menu)/ (Full Browser)	Respective function name ("Type" on the left)
Open folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title ("Folder" if the icon has no title)

*1: When a desktop icon is selected, the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.
*2: No name is displayed when adding an icon from the received mail detail screen.
*3: Pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.
*4: The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: To add a phone number from the phonebook>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶● (FUNC)▶"Add desktop icon"▶"YES"



Using desktop icons to access data or functions

1 On the standby screen▶●

"Desktop icon" screen appears.
The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon.

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons added

"◁▷" appears on the left and right of the screen. Use ◎ to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon

Function menu➡p.151

Changing the theme of desktop icons on the standby screen MENU63

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Desktop icon"

The "Theme selection" screen appears. " SET " appears for the theme that has been set.



Theme selection

Function menu➡p.151

2 Select a theme▶"YES"

If adding desktop icons (p.149) after this procedure, you can paste icons for the selected theme.

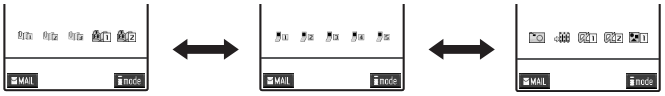
■ **To check details of the theme**

▶Highlight a theme▶(✉) (Detail)

The "Desktop icon" screen appears.

Function menu (Desktop icon screen)→p.151

■ Example for utilizing desktop icons



For shopping　For business　For private

NOTE

◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use (◇) to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Function menu (Desktop icon/Theme selection screen)

The functions listed are different between the Desktop icon and theme selection screens since the available functions vary depending on the screen.

Change desktop	Changes the theme of desktop icons.	
Display setting	**Display at all**	Always displays desktop icons.
	Display at use	Displays desktop icons only when pressing (●), sliding the Neuropointer or setting the calendar.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.*	
Sort	**▶"YES"▶Use (◇) to move an icon▶(●)** Moves the highlighted desktop icon.	
Icon info setting	Shows the title, type and details of the desktop icon.	
Reset desktop	Restores the default setting ("Photo mode" and "Music Channel" only).	
Copy	Copies desktop icons to the selected theme.	
	Copy this	**▶Select a theme** Copies the highlighted desktop icon to the selected theme.
	Copy selected	**▶Select a theme▶Use (◇)▶ to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies desktop icons to the selected theme.
	Copy all	**▶Select a theme▶"YES"** Copies all desktop icons to the selected theme.
Move	Moves desktop icons to the selected theme.	
	Move this	**▶Select a theme▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted desktop icon to the selected theme.
	Move selected	**▶Select a theme▶Use (◇)▶ to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves desktop icons to the selected theme.
	Move all	**▶Select a theme▶"YES"** Moves all desktop icons to the selected theme.
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted desktop icon.
	Delete selected	**▶Use (◇) to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple desktop icons.
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.

*: You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters on the theme selection screen.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you that you received a new mail. Highlighting this icon shows the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail and a pictograph included in the mail title using 3D animation. The mail subject is also shown.→p.153, 256	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon shows the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the chat mail using 3D animation and shows "Chat mail".→p.153, 256	Opens the Chat screen.
	Notifies you of new ToruCa.	Opens the ToruCa list screen on which the latest ToruCa is shown.
	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the "Missed calls" record.
	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches "Play/Erase msg.".
	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches "Play/Erase VP msg.".
	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps a recorded message.	Launches "Voice Mail".
	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of Alarm, Schedule or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
	Notifies you that an i-αppli could not be launched automatically.	Opens the "Auto-start info" screen.
	Notifies you that the i-αppli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Shows the security error history.
	Notifies you that software update is released or software updating has been completed.	Software Update is activated when you have received the software update notification. When the software update has been completed, Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Opens the alarm screen for "Notice designate calls" following the security code entry.
	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update has not been normally terminated or a new pattern has been released, the screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
	Notifies you that the Data Security Service information has not been updated.	Opens the screen that allows you to connect to the Data Security Center following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that you have received a request for providing the location information of the GPS function.	Opens the Location history screen.
	Notifies you that downloading the music channel has been completed.	Shows the music channel list screen.
	Notifies you that downloading the music channel program is failed.	

NOTE

- If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from the function menu, the desktop icon will disappear. However, the desktop icon of "  " remains until you display ToruCa display screen of new ToruCa or delete the new ToruCa, and the desktop icon of "  " remains until you play or delete the Record message.
- To delete a desktop icon that gives notice, press CLR for 1 second or longer (deleting the icon does not delete their contents). However, "  ", "  " and "  " will remain.
- When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time (sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the desktop icon "  " does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon.→p.179
- If you receive a new mail or chat mail of which the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon, a pictograph using 3D animation or the mail subject. Instead, "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears.

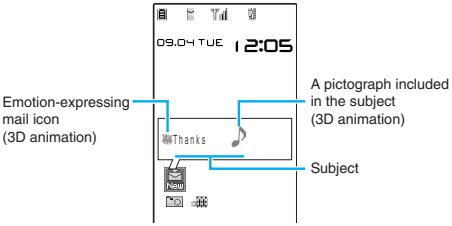
<3D display setting>

Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message

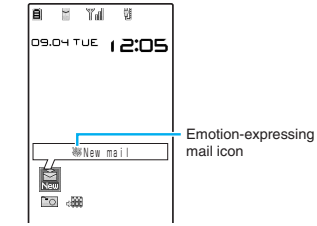
Default setting	ON

Use this procedure to use 3D animation for the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon when it is selected.

- For new mails, the mail subject up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters appears.
- Details of notice given when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted→p.152
- Emotion-expressing mail icon→p.256



New mail (Setting is "ON")



New mail (Setting is "OFF")

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"3D display setting"▶"ON"

■ **To disable 3D animation**

▶"OFF"

NOTE

- When the subject of a new mail is "No title" or SMS is received, selecting the desktop icon shows "New mail" and pops up the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail using 3D animation.
- Even if this function is set to "ON", only "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears but an emotion-expressing mail icon when "OFF" is set for "Emotion/Keyword notice" in "Mail settings".
- A 3D animation icon may not appear depending on the pictograph. If many pictographs are included in a mail subject, 3D animation may not be used for all the pictographs.

<Icons setting>

Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting: ON

You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the Neuropointer.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Icons setting"▶"ON"

■ **To disable selection**

▶"OFF"

Selecting icons with the Neuropointer

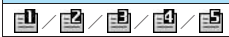
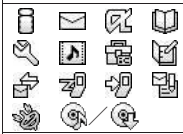
1 **On the standby screen▶Slide ● to show the pointer▶Point the icon to check▶●**

The icon title appears. You can also select date or time.

After selecting an icon using the Neuropointer, you can use ✣ to select icons.



Icon/display	After selected
	Shows "Display design".
/	Opens the screen for releasing "Original lock".
	Opens the screen for releasing "IC card lock".
	Shows "Inbox".
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Shows the list of unread mails.
(white)/ (red)	Shows "MessageR".
(white)/ (red)	Shows "MessageF".
(R, F: white)/ (R, F: red)/ (R: red, F: white)/ (R: white, F: red)	Opens the screen for selecting "MessageR" and "MessageF".
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Performs "Check new messages".
/	Shows "Display design".
self	Opens the screen for releasing "Self mode".
	Shows "Permit to send loc.".
/ /	Opens the screen for selecting "Vibrator" or "Mail/Msg. ring time".
/ /	• Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting "Ring volume" or "Mail/Msg. ring time". • Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows a message notifying that it cannot be set. • Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting "Original" or "Mail/Msg. ring time".
	Shows "Manner mode set".
	Shows "Remote monitoring".
/	Opens the screen for selecting "Schedule", "Alarm", "To Do list".
/ / / / / / / / / /	Shows "Voice Mail".
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.

Icon/display	After selected
	Shows "Play/Erase msg.".
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows "Play/Erase VP msg.".
	Shows "Backlight".
	Opens the screen for releasing "Keypad lock".
	Shows "External keys guard".
	Shows "Privacy angle".
	Shows the screen to select "Backlight" and "Privacy angle".
Date	Shows "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Shows "Alarm". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
World clock	Shows "World watch". This appears only when the world clock is set to be shown.
	
	Shows "USB mode setting".

Changing the Font Color for Dialing/Receiving Display

Default setting	White

You can change the font color for name, phone number or mail address displayed in Redial/Received calls screen and Send/Received address list screen.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Disp. call/receive No."▶Select a color

■ To reset the setting

▶(i) (Reset)

NOTE

◆ While selecting colors, press (✉) (Change) to switch the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.
You can change the font color for name, phone number and mail address displayed in the following screens:

- In-call/In-videophone call screen
  Dialing/Receiving screen
  Dialed/Received calls screen (list/detail)
  Received calls (list/detail)
  Sent/Received address screen
  Chaku-moji sent messages record screen

When you use 2in1, the information on Number A and Address A is displayed in a font color set in this procedure.
To change the font color of Number B and Address B information, select "Disp. call/receive No." in "2in1 setting"
→p.467

Security Settings

Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal 158
Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 159
Setting PIN Codes ..... PIN setting 159
Releasing PIN Lock 160

Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions 160
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal ... Dial lock/Omakase Lock 161
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule ..... Secret mode/Secret data only mode 163
Hiding Various Data ..... Secret folder 164
Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions ..... Original lock 167
Locking Key Operation Automatically ..... Keypad lock 171
Using IC Card Authentication ..... IC card authentic. 172
Disabling the External Keys ..... External keys guard 174
Using Face Authentication ..... Face authentication 174

Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Setting Security for Mail Folders ..... Mail security 176
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers ..... Restrictions 177
Rejecting Calls from Unknown Callers ..... Call setting w/o ID 178
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook .. Ring time (sec.) 179
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook... Reject unknown 180
Disabling Communication Functions ..... Self mode 180

Other security settings

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online ..... Data Security Service 181
Other Security Settings 182

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■ Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, "1111", "1234") for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- DoCoMo never asks you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver's license) proving you are the subscriber to an NTT DoCoMo shop.
  For more information, contact For inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. →p.159

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press ●.



- The entered security code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds and the alarm message appears.

● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time. If you have DoCoMo ID or a password for "My DoCoMo" (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.

To change your network security code from i-mode, access "各種手続き" (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).

* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by your information service providers.)

i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.

To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"iMenu"▶"English iMenu"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password".

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).

PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of contract. You can change your codes at any time. →p.159

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting Client certificates.

When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you currently use into the terminal, you can use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press ●.

- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, your PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.) Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

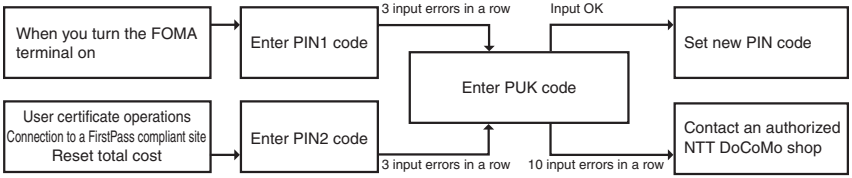


Example: PIN1 code

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



<Change security code> MENU29

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Change security code"▶Enter your security code▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code▶Select "YES"

■ **To change your security code from "Initial setting"**

▶Enter your security code▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code▶"YES"

<PIN setting>

Setting PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1code entry setting are stored in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you currently use into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes just in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

- To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"PIN setting"▶Enter your security code

The "PIN setting" screen appears.

2 Select any item



PIN setting

Change PIN1 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently used▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again** Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently used▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again** Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 Turn a FOMA terminal on, and enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code

If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 Enter the 8-digit PUK code

2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code

3 Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock	p.161
To hide your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.163
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.164
To prevent other people from viewing or altering your personal information. To restrict making or receiving phone or PushTalk calls or sending or receiving mails.	Original lock	p.167
To lock key operations automatically	Keypad lock	p.171
To unlock using a contactless IC card	IC card authentic.	p.172
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	External keys guard	p.174
To unlock using face authentication	Face authentication	p.174
To set security for mail folders to prevent other people from viewing your mails	Mail security	p.176

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To restrict calls to/from specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook to prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls	Restrictions	p.177
To prevent calls from unidentified callers	Call setting w/o ID	p.178
To prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that is not stored in the phonebook and only rings for a short period of time	Ring time (sec.)	p.179
To prevent calls from callers not listed in the phonebook	Reject unknown	p.180
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls	Self mode	p.180

<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use "Dial lock" that is set on your FOMA terminal or "Omakase Lock" that is set remotely.

- Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Available operations and functions when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set

Function	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Providing location information using the GPS function (providing location information to a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search)	○	○
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

*: You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. Even if receiving PushTalk calls, the FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations and records them as "Missed calls". You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

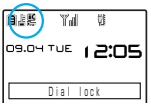
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" is reached. Once you release Dial lock or Omakase Lock, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in "Received calls".

Using a FOMA terminal to set Dial lock

Default setting
Release

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Lock"▶Enter your security code▶"Dial lock"

Operations during Dial lock

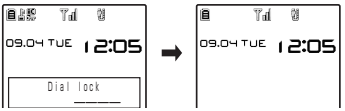


- "Dial lock" and " " appear on the display. Also, the message "Dial lock" appears on the indicator display.
- " " appears on the display at the same time and sets IC card lock to "ON", and IC card functions become unavailable. You cannot release IC card lock when Dial lock is set. However, you can release Dial lock using IC card authentication.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS or chat mails when Dial lock is set, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Dial lock is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.

Releasing Dial lock

● If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, a FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 Enter your security code on a screen when Dial lock is set▶●



Dial lock is released and " " disappears from the screen.

■ To use IC card authentication to release Dial lock

"Using IC Card Authentication"→p.172

NOTE

◆ Even if Dial lock is released, " " still appears while IC card lock is set.

◆ Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press and enter a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting
Release

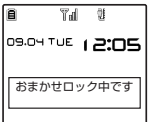
If you have lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. This protects your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. To unlock the FOMA terminal, call our Call Center.

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. You do not need to pay for the charge if you subscribe to this service when or while you temporarily stop using the FOMA terminal.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)
0120-524-360 (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (in Japanese only)
* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details about how to use or charges of Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Services and Procedures]" or contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

● Operations during Omakase Lock



● The message "おまかせロック中です" appears on the display and indicator display.

● Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with the FOMA card (UIM) you subscribe to inserted.

● While in Omakase Lock, all key operations are locked except receiving voice calls/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Other functions (including IC card) are unavailable.

● Mails received when Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.

● The FOMA card (UIM) and microSD memory card remain unlocked.

NOTE

◆ Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)

◆ You can set Omakase Lock even when other lock functions are set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock functions that had been set before Omakase Lock are reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).

◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
- The FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area.
- " " appears on a FOMA terminal because Self mode is set or data transmission via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.

◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you subscribe to "Dual Network Service" and are using the mova service.

◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a FOMA terminal is locked by the request from the subscriber to the FOMA card (UIM) inserted in the terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the FOMA card (UIM with the same phone number) as used when the lock was set is inserted. For more information on this service, contact "For inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.

◆ If you attempt to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: Release Secret data only mode: Release

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" when a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule", including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries that are stored as secret data.

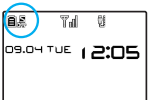
- You can move and store data in "My picture", "i-motion", "Inbox", "Outbox" or "Bookmark" into the "Secret" folder.→p.164
- If you make or receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.
- You cannot store entries as secret data in the UIM phonebook.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data MENU40

- The operations for using the "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: To store an entry in Secret mode>

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret mode"▶Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and " S " appears on the screen.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.28

■ To cancel Secret mode

▶

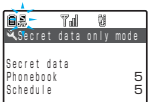
Secret mode is canceled and " S " disappears from the screen.

2 Store a "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entry

The entry is stored as secret data.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.107
Adding information to your schedule→p.424

Viewing only secret data <Secret data only mode> MENU41

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret data only mode"▶Enter your security code



Secret data only mode is set and " S " flashes. The standby screen reappears in approximately 2 seconds.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.28

■ To cancel Secret data only mode

▶

Secret mode is canceled and " S " disappears from the screen.

2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook→p.111
Checking your schedule→p.426

NOTE

- Selecting "Set secret" from the Phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- In Secret mode, " S " flashes when you select or display secret data or display a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.

Continued on next page

◆ "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
◆ If a "Phonebook" entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", "Two-touch dialing" can be used to call that number only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also secret data in the PushTalk phonebook.
◆ If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID, the phone number appears but the name. Only the phone number appears also on "Received calls". However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the "Received calls" record.
◆ If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, the mail address appears but the name. The mail address is not stored in the "Received address" record.
◆ The following functions cannot be set for "Phonebook" entries stored as secret data:
• Automatic display→p.122 • Restriction→p.177 • Discern connect→p.119
◆ If you edit a "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If you edit a phonebook entry, all the data stored in the memory number of the edited entry are stored as secret data.
◆ You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security" and then selecting "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode" while in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
◆ If "Dial lock/Omakase Lock" is set at the same time as "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", releasing "Dial lock/Omakase Lock" also cancels "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
◆ If you receive a call while editing a "Phonebook" or "Schedule", viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled and the security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set again and you can then continue the operation.
◆ When you make a call or send a mail by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, "Redial", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address" is not updated.
◆ If a Phonebook entry stored in Choku-Den is set as secret data, the entry is deleted from Choku-Den.

Changing secret data back to normal

Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.

<Example: To remove secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶"Release secret"

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the " " icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ For scheduled events

▶Schedule list screen▶(FUNC)▶"Release secret"▶"YES"
In Secret mode, the " " icon stops flashing and remains on screen.
"Schedule list function menu"→p.426

<Secret folder>

Hiding Various Data

You can use "Secret" folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

● "Secret" folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
● If you make or receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.
● The maximum number of files that can be stored in "Secret" folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (Full Browser)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	10 (6K bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	100 (2M bytes)	10 (10M bytes)

* Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the size of each file.

<Example: To move an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"

"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.163

2 Image list screen (p.342)▶Select an image and press ● (FUNC)▶"Keep in secret"

NOTE

- Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in "Pre-installed" folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret mode" or MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret data only mode" while in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

<Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser)>

- When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder of i-mode or Full Browser to access the site, the URL of the site is not stored by the Last URL function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- When mails are sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- For files attached to mails stored in Secret folders, only images or melodies can be viewed or played. View or play other kinds of attached files, after moving the mails out of Secret folders.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function or i-αppli To function from mails stored in Secret folders. " α " indicating i-αppli to be activated from a mail message changes to " α ".
- Since mails in Secret folders return to normal if they are moved out of Secret folders, chronologically-older mails may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folders. Protecting mails before moving them out of Secret folders is recommended.
- Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.
- When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if " " appears on the SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<My picture/i-motion>

- If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function or Web To function from i-motion.

<Desktop icon>

- If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
- Even if a bookmark, received mail or sent mail pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the data from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Folder list screen▶Highlight the "Secret" folder▶(FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.220)	Inbox/Outbox (p.268)	My picture (p.375)	i-motion (p.375)
Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 iC trans. all*1*2 Send all Ir data*1*2 CopyAll to microSD*1*2 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder iC trans. all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete read*1*3 Delete all*1	Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder Delete all*1

*1: Not subject to the data in the "Secret" folder.
*2: Bookmarks for Viewer type screen is not displayed.
*3: Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.220)	Inbox (p.270)	Outbox (p.272)	My picture (p.344)	i-motion (p.352)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect Unprotect Mail info No. of messages Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Memory info Title name, Picture Delete Put out	i-motion info Memory info List setting Delete Put out

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (p.273,274)	My picture (p.345)	i-motion (p.355)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Retry Delete this	Normal play Slow Fast Stop Chapter list i-motion info Screen setting Set image disp. Help

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change the data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: To restore an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

1 Set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"

"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.163

2 Folder list screen (p.342)▶"Secret"▶Select an image and press (FUNC)▶"Put out"

3 Select a folder to save the image

NOTE

◆ Since a mail moved from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. Protecting mails before moving them out of Secret folders is recommended.

<Original lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions

Default setting (Original lock 1 to 3)	OFF (Detail Data disp. Edit del.: All selected Dial/sending mail: All OFF Incoming/Mail disp.: All OFF GPS: All selected)

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information. You can also restrict making or receiving voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, or restrict sending or receiving i-mode mails or SMS.

- You can assign particular functions and data that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 according to the intended purposes.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the lock.

Activating Original lock

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Lock"▶Enter your security code

The "Lock selection" screen appears.



Lock selection

2 Select Original lock 1 to 3

Lock is enabled, and functions and data that are subject to lock are locked.

" " appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.28

■ **To change the functions and data that are subject to lock**

"Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock"→p.170

■ **To edit the title**

▶Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶(FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter a title▶(Set)

■ **To release Original lock**

▶"OFF"

Operations during Original lock

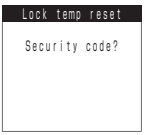
To use the functions and data that are subject to Original lock when Original lock is set, the security code entry is required.

- Entering your security code correctly deactivates Original lock temporarily so that the functions and data that are subject to Original lock become available. ("Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." functions cannot be temporarily deactivated.) Exiting all active functions and returning to the standby screen reactivate Original lock.

<Example: To view an i-mode mail while Original lock is set>

1 On the standby screen▶(✉) (MAIL)

The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.



2 Enter your security code

Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode mail→p.262

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

Original lock is reactivated and " " appears on the screen.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆ When multiple tasks are activated with the Multitask function (p.417), Original lock is not reactivated even if the standby screen reappears after an operation. Ending all tasks reactivates Original lock.

◆ The following functions are not available when Original lock is set (release Original lock to use them):

- Reset settings
- Initialize
- Software Update
- "Update" and "Set auto-update" for the scanning function

◆ If you temporarily release Original lock when "Dial/sending mail", "Incoming/Mail disp." and other lock functions are set at the same time, "  " appears on the screen.

● Functions and data that are subject to Original lock

● The functions and data that are subject to Original lock are listed below. You can specify (customize) whether to set Original lock for each group and item.→p.170

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Mail	Mail	Locks the mail function. • Mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Mails cannot be composed or sent. • Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out messages.
		Mail member	Locks the activation of each function.
		Chat group	
	i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode function. • i-mode, Full Browser and i-Channel are not available. • The ticker of i-Channel does not appear.
		Bookmark	Locks the i-mode and Full Browser bookmark list displays.
	i-αppli	i-αppli	Locks the i-αppli menu and IC card list displays. All i-αppli programs (including pre-installed programs) cannot be performed. • Original lock does not lock the IC card function. • If the i-αppli standby screen is set, it is deactivated while in Original lock. If a shot or downloaded image had been set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears. However, if an image that had been set before the i-αppli standby screen is subject to Original lock, the default image appears. If a pre-installed image had been set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears.
	ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the ToruCa list screen display. ToruCa can be acquired using a reader/writer unit even if Original lock is set. Releasing the lock shows the "New ToruCa" desktop icon.
	Multi media	My picture	Locks the activation of each function. It cannot be accessed from another function. • If the data subject to Original lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen or standby screen, a FOMA terminal works according to the default settings while in Original lock. • If "My picture" or "Chara-den" is subject to Original lock and Original lock is set, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent during a videophone call.
		i-motion	
		Melody	
		Chara-den	
		My document	
		Music	
		Kisekae Tool	
		Document viewer	
		Voice announce	
		Bar code reader	Locks the activation of each function. • Music Channel programs can be downloaded.
		Camera	
		Music Channel	
		Access reader	

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Schedule	Schedule	Locks the activation of each function. No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. • No alarm is given and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears while in Original lock. • If "Schedule" is subject to Original lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in Original lock.
		Alarm	
		To Do list	
	Memo	Play/Erase msg.	Locks the activation of each function. • Even if pressing the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check missed calls indicated by "Record message".
		Play/Erase VP msg.	
		Voice memo	Locks the activation of each function.
		Voice memo (in-call)	
	Phonebook	Phonebook/ Choku-Den	Locks the phonebook and PushTalk phonebook, and Choku-Den activation. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.) • Even for an entry stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail is received, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. • If "Only number in PH-book" is set for "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. • Even for an entry stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. • On the mail list and detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. • Original lock for "Phonebook" and "Reject unknown" cannot be set at the same time. • The "Call rejection", "Call acceptation", "Call Forwarding" and "Voice Mail" settings are deactivated. • Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out the caller or sender of "Missed calls", "New mail", "Chat mail" or "Record message".
		My Profile	Locks the "My Profile" activation.
		Dialed calls	Locks the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" activation.
		Received calls	Locks the "Received calls" or "Received address" activation. • Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check "Missed calls".
	Other settings	Text memo	Locks the "Text memo" activation.
		Notice designate calls	No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded. • Releasing the Original lock displays the "Notice designate calls" desktop icon on the standby screen. • Original lock does not lock the "Notice designate calls" setting operations. You can change the "Notice designate calls" settings.
		Chaku-moji	Locks "Chaku-moji". • Select "Create message" from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message.

Continued on next page

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Dial/sending mail	Keypad dial	Keypad dial	Prohibits you from making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls by dialing a phone number or using the Received calls record which is not registered in Phonebook. • You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from microSD memory card or using UIM operation. • You cannot make a call using a desktop icon. • You can make calls using the phonebook, Redial or Dialed calls record. • You can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
	Sending mail	Input add by keypad	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS by entering an address. • You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from microSD memory card or using UIM operation. • You cannot add an unregistered addresses in Received calls, Received address, Mail member or Chat group. • You cannot compose a mail using a desktop icon. • You can compose a mail using the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls or Sent address list. • All chat members except Myself are deleted. • All the mail addresses in Draft are deleted. All the mails in Draft with only addresses entered are also deleted.
		Sending mail	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS. • Chat mails are not available.
Incoming/Mail disp.	Incoming call		Rejects incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls or packet communication. A FOMA terminal does not work for incoming calls, and they are logged as Missed calls. • Releasing the Original lock displays the "Missed calls" desktop icon on the standby screen.
	Disp. recv. mail/msg.		Automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, but does not display the receiving and reception results screens. In addition, the terminal does not perform the receiving operation such as ringing the tone, and does not notify that a mail is received. • Releasing the Original lock displays the "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon on the standby screen. • Chat mails are not available.
GPS	GPS		Locks the GPS activation. • Location can be provided to a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search.

NOTE

◆ If data that are subject to Original lock is pasted as a "desktop icon" on the standby screen, that desktop icon does not appear while in Original lock.

Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock

● You can assign particular functions that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 depending on the intended purposes, such as locking only phonebook entries or restricting only outgoing calls/mails.
● Specify Original lock settings for each category, group, and function. →p.168
● The customized settings are retained even when Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.167)▶Highlight Original lock 1 to 3▶✉ (Detail)

The "Category list" screen appears.
" 🔒 " appears if any item in the category is subject to Original lock, and " ALL 🔒 " appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Category list

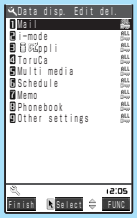
Function menu➡p.171

2 Select a category you want to change

The "Group list" screen appears.
" " appears if any item in the group is subject to Original lock, and " " appears if all items are subject to Original lock.

3 Select a group you want to change

The "Function list" screen appears.



Group list

Function menu➡p.171

4 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)▶✉ (Finish)

The checked (☑) items are subject to Original lock.
Deselect items you do not want to lock with Original lock.

5 ✉ (Finish)▶✉ (Finish)▶● (Set)

The number of times you press ✉ (Finish) varies depending on the category.



Function list

Function menu➡p.171

Function menu (Category list/Group list screens)

Select	Selects all items in the highlighted item.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in the highlighted item.
Select all	Selects all items in the displayed items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in the displayed items.

Function menu (Function list screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

<Keypad lock>

Locking Key Operation Automatically

Default setting	After folded: OFF Timer: OFF

You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal.

- Illumination flashes in blue while in Keypad lock.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release Keypad lock.

Setting Keypad lock

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Keypad lock"▶Enter your security code

2 Select any item▶✉ (Finish)

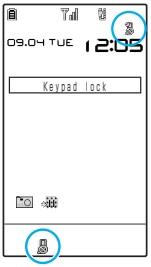
After folded	**ON**	Locks automatically when a FOMA terminal is folded.
	OFF	Does not lock when a FOMA terminal is folded.
Timer	**▶Select from "OFF", "ON after 1 minute", "ON after 5 minutes", "ON after 15 minutes" or "ON after 30 minutes"** For example, setting "ON after 5 minutes" automatically locks keys in 5 minutes without any operation on the FOMA terminal. Selecting "OFF" deactivates the timer and does not lock keys.	

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆ The timer count is reset if you use any key or open a FOMA terminal before Keypad lock is activated.

Operations during Keypad lock



- "Keypad lock", " " and " " appear on the display while in Keypad lock.
  Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.28
- While in Keypad lock, you cannot perform any key operation except receiving voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, turning a FOMA terminal on/off and using (IC card authentication function).
- While in Keypad lock, a FOMA terminal receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS and Chat mails, but you cannot view the message list screen and received mail list screen or have the FOMA terminal read out messages.
- Alarm notification for "Alarm", "Schedule" and "To Do list" is given even while in Keypad lock.

NOTE

◆ You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Keypad lock.

◆ Keypad lock is not activated even after folding a FOMA terminal or at the time set by the timer while you are on a call, exchanging data (such as i-mode), playing melody/i-motion/music (including pause) or using the camera.

Releasing Keypad lock temporarily

1 Enter your security code on a screen when Keypad lock is set▶●

■ **To use Face authentication to release temporarily**

"Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock"→p.176

■ **To use IC card authentication to release temporarily**

"Using IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock"→p.173

NOTE

◆ Releasing Keypad lock temporarily does not cancel the Keypad lock settings. Set both "After folded" and "Timer" settings to "OFF" to cancel the Keypad lock settings completely.

◆ Pressing (MENU) during a voice call displays the Keypad lock temporary release screen. You can display the main menu by releasing Keypad lock temporarily. A FOMA terminal returns to the Keypad lock waiting status when the call ends.

<IC card authentic.>

Using IC Card Authentication

Default setting	IC card authentic.: OFF IC card: Not registered

You can release Dial lock or Keypad lock or you can be authenticated as the user without entering your security code on the security code entry screen, by simply putting a FOMA terminal close to a FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card (external IC card).

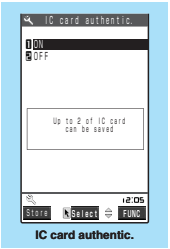
- IC card authentication function is available even when the IC card is locked.
- You can register up to two contactless IC cards.

Setting IC card authentication

● Register a contactless IC card to enable user authentication.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card authentic."▶Enter your security code

The "IC card authentic." screen appears.



IC card authentic.

Function menu➡p.173

2 "ON"▶● (Select)

■ **To set the registered contactless IC card**

▶"ON"

■ **To cancel the IC card authentication function**

▶"OFF"▶"YES" or "NO"

3 Put the FeliCa mark " " of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card

Once the card is registered," " disappears.

Function menu (IC card authentic. screen)

New ext. IC card	Registers up to two sets of contactless IC card data. If two sets of card data are already registered, old card data is deleted to register the new card data.
Del. ext. IC card	▶**Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(Finish) Deletes the selected contactless IC card data.

NOTE

◆ You can also register a contactless IC card by pressing (Store).

Using IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock

● " " appears after performing the following operations. You will be authenticated as the user simply by putting the FeliCa mark of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card registered with this function, and Dial lock/Keypad lock will be released.

1 Open the FOMA terminal while in Dial lock or Keypad lock

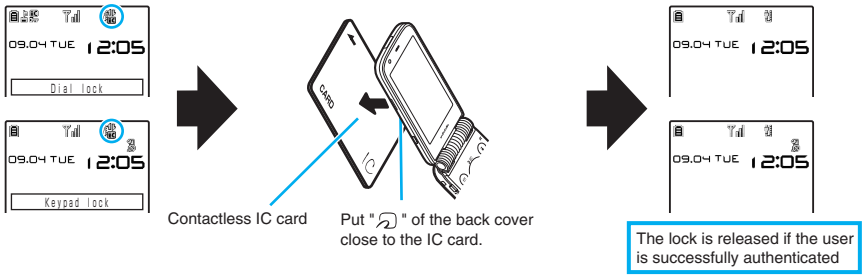
You can be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds after " " appears on the display. Pressing (auth.) on the standby screen also allows you to be authenticated as the user.

■ **To release the lock with the FOMA terminal folded**

▶Pressing (1 second or longer) allows you to be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds.

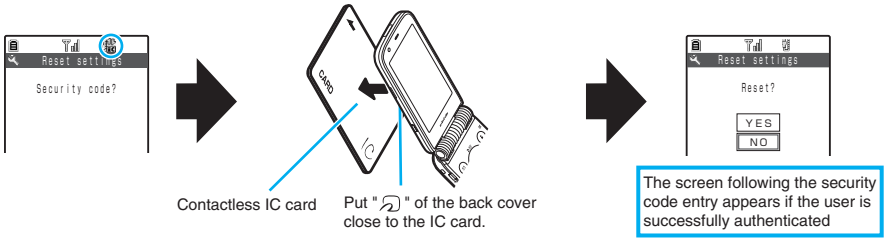
2 Put the FeliCa mark " " of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card

Lock is released if you are authenticated as the user.



● Using IC card authentication when entering your security code

● " " automatically appears on the security code entry screen, and you can be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds. By putting the FeliCa mark of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card registered with this function during this period, you will be authenticated as the user and able to perform the intended operation.



NOTE

- ◆ This function may be unavailable for some contactless IC cards even if they are compatible with FeliCa.
- ◆ Your card may be replaced by the card company. When your card is replaced, register the new card from the function menu (IC card authentic. screen).
- ◆ If "Function to reset" under "Face authentication" is set to "Keypad lock", Face authentication is activated before IC card authentication. After Face authentication is completed, user authentication with IC card authentication function (security code entry) is activated.
- ◆ If you use a contactless IC card not registered by this function for user authentication, the message indicating that the lock cannot be released appears, and user authentication fails. If it fails 5 times in a row, IC card authentication becomes unavailable and only your security code will be available for authentication. However, if authentication using your security code is successful afterwards, IC card authentication will be available again.
- ◆ You cannot use the IC card authentication function by entering the security code used when receiving data via iC communication.

<External keys guard>

Disabling the External Keys

Default setting: OFF

You can disable the external keys (assist key, ▲, ▼ (MEMO/CHECK)) by folding a FOMA terminal. You cannot disable ▯ (🎤) using this function.

● In the situations listed below, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting. However, you cannot activate the camera by pressing ▼ (📷) for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded.

- A FOMA terminal is open.
- An equipment such as flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone terminal.
- The external connector is connected to a PC or other device and " " and " " appear on the screen.
- The external connector is connected to a printer and " " appears on the screen.

1 (MENU) ▶ (✳) **(1 second or longer)**

The external keys are disabled (when a FOMA terminal is folded) and " " appears on the screen.



■ To cancel this function

▶Repeat Step 1

" " disappears.

<Face authentication>

Using Face Authentication

Default setting: OFF New image: Not stored Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected

Take a photo of your face to identify you when releasing Keypad lock and IC card lock. Register a name of the image as a keyword used in case that the authentication fails.

● If the front camera lens is dirty, malfunction may occur. Wipe off the dirt with a soft cloth before use.

● Whether you are properly identified depends on the face status. The following measures may be available:

Condition	Measures
There is a big contrast between bright and dark, e.g. because the light is too strong or you are under incandescent light in a dark place.	Move to a place where the face is evenly lighted.
The light shines on your face and the whole face looks white.	
Hair, glasses, mask, etc. hides the characteristics of your face (eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, etc.).	Do up your hair or take off your glasses or mask so that your eyes, nose, mouth and eyebrows can be seen clearly.

● The face authentication technology does not guarantee complete identification. NTT DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or damage to you arising from use by a third party or authentication failure.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Face authentication"▶Enter your security code



Face authentication

Function menu➡p.175

2 "ON"▶"OK"

The "New image" screen appears. Read the cautions carefully.

■ **To cancel Face authentication**

▶"OFF"▶"YES" or "NO"

3 Adjust your eyes to the guide frame▶●

The shot is repeated three times. Each shot is saved.
If the save or shot is not completed, the already saved shot is deleted, so that no image is stored.
When three shots are completely saved, the "Edit image name" screen appears.



New image

■ **To stop shooting halfway**

▶CLR▶"YES"

4 Enter an image name▶"YES"

The entered image name is used as a keyword in case that the authentication fails.
An image name can contain 2 to 8 double-byte or 4 to 16 single-byte characters.

■ **To edit an image name**

▶Select "NO" or the image name

5 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)

The checked (☑) items are subject to Face authentication. Deselect items for which you do not want to use Face authentication.

Function menu (Face authentication screen)

New image	Stores images.
Edit image name	**▶Enter an image name▶"YES"**
Delete image	Deletes images.
Function to reset	Selects the function to release using Face authentication. **▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)**

NOTE

◆Keep a separate note of the stored image name, which is required in case authentication fails. To prevent others from knowing it, use a character combination that cannot be easily guessed.
◆If the same image is used for a long period of time, the authentication may fail because your face changes due to age, sunburns or scars. To maintain high successful authentication rate, you are recommended to update your image occasionally.
◆If IC card lock or Keypad lock is set to "Function to reset" and IC card authentication is also set to on at the same time, Face authentication is activated before IC card authentication.
◆Face authentication is available when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted. However, you cannot release Keypad lock or IC card lock using the Face authentication.

● Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock

If you have stored an image for "Face authentication" and selected "Keypad lock" for "Function to reset", Face authentication is performed to identify that you are the owner of the FOMA terminal when releasing the lock.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for "Face authentication" to release IC card lock.
- To use Face authentication to release IC card lock→p.312

1 Press ● (auth.) on the standby screen

The "Face scanning" screen appears.

2 Position your face so that the whole face appears on the display

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name▶"OK"



Face scanning

3 Enter your security code

Keypad lock is released temporarily and " " disappears from the screen.

<Mail security>

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting: No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen to end a mail task. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open an secured Inbox or Outbox folder.
- The " " icon appears for the secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as " ", " ", " " or " " appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Mail settings"▶"Mail security"▶Enter your security code▶Use ● to select a checkbox (☐)

The selected mailbox is checked.
To deselect the checked mailbox, select it again.



2 When you finish the settings, press ✉ (Finish)

Setting security for individual folders

1 Inbox folder list screen (p.263)/Outbox folder list screen (p.263)▶Highlight the folder to set the security▶● (FUNC)▶"Mail security"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

■ **To cancel mail security**

▶Repeat Step 1

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting
All OFF

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

● The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptation	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers.
Call Forwarding	Forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

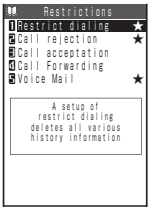
● You can specify up to 20 phone numbers for each item.
● You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.
● This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. Setting this function along with "Caller ID Request" and "Call setting w/o ID" is recommended.
● You cannot set Call rejection and Call acceptation, or Call Forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number simultaneously.
● This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
● If you edit or delete a phone number specified in this function, the restrictions are canceled. However, setting "Restrict dialing" restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number to cancel Restrict dialing.
● The "Restrict dialing", "Call rejection" and "Call acceptation" settings are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook entries.

● When Restrict dialing is set

● You cannot make any calls using keypad and Received calls record including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot retrieve phone numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using "UIM operation".
● The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the Restrict dialing setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶"Restrictions"▶Enter your security code▶Select a function



A star "★" appears next to the selected function.

■ **To deselect a selected function**

▶Select a function with a star "★"
The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.

■ **To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers**

▶Press CLR twice to return to the phonebook list screen▶Use ⊛ to display the desired phone number▶Repeat step 1

Once you press ⏻ to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number and then set restrictions again for phone numbers including the canceled number.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

◆ You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
◆ To use "Automatic display" at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which "Automatic display" has been set.
◆ Only the phone numbers specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

Continued on next page

<Call rejection/Call acceptation>

- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the number is recorded as a "Missed calls" in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed calls" desk top icon appears on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service. In this case, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed calls" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- While Original lock is set for "Phonebook" items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptation.
- You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptation is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- If no forwarding number is designated or you have not subscribed to "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail", calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- While Original lock is set for "Phonebook" items, this function is disabled.

Checking the restriction settings

MENU12

1 Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶"Restrictions"▶Enter your security code

The "Restrictions" screen appears.



Restrictions

Function menu➡p.178

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1 Restrictions screen▶Highlight a function with a star "★"▶(FUNC)▶Select any item

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

<Call setting w/o ID> MENU10

Rejecting Calls from Unknown Callers

Default setting	All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls from callers who hide the caller ID based on the reason given.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Call setting w/o ID"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or payphones or calls sent via the call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from payphones.
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller's phone.

2 Specify whether to accept or reject incoming calls for the selected item

Accept	Accepts calls.	
	Select ring tone	Selects a ring tone. →p.126 When "Same as ring tone" is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Phone" setting in "Select ring tone".
	Select calling disp.	Selects a receive display. →p.136 When "Same as display" is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Calling" setting in "Display setting".
Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls without the caller ID, the "Videophone" setting in "Select ring tone" and "V.phone Calling" setting in "Display setting" are applied. If you receive PushTalk calls without the caller ID, the "PushTalk" setting in "Select ring tone" is applied.
- When "Reject" is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- If you receive a call from a caller who is set to "Reject", the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- Only Accept/Reject of "User unset" can be set for PushTalk calls.

<Ring time (sec.)> MENU90

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting	Set mute seconds: OFF Mute seconds: 1 sec Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice, videophone or PushTalk call of which caller is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone or PushTalk call.
- If "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject", you cannot set "Set mute seconds".

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring time (sec.)"▶Select any item

Set mute seconds	**ON**	▶**Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds)** Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
	OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
Missed calls display		Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.

NOTE

- While a FOMA terminal is ringing, a ring tone sounds, the terminal vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes and an incoming call is indicated on the indicator display.
- When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, a FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the Record message function, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for Record message than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting: Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. This function should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID Request" service and "Call setting w/o ID".
- If "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time (sec.)" is set to "ON", you cannot set "Reject unknown".

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Reject unknown"▶Enter your security code▶"Reject"

■ **To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook**

▶"Accept"

NOTE

- When "Call setting w/o ID" accepts calls from payphones or calls without the caller ID, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Call setting w/o ID" setting even if this function is set to "Reject".
- When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to "Reject".
- When phone numbers are specified in "Call acceptation" in "Restrictions", you can only receive calls from these phone numbers even if this function is set to "Accept".
- When "Reject" is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate", the caller hears a busy tone. However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the caller does not hear a busy tone and the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service. In this case, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed calls" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

<Self mode>

Disabling Communication Functions

Default setting: Release

You can set a FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls.

- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Self mode"▶"YES"

Self mode is set and "self" appears on the screen.

■ **To cancel Self mode**

▶Repeat Step 1

Self mode is canceled and "self" disappears from the screen.

When Self mode is set

- Incoming voice or videophone calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear the message that your FOMA terminal is out of the service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see the message that your FOMA terminal is out of the service area or turned off. If the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If a PushTalk call arrives, a "Disconnected" response is sent to the members.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange, iC communication or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected, 64K data communication and user authentication with IC card authentication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write data on the IC card by using the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

<Data Security Service>

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online

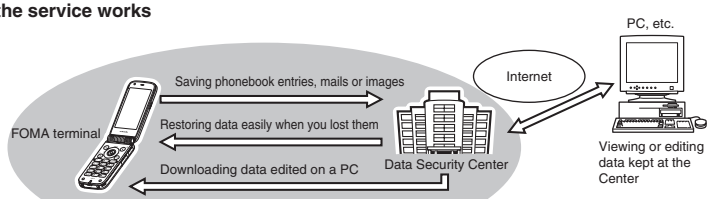
Subscription Required

Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service where you can back up phonebook entries, images, mails stored in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as "stored data") to the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Even if you lose your FOMA terminal or get it wet then the stored data is deleted, use i-mode to retrieve the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can easily edit the data stored at the Data Security Center on the My DoCoMo page on your PC, and save the edited data in the FOMA terminal.

* For details on how to use Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

How the service works



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to the Data Security Service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).
- See the following pages for operations of saving data at Data Security Service:
  - "Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center"→p.123
  - "Saving mails at the Data Security Center"→p.273
  - "Saving images to the Data Security Center"→p.346
  - "Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center"→p.124

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services related to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.311
To avoid "nuisance calls" such as prank calls or unsolicited sales calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.462
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.462
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.232
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.518
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.524
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.256
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
To change/check your mail address	Change/Confirm Mail Address	
To reject mails with URLs	Spam mail prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/ Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention "SMS Rejection Settings"	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	
To find the approximate location of the lost terminal	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

NOTE

◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular giving your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking functions are set at the same time.

①Nuisance Call Blocking

②Reject unknown or Ring time (sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

Camera

Before Using the Camera 184
Shooting Still Images ..... Photo mode 191
Shooting Movies ..... Movie mode 197
Changing the Shooting Settings 202
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 204
Scanning Text ..... Access reader 206

Before Using the Camera

You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera of your FOMA terminal.

● You cannot activate the Camera function or shoot any image with you FOMA terminal folded.

Using the camera

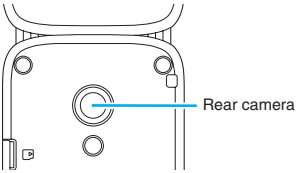
To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

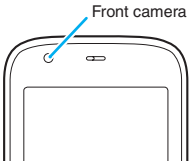
■ Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). This camera is available for close-up shooting. →p.184
You can also shoot still images by using auto focus. →p.191

■ Front camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.





● The cameras are manufactured using extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in dim conditions.
● Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
● Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
● Image quality may deteriorate if a FOMA terminal is left in a warm place for a long period of time.

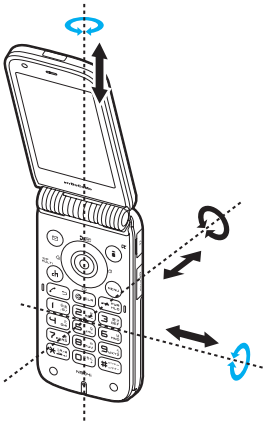
● Close-up

● To take close-up photos, select "Close-up" from "Photo mode" (p.199) under "Image quality". The camera is focused on an object approximately 10 cm away from the rear lens.

● Shake correction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the shake correction function. This function prevents camera shake in six axial directions while shooting still images and four axial directions while shooting movies using the rear camera.

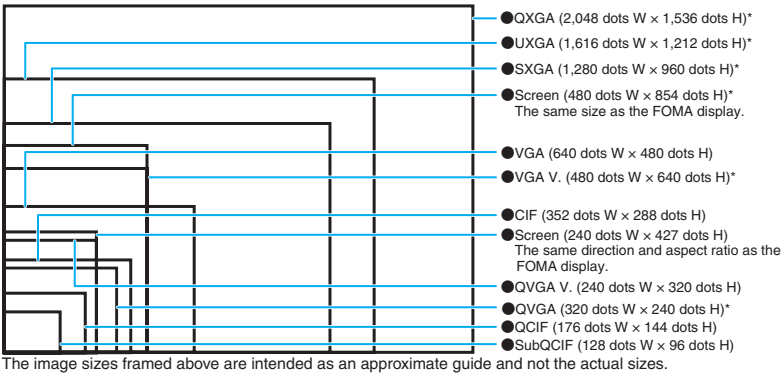
Shake correction function →p.200



* Blue arrows only applicable to still images

Image size and number of images

● The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N904i. Choose the size that suits your purpose:



The image sizes framed above are intended as an approximate guide and not the actual sizes.

*: Cannot be changed when using the front camera.

[Table 1] Approximate maximum numbers of still images to be stored for each destinations

Destination	Quality	QXGA	UXGA	SXGA	Screen (480 x 854)	VGA	VGA V.	CIF	Screen (240 x 427)	QVGA V.	QCIF	Sub QCIF
N904i (Phone)	Super fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 12	Approx. 12	Approx. 14	Approx. 14	Approx. 14	Approx. 14	Approx. 72	Approx. 72	Approx. 130	Approx. 240
	Fine	Approx. 8	Approx. 14	Approx. 14	Approx. 72	Approx. 72	Approx. 72	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 360	Approx. 360
	Normal	Approx. 14	Approx. 22	Approx. 22	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 180	Approx. 180	Approx. 180	Approx. 480	Approx. 480
microSD (64M byte)	Super fine	Approx. 60	Approx. 99	Approx. 99	Approx. 118	Approx. 118	Approx. 118	Approx. 291	Approx. 542	Approx. 542	Approx. 948	Approx. 1897
	Fine	Approx. 80	Approx. 118	Approx. 118	Approx. 542	Approx. 542	Approx. 542	Approx. 948	Approx. 948	Approx. 948	Approx. 1897	Approx. 1897
	Normal	Approx. 118	Approx. 189	Approx. 189	Approx. 948	Approx. 948	Approx. 948	Approx. 1265	Approx. 1265	Approx. 1265	Approx. 3795	Approx. 3795

- The maximum number of still images that can be stored may vary depending on the shooting conditions, etc.
- The FOMA terminal defines UXGA as 1,616 dots wide x 1,212 dots high and SXGA as 1,280 dots wide x 960 dots high.

[Table 2] Approximate maximum shooting time for each destinations to store

Destination	Image size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
				Quality setting				Quality setting			
				Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
N904i (Phone)	QVGA	2MB	Normal	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 34 sec.	Approx. 17 sec.	Approx. 9 sec.	Approx. 410 sec.	Approx. 170 sec.	Approx. 85 sec.	Approx. 45 sec.
			Video	Approx. 88 sec.	Approx. 35 sec.	Approx. 17 sec.	Approx. 9 sec.	Approx. 440 sec.	Approx. 175 sec.	Approx. 85 sec.	Approx. 45 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 108 min.			
	QCIF	500KB	Normal	Approx. 104 sec.	Approx. 53 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.	Approx. 34 min.	Approx. 17 min.	Approx. 400 sec.	Approx. 320 sec.
			Video	Approx. 128 sec.	Approx. 64 sec.	Approx. 21 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.	Approx. 42 min.	Approx. 21 min.	Approx. 420 sec.	Approx. 320 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 316 sec.				Approx. 105 min.			

Continued on next page

Destination	Image size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
				Quality setting				Quality setting			
				Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
N904i (Phone)	QCIF	2MB	Normal	Approx. 428 sec.	Approx. 219 sec.	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 63 sec.	Approx. 35 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 410 sec.	Approx. 315 sec.
			Video	Approx. 524 sec.	Approx. 262 sec.	Approx. 87 sec.	Approx. 66 sec.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 21 min.	Approx. 435 sec.	Approx. 330 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 108 min.			
	SubQCIF	500KB	Normal	Approx. 176 sec.	Approx. 67 sec.	Approx. 29 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 58 min.	Approx. 22 min.	Approx. 580 sec.	Approx. 350 sec.
			Video	Approx. 256 sec.	Approx. 86 sec.	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 21 sec.	Approx. 85 min.	Approx. 28 min.	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 420 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 316 sec.				Approx. 105 min.			
		2MB	Normal	Approx. 12 min.	Approx. 276 sec.	Approx. 119 sec.	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 60 min.	Approx. 23 min.	Approx. 595 sec.	Approx. 410 sec.
			Video	Approx. 17 min.	Approx. 350 sec.	Approx. 131 sec.	Approx. 87 sec.	Approx. 87 min.	Approx. 29 min.	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 435 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 108 min.			
microSD (64M bytes)	QVGA	2MB	Normal	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 34 sec.	Approx. 17 sec.	Approx. 9 sec.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544 sec.	Approx. 288 sec.
			Video	Approx. 88 sec.	Approx. 35 sec.	Approx. 17 sec.	Approx. 9 sec.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544sec.	Approx. 288 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 691 min.			
		Long -time	Normal	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544 sec.	Approx. 288 sec.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544 sec.	Approx. 288 sec.
			Video	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544 sec.	Approx. 288 sec.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 18 min.	Approx. 544 sec.	Approx. 288 sec.
			Voice	Approx. 119 min.				Approx. 691 min.			
	QCIF	500KB	Normal	Approx. 104 sec.	Approx. 53 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.	Approx. 227 min.	Approx. 115 min.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 34 min.
			Video	Approx. 128 sec.	Approx. 64 sec.	Approx. 21 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.	Approx. 279 min.	Approx. 139 min.	Approx. 45 min.	Approx. 34 min.
			Voice	Approx. 316 sec.				Approx. 689 min.			
		2MB	Normal	Approx. 428 sec.	Approx. 219 sec.	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 63 sec.	Approx. 228 min.	Approx. 116 min.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 33 min.
			Video	Approx. 524 sec.	Approx. 262 sec.	Approx. 87 sec.	Approx. 66 sec.	Approx. 279 min.	Approx. 139 min.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 35 min.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 691 min.			
		Long -time	Normal	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 116 min.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 33 min.	Approx. 228 min.	Approx. 116 min.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 33 min.
			Video	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 35 min.	Approx. 279 min.	Approx. 139 min.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 35 min.
			Voice	Approx. 120 min.				Approx. 691 min.			
	SubQCIF	500KB	Normal	Approx. 176 sec.	Approx. 67 sec.	Approx. 29 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 348 min.	Approx. 146 min.	Approx. 63 min.	Approx. 43 min.
			Video	Approx. 256 sec.	Approx. 86 sec.	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 21 sec.	Approx. 558min.	Approx. 187 min.	Approx. 69 min.	Approx. 45 min.
			Voice	Approx. 316 sec.				Approx. 689 min.			
		2MB	Normal	Approx. 12 min.	Approx. 276 sec.	Approx. 119 sec.	Approx. 82 sec.	Approx. 385 min.	Approx. 147 min.	Approx. 63 min.	Approx. 43 min.
			Video	Approx. 17 min.	Approx. 350 sec.	Approx. 131 sec.	Approx. 87 sec.	Approx. 558 min.	Approx. 186 min.	Approx. 69 min.	Approx. 46 min.
			Voice	Approx. 21 min.				Approx. 691 min.			

Destination	Image size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
				Quality setting				Quality setting			
				Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
microSD (64M bytes)	SubQCIF	Long -time	Normal	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 63 min.	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 385 min.	Approx. 147 min.	Approx. 63 min.	Approx. 43 min.
			Video	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 69 min.	Approx. 46 min.	Approx. 558 min.	Approx. 186 min.	Approx. 69 min.	Approx. 46 min.
			Voice	Approx. 120 min.				Approx. 691 min.			

- The time shown above is the approximate shooting time that you can shoot for each file size.
- The available shooting time may vary depending on the shooting conditions, etc.

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- A sound heard when the rear camera is launched is no problem.
- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly at the sun or an extremely bright lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After finishing the screen, the camera screen reappears and the shots taken before receiving a call or alarm notification can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during brightness or other adjustment, the adjustment is determined and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during self-timer operation, the operation is interrupted.
  - A voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication data arrives.
  - An alarm of Alarm, Schedule or To Do list is given.
  - An operation of another function is performed.
- Shooting is not interrupted in the following cases:
  - If you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the reception results screen being displayed regardless of the "Receiving display" settings (p.276).
  - Selecting "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" enables you to continue shooting, perform the camera settings or operate the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even in "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)", a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, auto timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if "Earphone" is set to "Earphone (only)" and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- If Shake correction is set to "OFF", moving a FOMA terminal while shooting may blur images. It is recommended to set Shake correction to "Auto" before shooting.
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting "Auto save set" (p.193, 198) to "ON" allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in "Select to save" without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

Continued on next page

■ Copyright Information

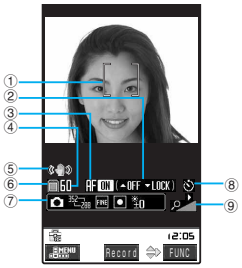
● Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it personally.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

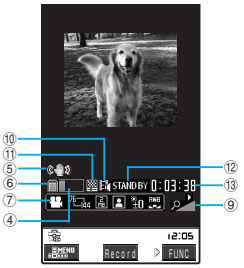
Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.

Photo mode shooting (for CIF (352 × 288))



Movie mode shooting (for QCIF (176 × 144))



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① **Focus frame**		Setting AFchange to "ON" changes the auto focus frame as follows: • White: Before focusing • Dotted white: Focusing • Green: Focused • Dotted red: Focusing failed	p.192
② **AF operation guidance**		Shows the guide to the AFchange and focus lock.	p.192
③ **Auto focus change**		"AFchange" is set to "ON".	p.191
		"AFchange" is set to "OFF".	
④ **Remaining storage count/ Memory info**[*1]		Shows the number of photos that can be saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or microSD memory card on the Photo mode screen. • White: 11 or more • Yellow: 10 or fewer • Red: No memory available	—
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or microSD memory card using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. • Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining • Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining • Red: No memory available[*2]	—
⑤ **Shake correction**		Appears when Shake correction is set to "Auto".	p.200
⑥ **Select to save**		Shows the destination folder.	p.193 p.198
⑦ **Shooting menu**		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing ● (MENU) or 1 to 6.	p.189

Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
⑧ **Auto timer**		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.203
⑨ **Zoom**		Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (or) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing or .	p.202
⑩ **Movie type set**		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.198
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	
⑪ **Quality setting**		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Long dur. Mode".	p.198
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Normal".	
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Fine mode".	
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Super Fine mode".	
⑫ **Shooting status**	●REC	Shows that a movie is being shot.	p.197
	STAND BY	Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
⑬ **Remaining shooting time**	0:03:38	Shows the time left (hours:minutes:seconds).	p.197

*1: The icon does not appear if microSD is selected for the destination and the microSD memory card is not inserted.
*2: Still images or movies can be shot as long as the "File size" is not set to "Long time" to shoot movies. The shot is saved or overwritten in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD memory card.

NOTE

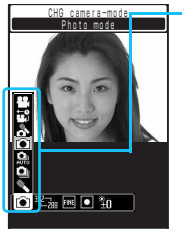
◆ The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings at a time of shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

● Guide to the shooting menu

- Pressing (✉) (MENU) or 1 to 6 shows the shooting menu.
- Press (i) (FUNC) and select "Help" or press 0 to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be performed from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

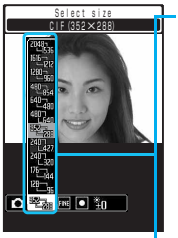
1 Shooting screen▶(✉) (MENU)▶Use ⊕ to select any of the following

Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.
Items that can be selected from the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode
- Movie mode.....Shoots a movie. →p.197
- Chance capture .....Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting. →p.201
- Picture voice (Photo mode).....Records voice to add to a still image you shot. →p.201
- Photo mode.....Shoots a still image. →p.191
- A-Continuous mode (Auto) ....Shoots still images continuously at a time. →p.194
- M-Continuous mode (Manual)....Continuously shoots still images one by one. →p.194
- Voice mode .....Records voice only. →p.202

Continued on next page



Select size
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- QXGA ..... Shoots in QXGA (2,048 x 1,536).
- UXGA ..... Shoots in UXGA (1,616 x 1,212).
- SXGA ..... Shoots in SXGA (1,280 x 960).
- Screen ..... Shoots in Screen (480 x 854). (480×854)
- VGA ..... Shoots in VGA (640 x 480).
- VGA V. ..... Shoots in VGA V. (480 x 640).
- JAVA ..... Shoots in JAVA (WVGA) (480 x 480).
- CIF ..... Shoots in CIF (352 x 288).
- Screen ..... Shoots in Screen (240 x 427). (240×427)
- QVGA V. ..... Shoots in QVGA V. (240 x 320).
- QCIF ..... Shoots in QCIF (176 x 144).
- SubQCIF ..... Shoots in SubQCIF (128 x 96).
- JAVA* ..... Shoots in JAVA (240 x 240).

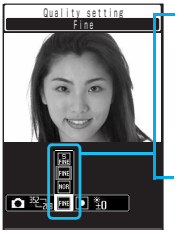
(Default: Screen (240 x 427) for the front camera, Screen (480 x 854) for the rear camera)

Select size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- QVGA ..... Shoots in QVGA (320 x 240).
- QCIF ..... Shoots in QCIF (176 x 144).
- SubQCIF ..... Shoots in SubQCIF (128 x 96).

(Default: QCIF)

*: This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.



Quality setting
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine ..... Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine ..... Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal ..... Saves the shot as a small-sized file.

(Default: Super Fine)

File size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- 500KB ..... Shoots up to 500K bytes as the file size.
- 2MB ..... Shoots up to 2M bytes as the file size.
- Long time ..... Shoots for a long time.

(default: 2MB)

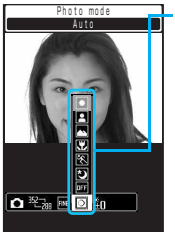
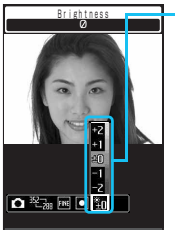


Photo mode
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Auto ..... Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait ..... Suitable for shooting people.
- Scenery ..... Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views).
- Close-up ..... Suitable for close-up shooting. →p.184
- Sports mode ..... Suitable for shooting moving objects.
- Night mode ..... Suitable for shooting people in dim places.
- OFF ..... Does not use any effects for shooting.

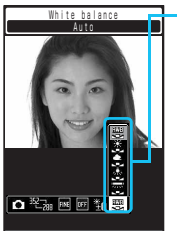
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, Continuous mode)/Portrait (Movie mode))



Brightness

- ..... Sets the brightness of the shot (-2/-1/(+-)0/+1/+2).

(When the camera launches: (+-)0)



White balance

- Auto ..... Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine ..... Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy ..... Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb .. Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
- Fluorescent lamp ... Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

(Default: Auto)

NOTE

◆ You can create desktop icons of "Movie mode", "Photo mode" and "Voice mode" from the functions menu launched from (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Camera". The "Photo mode" desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons→p.149

<Photo mode>

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can also save the shots directly in the microSD memory card.
- You can specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

How to shoot still images

The auto focus function is available for shooting still images with the rear camera.

- Press (timer) on the "Photo mode" screen (p.192) to turn on/off the auto focus.
- Switch between ON and OFF to select any of the following three shooting methods:

Method	Auto focus	Description
Auto focus	**ON**	When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically adjusted on the object in the center of the screen. The center of the screen is focused and then a still image is shot. When the object is focused, the focus frame turns green. When the object is not focused, the focus frame turns red.
AF lock	**ON**	Locks the focus on an object before releasing the shutter.→p.192 E.g. when an object you want to shoot is off-centered on the screen, you can manually focus on the object and change the composition.
Focus fixed	**OFF**	Shoots without using the auto focus. You can quickly shoot a still image so that you do not miss the shutter chance.

NOTE

◆The auto focus ON/OFF settings changed during shooting are retained while the camera runs. The auto focus is always set to "ON" when the camera launches.

◆Keep a distance of at least 30 cm from an object when using the auto focus function.

◆The object may not be properly focused when:

- It is dark
- The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between bright and dark)
- There are close objects and remote objects seen through the lens
- There is a light or something in the shooting area
- The object is moving
- You are moving a FOMA terminal

◆Completing the focus lock fixes the camera brightness. If the camera is moved after completing the focus lock, the camera brightness may be inappropriate then. In this case, retry the focus lock, or cancel the AF lock to adjust the brightness.

Shooting still images

1 On the standby screen ▶● ▶"📷" ▶●

The "Photo mode" screen appears.
Pressing ▼[📷] for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the "Photo mode" screen.

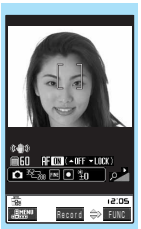


Photo mode

Function menu➡p.192

■ **To turn on/off the auto focus**
▶⏲

2 Point the camera at an object ▶● or ▼[📷]

The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The "Image checking" screen appears.



Image checking

Function menu➡p.193

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**
▶Set the auto focus to "OFF"▶● or ▼[📷]

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR▶"YES"

3 ●

The shot image is stored in the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.193).

● Shooting still images with AF lock

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶Press ⏲ to set the auto focus to "ON"

Confirm that the auto focus icon is "AF ON". →p.188

2 Point the camera at an object▶Ⓠ

Pressing Ⓠ again resets the focus lock. Completing the focus lock turns the focus frame into green and sounds the AF lock tone.

3 ● or ▼[📷]

The image is shot.

NOTE

- ◆It may take some time to complete focus lock. If the focus lock fails, the AF lock tone does not sound and the focus frame turns into dotted red.
- ◆Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:
  - MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Camera"▶"Photo mode"
- ◆Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the "Display size" to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in QCIF (176 x 144) or in SubQCIF (128 x 96), the image appears enlarged and may look grainy on the image checking screen.
- ◆Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving an image to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆"📱" flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.
- ◆You cannot use the auto focus function if "Photo mode" (p.190) is set to "Night mode".

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the same settings as the shooting menu (p.189).
Quality setting	
AFchange[*1]	Turns on/off the auto focus on the rear camera.
Light[*1]	Turns on/off the light.
Interval/Number[*2]	"Setting the shooting interval and number of shots"→p.195
Image quality	
• **Photo mode**	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting"→p.199
• **Brightness**	**▶Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "-2 to (+-)0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "(+-)0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	"Setting the white balance"→p.199 The white balance cannot be specified unless Photo mode is "OFF".
• **Color mode set**	"Setting the effects on the photographed images"→p.199
• **Image tuning**[*1]	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images"→p.200
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	"Using the auto timer"→p.203
Select frame[*3]	"Shooting framed images"→p.196

Auto save set	Turns on/off the Auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in "Select to save".
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **microSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than QVGA V. (240 x 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 x 144) nor SubQCIF (128 x 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the data sizes of images, etc. stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Shake correction*1*3	"Setting the shake correction"→p.200
Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
• **From loc. history**	Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image.
• **Loc. info detail**	Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
• **Delete loc. Info**	Deletes the added location information.

*1:The option cannot be selected or set for the front camera.
*2:The option cannot be set in Photo mode.
*3:The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>
◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Select to save>
◆Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
◆You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>
◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.193).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message*	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted"→p.197
Edit image	▶ⓘ **(FUNC)**▶**Select an item to edit** "Editing Images"→p.348 The image cannot be edited if the size is SXGA (1,280 x 960) or larger.
Set as display	■**To set as Stand-by display** ▶**Select a screen**▶**Select how to display the image** ■**To set to screens such as Dialing or Calling** ▶**Select a screen** ■**To set for videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling)** ▶**Select a screen**▶**Check the image**▶●▶**"YES"** Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is SXGA (1,280 x 960) or larger. Also, if the image size exceeds 100K bytes, it cannot be set except for the Stand-by display and Wake-up display.
Change frame	"Changing the frame"→p.197
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than QVGA V.(240 x 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 x 144) nor SubQCIF (128 x 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **microSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

Continued on next page

Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
• **From loc. history**	Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image.
• **Loc. info detail**	Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
• **Delete loc. Info**	Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted. However, Choku-den is not available when 2in1 is set to B mode.

<Edit image>

◆Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.

◆"Compose message" and "Save" are available after you edit an image.

<Set as display>

◆Selecting "microSD" in "Select to save" saves images to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the images to the microSD memory card).

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.

◆You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

Default setting	**Select size: Screen (240 x 427)** **Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (Auto continuous mode)** **Shot number: 5**

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots the remaining number of shots at the specified interval. The auto focus function is available only for the first shot. The second and subsequent shots are shot with the focus point placed for the first shot.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter. You can change the auto focus settings for each shot ("Photo mode"→p.191).
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 x 288), Screen (240 x 427), QVGA V. (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), SubQCIF (128 x 96)
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.
- Shooting is terminated if you fold your FOMA terminal in Continuous mode.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶✉ (MENU) or 1▶"AUTO" or "M"

The "Continuous mode" screen appears.

Shot number/Max. shot count



Continuous mode (Ex. manual)

Function menu➡p.192

■ **To turn on/off the auto focus**

▶⏲

2 Point the camera at an object ▶● or ▼[📷]

Locking the focus turns the focus frame into green. After shooting, the "Continuous shooting checking" screen appears with four shots at the same time.



Continuous shooting checking

Function menu➡p.195

■ **To shoot with AF lock**

"Shooting still images with AF lock"→p.192

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**

▶Press ⏲ to set the auto focus to "OFF"▶● or ▼[📷]

■ **To stop the continuous shooting**

Auto continuous mode: ▶📞▶"NO"
Manual continuous mode: ▶CLR (or 📞▶"NO")
The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

3 ⦿ (FUNC)▶Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

"Continuous shooting checking function menu"→p.195
The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.193).
If "Store selection" is selected, the "Continuous shooting checking screen" appears with the saved images removed after the image saving is complete.

■ **To select the image to save**

▶Use ✣ to select an image▶●
The ☑ icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.
Repeat the step to select images.
To cancel the selected image, select the image again.

■ **To check the images in detail**

▶Use ⊕ to select an image

▶✉ (Detail)

Use ⊕ to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press CLR.

To save the image displayed in detail, press ●.

The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.193).



Detail checking

Function menu➡p.196

NOTE

◆If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish the call, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.

◆Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving an image to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.

◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.

◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.

◆In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp also lights in red in Auto continuous mode.

◆"⇅" flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.

◆When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.

◆Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the shooting checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.

Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

● "Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5" are the default settings for Screen (240 x 427), QVGA V. (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144) and SubQCIF (128 x 96) and "Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 4" for CIF (352 x 288).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.194)▶⊕ (FUNC)▶"Interval/Number"▶Select any item

Shot interval	Selects the shooting interval from "0.5 seconds", "1.0 seconds" and "2.0 seconds". The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	▶**Enter the number of shots (2-digit)** Sets the number of shots between "05 and 20" (5 to 20 shots)* Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots.

*: "05 to 10" (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 x 427) or QVGA V. (240 x 320)

2 After changing the settings, press CLR▶CLR

NOTE

<Shot number>

◆When CIF (352 x 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always fixed to 4.

◆Changing the image size from CIF (352 x 288) to another size changes the number of shots to 5.

◆Changing the image size to Screen (240 x 427) or QVGA V. (240 x 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. ▶**"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all	Saves all the still images. ▶**"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as the original animation. ▶**"Save" or "Mirror save"▶Select No. for original animation** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Select this	Attaches ☑ to the selected still image to show that it is selected.
Select all	Attaches ☑ to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image. ☑ disappears.
Release all	Deselects all the still images. ☑ disappears.
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **microSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them.

Continued on next page

Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
• **From loc. history**	Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image.
• **Loc. info detail**	Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
• **Delete loc. Info**	Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes all the shot images and returns to the Continuous mode screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

◆"Store all&anime" cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more photographed images have already been saved.

◆Even if "microSD" is selected in "Select to save", images will be saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" displays the actual image shot.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.

◆You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction> <Restriction all>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message*	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" →p.197
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than QVGA V. (240 x 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 x 144) nor SubQCIF (128 x 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted. However, Choku-den is not available when 2in1 is set to B mode.

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" displays the actual image shot.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Images of Screen (480 x 854), VGA V. (480 x 640), CIF (352 x 288), Screen (240 x 427), QVGA V. (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144) or SubQCIF (128 x 96) can be framed.

- Pre-installed frames →p.493
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶ ● (FUNC)▶"Select frame"▶Select a frame

■ To cancel framed photography

▶"OFF"

2 Point the camera at an object ▶ ● or [📷]

The "Frame shooting check" screen appears.

3 Check and save the shot as you do in "Shooting still images" (p.192)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. →p.197

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.

◆Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.

◆If the sizes of the image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.

- If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° counterclockwise.
- If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° clockwise.

◆Exiting the camera releases the frame.

● Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

- You cannot remove the frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen▶(FUNC) ▶"Change frame" ▶Select a frame

Use ⊙ to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image ▶●

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶✉ (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶(FUNC)▶"Cancel"

● Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: To select "Compose message" on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.192)▶(FUNC)▶"Compose message" ▶Select any item

Attach image[*1] (i-mode mail)	
• **Attach mail**	Attaches an image without changing the size.
• **QVGA scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image[*2] (Deco-mail)	
• **Insert mail**[*3]	Inserts an image without changing the size.
• **SubQCIF scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1: Shooting an image of QVGA V. (240 x 320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting "Attach mail" or "QVGA scale down".
*2: Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128 x 96) does not display the screen for selecting "Insert mail" or "SubQCIF scale down".
*3: This option cannot be selected for the image size other than QCIF (176 x 144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail→p.243
Composing and sending a Deco-mail message→p.247

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert the image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored or there is no capacity available in the Draft mailbox.
◆Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- Shooting is terminated if you fold your FOMA terminal while shooting movies.
- If you set "File size" to "Long time" and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the microSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time depends on the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶✉ (MENU) or 1▶"🎬"

The desktop icon is also available for launching the "Movie mode" screen.→p.149



Movie mode

Function menu➡p.198

2 Point the camera at an object ▶● or [📷]



The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red.
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.

■ **If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size**
▶●

The Movie checking screen appears.

Continued on next page

3 ● or [📷]

The shooting terminates and the "Movie checking" screen appears.

■ To play the movie you shot

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Play"

■ To retake the shot

▶CLR▶"YES"



Movie checking

Function menu➡p.200

4 ●

The movie is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.198).

NOTE

◆Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:

- (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Camera"▶"Movie mode"

◆Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving a movie to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.

◆If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish the call, the "Movie checking" screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.

◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.

◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.

◆"[⇅]" flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.

◆If you press any key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.189).
File size	
Quality setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• **Long dur. mode**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the standard quality and duration.
• **Fine mode**	Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Super Fine mode**	Shoots a movie with the highest quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Fine mode.
Light*	Turns on/off the light.
Image quality	
• **Photo mode***	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting"→p.199
• **Brightness**	**▶Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "-2 to (+-)0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "(+-)0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	"Setting the white balance"→p.199
• **Color mode set**	"Setting the effects on the photographed images"→p.199
• **Image tuning***	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images"→p.200
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	"Using the auto timer"→p.203
Movie type set	
• **Normal** (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without voice.
• **Voice**	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	Turns on/off the Auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the Movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the Movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video will be saved.
◦ **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
◦ **microSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the microSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only will be saved.
◦ **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
◦ **microSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the microSD memory card.

File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the data size of movies, etc. stored on the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card and available spaces.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Shake correction*	"Setting the shake correction" →p.200

*: The option cannot be selected or set for the front camera.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set> <File restriction>

◆The auto save or file restriction cannot be set if the File size is set to "Long time".

<Select to save>

◆Selecting "microSD" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.

◆You cannot set "microSD" if:

- The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
- The number of files in the specified folder other than Multimedia among folders in SD Video reaches the maximum (for "Voice").

<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

Setting the white balance

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"White balance"▶Select any item

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu.→p.189

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

◆Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent" may make the image more vivid than Auto under the specified conditions.

◆The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to the videophone shooting.→p.53

Setting the effects on the photographed images

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"Color mode set"▶Select any item

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"Photo mode"▶Select any item

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu.→p.189

Continued on next page

Auto[*1] (default: Photo mode/Continuous mode)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait (default: Movie mode)	Suitable for shooting people.
Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery (including night view).
Close-up	Suitable for close-up shooting. "Close-up"→p.184
Sports mode[*1]	Suitable for shooting moving objects.
Night mode[*1*2]	Suitable for shooting people in dark places.
OFF[*1]	Does not use any effects for shooting.

*1: The options cannot be set in Movie mode.
*2: The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

◆Only Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be selected for the front camera in shooting a still image. Portrait is always selected for shooting in Continuous mode or Movie mode with the front camera.
◆In Night mode or Scenery, the shake correction may not properly work even if Shake correction is set to "Auto".
◆Auto, Scenery, Close-up or Sports mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.
◆Auto, Sports mode, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.
◆Night mode is restored to Auto when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

● Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Setting this function according to the frequency of power supply in the area you use the FOMA terminal may decrease flicker on the screen that is caused by fluorescent light, etc.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶ (FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶ "Image tuning"▶Select any item

Auto (default)	Avoids flicker automatically.
Mode 1 (50Hz)	Mode for shooting in 50Hz-frequency areas.
Mode 2 (60Hz)	Mode for shooting in 60Hz-frequency areas.

NOTE

◆The flicker may not be fully avoided if you shoot in dim conditions or extremely bright places or depending on the colors of objects.

● Setting the shake correction

The shake correction function is available for shooting with the rear camera.

- This function is available in Photo mode, Movie mode, Chance capture or Picture voice. It is unavailable in Continuous mode.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/Movie mode screen (p.197)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Shake correction"▶Select any item

Auto (default)	■**Photo mode (Photo mode, Picture voice)** Automatically corrects camera shake in a place where camera shake can easily occur or in a dark place. ■**Movie mode (Movie mode, Chance capture)** Always corrects camera shake regardless of the situation.
OFF	Shoots without using the shake correction.

NOTE

◆This function only reduces the camera shake, and the effect depends on the objects or situations.
◆The shake correction may not properly work when:
- The camera shake is large
- The zoom is used
- The object is moving
- "Photo mode" is set to "Night mode" or "Scenery"

◆The spectrum or noise may be seen if part of the object is moving. In this case, set this function to "OFF" to shoot.
◆The shake correction uses the ambient pixels. The shooting area varies depending on the "Auto"/"OFF" setting.
◆If this function is activated, the processing time after shooting may be longer (about two seconds) due to the shake correction process.

Function menu (Movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message[*]	▶**Compose an i-mode message** Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached.
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie as the standby screen.

Display size	Sets the display mode for movies. The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 x 144) nor SubQCIF (128 x 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **microSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the microSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **microSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the microSD memory card.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the Movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached. However, Choku-den is not available when 2in1 is set to B mode.

◆Set "File size" to "500KB" when sending a movie to a phone which does not support an i-motion mail that is larger than 500K bytes.

<Set as stand-by>

◆The movie to be set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "microSD" saves the movie to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save it to the microSD memory card).

◆A movie with only voice cannot be set.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting "microSD" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.

◆You cannot set "microSD" if:

- The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
- The number of files in the specified folder other than Multimedia among folders in SD Video reaches the maximum (for "Voice").

Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 3 minutes and 38 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶ ✉ (MENU) or 1▶"📹"

2 Point the camera at an object ▶● or ▼[📷]



The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the flashing 0:00:00.

3 ● or ▼[📷]

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in "Shooting Movies" (p.197)

NOTE

◆You can also activate the Chance capture function by selecting ⓘ (FUNC)▶"CHG camera-mode"▶"Chance capture" on the "Photo mode" screen.

◆The shot finished before exceeding the available shooting capacity is saved from the beginning to the end as the same to the "Movie mode".

Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add the voice to a still image of QCIF (176 x 144) or SubQCIF (128 x 96) to make a movie.

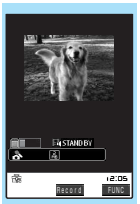
Continued on next page

<Example: To shoot a still image and add voice>

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶ (MENU) or 1▶" "

2 Point the camera at an object ▶● or [📷]

A still image is shot.
The "Recording start" screen appears.
You can set the file size by selecting "File size" from the function menu before recording the voice.



Recording start

Function menu➡p.202

3 ● or [📷]

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.



4 ● or [📷]

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in "Shooting Movies" (p.197)

NOTE

◆You can also create a picture voice by pressing (FUNC)▶"CHG camera-mode"▶ "Picture voice" ▶ "Photo mode" on the Photo mode screen.
◆If you want to create a picture voice using the saved still image, follow Step 3 and later after performing the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press (FUNC)▶ "CHG camera-mode"▶"Picture voice"▶"My picture" ▶ Select a folder▶Select an image

Function menu (Recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
• **500KB**	You can record up to 500K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
• **2MB** (when the camera launches)	You can record up to 2M bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.

Using Voice mode

● A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)▶ (MENU) or 1▶" "

The desktop icon is also available for launching the "Recording start" screen. →p.149

2 ● or [📷]

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

3 ● or [📷]

After the recording is finished, the "Recording check" screen appears.

4 ●

The movie is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.198).

NOTE

◆Setting "File size" to "Long time" allows you to record up to about 120 minutes.
◆You can also record a voice in Voice mode by selecting (FUNC)▶"Movie type set"▶"Voice" on the "Movie mode" screen.
◆Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image so that it will be shot in your desired size.

● You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the front, camera and the image size is VGA (640 x 480), JAVA (480 x 480), Screen (240 x 427), QVGA V. (240 x 320) or JAVA (240 x 240).
● You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
● The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶Use ⊙ to adjust the zoom

⊙: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.
⊙: Zooms out by one step to 1x (default) each time you press the key.
Press and hold ⊙ or ⊙ to zoom in/out continuously.

Camera type	Image size	Maximum zoom	
		Photo mode	Movie mode
Rear camera	QXGA (2,048 x 1,536)	Approx. 4x (16 steps)	—
	UXGA (1,616 x 1,212)		
	SXGA (1,280 x 960)		
	Screen (480 x 854)		
	VGA (640 x 480)		
	VGA V. (480 x 640)		
	JAVA (480 x 480)*1		
	CIF (352 x 288)		
	Screen (240 x 427)		
	QVGA V. (240 x 320)	Approx. 4x (16 steps)	—
	QVGA (320 x 240)	—	Approx. 1.4x (Approx. 2.6x*2) (3 steps (7 steps*2))
	JAVA (240 x 240)*1	Approx. 4x (16 steps)	—
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 9x (16 steps)	Approx. 3.5x (Approx. 9x*2) (16 steps)
	SubQCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 9x (16 steps)	
Front camera	VGA (640 x 480)	—	
	JAVA (480 x 480)*1		
	CIF (352 x 288)	Approx. 1.8x (2 steps)	
	Screen (240 x 427)	—	
	QVGA V. (240 x 320)		
	JAVA (240 x 240)*1		
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2x (2 steps)	
	SubQCIF (128 x 96)		

*1: This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.
*2: If "Shake correction" is set to "OFF"

NOTE

◆"1x" is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1x".
◆Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

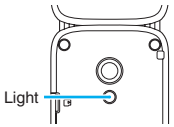
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of a FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/ Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶[☼]

To turn off the light, press [☼].



NOTE

◆The continuous lighting time when shooting movies is approximately up to 5 minutes.
◆You cannot turn on the light when recording a voice without movies or using the front camera.
◆This function is only supplementary. You cannot always get enough light.

Using the auto timer

Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.
- The auto focus is available for Photo mode and Auto continuous mode. When shooting with AF lock, focus on the object before setting the auto timer.

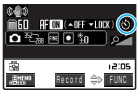
1 Photo mode screen (p.192)/Continuous mode screen (p.194)/ Movie mode screen (p.197)▶● (FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"ON"▶Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" for the auto timer.
Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
"10 seconds" is set at the time of purchase.

If the auto timer is set

The "⏲" icon appears on the screen to show that the auto timer is set.



- To cancel the auto timer settings, set "Auto timer" to "OFF" from the function menu.

NOTE

◆Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to "OFF".

Shooting by using the auto timer

1 ● or [📷]

The auto timer tone sounds, and then the auto timer starts running. The incoming call lamp, ✉, ⓘ and "⏲" flash.

The countdown tone sounds approximately 5 seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, ✉ and ⓘ flash rapidly.

■ **To stop the timer while it is running**

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

■ **To shoot manually during the auto timer countdown**

▶● or [📷]

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

Using the rear camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The data scanned especially from QR codes can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-αppli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook. The FOMA terminal can also scan image, melody data or ToruCa to play or save.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning a bar code, keep about 7 to 9 cm between the rear camera and the code.

■ JAN codes and QR codes

- JAN code



JAN code is a series of vertical lines (bars) with various widths and spaces to represent numbers. A FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* Scanning the JAN code above displays "4942857113068".

- QR code

QR code is a type of two-dimensional symbology expressing numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs both horizontally and vertically. Some QR codes express images, melodies or ToruCa. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* Scanning the QR code above displays "株式会社NTT ドコモ" (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Bar code reader"

2 **Position a JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field**



Scanning automatically starts. The area surrounded by " ⌜, ⌝, ⌞, ⌟ " at the corners of the screen is the recognition field.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.

■ **To cancel scanning**

▶●▶●

■ **To adjust the zoom**

⟲: Returns to default.

⟳: Zooms in.

■ **To turn on/off the light**

▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Light"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Pressing [☼] also turns on/off the light after scanning is canceled.

■ **To use auto focus**

▶✉ (AF)

The focus frame changes as follows during scanning:

- White: Before focusing
- Dotted white: Focusing
- Green: Focused
- Dotted red: Focusing failed

■ **To scan data divided into several QR codes**

Repeat the step:

▶●▶●▶Position the QR codes inside the recognition field

A FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

3 **Check the scanned data**

It may take long to scan some data.

■ **To discard scanned data**

▶CLR▶"YES"

4 ⓘ **(FUNC)▶"Store"▶"YES"▶●**

The scanned data is stored.

NOTE

◆Codes other than JAN or QR cannot be scanned. Some bar codes may not be scanned, depending on the size.
◆A FOMA terminal may fail to scan a code, due to the scratch, stain, damage, print quality, the reflection of light or some QR codes.
◆You can also launch the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the text editing screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. Image or melody data cannot be scanned correctly on the screen. Characters that cannot be entered on the text editing screen are replaced with space (blank).
◆You cannot store the following images.
- A JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots
- JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots
- A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
- A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 x 480 dots
- An image whose size exceeds 100K bytes

Progressive JPEG image→p.223
◆The scanned data cannot be stored on the microSD memory card.
◆While activating Bar code reader ▶(i) (FUNC) ▶ Select "Add desktop icon" to add the desktop icon for this function.

Using the scanned data

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Bar code reader"▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Reading data list"

The "Reading data list" screen appears.

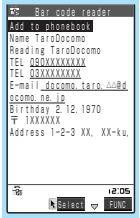


Reading data list

Function menu➡p.205

2 Select the scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.205

3 Select any of the displayed items

"Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook →p.107
"Compose message": Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered →p.243
"Add bookmark" : Bookmarks the URL and title→p.219
"Activate i-αppli" : Launches the specified i-αppli→p.302
Melody icon : Plays the melody→p.361
ToruCa icon : Shows ToruCa→p.309
Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function→p.226
Mail address : Composes an i-mode message using the Mail To function→p.227
URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function→p.227

NOTE

◆The title of the scanned data will be:
- Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
  If two or more data are to be stored at the same time, the 4-digit number is incremented in the order of storage.

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted data. A title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Result	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** Deletes all the data.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Store	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message asking whether to delete the data appears.
Internet	Accesses the site if the URL is highlighted. "Web To function"→p.227
Compose message*	Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message entered in the scanned data if "Compose message" is highlighted. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if a mail address is highlighted.

Continued on next page

Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function"→p.226
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is highlighted. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is highlighted. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is highlighted.
Add bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to bookmark if "Add bookmark" is highlighted. Adds the URL to bookmark if it is highlighted.
Save image	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select an item** Saves the selected image to My picture under Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save melody	**▶"YES"▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select an item** Saves the selected melody to Melody under Data box. If you do not set the melody as the ring tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save ToruCa	**▶"YES"▶Select a folder** Saves the selected ToruCa to the ToruCa folder.
Activate i-αppli	Launches the i-αppli specified in the scanned data if "Activate i-αppli" is highlighted.
Copy	Copies text contained in the scanned data.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

◆If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be scanned by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).

<Internet> <Add bookmark>

◆You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if the URL contains characters that cannot be used in URL characters.

<Compose message>

◆The address cannot be entered if it contains characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

◆Double-byte/single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊, ＋, and P) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are contained.

◆The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Activate i-αppli>

◆You cannot launch an i-αppli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-αppli To"" under "Set i-αppli To" (p.301) is not selected.

◆You cannot launch an i-αppli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using the built-in camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a message. You can also make a call or access website using the data.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning text, keep about 7 to 9 cm between the rear camera and the text.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

■ Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■ The number of characters that can be scanned

The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

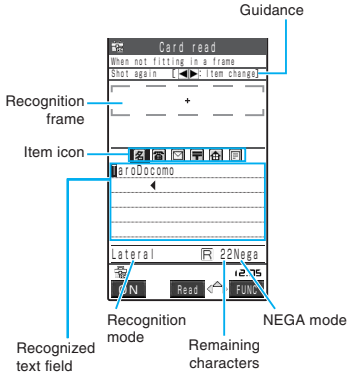
Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, ＊, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in double-byte, 30 in single-byte
	Message	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including #, (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

*: The option can be selected when the Access reader is launched from Dictionary.

■ Guide to the scanning screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the scanning screen:



Guidance : Shows the operation.
Recognition frame:
Shows the recognition field.
Item icon : Shows the item to scan.
Card read mode: "Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo"
Compose message mode: "Receiver/subject/message"
Recognized text field:
Shows the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).
Recognition mode:
Shows the recognition mode used for scanning "Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL".
Remaining characters:
Shows the remaining number of single-byte characters that can be scanned.
NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning text

<Example: To scan text in Card read mode>

1 (MENU) ▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Access reader"

The "Access reader" screen appears.



Access reader

2 "New"

The "Scanning mode selection" screen appears.
"Scan mode"→p.206



3 "Card read"

The "Access reader scanning" screen appears.
The shooting mode is automatically set to "Close-up" for the rear camera.
Use ◉ to select the icon for the item to save.



Access reader scanning

Function menu➡p.209

4 Display the text in the recognition field

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ To adjust the zoom

(T): Changes from "Normal" to "Large".
(W): Returns from "Large" to "Normal".

■ To turn on the light

▶(✉) (ON) or 1[☼]

To turn off the light, press (✉) (OFF) or 1[☼].

5 ●

A FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

■ To rescan the text

▶CLR▶"YES"

If the screen does not display the entire text, press ◉, 4 or 6 (MEMO/CHECK) to check.
Pressing (✉) (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data detail screen appears.
The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

Continued on next page

■ **To select the string to edit**

▶Use ⊕ to highlight the string to edit▶Press the candidate No.

Use ✳ to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



Candidates

■ **To edit in the text editing**

▶● (FUNC)▶"Edit"▶Edit the text

The text can be edited in the typical text editing.

To return to the candidate selection, press ● (FUNC) and select "Select recog. data".

Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6 ●

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ **To scan the remaining text**

▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6

Ensure that the last two characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

▶Use ⊕ to select the item to scan▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 ● **(FUNC)▶"Store"**

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press CLR to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- ◆Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message appears on the screen.
- ◆A FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. However, all katakana characters are scanned as double-byte, and all numbers and alphabets as single-byte. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- ◆A FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- ◆You can also launch the Access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen.
- ◆When launching the Access reader from Dictionary, choose the reading mode between "Dic. (Japanese)" and "Dic. (English)".
- ◆If you do not press any keys for 3 minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- ◆Before saving the scanned text data, if you receive a voice call, you are notified of an alarm or you use another function, the scanned text is saved, and then the corresponding screen appears. Finishing the operation occurred during the operation returns the screen to the Reading data detail.
- ◆On the "Access Reader" screen, selecting ▶● (FUNC)▶"Add desktop icon" adds the desktop icon for this function.
- ◆In URL mode, "http://" is added to the beginning of the scanned string if it does not include "://". If the scanned string includes "://" or "s://" at its beginning, it is replaced with "http://" or "https://".

Using the text data

1 MENU ▶**"LIFE KIT"▶"Access reader"▶"Reading data list"**

The "Reading data list" screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.209

2 Select the scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.209

3 Select any of the displayed items

"Add to phonebook":
Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.107

"Compose message":
Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered
→p.243

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen/Reading data list screen)

Edit[*1]	Edits the scanned text.
Store[*2]	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function"→p.227
Compose message[*3]	Composes an i-mode message with all data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode.
Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function"→p.226
Add to phonebook	Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode.
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode.
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the scanned data. You cannot search on the Access reader scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the scanned data to Text memo. You cannot add the scanned data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Reading mode set[*2]	Selects the scanning mode from "Card read", "Compose message", "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" or "Free memo".
NEGA/POSI mode[*2]	Sets the type of printing.
• **Auto setting**	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
• **Positive fix**	Suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
• **Negative fix**	Suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
Guidance OFF/ Guidance ON [*2]	Shows or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing/ Lateral writing [*2]	Selects the vertical writing or lateral writing for the Japanese text to scan.
Display detail[*4]	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Copy[*4]	Copies text contained in the scanned data.
Delete this[*4]	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all[*4]	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Deletes all the data.

*1: Only available on the Access reader scanning screen.
*2: Only appears on the Access reader scanning screen.
*3: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*4: Only appears on the Reading data list screen.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Edit	Edits the text of the highlighted item. You cannot edit the text when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function"→p.227
Compose message[*]	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if the mail address is highlighted in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode message with all data entered if "Compose message" is highlighted in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is highlighted in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode.
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is highlighted in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function"→p.226

Continued on next page

Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is highlighted in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, or memo is highlighted in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is highlighted in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode.
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode.
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the highlighted data. You cannot search when you have selected "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Add to memo	Adds the highlighted scanned data to Text memo. You cannot add the data when you have selected "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies data contained in the scanned data.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the data.

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, Choku-den is not available.

NOTE

<Dialing>

- ◆Single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊, + and P) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are included.
- ◆The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel

What is i-mode? 212
Displaying i-mode Menu ..... i-mode menu 212

Viewing Sites

Viewing Sites 213
Viewing and Using Sites 216
Registering My Menu Entries ..... My Menu 218
Changing Your i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode Password 218
Viewing Websites ..... Internet connection 218
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly ..... Bookmark 219
Saving Site Content ..... Screen memo 221

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages ... Save image 222
Downloading Melodies from Sites ..... i-melody 223
Downloading PDF Data from Sites 223
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites 225
Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites 225
Downloading Data Files from Sites 226
Downloading ToruCa from Sites 226

Useful i-mode functions

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions ..... Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 226

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode Settings 227

Using message services

When You Receive a Message ..... Receive message 229
Checking for Messages ..... Check new messages 230
Viewing Messages in the Message Box ..... MessageR/MessageF 231

Using certificates

Using SSL Certificate 232
Setting FirstPass 232
Changing the Certificate Host 233

Using i-motion

What is i-motion? 234
Downloading i-motion ..... Download i-motion 234
Setting i-motion 235

Using i-Channel

What is i-Channel? 236
Accessing a Site from the Channel List 237
Making the i-Channel Settings ..... i-Channel setting 238

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

- i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

■ Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (webpage) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders' permission.
- All data stored (mails, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is recommended to back up the stored data or important data. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- When the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, etc.) attached to sent or received mails, screen memos and MessageR/MessageF.
- If a file for which viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■ Important

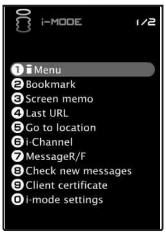
- It is recommended to back up bookmark contents onto a microSD memory card or note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).

<i-mode menu>

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode

1 (MENU) ▶ **"i-MODE"**



The "i-mode menu" screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 11 items. Pressing (i)(i-mode) on the standby screen also displays the "i-mode menu" screen.

■ If "" appears

You are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. "" appears.

■ If "" is flashing

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode Center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.213) or website (p.218) or send an i-mode message (p.243) while you are in the service area but not using the i-mode service, "" flashes and it may take time to start up i-mode.

■ If "" is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), "" flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode Center. From this screen, access a variety of sites (programs) such as "What's New".	p.213
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.219
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.221
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.215
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.218
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.236

Item	Description	Refer to
MessageR/F	Displays received MessageR/MessageF. The message service automatically delivers required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.231
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	p.230, 257
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.232
i-mode settings	Makes the i-mode settings.	p.227
Full Browser	Displays a website designed for a PC in Viewer type or Standard type Full Browser.	p.327

NOTE

◆The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).

◆The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of the service area. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen

1 (MENU)▶**"i-MODE"**▶**"iMenu"**

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the "iMenu" screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



i-mode menu　　iMenu

■ **To cancel downloading pages**

▶CLR or (✉) (Quit)

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press ●



"English iMenu"

2 Select "English iMenu" and then press ●



Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

◆メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search), 週間 i ガイド (Weekly i-guide), とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), 楽オク -オークション- (Rakuten-Auction), i エリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), 料金&お申込・設定 (Charge & subscription/settings and お知らせ (News) are not shown on the English iMenu.

◆English sites in Menu List differ from Japanese version.

◆Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.

Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press ▶"YES"

" " flashes, then " " disappears.

NOTE

◆Pressing and holding for 2 seconds or longer will turn the FOMA terminal off.

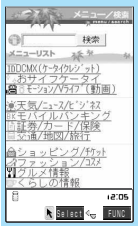
Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 (MENU)▶**"i-MODE"**▶**"iMenu"**

2 Select English iMenu ▶Select an item

The "Sites" screen appears.



Sites

Function menu➡p.214

● "みんなNらんど" (Only in Japanese)

You can download and save i-αppli programs, dictionaries, face stamps and Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site "みんなNらんど" under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

Continued on next page

The following shows how to access "みんなNらんど"
Select "iMenu" → "メニュー／検索" → "ケータイ電話メーカー" → "みんなNらんど".
The QR code on the right is also available to access "みんなNらんど".

NOTE

- Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- If an image cannot be downloaded, the " " icon appears. However, " " does not appear if a background image cannot be downloaded.
- You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.416).You can also send and receive messages.
- You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related pages (linked pages).
- The displaying site screen is not updated automatically. To display the latest information, select "Reload" from the function menu.
- The number of colors used on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the set colors.

Function menu (Sites screen)

Add bookmark	"Adding bookmarks"→p.219
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.→p.219
Add screen memo	"Saving a screen memo"→p.221
Screen memo list	"Displaying a screen memo"→p.221
Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages"→p.222
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. "To use the scroll mode"→p.215
Compose message*	Pastes the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message.
• **Attach URL**	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.
• **Attach image**	▶**Select an image** Attaches an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.
• **Insert image**	▶**Select an image** Inserts an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message.
Enter URL	▶●▶**Enter a URL**▶**"OK"**▶● Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	"Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook"→p.217
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon.
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page.
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions"→p.436
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home URL. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home URL.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.
Site info	
• **Title**	▶**Check the title**▶**"OK"** Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	▶**Check the URL**▶**"OK"** Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	Sets the indicator display mode and sound effects for the displayed page.
• **Set image disp.**	Sets the indicator display mode for a page. If "OFF" is selected, " " appears instead of an image on the page.
• **Sound effect**	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Switch to FB	"Switching from i-mode to Standard type"→p.334

*: Unavailable when 2in1 setting is set to B mode.

NOTE

<Compose message>
- You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>
- Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Home URL" settings under "i-mode settings".

<Display home>
- "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" in "i-mode settings" is set to "Invalid".
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the page set as the home URL.

<Change CHR code>
- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
- Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
- If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may not be displayed correctly.
- "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>
- Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<Title>
- Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>

◆If the entire URL does not appear, press ● to display the cursor. Use ◎ to move the cursor and check the URL. Press ● again to hide the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>

◆Up to 5 certificates are displayed. If there are two or more certificates, use ⊖ to check the previous or next certificate.

◆When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls at a fixed speed regardless of the "Scroll" setting in "i-mode settings".

<Switch to FB>

◆Some sites may not be displayed in Full Browser.

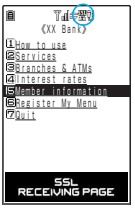
Viewing SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green/white).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (p.232) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green/white).

1 Open an SSL page

An SSL page and "SSL" appear.



SSL page

■ **To cancel opening during authentication**

▶●

■ **To cancel loading an authenticated page**

▶✉ (Quit)

2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page▶"YES"

SSL communication ends and "SSL" disappears.

NOTE

◆The message "This site is not certified Do you connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". However, you may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/MessageF, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or list cannot be fully displayed on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.

■ **To scroll by line**

Press ◎ to scroll down by line to view the next list item or text line.

Press ◎ to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.

You can set the scroll speed when pressing ◎ or ◎ and whether to display linked pages. →p.227

■ **To scroll by screen**

Press ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down by screen to view the next part of the list or text. Press ▲ to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.

■ **To use the scroll mode**

If selecting "Scroll mode" from the site function menu (p.214) or screen memo detail function menu (p.222), you can scroll in the direction (up or down) as you slide ●. Pressing C on the sites screen also sets/releases the scroll mode.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, the message indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent may appear.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, the message indicating that they will be sent always appears. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

◆Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use contents provided by the IP.

◆Your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the displayed page is set to "Last URL". When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to "Last URL". Use "Last URL" to reconnect to the last viewed page.

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"Last URL"▶"YES"

NOTE

◆The current URL is not saved to "Last URL" if:

- You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
- You downloaded a PDF document that will cost you separately

Continued on next page

◆The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to "Last URL". In this case, "Last URL" will save the URL of the page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.217).Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.
- When a Flash movie is displayed, the display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in "Set image disp." (p.214) under "Site settings".

Image icons

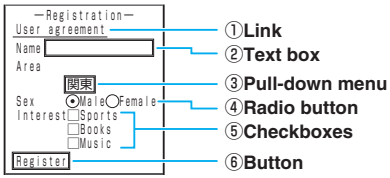
(color) : Appears during image loading or if "Set image disp." is set to "OFF".

: Appears if image loading failed.

(BW) : Appears if an image cannot be loaded.

Selecting a linked page or item

While connecting to i-mode, you may need to perform the following operations for some sites.



①Link
You can jump to the page linked to the selected item.

②Text box
You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

③Pull-down menu
You can select an item from a list of options. Only a part of options are shown and hidden options will appear as a list when you select an option.

④Radio button
You can select only one option. ⦿ indicates a selected radio button.

⑤Checkboxes
You can select multiple options from a range of options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.

⑥Button
Selecting a key performs the function assigned to the key.

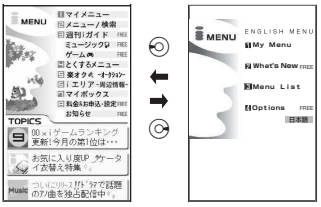
NOTE

◆Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include ▭ which enables you to select multiple options. Use ◎ to move ▭ and press ● to select or deselect the item in ▭.When you have completed your selections, press ✉ (Finish) or CLR to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal's cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

1 Press ◎ to jump back to the previous page or ◎ to jump forward to the next page

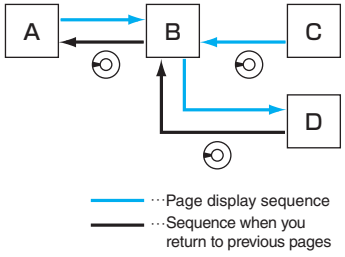




NOTE

◆You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing ◎. However, when you have pressed ◎ to return to an earlier page (from "C" to "B") and then gone from that page to another page (from "B" to "D"), pressing ◎ twice on page "D" will not display page "C", but will take you back to "B" and then to page "A". The page display sequence is "D", "B" and "A".

■When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



■ To view pages stored in cache

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. Use ○ to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website. A FOMA terminal will display a page stored in cache without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even when you use ○. If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you load an SSL-compatible page from the cache, the message indicating that an SSL page will be displayed appears.

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶ⓜ (FUNC)▶ "Reload"

NOTE

◆If you perform "Reload" on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting "YES" will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: To add a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶ⓜ (FUNC)▶ "Add to phonebook"▶"YES"▶Add a phone number to phonebook

"Adding information to the Phonebook"→p.107
If the name, reading and mail address are attached to a phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with the phone number. Enter other necessary items and then save the entry to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "◁▽▷" does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image disp.".
- Selecting "YES" in "Use phone information" (p.229) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

◆To replay a Flash movie, select "Retry" from the site function menu or other menus.→p.214
◆Some Flash movies use sound effects. To disable movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in "Site settings" from the sites function menu and then select "OFF". Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this does not apply to sound effects of Flash movie.
◆When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using "Display setting", the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, "Retry" is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
◆Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
◆Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
◆For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set" setting. The terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen, Wake-up display or check new messages.
◆Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to use the Neuropointer to select menu screens.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use "Bookmark" (p.219).

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶"My Menu Registration"▶Select the "Input password" box▶Enter your 4-digit i-mode password"▶Select"

i-mode password→p.158

NOTE

◆Charged sites in the Menu List under iMenu are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"iMenu"▶"English iMenu"▶"My Menu"▶Select a site you want to view

NOTE

◆To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.

◆Dual Network Service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"iMenu"▶"English iMenu"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" box▶Enter your current i-mode password

The entered number appears as "＊".

3 Select the "New Password" box▶Enter a new i-mode password

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 Select the "New Password" box▶Enter the new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 Select "Select"

■ **If you enter your "Current Password" incorrectly**

The message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

■ **If you enter different numbers in "New Password" and "New Password (Confirmation)"**

The message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view a website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.
- A website viewed on your terminal may look different from that on a PC.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in Full Browser.→p.327

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"▶Select "<NEW>"



2 Enter a URL▶"OK"

The message warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL appears.

Press ● or CLR to connect to the website with the entered URL.

■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with "http://" or "https://"**

The message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

◆If the received data exceeds the maximum size that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing ●.

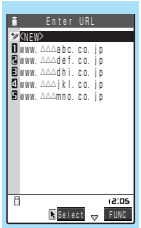
◆You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters including "http://" or "https://".

Accessing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"

The "Enter URL" screen appears.



Enter URL

Function menu➡p.219

2 Select a URL number▶"OK"▶"OK"

■ **To edit the selected URL**

▶Select the "Internet address" box▶Edit the URL

NOTE

◆Once the URL history exceeds 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as a new entry is added.

◆Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.

◆The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters, excluding the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Compose message*	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message.
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use (Navi) to select a checkbox (□)▶(Mail) (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple URLs.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered URLs.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶(Func) (FUNC)▶"Add bookmark"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

NOTE

◆A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"Bookmark"

The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.



Bookmark folder list

Function menu➡p.220

Continued on next page

2 Select a folder

The "Bookmark" screen appears.

3 Select a bookmark



Bookmark

Function menu➡p.220

NOTE

◆Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Sort folder	**▶Select the destination** Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Displays the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data	
CopyAll to microSD	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all the stored bookmarks to the microSD memory card.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the bookmarks.

NOTE

◆You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.

<Add folder>

◆A newly created folder appears above the microSD folder.

<Edit folder name>

◆You cannot rename the Bookmark folder, microSD folder and Secret folder.

<Sort folder>

◆You cannot rearrange the Bookmark, microSD and Secret folders.

<No. of bookmarks>

◆The number of bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not displayed.

<iC trans. all><Send all Ir data>

◆Bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not sent.

<CopyAll to microSD>

◆Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not copied.

<Delete folder>

◆You cannot delete the Bookmark, microSD and Secret folders.

<Delete all>

◆Bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not deleted.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks to another folder.
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶✉"Finish"▶"YES"** Moves the selected bookmark.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves all bookmarks in the folder.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon.
Compose message[*1]	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message.
Attach to mail[*1*2]	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmark attached.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies bookmarks to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted bookmark.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple bookmarks.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	**▶Use ✣ to highlight the beginning of text to copy▶●▶Use ✣ highlight the end of text to copy▶●** Copies a bookmarked URL.

No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.
Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**✉ (Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all bookmarks in the folder.
Keep in secret[*3]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164
Bookmark info[*2]	Displays bookmark information.

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*2: Only "Attach to mail" and "Bookmark info" options appear for the bookmarks in the microSD folder. ("Bookmark info" option appears only for the bookmarks in the microSD folder.)
*3: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.164

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot move a bookmark to the microSD or Secret folder.

<Edit title>
◆If you delete a title, the URL is stored without the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

<Add desktop icon>
◆You can display the bookmark pasted as a desktop icon by selecting its icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>
◆"Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos (the number of screen memos that can be saved may be less depending on the size of screen memo data saved, etc.).

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶(FUNC)▶"Add screen memo"▶"YES"

NOTE

◆When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.
◆A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.
◆If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as different screen memos.
◆Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.
◆When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with replay time limit cannot be saved as a screen memo.
◆Except the data acquisition screen, the URL for a screen memo page (up to 256 single-byte characters) will be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 MENU▶"i-MODE"▶"Screen memo"

The "Screen memo list" screen appears.



Screen memo list

Function menu➡p.221

2 Select a screen memo

The "Screen memo detail" screen appears.



Screen memo detail

Function menu➡p.222

NOTE

◆Information on a screen memo is the one when it was stored and may differ from the latest one.
◆If a saved page has no title, "No title" appears in the Screen memo list screen.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	▶**Enter a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with " 🔑 " .The " 🔑 " icon disappears when the protection is removed.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.

Continued on next page

Delete	Deletes screen memos.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple screen memos.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered screen memos.

NOTE

<Edit title>

◆If you delete a title, the screen memo is added as "No title".

<Protect ON/OFF>

◆Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos that can be protected varies depending on the data size.

<Delete>

◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages"→p.222
Add to phonebook	Add a phone number and e-mail address displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding information to the Phonebook"→p.107
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "🔑". The "🔑" icon disappears when the protection is removed.
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. "To use the scroll mode"→p.215
Compose message*	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with the URL of a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image attached or inserted.
• **Attach URL**	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of a screen memo pasted in a message.
• **Attach image**	**▶Select an image** Composes an i-mode mail with an image displayed in a screen memo attached.
• **Insert image**	**▶Select an image** Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo inserted into the message.
Save schedule	Stores a schedule event by browsing a screen memo.
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions"→p.436
URL	Displays a screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

<URL>

◆You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

◆Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback.

<Delete>

◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

If saving an image, background image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image for a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: To save an image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶▮ (FUNC) ▶"Save image"▶"Normal image" ▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Position the frame ▭ over the image to save.

■ **To save a background image**

▶"Save image"▶"Background image"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

2 "YES"▶Select an item

When 2in1 is set to Dual mode or B mode, and also "Setting standby screens for each mode" is set to other than "Same as A Number", the saved image cannot be set to the standby screen. The screen for A mode or OFF in 2in1 mode is applied.

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

◆You cannot save the following images:

- A JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots.
- A JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots.
- A progressive JPEG* or GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots.

- A progressive JPEG or GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 x 480 dots.
- An image whose size exceeds 100K bytes.

*: Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed in very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.

◆When saving an image for Decorate PI, the message asking whether to store the Decorate PI appears. Selecting "YES" saves automatically the image to the "Decorate PI" folder in "My picture".

◆When saving an image for Auto Decomail picture, you can select the "Auto Decomail" folder to store.

◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) of the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).

◆An image cannot be saved if "" is displayed.

◆A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:

- Frame that has an image size of Screen (480 x 854, 854 x 480), VGA (640 x 480), VGA Vert. (480 x 640), CIF (352 x 288), CIF Vert. (288 x 352), QVGA (320 x 240), QVGA Vert. (240 x 320), Screen (240 x 427, 427 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), QCIF Vert. (144 x 176), SubQCIF (128 x 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 x 128)
- Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide x 240 dots high or smaller

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC with using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the microSD memory card or transfer them to a PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone, etc. on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the size of melody data stored).

<Example: To store a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a melody

2 "Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder



■ **To play a melody**
▶"Play"

■ **To display melody information**
▶"Property"

3 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

◆You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.

◆A downloaded melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.

◆Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.

◆When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals).

◆Downloaded melodies are played at the volume specified in "Phone" in "Ring volume".

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC with using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the microSD memory card or transfer them to a PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading PDF Data from Sites

Use this procedure to download a PDF-formatted data from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 PDF files can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the number of files that can be stored depends on the size of PDF data stored, etc.).

Continued on next page

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a PDF data file

When a PDF file that requires download of all the data is selected, the "PDF data" screen (p.385) appears after all the data is downloaded.
When a PDF file that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.386

■ **To interrupt download**

▶(✉) (Quit) or CLR

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later.→p.224

■ **If the password entry screen appears**

Enter the password set to the PDF data.

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

For a PDF data that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a PDF data that enables you to download the specified pages, the data (pages) downloaded so far are saved. You can download the remaining pages later.→p.224

■ **To close the view of PDF data**

▶CLR

When the PDF data is not saved, the message asking whether to close the PDF appears. To save the PDF data, select "NO". See "To save the PDF data" above.

● Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially

When you have saved partly downloaded PDF data, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded PDF data that can be checked with icons on the "PDF list" screen (p.384).

Icon	Description
PDF (pale blue)/ PDF (pale blue)	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
PDF (pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded by page. You can download the remaining data at a time or by specifying pages.
PDF (pale blue)/ PDF (pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

<For partially downloaded (by page) PDF data ("PDF" (pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.384)▶Select a PDF file to view

The message informing that the downloading will resume appears and then the "PDF data" screen (p.385) appears.

2 (✉) (Tool)▶Press ◀▶ on toolbar to view pages not downloaded

When you try to view pages not downloaded, you are connected to the site to download the pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.386

■ **To specify the pages you want to download**

▶Select a page number indicated on toolbar▶Enter a page number you want to view

■ **To download all the remaining data at a time**

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"DL remaining data"▶"YES"

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For PDF data downloaded only partially because the download was interrupted, etc. ("PDF (pale blue)", "PDF" (pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.384)▶Select a PDF file to view

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

2 "YES"

You are connected to the site and downloading of all the remaining data starts. After the downloading is complete, the "PDF data" screen (p.385) appears (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).
You can also download all the remaining data by selecting "DL remaining data"→"YES"→"YES" from the function menu (PDF list screen).

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

After the save, the icon changes to "PDF (pale blue)" or "PDF" (pale blue).

NOTE

- ◆It may take long to display some PDF data.
- ◆PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- ◆If you attempt to download a PDF file larger than 500K bytes, the confirmation message asking whether to download the file appears.
- ◆You cannot download a PDF file whose size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.

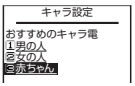
◆Depending on sites, you may not be able to download PDF data.
◆When PDF data that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as the one stored in the FOMA terminal (not in microSD memory card), they are recognized as the same data. Consequently the PDF data will not be downloaded and the PDF data in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
◆When you try to download PDF data with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only "" may appear. In this case, press to return to the previous screen.
◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for a name of a PDF file saved in Inbox or a user-created folder. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) of the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "pdfXXX" (XXX are numerals). For file names of PDF data saved in the microSD card, "PDFDCXXX.PDF" (XXX are numerals) is always used.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den characters from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you have deleted a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from "みんなNらんど" (Only in Japanese) in "ケータイ電話メーカー" site.
  The QR code on the right is also available to access "みんなNらんど"
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a Chara-den character



2 "Save"▶"YES"



■ **To play the Chara-den character**
▶"Play"
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.358

■ **To view the Chara-den information**
▶"Property"

NOTE

◆The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites

You can download Kisekae Tool packages from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 100 Kisekae Tool packages, including the pre-installed ones (the number of packages that can be saved may be less depending on the size of Kisekae Tool data saved).
- If you have deleted a pre-installed Kisekae Tool on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー" site.
  The QR code on the right is also available to access "みんなNらんど".
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a Kisekae Tool package

■ **To cancel the download**
▶ (Quit) or CLR
You can resume downloading if the message asking whether to do it appears.
Selecting "NO" allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

2 "Save"▶"YES"

■ **To check the Kisekae Tool package**
▶"Preview"

■ **To display the Kisekae Tool package information**
▶"Property"

Downloading remaining Kisekae Tool data after downloading partially

If you select a partially downloaded Kisekae Tool in Data box, the message asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partially saved data.

- Icons on the package list screen enables you to distinguish the conditions of downloaded data.→p.364
- If remaining data are invalid, you cannot download the data. Attempting to download such data deletes the partially saved data.

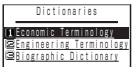
Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading data files such as dictionaries, Decomail-pictures, Auto Decomail-pictures and Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 720 images including Decomail-pictures, Auto Decomail-pictures and shot images, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the pre-installed ones can be stored (the number of data that can be stored may be less depending on the size of data stored).

<Example: To download a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a data file



2 "Save"▶"YES"



■ **To display dictionary information**
▶"Property"

■ **When the memory for storing dictionaries is full**
▶Select a dictionary to delete▶"YES"
New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.

NOTE

◆The title used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where YYYY = year, MM = month, DD = day, hh = hour, mm = minute).

◆You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

Downloading ToruCa from Sites

Downloading ToruCa from Sites

- Up to 100 ToruCa can be stored.

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a ToruCa

2 "Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with a mail sent from a PC.

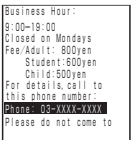
Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call to a phone number displayed on a site, in a mail or PDF data.

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: To make a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select a phone number



■ **When 2in1 is set to Dual mode**
The outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.

2 "Voice phone"



■ **To make a videophone call**
▶"V. phone"

■ **To make a PushTalk call**
▶"PushTalk dial"

3 "Dial"



■ **To hide your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "ON"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Don't notify"

■ **To show your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Notify Caller"

■ **To follow the setting of "Caller ID Notification"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Cancel prefix"

NOTE

◆You may be able to use the Phone To function with an item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").
◆You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the "[phone-number]@..." format.
◆You cannot use the Phone To function in the Full Browser screen.

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the Full Browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if there are already 20 draft mail messages or there is no enough space in the Draft mailbox.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for a mail address.
- Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

<Example: To send a mail from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶Select a mail address



2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

NOTE

◆If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
◆You may be able to use the Mail To function with an item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the Full Browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.
- When a location information URL (indicated by "▷" at the beginning of a URL) is pasted into a message body, selecting the URL displays a surrounding map based on the location information.

<Example: To display a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶Select a URL▶"YES"



NOTE

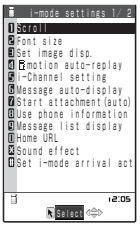
◆You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. "for more information").

Making i-mode Settings

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"i-mode settings"

The "i-mode settings" screen appears.

2 Select any item



i-mode settings

Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and linked page display for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
• **Speed** (default: High speed)	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from "High speed" and "Low speed".
• **During scroll in focus** (default: OFF)	Set whether to highlight the pages (linked pages) when scrolling.
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the indicator display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF. When "OFF" is set, "" icon appears instead of an image. Flash movies are not displayed.
i-motion auto-replay	"Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion"→p.235
i-Channel setting	"Making the i-Channel Settings"→p.238
Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.
Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.
Use phone information (default: YES)	"Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies"→p.229

Continued on next page

Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered for a URL.
• **Invalid** (default)	Disables the home URL display.
• **Valid**	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to store.
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.
Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication. Select "PushTalk preferred" or "i-mode preferred".
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to default.

NOTE

<Scroll>

◆This function is not available when an SSL certificate is displayed.

<Set image disp.>

◆Even if "ON" is selected, the " " icon appears if an image cannot be downloaded.

<Sound effect>

◆Even if "ON" is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Set i-mode arrival act>

◆If "PushTalk preferred" is selected, receiving an incoming PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.

◆Setting "i-mode preferred" does not add an incoming PushTalk call to the Received calls record.

<Reset last URL>

◆Selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu screen at the time of purchase or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout>

Default setting: 60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Connection setting"▶"Set connection timeout"▶Select an item

Select "60 seconds", "90 seconds" or "Unlimited".

NOTE

◆Even when "Unlimited" is set, communication may be disconnected due to poor signal status.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection) <Host selection>

MENU 81

Default setting: i-mode

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides "i-mode".

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Connection setting"▶"Host selection"▶Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)▶Enter your security code

2 Select any item▶Press (Finish) after changing the settings

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

NOTE

◆You cannot change a host while using i-mode. End i-mode and change the host.

◆Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.

◆To change a stored "User defined host", use the same procedure for storing the host.

◆To delete a stored "User defined host", select a host you want to delete, select "Delete" from the function menu, enter your security code and select "YES". If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to "i-mode".

◆If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to "i-mode".

◆If you change a host to connect, the i-Channel ticker is not displayed. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the ticker appears automatically.
◆If you change a host to connect, the i-Channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press (ch) to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies <Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the data stored on the FOMA terminal when running Flash movies.

- Some Flash movies use the data stored on a FOMA terminal. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set "YES" for "Use phone information" in "i-mode settings". The default setting is "YES". Such movies may use the following types of stored data:
  - Battery level
  - Signal strength
  - Date and time
  - Ring volume setting
  - Bilingual setting
  - Model data

1 "i-mode settings screen"(p.227)▶"Use phone information"▶Select an item

Select "YES" or "NO".

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- Up to 100 MessageR and 100 MessageF can be saved on a FOMA terminal. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the size of data in each saved message.

Viewing newly received messages

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto-display" (p.227).

The " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message appears.



- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while receiving a message, press (i) (Quit) or CLR for 1 second or longer. However, you may still receive a message depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of mails and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the reception results screen may vary depending on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.



- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if you display the standby screen while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.



- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.

When automatic display is disabled

The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

NOTE

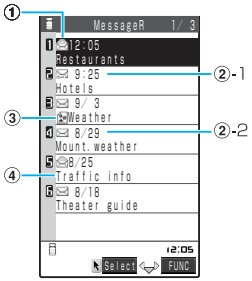
◆When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center.
◆Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, an i-αppli is running, the FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), Dial lock is set or Original lock is set for "i-mode" or "Disp. recv. mail/msg.".
◆If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is read or unprotected is deleted when the new message is received.
◆When the " F " (red) or " R " (red) icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no more MessageR/MessageF. (The MessageR and MessageF status may be displayed simultaneously such as R/F (R, F: red), R/F (R: red, F: white) or R/F (R: white, F :red).) To receive a new message, delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons disappears.
◆When the " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held at the i-mode Center. Use "Check new messages" to receive the MessageR/MessageF.
◆When the " R " (red) or " F " (red) icon appears, the capacity for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode Center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.
◆After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.

Continued on next page

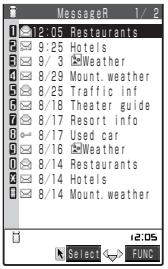
◆When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/ MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
◆You can download the ToruCa (detail) from ToruCa attached to a MessageR/MessageF.

Guide to the MessageR/MessageF screen

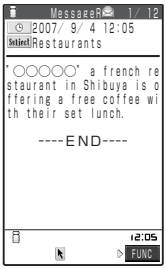
- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

①MessageR/MessageF status

Icon	Description
	Unread MessageR/MessageF
	Read MessageR/MessageF
	Read and protected MessageR/ MessageF

 : Indicates MessageR/MessageF is protected.

②Message arrival time and date

②-1 Time is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived today

②-2 Date is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier

③Information of attached or pasted files

<List screen>

Icon	Description
	MessageR/MessageF with a melody attached or pasted
	MessageR/MessageF with an image attached
	MessageR/MessageF with ToruCa attached
	MessageR/MessageF with multiple files attached or pasted

 : Indicates a partially invalid data.

 : Indicates an invalid data.

 : Indicates the data has been deleted by the scan function.

<Detail screen>

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody

 : Indicates an invalid data.

④Subject

<Check new messages>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (Mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode Center:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off
  - "  " appears
  - Message boxes are full
  - During a videophone call or remote observation
  - Self mode is set
  - During a PushTalk call
  - The FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.278) to specify which items will be checked for.

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"Check new messages"

The check new messages screen appears. The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (i) (i-mode)▶"Check new messages"
- (✉) (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (✉) (MAIL)▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in that order.

The " " (white), " R " (white) and " F " (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mails and MessageR/MessageF.
The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

■ **To cancel the inquiry**

▶Hold down (Quit) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

◆When the " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held at the i-mode Center. Once the capacity allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your MessageR or MessageF is full, the " R " (red) or " F " (red) icon appears.
◆The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Max. number of messages	Max. storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.
◆Even if a MessageR or MessageF is held at the i-mode Center, " R " (white) or " F " (white) may not appear if the FOMA terminal is turned off or " " appears.

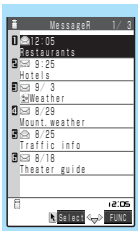
<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

● When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode Center, " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"MessageR/F"▶"MessageR" or "MessageF"

The "Message list" screen appears.



Message list

Function menu➡p.231

2 Select a message you want to view

The "Message detail" screen appears.
To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use .
Press CLR on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Message detail

Function menu➡p.232

NOTE

◆Keys such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (Message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in the reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete read**	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE

<Sort> <Filter>
◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Delete this> <Delete selected>
◆You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
◆You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>
◆The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

Continued on next page

<Delete all>

- The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (Message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number and e-mail address displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook.
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages"→p.222
Save ToruCa	Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/MessageF.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE

<Save melody>

- Select an attached melody to play it.
- When you save a pasted melody, its title is saved instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is saved.
- Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>

- All attached images are displayed regardless of the "Set image disp." setting.

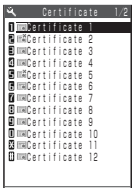
<Delete>

- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid or invalid.

1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"**▶**"Connection setting"**▶**"Certificate"**



2 Select a certificate▶Check the details

■ **To validate or invalidate an SSL certificate**

▶Highlight a certificate▶(FUNC)▶"Valid/Invalid"

NOTE

- The default settings for all certificates are "Valid".
- The "" icon appears when a certificate is set to "Valid". The "" icon appears when a certificate is set to "Invalid".
- If an SSL certificate is set to "Invalid", you cannot display SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

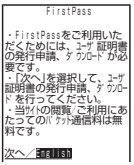
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass-compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- User certificates cannot be used overseas.
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center.→p.47
- The screens and procedures shown at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 (MENU)▶**"i-MODE"**▶**"Client certificate"**▶**Check the details**▶**"English"**



2 "Request your certificate"



■ **If you use FirstPass for the first time**

Select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the information provided.

■ **To apply invalidation**

Select "Other settings" then "Revoke your certificate". Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Check the details▶"Continue"

4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code→p.158



5 Check the message▶"Download"▶Check the details▶"Continue"▶"Menu"

The confirmation message appears.
The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

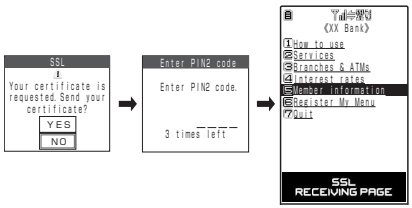
NOTE

◆Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
◆Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and read the information.
◆You cannot use the following functions during connection to the FirstPass Center.
- PushTalk
- Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
- Checking new messages (Checking new SMS is available)
- Sending or receiving speed photo mails
- Receiving MessageR/MessageF
- Manually retrieving files attached to mails
- Web To function

◆Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
◆Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
◆To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, request the user certificate again and download it.
◆To check a downloaded user certificate, see "Using SSL Certificate" (p.232).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Confirm the user certificate transmission▶"YES"▶Enter your PIN2 code



NOTE

◆Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by "Pake-Houdai" deal.
◆FirstPass is also available in Full Browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites in Full Browser is not covered by the Pake-Houdai deal.
◆If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, the message informing you of that fact appears. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES", but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press ● to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo's digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates a FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the "FOMA N904iCD-ROM" (CD-ROM for FOMA N904i) bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the "FirstPassManual" (PDF) contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is available only in Japanese.)
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.158).Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling "For inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting: DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Connection setting"▶"Certificate host"

Continued on next page

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item▶Press (Finish) after changing the settings

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

NOTE

- To change a stored "User defined host", use the same procedure for storing the host.
- To delete a stored "User defined host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.

Chaku-motion→p.126

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or file type.

Type		Description
Type	**Replay type**	
Standard type (Can be saved*)	Playable after downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable while downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playable while downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on a FOMA terminal.

*: Some i-motion files cannot be saved.

NOTE

- A FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"iMenu"▶"English iMenu"▶"Menu List"▶Select a site

2 Select i-motion

The "Data acquisition" screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel the download

▶(Quit)

■ Standard-type i-motion

Use the "i-motion auto-replay" setting in "i-motion auto-replay" (p.235) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically while downloading. Some i-motion programs may be played after downloaded.

■ Streaming-type i-motion

When you receive the message "Replay streaming?"

- Select "YES" to play the i-motion. Select "NO" to return to the site screen.
- To cancel playback in progress after selecting "YES", press CLR.

3 "Play"

Plays the downloaded i-motion. "Operation during i-motion playback"→p.354



Data acquisition

NOTE

- Untitled i-motion appears as "No title" on the data acquisition screen.
- Some sites and i-motion programs do not allow playback during download.
- Even if you stop playing a standard-type i-motion during download, the download continues.
- Even if "i-motion auto-replay" is set to "ON", the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
- Some i-motion programs are restricted to be played. "" appears at the beginning of the title of an i-motion with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. i-motion programs with restrictions on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from a FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion programs with restrictions on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.

  "i-motion information"→p.353
- Some downloaded i-motion programs may not be played correctly.

◆If data download is interrupted, you can save the partially acquired data and download the remaining data later.
◆Partially downloaded i-motion cannot be played even if you select it in Data box. Download the remaining data before playing. However, you cannot download the remaining data of i-motion with playback restrictions if the playback period or limit has expired.
◆When you download and play a standard-type or streaming-type i-motion at the same time (the first playback only), you cannot play fast, step or slow.
◆If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal status or downloaded data exceeds the maximum size, the message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear, on the condition that "Play", "Save" or "Property" can appear on the data acquisition screen.
◆The signal status may affect the playback or motion during download. After the data download is completed, you can play a standard-type i-motion repeatedly, but not a streaming-type.
◆You can "Add screen memo" from the function menu of the Data acquisition screen (p.234) to save an i-motion as a "Screen memo" (p.221), then play the i-motion from the screen memo.
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following type of i-motion as screen memo:
• i-motion with playback restrictions
• Streaming-type i-motion
• Incomplete i-motion
◆i-motion programs saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion programs.

Saving i-motion

When "Save" can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion programs may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion programs can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion programs that can be saved varies between 1 and 100 depending on the size of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder→p.340

1 Data acquisition screen (p.234)▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ To cancel saving
▶"NO"
Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder
You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.

NOTE
◆An i-motion without the title is listed as "movieXXX" (XXX are numerals).
◆You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site for the standby screen or ring tone.→p.126, 137
Some i-motion programs cannot be set for the standby screen or ring tone.
◆You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set for the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.234)▶"Property"
The "i-motion info" screen appears. Use ◉ to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.
After checking the information, press CLR.

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion <i-motion auto-replay>

Default setting: ON

- You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:
  • Downloading the i-motion from a site
  • Displaying a screen memo of the i-motion data acquisition screen
- The "i-motion auto-replay" setting is available only for standard-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of this setting.
  i-motion types→p.234

1 i-mode settings screen (p.227)▶"i-motion auto-replay"▶Select any item

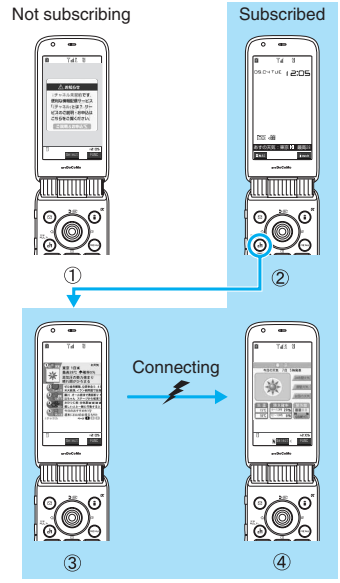
ON	Automatically plays an i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion programs are played while downloading.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing an i-motion after downloading.

What is i-Channel?

i-Channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-Channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers). Your FOMA terminal periodically receives the latest information and displays it as ticker on the standby screen. Pressing the i-Channel key (ch) displays the channel list (p.237). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions or details on how to use i-Channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

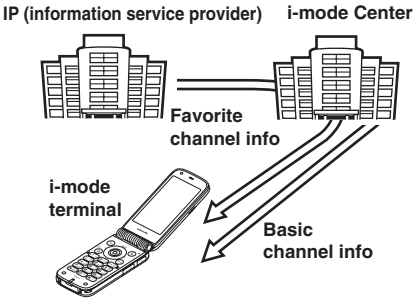


* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

① You have not subscribed to i-Channel.
② After you subscribe to i-Channel, a ticker automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.
③ Pressing ch on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.
④ Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

■ Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: "Basic channels" and "Favorite channels". "Basic channels" are provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered by default, so that you can view the channels immediately after you start subscribing to i-Channel. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Basic channels" is included in the i-Channel service charge. "Favorite channels" are provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Favorite channels" is not included in the i-Channel service charge.
Both "Basic channels" and "Favorite channels" information can be displayed as a ticker on the standby screen.



* i-Channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the i-Channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).

• How to operate→p.237

NOTE

◆Information charges may apply for viewing some "Favorite channels".
◆For some "Favorite channels", you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.
◆A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list on both "Basic channels" and "Favorite channels" in addition to the i-Channel service charge.
◆The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Basic channels" is not included in the i-Channel service charge during international roaming.

■ Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-Channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-Channel, you can try the "Basic channels" free of charge for a given period. A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For cautions and details on how to use the trial service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

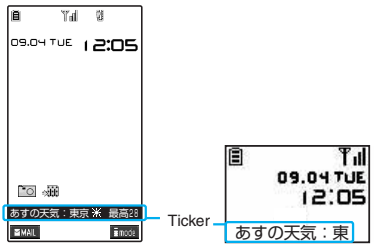
NOTE

◆As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-Channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press ch to start it.
◆You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.
◆The trial service will end automatically after a given period has passed. To quit the service before the expiration, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● Ticker display on the standby screen/indicator display

If you subscribe to i-Channel, delivered information will automatically appear as a ticker on the standby screen or indicator display.

- ⇦ flashes while i-Channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the ticker display mode in "i-Channel setting". →p.238



NOTE

◆Ticker appears even if an i-motion or i-αppli is set as the standby screen background.
◆Ticker does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.
◆The standby screen can display ticker even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-Channel information site. The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen▶ch

The "Channel list" screen appears.
Selecting "i-Channel" from the i-mode menu also opens the i-Channel list screen.

2 Select a channel item



Channel list

Function menu➡p.237

NOTE

◆If you have not subscribed to i-Channel, launching the i-Channel displays the message indicating that you have not subscribed to i-Channel. Selecting "ご説明&お申込" (Guide & Subscription) on the screen introduces you to i-Channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-Channel. Depending on the communication status, the message indicating that you have not subscribed to i-Channel may appear, and the previous screen may reappear.
◆In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.
◆Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.
◆You can change the i-Channel host, though it usually does not need to change. →p.228
◆The message indicating that channel information cannot be delivered may appear if:
- A call or message is incoming
- The FOMA terminal was initialized
- The FOMA card (UIM) was replaced
- The host was changed
- The i-Channel setting was reset

Function menu (Channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen.
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

◆"Sound effect" set on the channel list screen affects "Sound effect" under "i-mode settings" (p.228).

<i-Channel setting>

Making the i-Channel Settings

Default	Ticker display setting: ON (indicator display OFF) Ticker speed setting: Normal Ticker color setting: WHITE (Phone color: Orange cut, Day and Night), NAVY (Phone color: Urban Blue), PINK (Phone color: Pink Soda)

Set whether to display a ticker on the standby screen or on the indicator display. Also set the scroll speed of ticker.

- Setting the Ticker display setting to "Receiving" displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
- Selecting "ON" for the indicator display displays a ticker as follows:
  - Setting the Ticker display setting to "ON" displays a ticker twice on the indicator display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
  - Setting the Ticker display setting to "Receiving" displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
  - The Power saver mode is not set while a ticker appears on the indicator display.

1 (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"i-mode settings"▶"i-Channel setting"▶Select any item

Ticker display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as a ticker on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). If you select "ON" or "Receiving", additionally set whether to display on the indicator display when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).
Ticker speed setting	Sets the ticker scroll speed (Normal/High/Low).
Ticker color setting	Sets the ticker color.*
Reset i-Channel	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Restores the i-Channel setting to default.

*: The ticker color is displayed when selecting an item and changing the position to be highlighted.

NOTE

◆The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Ticker display setting>

◆If you unsubscribe from i-mode before unsubscribing from i-Channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-Channel, the Ticker display setting remains unchanged but a ticker will not appear automatically.

◆Each setting of 2in1 modes is saved.

<Reset i-Channel>

◆The i-Channel ticker does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the ticker appears automatically.

Mail

Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions 240
What is i-mode Mail? 240
Displaying Mail Menu ..... Mail menu 242

Creating i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail ..... Compose message/Send 243
Composing and Sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 247
Self-Decorating to Messages ..... Auto Deco-mail 249
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail 250
Attaching Files ..... Attach file 252
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later ..... Save i-mode mail 253
Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists 254

Receiving and manipulating i-mode mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail ..... Auto receive mail 254
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 256
Checking for i-mode Mail ..... Check new messages 257
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to mail 258
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination ..... Forward mail 259
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook 259
Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File 259
Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail 260

Using mail boxes

Displaying Mail in Inbox and Outbox ..... Inbox/Outbox 262

Using mail records

Using Mail Records ..... Sent address/Received address 275

Setting mail options

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions .... Mail settings 276

Using a chat mail

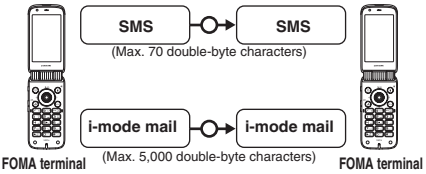
Composing and Sending Chat Mail ..... Compose chat/Send 281
Registering Members in Chat Group 284

Using SMS (Short Message)

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) ... Compose SMS/Send 286
When You Receive SMS (Short Message) ..... Receive SMS 287
Checking for SMS (Short Message) ..... Check new SMS 288
Setting SMS (Short Message) Options ..... SMS settings 288
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM) ..... UIM operation 288

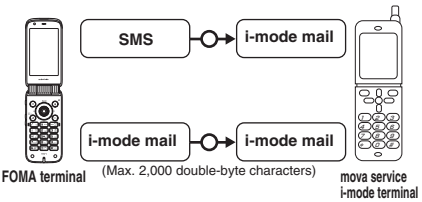
Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions

FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

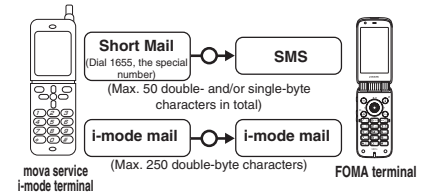
SMS sent from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.



* If "SMS report req." (p.287) is set to "ON", you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



*: Short Mail is a service that you can exchange text messages using the mova service mobile phone.

What is i-mode Mail?

Your FOMA terminal provides the mail function that is available for sending and receiving i-mode mail and SMS.
i-mode is required for subscribing to use i-mode mail.

Sending and receiving i-mode mail→p.243, 254

- You can send and receive SMS (text-basis message exchange) between other FOMA terminals without i-mode subscription.
  Sending and receiving SMS→p.286, 287

● i-mode mail

Mail exchange is available between i-mode mail and a commonly used e-mail via the Internet as well as between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) simply by subscribing to i-mode.
In addition to the message body, you can attach 10 files including JPEG images, ToruCa and PDF data within the total of 2M bytes. Deco-mail is also available and you can change the font color, size, and background color of the message body. Moreover, your FOMA terminal initially provides the variety of Decorate PI that can be inserted like pictographs and you can easy create a richly expressive mail to send it.
Your mail address is assigned as follows at the time of i-mode subscription:

■ New subscription to i-mode

The part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is combined with a random alphanumeric. Confirm your mail address after i-mode subscription.
Example: abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<To confirm your mail address>
iMenu screen▶English iMenu ▶Options▶Mail Settings▶"Confirm Mail Address"

- Only the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is available for exchanging between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) to send a mail.
- Use the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp" when receiving an e-mail from PC.
- Sending i-mode mail→p.243
- Receiving i-mode mail→p.254
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

■ Receive option

You can check the subject of a mail stored on the i-mode Center and then select any mail to be received or delete a mail at the i-mode Center before receiving. →p.256

● Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>
Menu screen▶English iMenu ▶Options▶Mail Settings▶"Setting each option"

* For details, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" presented at the time your i-mode subscription.

■ Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) to your preferred address.

■ Confirming your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶Register a Secret Code>

When using your phone number as an address, the 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Mail without specifying the secret code is rejected from receiving and you can avoid an unwelcome mail.

■ Resetting mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶Reset Mail Address>

Return your mail address to "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp".

■ Spam mail prevention

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and/or mail reject settings:

① Reject Mail with URL <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) > ▶<Reject Mail with URL>
- You can set to reject mails including URLs websites which are categorized in matchmaking, adult, illegal or security site by NetSTAR Inc.

② Reject/Receive Mail Setting <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶Reject/Receive Mail Settings>
- You can specify the service providers to receive mails from DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka or WILLCOM. You can also receive only mails with the specified domain or address. The specified mail address can be rejected even when the mail address is within a company or domain from which you have specified to receive the mail. You can also reject a mail with spoofing domains of the mobile phone or PHS from companies other than the above (Internet).

③ SMS Rejection Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶SMS Rejection Settings>
- You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: "Reject All SMS", "Reject Anonymous SMS", "Reject Intl. SMS" and "Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS". You can also check the setting status.

④ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
- Setting this option rejects 200th or later received i-mode mail sent from one i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) a day. "Reject" is set as default, so you do not have to reset this option for rejecting mails distributed to an unspecified number of addresses.

⑤ Reject Unsolicited Ad* Mail <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
- Setting this option rejects received mails declaring "未承諾広告※" (unsolicited advertising) at the front of subject line, which are sent to you without your consent. Reject is set as default, so you do not have to reset this option for rejecting the (unsolicited advertising) mails. (Senders are legally required to include "未承諾広告※" (6 double-byte characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)

■ Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>

Using this option enables restriction to an incoming i-mode mail by size specified in advance.

■ Confirming setting status <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>

You can confirm the setting status about mail acceptation/rejection currently set.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail service at the i-mode Center if you do not use it.

■ To prevent nuisance mail

It is effective to prevent nuisance mails that you change your mail address or use the address-specific reception/rejection function.

● SMS (Short Message) address

Your SMS address is the mobile phone number you subscribe.

● Not available for receiving mail

As soon as a mail reaches at the i-mode Center, it is transferred to your i-mode terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, the mail is attempted to be transferred for 720 hours until it is received, while the mail is kept.

* The mail is kept in the i-mode Center for 720 hours if the mail is failed to be transferred.

* Depending on the condition of the fail of the mail reception, the condition for the mail transfer changes.

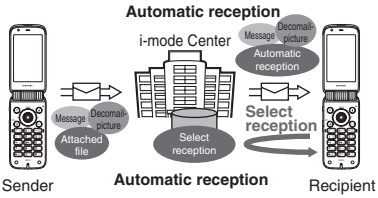
Receive option setting enables you to select the i-mode mail at the i-mode Center for receiving.

● Other useful features

■ Send and receive the files

No restriction exists on the attach-enabled file type for the i-mode mail (2M bytes supported). You can send up to 10 files (the total of 2M bytes) with attachments. For attachments received as an i-mode mail (2M bytes supported), all files can be received. An attached file of up to 100K bytes is automatically received (Auto received attached file) and any of up to 2M bytes from 100K bytes can be selectively received (Selective received attached file). Prefer attachment enables you to selectively receive even an attached file of 100K bytes or less regardless of the file size.

For receiving a file using the other terminal, only supported file types are received within the mail receive capacity of the terminal.



■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to create and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by changing the font size or the background color, etc. when editing i-mode mail, or by attaching images to the text body. Moreover, your FOMA terminal initially provides the variety of Decorate PI that can be inserted like pictographs and you can easy create a richly expressive mail and send it. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on the i-mode terminals.)

When you send Deco-mail to the Deco-mail-unsupported terminal or the Deco-mail-supported terminal of 10,000 bytes max., it may be received as a mail containing URL .In this case, the recipient selects URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail →p.247
- Entering Decorate PI →p.449
- Support model: Deco-mail-supported model is available. For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

<File transmission>

◆Even if "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can send still images using the built-in camera.

◆If you send i-mode mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.

◆To play an i-motion on i-motion mail using a PC, compatible software is necessary.

"Movie Playing Software" →p.504

■ Important

- We recommend that you should take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, or store them on the microSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal may erase any recorded messages or memos. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu

1 (MENU) ▶ **"MAIL"**

Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Item	Description	Refer to
Inbox	Shows the "Inbox folder list" screen. Mail can be organized into different folders.*1 Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS.	p.262
Outbox	Shows the "Outbox folder list" screen. Mail can be organized into different folders.*1 Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS.	p.262
Draft	Shows the "Draft mail list" screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS.	p.253

Item	Description	Refer to
Compose message	Shows the screen used for creating i-mode mail.	p.243
WEB mail[*2]	Connect to the WEB mail site and compose or send mails from Address B.	—
Chat mail	Shows the "Chat" screen.	p.282
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS.	p.286
Check new messages	Confirms a new i-mode mail and receives any i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center.	p.257
Receive option	When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", this option enables you to check the subject of the i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center and then to select the i-mode mail for receiving or to delete any i-mode mail before it is received.	p.256
Check new SMS	Confirms and receives a new SMS kept at the SMS Center.	p.288
Template	Shows the "Template" screen.	p.251
Mail settings	Sets the FOMA terminal about the mail function.	p.276

*1: Chat mail and a mail-connected i-αppli mail are sorted into a dedicated folder.
*2: For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

<Compose message/Send>

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this function to create and send a new i-mode mail.

- You can decorate the message body by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images and lines. Deco-mail→p.247

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Compose message"

The "New mail" screen appears.

2 "To"▶Select the address entry method



New mail

Function menu➡p.244

Phonebook	Enters an email address by searching the phonebook.
Sent address	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
Received address	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Mail member	"Entering an address from the mail member"→p.245
Enter address	Enters the mail address directly.

3 "Subject"

The "Subject" screen appears.

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.



Subject

Function menu➡p.245

5 "✉"

The "Message" screen appears.

6 Enter the message body

Up to 5,000 double-byte characters (10,000 bytes) can be entered in the message body regardless of the file size of the images inserted or the attachments.

You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message body. A line feed "↵" is counted as one double-byte character. Space is also counted as a character.

You can choose the font size of the message screen.→p.445

You can create and send the Deco-mail.→p.247

You can use templates to create and send the Deco-mail.→p.250

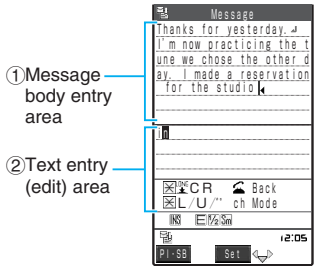


Message

Function menu➡p.245

■ Message screen for i-mode mail

The following shows the Message screen while creating an i-mode mail.



① Message body entry area: Shows the confirmed message body.

② Text entry (edit) area: Shows the areas for the text entry, operation guidance and detail information. You find the pre-confirmed texts here.
You can use the Word Prediction function in the text entry (edit) area.→p.447

Continued on next page

7 Confirm the message ▶✉ (Send)



When you enter the message body, the number of bytes of it appears in the upper right corner of the message field.
The screen shows an animation for the mail in transit, then i-mode mail is sent. Press ● to return to the Mail menu screen.

■ **To interrupt transmission**

▶i (Quit) or CLR (1 second or longer)
However, i-mode mail may be transferred depending on when to cancel it.

■ **For retransmission request**

▶"YES"

● Creating i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Search and show the mail address added on the phonebook and then press ● (MAIL).
The displayed mail address is pasted into the address field on the new mail screen.



NOTE

- If sent mail (a total of both i-mode mail and SMS) stored in the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the maximum storage capacity, sent mail is automatically overwritten in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted. You should protect the mail you want to keep.
- Using Decorate PI under Pictograph turns to Deco-mail when entering the message body.→p.247, 449
- If you send the mail, using the pictographs in the subject or the message body, to the terminal for other service providers such as au, SoftBank and Tu-Ka, those pictographs are automatically converted to the similar ones used in the destination providers. However, they may not be properly displayed depending on the model or function of the destination terminal.
- When a phone number is entered as address and the prefix number of "184" or "186" is appended, a message appears on transmission confirming that mail will be sent without "184" or "186".
- You cannot send a mail if a comma (,) or a space (blank) is entered in the address field.
- A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal status. Even if sending operation is properly terminated, "Transmission failed" may appear.
- If you enter an address in the phonebook with "Secret code" (p.115) set, the secret code is automatically added when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not displayed at the destination of sent mail.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot either compose or send an i-mode mail.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends an i-mode mail.
Preview	Enables confirmation for the destination address and message body before sending mail. Selecting "Save" from the function menu in Preview is available for saving a mail.
Save	"Saving i-mode mail" →p.253
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only one address entered, you cannot delete the address.
Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with an address highlighted.
• **To**	Used to enter the destination address. The mail address in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail.
• **Cc**	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address entered in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail. The Cc field should be selected when you send the mail as a carbon copy to other destination. This copy is same mail as the one sent to the address in the To field.
• **Bcc**	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address in this field cannot be seen by any one who receives mail.
Template	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →p.250
Attach file	"Attaching Files" →p.252
Activate camera	
• **Photo mode**	Used to shoot a still image. "Shooting Still Images" →p.191
• **Movie mode**	Used to shoot a movie. The file size can be set to either one; 500K bytes or less, or 2M bytes or less. "Shooting Movies" →p.197
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file highlighted.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachment files.
Add header	Pastes a header into the message body.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the message body.
Erase message	Erases the message body in editing.
Delete	Deletes the mail in editing.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- Using this option enables transmission specifying to To, Cc or Bcc for destination. However, "To" is required to send the mail.
- The mail address in the "To" and "Cc" fields can be seen by any one who receives mail. However, it may not be displayed in certain terminals, devices or mailers on the destination.

<Add header> <Add signature>

- If you select the item in the "Insert setting" checkbox under "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically attached when creating an i-mode mail. →p.277

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter a mail address into the address field after searching a phonebook.

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶" To "▶ "Phonebook"▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen▶Edit the subject and message body to send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

Adding addresses

If adding the different addresses, you can send mail to the multiple destinations at a time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

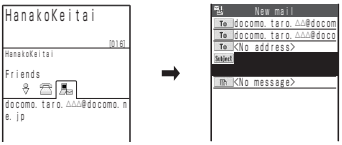
<Example: To look up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶" To " with a blank address▶"Phonebook"▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



■ **To change the entered address**

▶Select the address you want to change▶Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select "YES".

3 Edit the subject and message body to send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

Entering an address from the mail member <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add the multiple addresses at a time.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand.→p.254

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶" To "▶ "Mail member"

2 Select a mail member

Once a mail member is selected, it is entered to the address field.



3 Edit the subject and message body to send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

NOTE

◆If you specify any address using Mail member when an address is already entered, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite the address. Select "YES" to overwrite the address. Select "NO" not to overwrite.

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu of the "Text entry (edit)" screen→p.450

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the "Text entry (edit)" screen (p.450) for the other items than the following.

Decorate mail	"Decorating a massage"→p.248
Select area	Decorating, cut or paste the area-selected characters is available.→p.249
Load template	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.250
Activate camera	Activates camera.
Paste location	Pastes the location information URL into the message body.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information to be pasted.
• **From loc. history**	Pastes the location information from the location history you confirmed.
• **From phonebook**	Searches the phonebook and pastes the location information recorded in the phonebook.
• **From My Profile**	▶**Enter your security code**▶ ● **(Set)**▶**"YES"** Pastes the location information recorded in My profile.
• **From image**	▶**Select an image**▶**"YES"** Pastes the location information added to in the image
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Reverts the entered text or the decoration of the message body to the previous one.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

◆The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF(128 x 96).

<Paste location>

◆" " is displayed and followed by the location information URL when it is pasted into the message.

◆The pasted location information URL is counted as a characters in the message body.

Continued on next page

<Undo>

◆After you use the "Undo" option to revert the message to the previous one, you cannot cancel "Undo".

◆Once you press ● on the message screen and return to the new mail screen, you cannot use the "Undo" option even if the message screen is displayed again. (If you select "Preview" on the message screen and display it, the "Undo" option is available).

<Preview>

◆When the message body contains a link to the phone number, mail address, URL or i-αppli on the preview screen, the underline is drawn on the linked item. However, you cannot use the "Phone To (AV Phone To)", "Mail To" and "Web To" functions.

Sending a still image shot in talking <Speed photo mail>

You can send a still image taken on the scene or stored on the FOMA terminal to the destination during a voice call.

- To use Speed photo mail for the person you are talking with, you must be ready to store the phone number and the mail address on the same memory number of the phonebook.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

1 In-call screen (p.51)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Speed photo mail"▶"Photo mode"

■ To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal

▶"Speed photo mail"▶"My picture"

You cannot select an still image to which transmission is restricted.

You can transfer only images of "QCIF" or "SubQCIF".

2 ● or (CAM)

A still image is shot.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound when you take a picture.

You can use the camera application functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. →p.192

The "speed photo mail image" screen appears.



Speed photo mail image

Function menu➡p.246

■ To save and send the still image you shot

▶Speed photo mail image function menu▶"Save & send"

If you send the image without selecting "Save & send", it is not saved in My picture.

3 ●▶●

A send confirmation message appears.



■ When multiple mail addresses are stored

▶Select the mail address to be sent

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

◆This function cannot be used in the following cases:

- The phone number and mail address of the person in talk are not stored on the phonebook
- The phone number and mail address of the person in talk are stored on the phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"
- When the destination for a voice call has not been provided with a caller ID (User unset or Unknown, etc.)
- Packet communication is in progress on data communication
- There are 20 Draft mails saved or Draft is full
- Call waiting is in progress
- The terminal is activated for a call when updating software

◆A mail sent using this function is stored in Outbox with your phone number as the subject.

◆Even if "Select size" is set to other than "QCIF (176 x 144)" or "SubQCIF (128 x 96)", launching this function reverts the setting to "QCIF (176 x 144)".

◆If you change the "Select size" while this function is running, only the "QCIF (176 x 144)" and "SubQCIF (128 x 96)" formats can be selected.

◆If you send an image which has a large file size, some destination terminals may not display it.

<Priority order for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

◆If there are several mail addresses for the person in talk stored on the phonebook, the addresses shown in the send confirmation screen are highlighted in the following priority order.

① i-mode address (where @ (at mark) is followed by docomo.ne.jp)

② Address or phone number not including the domain (the part of the address following @ (at mark))

③ The first address stored on the phonebook

Function menu (Speed photo mail image screen)

Save & send	Saves the shot image in My picture and then sends the speed photo mail.
Compose message	Sends the shot image as a speed photo mail without saving it.
Set as display	Saves and pastes the shot image before sending it as a speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "Set as display" in the function menu (image checking screen). →p.193
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the images to be sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal that has received them.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the images to be sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal that has received them.

Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains and adds the current location information.
• **From loc. history**	Added location information confirmed from the location history.
• **Loc. Info detail**	The detail screen for the added location information is displayed to see the date positioned, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
• **Delete loc. info**	Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes the shot image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

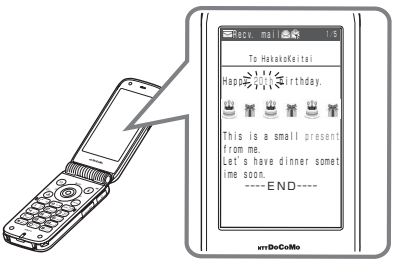
<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to decorate the message body of i-mode mail (text-basis) by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images or lines, to create a rich expressive mail.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.

Deco-mail display
(Displayed in the received mail detail screen after the reception)



NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, a message appears with the decorations and inserted images as quoted.
- If you reply with quote or forward Deco-mail including images that cannot be sent as a mail, images are deleted.

Composing Deco-mail

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the "Decomail-picture" folder in "My picture". Decomail-pictures preinstalled at default →p.493
- Entering Decorate PI under Pictograph also composes Deco-mail on the "Message" screen. →p.449
- If you decorate the message body in Deco-mail, the number of characters decreases for entering rather than the one in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting "Preview" from the function menu on the message screen.

<Example: To change the font size>

1 Enter the address and subject on the New mail screen (p.243)▶" "

The "Message" screen appears.

2 Enter Message▶ (FUNC) ▶"Decorate mail"

The decoration menu appears.
Pressing [ ] also displays the Decorate mail menu on the "Message" screen while in creating a new i-mode mail.

3 " "



■ **To decorate the text already entered**

▶" Edit "▶Use ● to select the start of the text to be decorated▶Use ● to select the end of the text to be decorated▶" "▶Select size

The size of characters in the specified area is changed.

4 Select size



5 Enter text to be decorated

Press (Exit) or [CLR] to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"▶Select any item

Auto	"Self-Decorating to Messages"→p.249
A	▶**Use ⊕ to select a color**▶**Enter the message body** Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. Pressing ✉ (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
AA	▶**Select any item**▶**Enter the message body** Selects the size of the entered text.
AAA	Sets to the large font size.
AAA	Sets to the standard font size.
AAA	Sets to the small font size.
	Selects an image (including Decorate PI) stored in My picture and insert it. →p.342
A	▶ABegin▶**Enter text to be flashed** Makes the entered text flash.
ABegin	Sets the point at which flashing starts.
A End	Sets the point at which flashing ends.
A	▶ABegin▶**Enter text to be displayed as ticker** Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).
ABegin	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
A End	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
A	▶ABegin▶**Enter text to be swung** Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
ABegin	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
A End	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
	▶**Select any item**▶**Enter the message body** Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
	Justifies text to the left.
	Centers text.
	Justifies text to the right.
	Inserts a line.
	▶**Use ⊕ to select a color** Selects the background color from the color palette. Pressing ✉ (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message input screen..
Edit	"Changing the decorations"→p.249
Reset All	Deletes all the decorations.
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.

NOTE

- The latest 5 colors selected by the 256-color pallet is displayed on the very bottom of the 25-color pallet.
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the extent to be changed and then select "Reset". However, the specified color is not applied to Decorate PI.
- You cannot change the size of Decorate PI.
- If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- Up to 20 (90K bytes) JPEG-/GIF-format images or Decorate PI can be inserted regardless of the bytes of the message body or the file size of the attachments. (The maximum count varies depending on the file size of the image.) Message appears indicating no more insertion when the count or capacity exceeds the maximum limit.
- If you insert the multiple copies of the same images, those are counted as one packed. However, each file size is counted respectively.
- The file size of the inserted image is also included in the byte size of the message body shown in the "New mail" screen or Preview.
- If you insert an image containing the location information, a message confirms whether to paste the location information into a message when selecting the image. Selecting "YES" pastes the URL of the location information immediately after inserted an image.
- When inserting an animation, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you paste the non-decorated text-only header or signature using "Add header" or "Add signature" from the compose message screen, a header and signature are pasted in succession to the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and the end of the message body, respectively.

◆Even if you delete the decorated text, only the decorating data is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations first and then delete the text. If you delete all texts by pressing CLR for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
◆If you exchange the mail with Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminal such as PC, decoration may not be properly displayed.
◆If you send Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes to other terminals than below* regardless of Deco-mail-capable, the destination terminal receives a mail describing the URL for browsing. Selecting the URL browses Deco-mail on the destination. However, some Deco-mail-incompatible terminal may receive the message-body-only mail with no URL for browsing.
*: 904i series, 903i series, 703i series (except P703iu)

Changing the decorations

1 Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC) ▶"Decorate mail"▶"Edit"▶Use to select the start point ▶ Use to select the end point ▶ Select any item

■ To change the decoration after specifying the area
▶Message screen▶(FUNC)▶"Select area"▶Use to select the start point▶ Use to select the end point▶ "Decorate mail"▶Select any item

	▶Use to select a color Selects the color of the texts or lines to be changed from the color palette. Pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.	
	Changes the font size in the specified range.	
		Changes to the large font size.
		Changes to the standard font size.
		Changes to the small font size.
	Changes or cancels flashing for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes the flash setting.
	Reset	Cancels flashing.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes the ticker setting.
	Reset	Cancels the ticker view.
	Changes or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes swinging.
	Reset	Cancels swinging.
	Changes the alignment of the text in the specified area.	
		Changes to the left-aligned text.
		Changes to the centered text.
		Changes to the right-aligned text.
Undo	Reverts the decoration for the text or message body to previous. (This option is not available after exiting the Message screen.)	
Reset	Cancels the decorations.	
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.	

NOTE
◆You cannot change the inserted images or lines. If you do, delete the images or lines in the message screen and insert them.
◆To change the specified background color, select "Decorate mail" from the function menu of the "Message" screen and choose "" (Change background color).

<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating to Messages

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion from a tone in the message of a mail, and automatically converts to Deco-mail with the best-suited decoration. The entire message body is displayed in the background color standing for emotion, and decorated with the font color, font size and tickers to the sentences.
● You can decorate your mail to express up to two emotions.

1 Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC) ▶"Decorate mail"

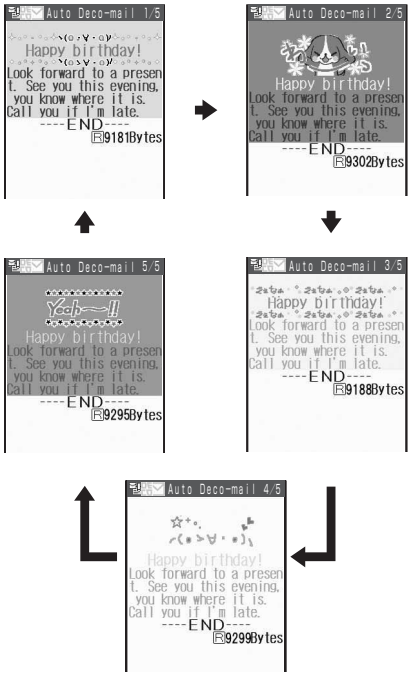
2 "Auto"



Continued on next page

3 Press (Next) to select candidate for decoration

Five decoration patterns are available.



NOTE

- If the text-only message is 1,000 bytes or more, you cannot create Auto Deco-mail.
- If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the displayed decoration patterns are stored.
- Immediately after returning to the message screen from the "Auto Deco-mail" screen, selecting "Undo" is not available on the function menu.
- When running the Auto Deco-mail to the message body already decorated, a message appears to indicate that all the decorations will be canceled.
- The emotional recognition is listed below. The following priority is applied for recognizing emotion in the message.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Like/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fun/Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer/Join/Impression/Request/Notice/OK
4	Other

- The Auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
  - Background color
  - Font color/font size (large or small)
  - Word alignment (center)
  - Ticker/swing/flash
  - Insert image (animation GIF or still image)
- The best-suited image to the message body is automatically displayed choosing from the pre-installed pictures such as the auto Deco-mail pictures or the auto Decomail-pictures stored in the Auto Deco-mail folder under My picture. Note that some message body may not display the image you are intended to.
  Multiple Auto Decomail-pictures can be downloaded from a site at a time.→p.226

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and decoration have already been set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default →p.495
- You can download the templates from sites. "Downloading Data Files from Sites"→p.226
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen.→p.251
- Templates include the decoration information in advance. Consequently, it decreases the number of characters to be entered in the message body.
- When you try to use a template in the following cases, a message confirms whether to discard the edited message:
  - There already enters the message body.
  - The header or signature is automatically inserted.
  - There attaches the file.

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶ (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Load template"▶Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

▶Highlight the template▶ (Play)

- The template is shown in the preview. →p.251
- During preview, pressing switches to the other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the screen, use to scroll the screen.
- During preview, pressing selects the template.

■ To load the template from the message screen

▶Message screen (p.243)▶ (FUNC)▶"Load template"▶Select a template

2 ●▶Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use "Decorate mail" (p.247) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3 ●

This operation confirms the edited message and returns to the new mail screen.



4 ✉ (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are creating as a template.

- Up to 45 templates can be stored.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the "Received mail detail" screen (p.273) or "Sent mail detail" screen (p.274).

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶ ⋮ (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Save template"▶"YES"

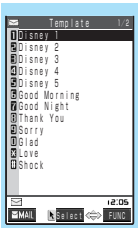
NOTE

◆The subject of the message being created is used as a template title. If no subject is entered, YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm is used as the title (where YYYY = year, MM = month, DD = day, hh = hour, mm = minute).

Viewing the templates list

1 MENU▶"MAIL"▶"Template"

The "Template" screen appears.



Template

Functionp.251

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.250
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, saved date and image presence.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes the template.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted template.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ✥ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the multiple templates.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using "Header/Signature", the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (p.251)▶Select the template

The "Template preview" screen appears.



Template preview

Function menu➡p.251

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.250
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder** **■For images available for setting as a standby screen ▶"YES"▶Select an item** Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using "Header/Signature", the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

◆The title name of the template saved as the different file is YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm (where YYYY = year, MM = month, DD = day, hh = hour, mm = minute).

◆If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

<Attach file>

Attaching Files

You can send the i-mode mail with the file attached.

- The following files can be attached:
  - Images (still image/image)
  - Movie, i-motion
  - Melody
  - PDF data
  - Document
  - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
  - Phonebook data
  - My Profile data
  - Schedule or To Do list stored data
  - Bookmark (i-mode or Full Browser)
  - Other files in the microSD memory card

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶"Attach file"▶Select any item

Image	**▶Select a folder▶Select data to be attached**
i-motion	
Melody	
PDF	
Document	
ToruCa	
Phonebook	**▶"Phone"▶Search a phonebook to be attached▶Select the phonebook**
My Profile	**▶Enter your security code▶●**
Schedule	**▶"Schedule" or "To Do list"▶Select the stored data of Schedule or To Do list▶●**
Bookmark	**▶"i-mode Browser" or "Full Browser"▶Select a folder▶Select a bookmark▶●**
Other	**▶Select a folder▶Select a file** Attaches other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) in the microSD memory card.

■ For attaching the phonebook or bookmark in the microSD memory card

▶"Phonebook" or "Bookmark"▶"microSD"▶Select a file▶Select data▶●

"Previewing Data on the microSD Memory Card"→p.369

■ For sending an image to the mova service i-mode terminal as i-shot

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, an attached file deleted and only the message body reaches the destination.

When sending mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) can be received for the message if the number of received characters is not set on the destination. If the number of received characters is set on the destination, up to 2,000 double-byte characters including URL for i-shot (where the image is stored) can be received on the destination.

2 Create an i-mode mail and send it

■ For checking the attached file

▶Select an item to check

You cannot play melody whose file size exceeds 100K bytes.

■ For deleting the attached file

▶Highlight an item to delete▶(FUNC)▶"Delete att. file"▶"YES"

If you delete all the attached files when the multiple files are attached, select "Del all att. files".

For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" (p.243).

NOTE

◆Up to 10 files (2M bytes) can be attached to i-mode mail regardless of the bytes of the message body or the file size of the image to be inserted. (The maximum count varies depending on the file size.) ToruCa contains attachments up to 1K bytes and ToruCa (detail) up to 100K bytes.

◆It may take time to send an i-mode mail depending on the attached file size.

◆You cannot attach a file which is forbidden to send as a mail attachment or to output from the FOMA terminal.

◆You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".

◆If the attached file is sent to the destination terminal which does not support this type of the file, it may be automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. In this case, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) message is added to the message body.

◆Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by the mova service i-mode terminal.

◆If an image selected for "Image" is more than QVGA (320 dots wide x 240 dots high) or QVGA V. (240 dots wide x 320 dots high), "Attach image" is displayed and you can select either one from "Attach mail" and "QVGA scale down".

◆If you insert an image containing the location information, a message confirms whether to paste the location information into a message when selecting the image. Selecting "YES" pastes the URL of the location information at the end of the message body. URL of the location information pasted into the message body is not deleted even when the attached file is deleted.
◆The sent image may not be properly or completely displayed depending on the destination terminal. A grainy image may also be displayed.
Displaying still images→p.342
◆You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent not as an attachment, but as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL.
◆If i-motion mail (i-mode mail attaching i-motion) is sent to the i-motion-mail-incompatible terminal, mail with URL for i-motion browser is sent to the destination and selecting this URL browses i-motion.
◆When you send an i-motion mail, it may not be properly received or displayed, and movies may be grainy or may be converted to continuous still images depending on the destination terminal. If you send the movie to the other terminals than the following*, you should set "File size" (p.190) to "500KB", "Select size" (p.190) to "QCIF176x144", and "Quality setting" (p.198) to "Fine mode", respectively from the function menu in movie mode.
* : 904i series, 903i series, 703i series (except P703iμ)
Playing movies→p.351
◆If the destination terminal is other than FOMA N904i, melody you sent may not be properly played.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while creating i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the message on your FOMA terminal. Draft mail can be edited to be sent.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in Draft.
- Draft can store up to 20 i-mode mails together with SMS.
- If there are 20 Draft mails saved or Draft is full*, you cannot create any more new messages.
  * : Draft may be full even when there are less than 20 mails saved, depending on the size of data saved (the minimum number of mails that can be saved is one).

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶"Save"

If there are no characters in the address, subject, and message body, the mail cannot be saved.

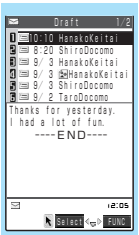
Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending saved i-mode mail

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Draft"

The "Draft mail list" screen appears.

2 Select mail▶Edit the address, subject or message body and then send it



Draft mail list

Function menu➡p.253

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot display the "Draft mail list" screen.

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects the mail list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" →p.382
Send all Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies a mail in Draft to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** Copies all mails in Draft.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Store in Center	"Saving mails at the Data Security Center"→p.273
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists

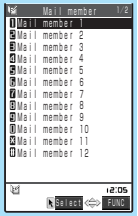
Default setting
Not stored

Add two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter multiple addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Mail member"

The "Mail member list" screen is displayed.



Mail member list

Function menu➡p.254

2 Select a mail member

The "Mail member detail" screen is displayed.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit)▶ Enter a mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.
To add another mail address, repeat step 3.



Mail member detail

Function menu➡p.254

■ **To look-up and enter the mail address**

<Example: To look-up and enter the phonebook address>

▶Select "<Not stored>"▶"Phonebook"▶Select a look-up item

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)

→p.112

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the mail member pasted to the address field.
Edit member name	▶**Enter the member name** Edits the mail member name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Reset the mail member name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	▶**Enter an e-mail address** Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Look-up address	■**No addresses are recorded** ▶**Select any item** ■**The address is recorded** ▶**"YES"**▶**Select any item** Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from the "Phonebook detail list" screen.
• **Sent address**	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• **Received address**	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Deletes all members in the selected mail member.

<Auto receive mail>

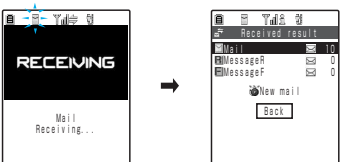
When You Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode Center.

- Inbox can contain up to 1,000* messages for the total of i-mode and SMS.
  * : Secret folder in Inbox can contain up to 100 messages separately.
- i-mode mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal can also be received on a FOMA terminal.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, " " (white) icon flashes and "Mail Receiving..." is displayed

After a mail is completely received, the number of messages appears for the received mail, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.
When "Mail" is selected, the "Received mail list" screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds brings back to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".



■ **For receiving the i-shot service mail**

When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image is received as an attachment.

■ **For receiving a mail exceeding 100K bytes in a total size of the message body, inserted image and attached file**

Retrieve a mail manually from the i-mode Center.
"Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File"→p.259

NOTE

◆When the " " (white) icon flashes, the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.

◆When the icons such as " " (red) or " " (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete an unnecessary message, read an unread mail or release the protection until those icons no longer appear. A read message is overwritten in chronological order on receiving.

◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode and a mail arrives only at the unused address, the "Mail Receiving..." screen appears, but the receiving results screen and " " (white) do not appear. In addition, mail ring tones do not sound.

◆If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the Trash box and also from Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. Protecting the mail you want to keep recommended.→p.270

◆If setting "Receive option setting" to "ON", i-mode mail is not automatically received. In this case, the sent i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center (The standby screen displays a message and the " " icon indicating that you receive a mail at the i-mode Center.).

◆Extremely large messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.

◆Once the FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.

◆When a new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/ MessageF kept at the i-mode Center.

◆If you receive the i-mode mail from a terminal in which the To, Cc and Bcc fields can be set, you can check through the mail detail screen which address type you received.→p.264

◆You can preset an upper limit on the size of the i-mode mail you receive.→p.241

◆When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/ MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆When receiving an i-mode mail, setting priority for the ring tone and illumination is as follows:

① "Discern connect" specified for each mail address →p.119

② "Discern group" specified for each group →p.119

③ "Select ring tone"/"Kisekae Tool setting"→p.126, 144, "Illumination"→p.147

Displaying a new i-mode mail

● Set "3D display setting" to "ON" to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶" New "

Selecting the " " (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the received mail list screen (p.270).



NOTE

◆Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.

◆If the number of characters in the message body of the i-mode mail exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.

◆If the message body of i-mode mail to be received exceeds the size set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", data pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it again.

◆Some image or movie file attached to the i-mode mail may not be properly displayed/played. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.

◆If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be properly displayed.

◆You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a message body received from a PC.

Emotion-expressing mail

When you receive a mail, an icon informs you showing an emotion to the tone of the mail. You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Cheer		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Impression		Sad		Important
	Fun		Notify		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

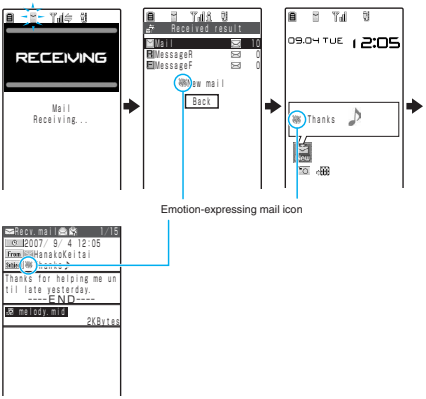
*: "Icon unsupported" is displayed for the following mails:

- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection
- Mail retrieved from the Data Security Center
- Mail copied from the microSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from the FOMA card (UIM)
- For SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)

- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.281
- The "Disp keyword" icons displayed are the following three:
  You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.281



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
  ①Disp keyword 1 ②Disp keyword 2
  ③Disp keyword 3 ④Disp emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified.
  → p.270
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows. They are also displayed on the indicator display.→ p.30



NOTE

- Some received mail may indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon misunderstanding the contents.
- MessageR/MessageF does not indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon.
- An icon used in the emotion-expressing mail covers the received date and time, subject and 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the head of the message to detect the tone or keyword of a mail. While an icon used in "Disp keyword" covers the subject and the entire message body to detect the keyword.
- When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only an icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first set "Receive option setting" (p.276) to "ON". If setting to "ON", i-mode mail is not automatically received.

When mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the " " icon is displayed rather than " " (white) or " " (white).

Receiving mail selectively

- If you use this function to show the receive option screen, the " " icon is turned off even when you do not receive or delete mail.
  The " " icon is also turned off if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Receive option"

■ **If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"**
A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the "Mail menu" screen reappears.

2 Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail



"受信" (Accept):
Accepts the selected mail.

"削除" (Delete):
Deletes the selected mail.

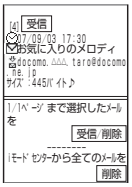
"保留" (Hold):
Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.
Use "Check new messages" (p.257) or etc. to receive the mail.

■ **To delete all mails**
▶"削除" (Delete) at the bottom of the page ▶"決定" (Set)

■ **When there are multiple pages of mail**
▶"前ページ" (Previous page) or "次ページ" (Next page) ▶ Move to the previous or next page and receive the mail selectively
When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.
The meanings of the icons displayed after "サイズ：XXXバイト" (Size: XXX bytes) are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	Attaches an i-motion.
	Attaches the ToruCa.
	Attaches Other.

3 "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete) ▶"決定" (Set)



The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ **To cancel selective reception**
▶"キャンセル" (Cancel)

■ **When there are multiple pages of mail**
Selecting "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

◆You can also access "Receive option" as follows (only Japanese mode available):
- (MENU)▶"i-MODE"▶"iMenu"▶"メニュー／検索" (Menu/search)▶"メール選択受信" (Receive option)

◆If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new messages" (p.278) if you do not want to receive any mail.

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot launch the Receive option.

<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting	Check for all (Mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- i-mode mail which reaches the i-mode Center is automatically transferred to your FOMA terminal. However it is kept at the i-mode Center in the following cases.
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off
  - " " appears
  - Inbox is full
  - "Receive option setting" (p.276) is set to "ON"
  - During a videophone call or remote monitoring
  - While Self mode is set
  - PushTalk talking
  - While connecting to the FirstPass Center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.278) to set the inquiry items.

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Check new messages"



The check new messages screen appears.
The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (i) (i-mode)▶"Check new messages"
- (✉) (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (✉) (MAIL)▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in that order.
The " " (white), " R " (white) and " F " (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ **To cancel the inquiry**
▶Hold down (i) (Quit) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry
Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking may be interrupted.

◆When the " " (white) icon is displayed, i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode Center, the icon is changed to " " (red).

◆Even if an i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center, the " " (white) may not appear when a FOMA terminal is turned off or " " appears.

◆This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to a sender of the i-mode mail. To return the mail, there are two manners: entering a new message or quoting a message of the received i-mode mail.

- "Re:" is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be replied. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Re:"), the characters over this limit are deleted.

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (p.263) or Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶ (Reply)▶Edit the subject and message body to send it

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply"▶"To sender"

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply"▶"To all"

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some addresses to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the " " icon changes to " ".

NOTE

◆The " " icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).

◆When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), "Re:" is added at the beginning of the subject line.

◆You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply an i-mode mail sent to Address B.

Replying by quoting the received message

You can reply to the received i-mode mail quoting its message body.

- The quoted attachment of the i-mode mail or Deco-mail are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶ (FUNC)▶"Reply with quote"▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply with quote"▶"To sender"

■ **To reply to all addresses of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply with quote"▶"To all"

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A quotation mark (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.

To edit the quotation mark→p.277

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the " " icon changes to " ".

NOTE

◆When a file is attached to the i-mode mail to be replied with quote, the attached file is deleted.

◆If a message body of the i-mode mail contains attached data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot reply message with the attached data quoted.

◆If there contains the retrieve-incomplete attached file in the i-mode mail to be replied with quote, this file is not attached.→p.259

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply with quote to an i-mode mail sent to Address B.

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination

You can forward the received i-mode mail to other addresses.

- "Fw:" is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be forwarded. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Fw:"), the characters over this limit are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶ (FUNC)▶"Forward"▶ "To "▶ Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses→p.245
You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images. In addition, an attachment of the received mail can be forwarded.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the " " icon changes to " ".

NOTE

- If you forward the i-mode mail with "Fw:" (all single-byte characters) in the subject line, "Fw2:" is added into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is added in the forwarded mail, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes the double-byte characters or "FW:" (upper case "W"), "Fw:" is added at the beginning of the subject line in the forwarded mail.
- If the following type of files are attached or pasted, those files or information are deleted: Attachment prohibited to i-mode mail or Deco-mail for forwarding and to output from the FOMA terminal.
- If there contains the retrieve-incomplete attached file in the i-mode mail to be forwarded, this file is not attached.→p.259
- If i-mode message contains the pasted data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot quote the pasted data even for forwarding.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot forward a mail.
- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, a forwarded mail to Address B is saved in Outbox for A mode.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can store the sender's mail address or a phone number to your phonebook.

<Example: To add the sender's mail address to the phonebook>

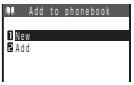
1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶ (FUNC)▶"Save address"

■ **When there are multiple mail addresses to be stored**
▶On the mail address selection screen, select the mail address to be stored

■ **To add the destination address or the phone number on the sent mail to the phonebook**
▶Sent mail detail screen (p.264)▶ (FUNC)▶"Save address"
If the i-mode mail is sent to the multiple addresses, select the mail address to be added from the mail addressee list.

■ **To add address or the phone number typed in the message body of the received or sent mail to the phonebook**
▶Sent mail detail screen or Received mail detail screen▶Highlight the mail address or the phone number to be added▶ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "YES"▶"Phone"▶"New"



The entered information is displayed in the new Add to phonebook screen. Enter the required items and store the entry.
"Adding Phonebook Entries"→p.107

■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**
▶"YES"▶"UIM"
When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File

When the total capacity of the message body, inserted image and attached file exceeds 100K bytes, the attached file cannot be automatically received at the mail reception. In this case, you have to manually retrieve an attached file later.

- You should also retrieve the file manually to the file deselected on "Prefer attachment".
- The " " icon and the " " icon are displayed on the "Received mail detail" screen if you retrieve no attached files and a part of the attached file, respectively.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶Select the attached file showing the icon of " " or " "

Retrieving data starts.
Data has been retrieved and the screen is displayed showing the completion of retrieving data.

Continued on next page

■ **To cancel retrieving**

▶i (Quit)

Save the partially-retrieved data. In this case, repeat step 1 and you can retrieve the remaining data.

2 After retrieving data, the content of the file is displayed to the file type of the attachments

NOTE

◆If there remains even one attachment that retrieving data is incomplete, "Received mail detail screen" (p.264) shows the retention period of the attachment. Retrieving all the attachments is completed, and the display of the retention period disappears. Note that an attachment exceeding the retention period cannot be retrieved.

◆The file size displayed on the "Received mail detail screen" for the retrieve-incomplete attachment is the one for the retrieve-completed attachment (if retrieved).

◆If receiving the attachment exceeds the storage capacity of Inbox, the received mail is automatically deleted according to the attached file size. (A large volume of the received mails may be deleted depending on the file size of the attachment.) Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or received mails in the Secret folders. Protecting the mail you want to keep recommended.→p.270

Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail

You can check and save the attached or pasted data to the received i-mode mail.

- Selecting the receive-incomplete attachment starts receiving operation.
- The receive-incomplete attachment cannot be saved. To save it, you should complete reception beforehand.

→p.259

Playing/saving melodies <Save melody>

You can save a melody (or) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender uses any other terminal model than FOMA N904i, sent melody may not be properly played.

1 "Received mail detail screen" (p.264)▶Highlight a melody i (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To stop a melody**

▶, 0 to 9, *, #, , (),

Assist key

Pressing the Assist key reads out the message body after stopping the melody.

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

◆If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

◆To prevent a melody from playing automatically when you open a mail, set "Start attachment (auto)" to "OFF".

Displaying and saving an image <Receive image mail>

You can save the image ( ) attached or inserted to the received i-mode mail.

Saving inserted images→p.273

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶Select the image to be saved

■ **To change the display format from image to the file name**

▶Select an image and ●

To return to the indicator display, select the file name and press ●.

2 i (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

3 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

◆Some images may not be displayed on the Received mail detail screen. In this case, select the file name to press ●, and you can check the image.

◆Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.

◆Images may be displayed differently between viewing through i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must display the image saved in the "Inbox" folder from My picture.

◆When saving an image targeted for Decorate PI, a message appears asking whether to store the Decorate PI. Selecting "YES" saves automatically the image to the "Decorate PI" folder in "My picture".

Playing and saving i-motion

<i-motion mail>

You can play and save the i-motion ( ) attached to the i-mode mail received.

- You cannot play an i-motion during a call.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264) ▶Select an i-motion

i-motion plays.

■ **To save an i-motion**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Displaying and saving ToruCa <Save ToruCa>

You can display and save ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) ( ) attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264) ▶Select ToruCa

ToruCa appears.

■ **To save ToruCa**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Pressing (Save) is also available for saving while ToruCa is displayed.

Displaying and saving the PDF data and document

You can display and save PDF data ( ) or document ( ) attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264) ▶Select a file

The PDF data and document appear.

■ **To save the PDF data and document**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

NOTE

◆Document can only be saved into the microSD memory card.

◆For the PDF data which is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal, you cannot save it in the microSD memory card.

Displaying and saving the tool data

You can display and save the tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark) ( ) attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264) ▶Select a file

Phonebook, schedule or bookmark information is displayed.

Selecting "Save data" from the function menu also runs the same operation.

2 Save data

■ **Phonebook**

▶ (Save)▶Select a phonebook

For details of the steps when selecting "Phone", "All Phonebook" and "UIM", see "Add to phonebook" (p.107).

■ **Schedule**

▶ (Save)

■ **Bookmarks**

▶ (Save)▶Select a folder

For i-mode, "i-mode Browser" and "microSD" can be selected. For the Full Browser, "Full Browser" and "microSD" can be selected.

NOTE

◆Schedule cannot be saved in the microSD memory card.

◆If there contains multiple information in the file to be displayed, a message appears indicating that only the first data is displayed. If you save this file into the FOMA terminal, only the first data is saved. (If saving to the microSD memory card, all information is saved.)

Saving other files

You can save other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) attached to the received i-mode mail ( ).

- Other files are automatically saved in the "Other" folder of the microSD memory card. The file name is changed after saving.

→p.367

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264) ▶Select other files▶ (FUNC)▶ "Save data"▶"YES"

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in Inbox and Outbox

Inbox contains up to 1,000* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS), and Outbox contains up to 400* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS). Up to 1,000 messages for Inbox and 200 messages for Outbox can be protected. The number of messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When the large file size is saved, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

*: Up to 100 messages can be stored in the Secret folders of Inbox and Outbox, respectively.

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot display the Outbox folder list screen.

Reading i-mode mail

<Example: To read a message body in Inbox>

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Select a mail



Mail menu



Inbox folder

Function menu➡p.268



Received mail list

Function menu➡p.270



Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.273

■ To view the previous or next mail

▶Mail detail screen▶(●)

Press (CLR) to return to the "Received mail list" screen.

NOTE

◆You can also place the received address for the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can use the desktop icon to create a new i-mode mail with a mail address which the desktop icon contains as an address information. (SMS uses a phone number as an address to create a new SMS.) However, you cannot paste the mail address with the " Fm ", " To " or " Cc " icon as desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one mail address can be pasted in each operation.

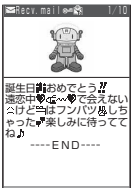
◆You can also view the mails contained in other than the Secret folder even in the Secret data only mode.

◆For the file attached to the mail in the Secret folder, only indicator display and melody play is possible. (No display or no play for the retrieve-incomplete file) For other types of the file, display or play is possible once moving the file from the Secret folder.

■ Mail-connected i-αppli

- The sent i-mode mail using a mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the mail-connected i-αppli dedicated folder.
- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-αppli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-αppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
  If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-αppli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)



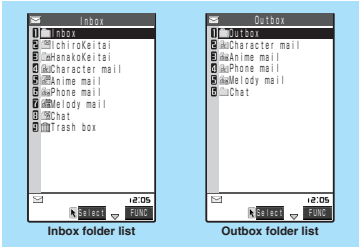
Messages written in English are read out in alphabetic reading.

- By selecting "Read out message" from the function menu in the "Received mail detail" screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
  To cancel read out, press (●). (After canceling, press (●) to start read out from the first sentence.) To end read out, Press (✉) (Exit).
- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using "Read out setting" (p.279).
- A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". If "Silent" or "Step" is set, messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume.
  Volume in Manner mode→p.134

- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure above. If the source address and the image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.

- You can read out the message body using the assist key.→p.419
- While reading out a mail, press ◉, ▲ and ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll the message. Press 5 for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off, or press 8 for 1 second or longer to turn the Privacy angle function on or off. Pressing any of other keys stops the reading.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in "Receiving display" takes effect. Also, if the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in "Alarm setting" takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some message body in the received mail from PC, etc.

Guide to the folder list screens



Inbox folder list　Outbox folder list

Function menu➡p.268　Function menu➡p.268

Icon	Description
	Normal folder
	Mail-connected i-αppli (p.292) folder
	Trash folder
SECRET	Secret folder

: This icon is displayed when you have an unread mail. (Not displayed in Outbox)

: This icon is displayed when the mail security is set.

: This icon is displayed when Auto-sort is set (p.268).

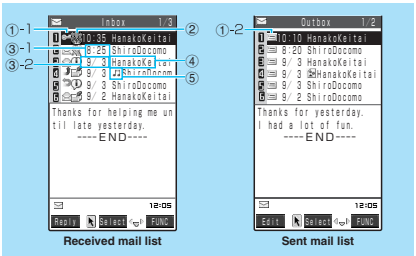
NOTE

◆You can add other folders to Inbox or Outbox using the function menu on the Inbox/Outbox folder list screen besides the pre-installed folders at default. →p.268

◆No folders for the mail-connected i-αppli is available at default. Downloading the mail-connected i-αppli automatically creates the folder for i-αppli mail.

◆The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.→p.164

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list　Sent mail list

Function menu➡p.270　Function menu➡p.272

①Mail state

①-1 Receive

Icon	Description
	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Protected read mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied-to mail

: This icon is displayed when a mail is protected.

①-2 Send

Icon	Description
	Mail with one address
	Mail with multiple addresses (broadcast mail)

: This icon is displayed when a mail is protected.

: This icon is displayed when transmission partially failed.

: This icon is displayed when transmission failed.

②Message information

Icon	Description
and others	Emotion-expressing mail icons→p.256

③Message arrival time and date

③-1 Time display for a mail sent and received on the day

③-2 Date display for a mail sent and received on the previous day

Continued on next page

④Source, destination or mail subject
You can switch the display mode by mail address, by phone number, by name or by subject.
When i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

⑤Information of the mail types, attachments, pasted files

Icon	Description
	SMS
	SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)
	SMS with SMS report received
*	Mail sent to Address B of 2in1
/	Attached or pasted melodies
/	Attached or pasted images
/	Attached i-motion
/	Attached ToruCa or ToruCa (detail)
/	Attached PDF data (mail)
/	Attached tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark)
/	Attached document
/	Attached other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal)
	Launching i-αppli available from the message body
	Launching i-αppli unavailable from the message body (moving a mail to the secret folder)
	Mail sent or received by the mail-connected i-αppli
/	Attached file without retrieving "Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File"→p.259
/	Attached incomplete file "Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File"→p.259
	Attached file retrieving not available
/ /	Attached several files or combined with attached and pasted files
	Pasted multiple data (also pasted data together with the i-αppli To function)
	FOMA card operational restriction function mail (using different FOMA card from the sending or receiving a mail)

*: Only available when 2in1 is set to Dual mode.

: This icon is displayed when the attachment is deleted. (For ToruCa, this is also displayed when the attachment is deleted by the scan function.)

: This icon is displayed when a certain file is deleted in the multiple files.

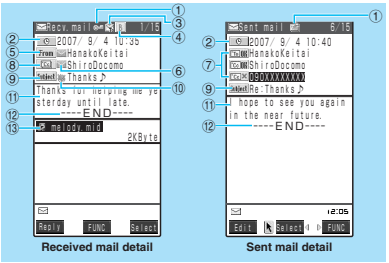
: This icon is displayed when all files (multiple files) are deleted.

NOTE

◆i-mode mail with an image attached is displayed on the "Received mail detail" screen or "Sent mail detail" screen. To switch the indicator display with the file name display, select an image and press ●. However, some images may not be viewed in display. In this case, select the file name to press ●, and you can check the image.

◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, a mail arrived at the unused address is not displayed.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Function menu➡p.273

Function menu➡p.274

①Mail state
Refer to description ① in "Guide to the mail list screens" (p.263).

②Time and date of sending or receiving messages (time and date of arrival at the Center).

③Sending type of the received mail

Icon	Description
/ /	Address type of the sender →p.244

④Mail address information of the 2in1 setting

Icon	Description
*	Mail sent to the Address B of 2in1

*: Only available when 2in1 is set to Dual mode.

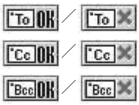
⑤The sender of the received mail

Icon	Description
From /	The name or mail address of the sender

: This icon is displayed when the mail cannot be replied to the source address (such as the mail address exceeding 50 single-byte characters).

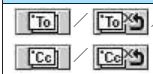
⑥Icons stored in the phonebook
If the source address and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

⑦Destination and type of the sent mail

Icon	Description
	The destination name, mail address, and type→p.244

 :This icon is displayed when transmission failed.

⑧Destination and type specified in the received broadcast mail
Up to four items can be displayed.

Icon	Description
	Destination name, mail address and type excluding the owner in the broadcast mail→p.244

 : This icon is displayed when a mail is not available for replay.

⑨Subject
When there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. The "  " icon is displayed for the received SMS ("  " for SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)) and the title is "SMS" ("SMS report" for an SMS report). If the SMS report is already received, "" is also displayed.

⑩Received message information

Icon	Description
 and others	Emotion-expressing mail icons→p.256

⑪Message body

⑫End mark for the end of the message body.

⑬Information of attached or pasted files
The file name and size are also displayed.

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody (An invalid melody is displayed in the message body as a text.)
	Invalid inserted image

Other information icons for attached or pasted files→p.264

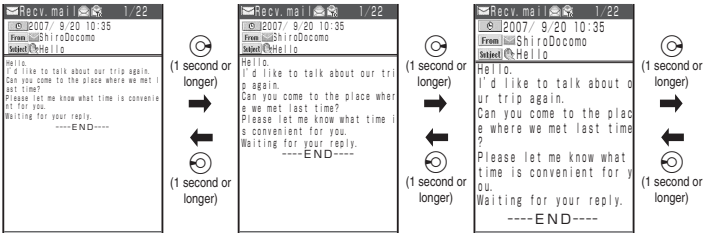
NOTE

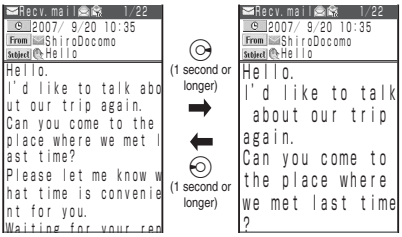
◆On the following situations, only mail address is displayed without the stored name, even when the phone number or mail address is stored in the phonebook.
- "Restrict dialing" (p.177) is in set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- The phone number or mail address is stored in Secret data only mode, but not as secret data.
- The phone number or mail address stored as secret data other than in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- 2in1 is set to A mode and the phonebook is set to B mode, or the mode is set to B mode and the phonebook is set to A mode.

Changing the font size or list mode of the message

Changing the font size in the message body

On the mail detail screen, you can change the font size in the message body.



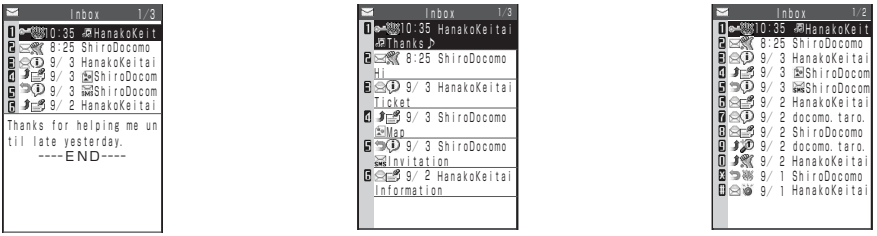


NOTE

- Switching the font size by the operation shown above also changes the settings on "Mail" of "Character size" under "Font" (p.148) and "Font size" (p.276).
- The font size can be changed in the same way in the message reading out screen (p.262).

Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (1line+body/1 line/2 lines)

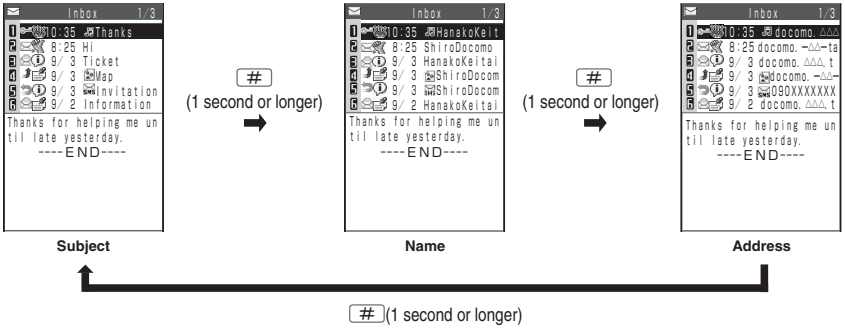
You can switch to any item of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the "Mail list disp." setting in "Mail settings" in the Mail menu. →p.276



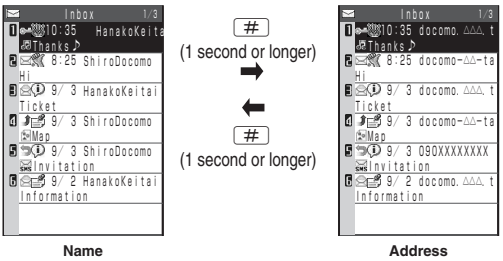
Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (Name/Address/Subject)

On the mail list screen, you can switch to show the display mode by destination address or source name, by mail address or phone number, or by subject. If the name of the destination or the source is stored in the phonebook, it is used for display.

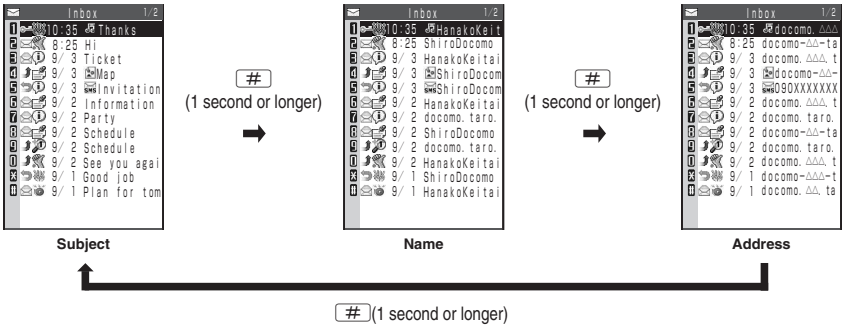
● Message list screen (1line+body)



● Message list screen (2 lines)



● Message list screen (1 line)



NOTE

◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting "List setting" from the function menu in the Inbox list screen, Outbox list screen or Draft list screen and then selecting any item of "Subject", "Name", or "Address".

● Checking the message count of Inbox or outbox

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the function menu in the "Folder list" screen.
To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the backlight turns on for about 15 seconds. (Lighting interval varies depending on the setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time".) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, lighting time depends on the message size.
The backlight does not turn on if "Lighting" under "Backlight" is set to "OFF".

Function menu (Inbox/Outbox folder list screen)

- You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name▶Set the sort criteria ▶"YES" or "NO"** Adds a new folder, and then sets the Auto-sort function to this folder. Also sets whether to add the same folder in Inbox/Outbox. Automatic sorting settings→p.268
Auto-sort	Automatic sorting settings→p.268
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Mail security	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** "Setting Security for Mail Folders"→p.176
Sort folder	**▶Select the folder to be moved** Rearranges folders.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays the list screen of the mail in the highlighted folder.
Add desktop icon*1	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
iC trans. all	Sends all messages in the mail box. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" →p.382
Send all Ir data	
CopyAll to microSD	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** Copies all messages in the mail box. However, SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and a message in the secret folder are not copied.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"**
Delete read*1	Deletes all the messages you have already read.
Delete all*2	**▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"** Deletes all messages.

*1: Only displayed in the "Inbox folder list" screen.
*2: Delete all functions when in the "Outbox folder list" screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (5 folders max.) separately from a folder which you can add using "Add folder".

<Edit folder name>
- You cannot edit the folder name for the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", a mail-connected i-αppli, "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>
- You cannot set the mail security to the "Secret" folder.

<Sort folder>
- You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot sort the folder if an additional folder is only one.

<No. of messages>
- The number of messages of i-mode mails or SMSs that are stored in the Secret folder or not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not displayed.

<iC trans. all> <Send all Ir data>
- SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and messages in the "Secret" folder are not sent.

<Delete folder>
- You cannot delete a folder if a message in the folder is protected or set in mail security. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.
- You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders which are pre-installed at default.

<Delete read>
- This option does not delete the protected read i-mode mail and SMS.
- An i-mode mail or SMS that is stored in the "Secret" folder or not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not deleted.

<Delete all>
- Unread mails are also deleted. However, this option does not delete the protected i-mode mail and SMS.
- An i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.

<Delete all>
- Any protected i-mode mail or SMS is not deleted.
- An i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

Automatic sorting settings

You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as a mail addressee, phone number or subjects used in the source of the received mail or the destination of the sent mail.

- You can set the total of 700 mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders of Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mail member in the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.

- When Original lock is set to the Phonebook/ Choku-Den, the group name is displayed as "Group". When Original lock is set to the mail member, the member name is displayed as "Mail member".
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below. Note that mail for mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
  ①Sort all ②Subject sort ③Reply/Send impossible ④Mail address/Phone number ⑤Mail member ⑥Phonebook group
- If you use Look-up group to store a mail address registered as secret data in a folder and receive a mail from the mail address, the mail is sorted into "Inbox" folder when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is not set. When Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set, the mail is sorted into the folder set in Auto-sort.
  If you register a folder using Look-up address and receive a mail from the destination stored as secret data, a mail is sorted to the folder set in Auto-set regardless of setting in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- The message received or sent before setting in Auto-set remains in the folders stored before setting.

1 Inbox folder list screen (p.263)/ Outbox folder list screen (p.263) ▶Highlight the destination folder for sorting▶(FUNC)▶"Auto-sort"

If even one message is set for sorting, additionally press (FUNC).

2 Set Auto-sort from the following item

Address sort	Sets a mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• **Look-up address**	Sets a mail address or phone number referencing the phonebook and records.
• **Phonebook**	Sets a mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook.
• **Received address**	Sets a mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Sets a mail address or phone number from the sent address list.
• **Look-up group**	▶**Select a group** Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• **Look-up member**	▶**Select a mail member** Sets a mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• **Enter address**	Sets a mail addresses or phone number by entering a character one by one.
Subject sort	▶**Enter a subject** Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets a mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Sort all	This can be set only for mail-connected i-αppli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-αppli folder.
Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from "Name" or "Address" about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.
• **Release this**	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• **Release selected**	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• **Release all**	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

*: If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder list, "Send impossible" is displayed.

NOTE

◆You cannot set the"Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders in automatic sorting.
◆If even a single address on the broadcasted mail matches the auto-sort criteria, the message is sorted to the folder set in "Address sort" or "Send impossible". Sort condition is looked up to in sequence order of the input address.
◆For the folder with Mail security (p.268) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting "Auto-sort" from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>
◆You cannot set "No Group" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>
◆Ensure that the mail address should be entered until the end of domain (the part of the address following @ (at mark)). However, If the address format is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>
◆If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
◆Only one subject can be set for each folder.
◆You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>
◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
◆"Reply impossible" can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

Continued on next page

<Send impossible>

◆"Send impossible" can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<Sort all>

◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).

◆"Sort all" can only be set for one i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.

<List setting>

◆You can also switch between "Name" and "Address" by pressing # on the "Auto-sort setting" screen.

Function menu (Received mail list screen)

● Since the available function is different between the received and unread mail list screens, the items displayed is different.

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message" →p.258
Move	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish) ▶"YES"** Moves the selected mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a sender or subject specified.
• **Search sender**	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or history, or by entering a character one by one.
• **Phonebook**	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook.
• **Received address**	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• **Search subject**	**▶Enter a subject**
Display all	Reverts the search and sort display or the display by the filter function to the original display (all "Chronological").
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
• **Unread**	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Read**	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Protected**	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Attached file**	Specifies the attached file's type and state.
• **Unreceived**	Displays only i-mode mail including the unreceived attachments.
• **Receiving**	Displays only i-mode mail including the partially-received attachments.
• **Image**	Displays only i-mode mail to which an image is attached or inserted.
• **i-motion**	Displays only i-mode mail to which i-motion is attached.
• **Melody**	Displays only i-mode mail to which a melody is attached or pasted.
• **PDF**	Displays only i-mode mail to which PDF data is attached.
• **Document**	Displays only i-mode mail to which the document is attached.
• **ToruCa**	Displays only i-mode mail to which ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) is attached.
• **Tool data**	Displays only i-mode mail to which the phonebook, Schedule or Bookmark is attached.
• **Other**	Displays only i-mode mail to which other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) are attached.
• **i-αppli**	Displays only i-mode mail including i-αppli launcher.
• **SMS**	Displays only SMS
• **Keyword**	**▶Select a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Keyword notice" →p.281
• **Emotion**	**▶Select a Disp emotion icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS showing the Disp emotion icon.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the received mail (time and date, mail address/name, subject) from "Default" (black), "Red" or "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.
Protect ON/OFF[*1]	Protects or unprotects mail.
Protect	Protects the message.
• **Protect this**	Protects the highlighted mail.
• **Protect selected**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Protects the multiple messages.
• **Protect all**	Protects all the message.
Unprotect	Unprotects all protected mail.
• **Unprotect this**	Unprotects the highlighted protected mail.
• **Unprotect selected**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Unprotects the multiple protected mail.
• **Unprotect all**	Unprotects all protected mail.

iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies the received mail to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)"→p.288
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store in Center	"Saving mails at the Data Security Center"→p.273
Move trash box	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Moves the selected mail to the Trash box folder.
Delete this[*1]	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes the received mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"**
• **Delete read**	Deletes the read mail.
• **Delete all SMS-R**	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Deletes all SMS reports.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Deletes all the received mail.
Keep in secret[*2]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164
• **Keep this**	Stores the highlighted mail in the "Secret" folder.
• **Keep selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Stores the multiple messages in the "Secret" folder.
• **Keep all**	Stores all the received mail in the "Secret" folder.

*1: Only shown on the "Unread mail list" screen.
*2: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. In the Secret folder, this turns to "Put out" and select from "Put out this", "Put out selected" or "Put out all".
→p.164

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret" folder.
◆You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<Search mail>
◆You can further search from the "Reference result" screen.
◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
◆You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.

<Sort> <Filter>
◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Color coding>
◆On the received mail list screen, pressing ✳ for one second or longer is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>
◆On the received mail list screen, pressing # for one second or longer is also available for switching among "Subject", "Name" and "Address".

<Read all>
◆If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect> <Unprotect>
◆If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (p.262), precedence is given to deleting mail in the "Trash box" folder when new mail arrives. If there is no messages in the "Trash box" folder, the unprotected-read received mail is deleted in chronological order. i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
◆You cannot protect mail in the "Trash box" folder.
◆If "Protect all" or "Unprotect all" is selected after displaying the mail by the filter function, only displayed mail is a target for protect or unprotect operation.
◆A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for setting of "Protect all" nor "Unprotect all" even if either of them is selected.

<UIM operation>
◆When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.
◆If you move or copy an SMS sent to Number B to the FOMA card (UIM), the icon indicating Number B disappears.

<Move trash box>
◆This option moves mail to be deleted to the "Trash box" folder. Mail moved to the "Trash box" folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the "Trash box" folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
◆You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.
◆If you move unread mail to the "Trash box" folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>
◆You can delete the unread i-mode mail or SMS (including the FOMA card (UIM)).
◆You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

Continued on next page

<Delete selected>
◆You cannot select this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>
◆If you select "Delete read" after the mails are shown using the Filter function, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>
◆The protected SMS report cannot be deleted.

<Delete all>
◆Unread i-mode mail or SMS is deleted as well.
◆If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except the protected i-mode mails or SMS.

<Keep in secret>
◆A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for move, even if "Keep all" or "Put out all" is selected.

Function menu (Sent mail list screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the address, subject or message body▶✉ (Send)** Re-edits the message.
Move	**▶Select a folder▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves the selected mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail specifying the destination address or subject.
• **Search receiver**	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or history, or by entering a character one by one.
• **Phonebook**	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook.
• **Sent address**	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• **Search subject**	**▶Enter a subject**
Display all	Resets the display made by the search, sort or filter function to the original display (all in reverse chronologic order).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the received mail (time and date, mail address/name, subject) from "Default" (black), "Red" or "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies the received mail to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)→p.288
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store in Center	"Saving mails at the Data Security Center"→p.273
Delete	Deletes sent mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164
• **Keep this**	Stores the highlighted mail in the "Secret" folder.
• **Keep selected**	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Stores the multiple messages in the "Secret" folder.
• **Keep all**	Stores all the received mail in the "Secret" folder.

*: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. In the Secret folder, this turns to "Put out" and select from "Put out this", "Put out selected" or "Put out all". →p.164

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.
◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Search mail>
◆You can further search from the "Reference result" screen.
◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
◆You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.

<Sort> <Filter>
◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the sent list screen.

<Color coding>
◆On the sent mail list screen, pressing ✳ for one second or longer is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>

◆On the sent mail list screen, pressing # for one second or longer is also available for switching among "Subject", "Name" and "Address".

<Protect ON/OFF>

◆If sent mail (the total of i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum storage capacity (p.262), the unprotected sent mail is deleted in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS are not deleted in the Secret folder.

◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<UIM operation>

◆When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>

◆You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

◆If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except the protected i-mode mails or SMS.

Saving mails at the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

You can save i-mode and SMS into the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service
  →p.123, 181

1 Received mail list screen (p.263)/ Sent mail list screen (p.263)/Draft mail list screen (p.253)▶ (FUNC) ▶"Store in Center"

2 Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 messages can be selected.

■ To store the message with attachments or inserted images which are not kept at the Data Security Center

▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish) ▶ "OK"

Messages are stored with attachments and inserted image deleted.

3 Enter your security code ▶"YES"

A FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails at the center.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

◆SMS on the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be stored at the Data Security Center.

◆Messages are stored in deletion of a file attached to a i-mode mail. Also, if the received mail contains the image for which output is prohibited from the FOMA terminal, messages are stored in deletion of the attachments.

◆You cannot save the "Color coding" set on the Received mail list screen or Sent mail list screen.

■ Restore mail

Message put in the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Function menu (Received mail detail screen)

Reply[*1]	"Replying by composing a new message" →p.258
Reply with quote[*1]	"Replying by quoting the received message" →p.258
Forward[*1]	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination" →p.259
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	**▶Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address.
Save address / **Add to phonebook**	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" →p.259
Save data	"Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail" →p.260
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶"YES"▶ Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select any item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon.
Save template	"Saving a template" →p.251
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions" →p.436
Property	**▶Select the image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Read out message	"Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)" →p.262
Chat	"Composing and sending chat mail" →p.282
iC transmission / **Send Ir data**	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381

Continued on next page

Copy to microSD	"Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card"→p.369
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)"→p.288
Scroll	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small 1", "Small 2", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the selected attachment.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the "Received mail detail" screen.
Keep in secret[*2]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*2: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.164

NOTE

<Move>
- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<Save insert image>
- When saving an image for Decorate PI, a message asking whether to store the Decorate PI appears. Selecting "YES" saves automatically the image to the "Decorate PI" folder in "My picture".

<UIM operation>
- When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.
- If you move or copy an SMS sent to Number B of 2in1 setting to the FOMA card (UIM), the icon indicating Number B disappears.

<Del att. file> <Del all att. files>
- You cannot delete data pasted into the message body and the file retrieving not available ( ).

<Move trash box>
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

Function menu (Sent mail detail screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the address, subject or message body▶ (Send)** Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	**▶Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text"→p.452
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.259
Add to phonebook	
Save data	"Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail"→p.260
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select any item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a destination address as a desktop icon.
Save template	"Saving a template"→p.251
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions"→p.436
Property	**▶Select the image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS.→p.286
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	"Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card"→p.369
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)"→p.288
Scroll	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small 1", "Small 2", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the selected attachment.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret[*]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164

*: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.164

NOTE

<Resend>

◆Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.

◆When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

◆If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.

◆When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if "" appears on the SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

◆When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Sent address/Received address>

Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail addresses or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent and Received address list. However, up to 60 received addresses are stored under 2in1.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent or Received address.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the received address list screen>

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Received calls"▶"All calls"▶(FUNC)▶"Received address"

"Received address list" screen appears.
You can also display the "Received address list" screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the "Standby" screen.
Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list

Function menu➡p.275

■ To display the sent address list screen

▶(MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Dialed calls"▶(FUNC)▶"Sent address"

You can also display the "Sent address list" screen by pressing for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

2 Select a source address

"Received address detail" screen appears.



3 Check the details

NOTE

◆The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode transmission failed.
- : SMS transmission succeeded.
- : SMS transmission failed.

◆The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail.
- : Received SMS.

◆Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleting sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, up to 30 message histories arrived at or sent from the used address are displayed. However, if set to B mode, the "Sent address list" screen cannot be displayed.

Function menu (Sent address/ Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.259
Look-up phonebook	Displays the detail screen of the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Compose message*1	Create an i-mode mail with the mail address pasted to the destination address.
Dialing	Makes a voice call, a videophone call and a PushTalk call using the Phone To or AV Phone To function to the phone number in the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.→p.226
Received calls*2	Switches to the "Received calls" screen (or "Dialed calls" screen) (list).→p.60, 62

Continued on next page

Delete	Deletes the mail address.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail address.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the selected sent or received address.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address.

*1: If an SMS is highlighted, this option changes to "Compose SMS", which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient. "Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" →p.286

*2: "Redial" is for the Sent address screen from redials and "Dialed calls" is for the Sent address screen from dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>

◆The displayed received calls screen is "All calls" (shows the entire received calls record).

<Mail settings>

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

1 MENU▶"MAIL"▶"Mail settings"

The "Mail settings" screen appears.



Mail settings

2 Select any item

Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of "1 line", "3 lines" and "5 lines" to specify how many lines are scrolled on the screen when pressing ⊕ on the "Mail detail" screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects any of "Standard", "Small 1", "Small 2", "Large 1" or "Large 2" for the font size displayed on the mail detail screen.
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the "Mail list" screen. Select any option from "2 lines", "1 line" and "1line+body". ■**To switch the mail list display▶Select the display mode** Switches to "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
• **Standard** (default)	Displays the message from the header (received/sent date and time).
• **From message**	Displays the mail from the message body.
Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.
Header/ Signature	"Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks"→p.277
Mail security	"Setting security for individual mailboxes"→p.176
Receiving display	Sets whether to display the receiving and reception results screens on a priority basis when you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while you are using the FOMA terminal.
• **Alarm preferred** (default)	Shows the "Receiving" screen and the "Reception results" screen.
• **Operation preferred**	Gives priority to displaying the screen currently used rather than the receiving and reception results screens.
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
• **ON**	No auto-receiving mail
• **OFF** (default)	Auto-receiving mail
Prefer attachment (default: selected all)	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)** Sets the attached file type received together with a mail. Sets each of the following options: "Image", "i-motion", "Melody", "PDF", "ToruCa", "Tool data" and "Other".
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to "OFF" and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.
Read out setting	Sets Read out message.
• **Select voice** (default: Female 1)	Select a voice for reading a received mail from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".
• **Read out received mail** (default: ON)	Sets Read out message to "ON" or "OFF" when pressing the assist key.
Chat	"Specifying the chat mail settings"→p.285
Emotion/Keyword notice	"Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail"→p.281
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
• **SMS report request** (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select "ON" or "OFF".
• **SMS validity period** (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days". Set "None" not to store SMS at the SMS Center.

• **SMS input character** (default: Japanese (70 char.))	Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".
Reset	"Return the mail function to the default setting"→p.281

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot select "Mail settings".

<Scroll>

◆The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the "Mail detail" screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Font size>

◆You can also change the font size on the "Mail detail" screen by pressing ⊖ or ⊕ for 1 second or longer. You can also change the font size using "Character size" under "Font" (p.148) as well as "Font size" from the function menu on the "Mail detail" screen or "Read out" screen. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.

◆When you have moved to other screen than the "Mail detail" screen, the font size even in Small or Large automatically turns to Standard. When you are back to the "Mail detail" screen, the font size becomes in Small or Large again.

<Message display>

◆If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (sent/received date and time) may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Start attachment (auto)>

◆Even if you select "ON" in this option, you may not play melodies sent from devices other than the FOMA N904i correctly.

<Receiving display>

◆When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-αppli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode and a mail arrives only at the unused mail address, the receiving screen appears, but the reception results screen does not appear, even when you have set "Alarm preferred".

<Receive option setting>

◆This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS and MessageR/MessageF is automatically received regardless of this setting.

<Prefer attachment>

◆You cannot receive the file type deselected in this setting together with a mail. If you check the file, you should manually retrieve it later.→p.259

◆Even if deselecting "Image", you can receive the image inserted in the message of Deco-mail together with a mail.

◆If deselecting "Tool data", you cannot receive the phonebook, schedule and bookmark.

◆If deselecting "Other", you cannot receive the document either.

<SMS report request>

◆You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks

Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶Select "Header/Signature"

2 Select "Edit header" or "Edit signature"▶●

■ **To edit the quotation mark**
▶"Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter the header or signature▶✉ (Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte (10,000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte (20 single-byte) characters for quotation marks.

■ **To enter the quotation mark**
▶Enter the quotation marks

■ **To decorate header or signature**
You can decorate header or signature. "Composing a Deco-mail"→p.247

4 Select "Insert setting"▶Select the check box of "Header" and/or "Signature"▶✉ (Finish)

■ **To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically**
▶Deselect the checkbox under "Insert setting"

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even if you select the checkbox under "Insert setting", the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-αppli.
- You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.
- If pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it turns to Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are inquired to the i-mode Center

<Set check new messages> Default setting: Selected all

Select items to check in "Set check new messages". Sets whether to check each of "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox "□" denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Connection setting"▶"Set check new messages"

2 Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)

Sets voice to read out mails

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report (p.286), mail without messages, mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-αppli activation, or Deco-mail without messages.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or PushTalk call, while running the music player or music channel, or during 64K data communication.

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶"Read out setting"▶"Select voice"▶Select a voice to read out

● Rules used for reading out mail

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■Symbols, special characters and pictographs

● Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.
*The FOMA terminal may not correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■Numbers

● The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

Example: 1234 → "Sen nihyaku sanju yon"

■Monetary amounts

● If a currency symbol (e.g. "￥" (double- or single-byte character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.
If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as a monetary amount only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

Example: ￥12345, ￥12,345 → "Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en"

■Phone number

● If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by "Tel:" as phone numbers.

Example: Tel: 0120-102-001 → "Teru zeroichinizero ichizeroni zerozeroichi"

Land line			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* "X" indicates a number.

■Time

● Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time.* If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If "AM" or "PM" is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

"Hour":"Minute"("Hour" = 0 to 29: "Minute" = 00 to 59) Example: 23:15 → "Nijusanji jugofun"
AM "Hour":"Minute" or "Hour":"Minute" AM ("Hour" = 0 to 12; "Minute" = 00 to 59) Example: AM 5:05 → "Gozen goji gofun"
PM "Hour":"Minute" or "Hour":"Minute" PM ("Hour" = 0 to 12; "Minute" = 00 to 59) Example: PM 5:05 → "Gogo goji gofun"

*: The time entered in the format of "Hour":"Minute":"Second" (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

Continued on next page

■Date

● Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as time. If "M", "T", "S" or "H" (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

"Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 9999; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Eg.: 2006/12/5 2006/12/05 2006.12.5 2006.12.05 ─ "Nisenrokunen juunigatsu itsuka"
"M" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "M" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 99; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: M10/04/20 → "Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka"
"T" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "T" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 99; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: T8.10.15 → "Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi"
"S" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "S" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 99; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: S50.3.6 → "Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika"
"H" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "H" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 99; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: H17.10.3 → "Heisei junananen jugatsu mikka"

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, time and date can also be used with double-byte characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.

  0 to 9, A to Z (upper case), colon (:), ￥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (double-byte or single-byte)

■Symbol

● The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento	￥ (yen) → en	° (degrees) → do
℃ (degrees) → do	￥ (yen) → en	＄ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento
ミリ (mm) → miri	キロ (kilograms) → kiro	センチ (cm) → senchi	メートル (meters) → meetoru
グラム (grams) → guramu	トン (tons) → ton	アール (ares) → aaru	ヘクタール (hectares) → hekutaaru
リットル (liter) → rittoru	ワット (watts) → watto	カロリー (calories) → karorii	ドル (dollars) → doru
セント (cent) → sento	パーセント (percent) → paasento	ミリバール (millibars) → miribaaru	ページ (pages) → peeji
mm (millimeters) → mirimeetoru	cm (centimeters) → senchimeetoru	km (kilometers) → kiromeetoru	mg (milligrams) → miriguramu
kg (kilograms) → kiroguramu	cc (cc) → siisii	m^2 (square meters) → heihoumeetoru	

■Other

● Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.

● Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.

● Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.

● Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically.

Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:

- Create your mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
- Use punctuation marks when creating a mail.

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword notice>

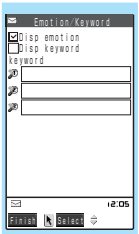
Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

● "Emotion-expressing mail"→p.256

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶"Emotion/Keyword notice"

The "Emotion/Keyword" screen appears.



Emotion/Keyword
Function➡p.281

■ **To use "Disp emotion"**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp emotion"

The checkbox is checked (☑), and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ **To use "Disp keyword"**

▶Select the check box (☐) of the "Disp keyword"▶Enter one keyword or more

The checkbox is checked (☑), and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "keyword", the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 (✉) (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

◆Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed corresponding to the keyword on received mail list screen, etc.

Return the mail function to the default setting <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶"Reset"▶Enter the secret number▶"YES"

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you enjoy talking.

- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
  - Receive option is set to "ON"
  - Inbox is full of mail
  - When 2in1 is set to B mode
- The communication fee for sending a chat mail to several people is the same as sending a broadcast mail.
- You can set a ring tone to a chat mail. When you receive multiple mails that include a chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for a chat mail.

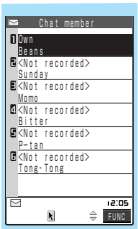
Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Chat mail"▶(FUNC)▶"Chat member"

The "Chat member" screen appears.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Refer address" in the function menu list on the Chat member screen.



Chat member
Function➡p.281

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	■**No addresses are recorded** ▶**Select any item** ■**The address is recorded** ▶**"YES"▶Select any item** Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters a mail address from the phonebook.
• **Sent address**	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• **Received address**	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Change member	"Changing chat session members"→p.282

Continued on next page

Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes one chat member highlighted.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

◆If the added mail address is registered in a chat group, the member name is displayed. If the mail address is registered not in a chat group but in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-byte characters of the mail address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

◆If you change a mail address of the registered chat member by looking-up the phonebook, the name of the member and an image file on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen. (If an image is not registered, a mail address is not changed.)

<Display setting>

◆If you display your own details, your mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>

◆You cannot delete yourself.

Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (p.281) ▶ (FUNC)▶"Change member" ▶Select any item

Chat group	Select the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• **Group list**	**▶Select "Chat group"**
• **Member list**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)**
Mail member	**▶Select a mail member**

NOTE

◆If you receive chat mail from an ex-group member who has been deleted from the list of the chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select "Quit" without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the chat mail next time, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and sending chat mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail.

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Chat mail"

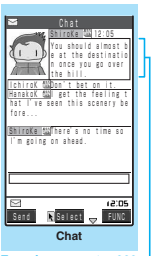
"Chat" screen appears.

2 ●▶Enter your message▶ (Send)

You can send up to 250 double- or 500 single-byte characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

To send a message continuously, repeat step 2.



Chat

Function menu➡p.282

Latest message area

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

▶The function menu of the Chat screen▶"Quit"

NOTE

◆Attached and pasted files are not displayed.

◆Sent and received chat mail is stored in the "Chat" folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the "Chat" folder.

◆The subject used for chat mail you send is "チャットメール" (chat mail) (single-byte characters).

◆Chat mail displayed in the chat screen is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.

◆If you receive an i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the "Reception results" screen does not appear.

◆Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)**
Chat member	"Selecting chat session members" →p.281
Broadcast address	"Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail" →p.283
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area

View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.
Quit	Selects whether deleting the chat mail and quit the chat mail
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.

NOTE

<Quit>

◆The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.

◆To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".

◆If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox list and Inbox list respectively.

◆Chat mails failed to send are stored in the "Chat" folder under the Outbox list.

◆If you quit the chat session without deleting the chat mails, those mails are displayed in reverse chronological order in the message record area on the chat screen at the next chat session.

◆When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mails at once. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

<Delete read>

◆This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

- You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting to the chat mail.

1 Chat screen (p.282)▶(FUNC)▶"Broadcast address"▶"YES"▶Use to select the check box (☐)▶(Finish)

■ **When all the addresses are for chat session members**

▶"Broadcast address"▶"OK"

Receiving chat mail <Chat mail recv>

If a chat mail is not launched and you receive a chat mail, the "CHAT" icon appears on the standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start it.

- The number of characters that allow display of the chat mail is up to 250 double-byte characters (500 single-byte characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat screen.
- If you select "CHAT" or else "Chat" from the function menu on the received mail detail screen, the chat session member or the destination is changed according to the following conditions:
  - If the source mail address is set as a chat member, the members at the last chat session closed are set as is. However, if you launch a chat from the received mail detail screen, the non-source session members in the destination list are excluded from sending. If you select "CHAT", a chat mail follows the "Select receiver" setting. If the source mail address is off the sending list, it is added to the destination.
  - If the source mail address is not set as a chat member but is included in a chat group, all the members of the chat group in which the source member is included is set as a chat member. Note that the non-source members in the destination list are excluded from sending.
  - If the source mail address is not set as a chat member and is not included even in a chat group, only the source mail address is set as a chat member.
- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶"CHAT"



Standby

■ **When the sender is not included as a chat member**

▶"YES"

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat member and launch a chat mail. Select "YES" to change the current chat member setting and launch a chat mail.

■ **To not change the current chat member setting**

▶"NO"

The current chat member setting is retained and the "Mail menu" screen appears.

2 Start the chat mail

Received chat mail is displayed in the latest statement area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it is displayed in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆The FOMA terminal recognizes a chat mail whether it meets the following criteria:
- The subject line includes "チャットメール" (chat mail) (all double-byte or all single-byte characters).
- A source or destination mail address is included in a chat member or a chat group.
- Not mail-connected i-αppli
- Not a Deco-mail
- Not SMS
- Not a mail to Address B of 2in1 setting

◆The Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are not available on the Chat screen. You can use the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To if they are displayed from Inbox.

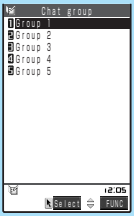
Registering Members in Chat Group

Registering the chat member in a chat group beforehand simplifies the operation of the chat member entry.

- You can add up to 5 members in one chat group. Including the owner is not necessary.
- You can add up to 5 chat groups.
- Multiple registration of one member to several chat groups is not allowed.
- When you register a member in a chat group, you can edit the member name or set an image.

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Chat group"

The "Chat group list" screen appears.



Chat group list

Function➡p.284

2 Select a chat group

The "Group member list" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit)▶Enter a mail address▶●

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.
To add the mail addresses, repeat steps 2 and 3.



Group member list

Function➡p.284

■To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook

▶Select "<Not stored>"▶"Phonebook"▶Select e search method▶Select the mail address to be quoted

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)
→p.112

NOTE

◆If an i-mode mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp", only the phone number should be used for registration to the chat member. For an e-mail address, you can use either the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) or the entire address including "@docomo.ne.jp" for registration.

◆Up to first 8 characters of the registered mail address is used as a member name. If there exists the mail address registered as a chat member in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed in up to first 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters. The registered image is also set if it is stored in the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	**▶Edit a group name** Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (Group member list screen)

Edit	**▶Enter an e-mail address** Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Refer address	**■No addresses are recorded ▶Select any item** **■The address is recorded ▶"YES"▶Select any item** Enter the mail address of the group member looking-up the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image stored in the phonebook are registered.
• **Sent address**	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• **Received address**	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Change member	**■If no member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member** **■If a member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶"YES"▶Select a mail member**

Member setting	"Setting member details"→p.285
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the members in the selected group.

Setting member details

1 "Group member list" (p.284)▶ (FUNC)▶"Member setting"▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Edit member name	▶**Enter the member name** Edits a member name. You can enter up to four double-byte or eight single-byte characters.
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from "Beans", "Sunday", "Momo", "Bitter", "P-tan" and "Tong · Tong".
Set voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".

NOTE

<Edit member name>

◆If you leave the member name blank, up to first 8 characters of the mail address are used as a member name.

<Set image>

◆You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

1 Mail setting screen (p.276)▶"Chat"

The "Chat setting" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Chat setting

Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item.
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• **Pre-installed**	Select the chat sound from "Alarm 1" to "Alarm 3".
• **Voice announce**	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in "Voice announce".
• **OFF**	No notification tone sounds.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest statement area.
Read out chat (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the chat screen.
User setting	"Setting user details" →p.285

NOTE

<Sound setting>

◆The notification sound does not emit when you receive a chat mail from the member not registered as a chat member.

Setting user details

1 Chat setting screen (p.285)▶"User setting"▶Select any item

Name	▶**Enter a user name** Enters a user name. You can enter up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the owner image to be displayed on the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal. Choose from "Beans", "Sunday", "Momo", "Bitter", "P-tan" and "Tong · Tong".
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".

NOTE

<Name>

◆If you leave the user name blank or enter only spaces, "Own" is used.

<Image>

◆You cannot change the background color.

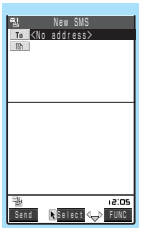
<Compose SMS/Send>

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to roaming operators other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Compose SMS"

The "New SMS" screen appears.



New SMS

Function menu➡p.287

2 "To"▶Select the address (or the destination phone number) entry method

Only one SMS address can be entered.

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook.
Sent address*1	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address*2	Enters the phone number from the received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1: "Sent address" can be displayed by pressing ⟳ on the "New SMS" screen as well.

*2: "Received address" can be displayed by pressing ⟲ on the "New SMS" screen as well.

■ For the destination using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶Enter + (press 0 (for 1 second or longer)) - the country code - the destination mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of "010" - "Country code" - "the destination mobile phone number" (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter "010" to send overseas).

■ To change the entered address

▶Select the destination address▶Select the destination address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select "YES".

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- The destination address includes the characters other than numbers, "✱" or "#".
- There includes "+" on the destination address excluding the first digit.
- There includes a space on the destination address.

3 " "

The "Message/SMS" screen appears.



Message/SMS

4 Enter the message body

The number and type of characters that can be entered in the edit message screen follow the "SMS input char." (p.287) setting. If "Japanese" is selected, you can enter up to 70 characters of all the double bytes or single bytes. If "English" is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols. Space is also counted as a character.

You can use the function menu of the "Text entry (edit)" screen (p.450) while entering a message.

5 (Send)

The animation screen showing the mail in transit is displayed and SMS is sent. Select "OK" to return to the "Mail menu" screen.

To edit the sent or unsent SMS→p.274

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report req." (p.287), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the destination.

To view an SMS with an SMS report ( ), select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the "Received mail list" screen. SMS reports are indicated by "SMS report" in the subject line.

NOTE

- ◆If Outbox in the FOMA terminal contains over the maximum storage messages (the total of SMS and i-mode mail), the sent mail is automatically deleted in chronological order. However, the FOMA terminal does not delete the i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder as well as the sent mail in protection.
- ◆A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal status.
- ◆Even though "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the destination during SMS transmission.
- ◆If additional number of Multi Number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
- ◆You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as two characters in "Japanese" and as one character in "English".
- ◆Some characters may not properly be displayed at the receiving side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the destination.
- ◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot either compose or send an SMS.

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Sends SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the destination address and contents of SMS before sending a mail.
Save	Saves SMS in editing into Draft. SMS can be saved up to 20 messages together with the i-mode mail. You can send SMS in Draft later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select "ON" or "OFF".
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Sets the storage period at the SMS Center in the case where SMS is not carried to the destination because of the out-of-service and such. "None" to "3 days" can be selected.
SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Erase message	Deletes only the message body.
Delete	Deletes SMS in editing.

NOTE

◆If you set "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid per." in the Mail settings screen, the setting is retained even after the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, if you set the "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid per." using the function menu, only one SMS which is currently setting is available.

◆If "None" is set in "SMS valid per.", the message is deleted from the SMS Center after resending in a given period of time.

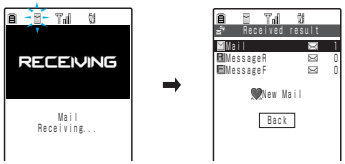
<Receive SMS>

When You Receive SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center

- The received SMS can be stored in the FOMA terminal up to 1,000 messages together with i-mode mail.

1 When you receive SMS, the " " (white) icon flashes and "Mail Receiving..." is displayed



After receiving is completed, the number of messages count is displayed about the received SMS, i-mode mail, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.
When "Mail" is selected, the "Received mail list" screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds brings back to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".

NOTE

◆If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the Trash box and Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protection or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any necessary received mail. →p.270, 273

◆When the " "(red) icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or SMS. To receive a new message, delete an unnecessary i-mode mail and SMS, or read an unread i-mode mail and SMS until those icons no longer appear. A read message is overwritten in chronological order on receiving.

◆When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set to the last item of mail received.

◆If you receive Short Mail from the mova or other terminal, the source phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.

◆If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆When receiving SMS, setting priority for the ring tone and illumination is as follows:

①"Discern connect" specified for each phone number →p.119

②"Discern group" specified for each group →p.119 "Select ring tone"/"Kisekae Tool setting" →p.126, 144, "Illumination" →p.147

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the "Received mail list" screen.
- For received SMS reports, "SMS report" is displayed as the subject of the "Received mail list" screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed as the subject of the "Received mail list" screen. For the number of voice mail messages notices, "Noticecall Videophone" is displayed as the subject of the "Received mail list" screen.
- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

Continued on next page

1 On the standby screen ▶● ▶"✉ New"



Selecting the "✉" (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the received mail list screen (p.270).

NOTE

- If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The source phone number of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Press ● with the phone number highlighted and you can make a voice call, videophone call or a PushTalk call to a displayed phone number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the source phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can make a call in the same operation.

Replying to/forwarding received SMS (Short Message)

You can reply to the source SMS or forward SMS.

- You cannot enter a subject.

"Replying by composing a new message" →p.258

NOTE

- You cannot reply with quote to SMS.
- You cannot reply to SMS with User unset, Payphone and Unknown.
- You cannot reply to or forward an SMS report.
- You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.
- If you reply to or forward SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the "↩" and "↪" icons are not displayed on the received mail list screen or received mail detail screen and the "✉" icon leaves as is.
- When "Change mode" in 2in1 setting (p.465) is set to B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply to an SMS sent to Number B.

<Check new SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS arriving at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are kept at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, you are outside the service area, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or the memory on the FOMA terminal is full.

1 MENU ▶"MAIL"▶"Check new SMS"

"SMS Checking..." is displayed while you check for new SMS. After completion of inquiry, a message appears indicating that the inquiry has done and press ●.

If there are any messages kept at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.

In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking may be interrupted.
- You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR/MessageF using this function. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use "Check new messages".

<SMS settings>

Setting SMS (Short Message) Options

Setting the SMS (Short Message) Center

Default setting: DoCoMo

*** No setting change is required usually.**

You can set the option which SMS Center you use DoCoMo or other carriers.

<Example: To use SMS Center of other carriers>

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Connection setting"▶"SMS center selection"▶Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	**▶Enter the address of the SMS Center▶"International" or "Unknown"** Uses the SMS Center of other carriers.
Reset	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the "User setting" data and sets to "DoCoMo".

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "✗", you cannot select "International".

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) contains up to 20 received and sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: To move SMS from Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Highlight SMS▶● (FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- If there appears an icon of "", "" (white) or "" (red), you cannot move or copy SMS.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM). If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you remove the battery pack, date and time for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, for the sent SMS stored with the SMS report request, date and time are not deleted.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: To move SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to Inbox>

1 (MENU)▶"MAIL"▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Highlight SMS▶● (FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

NOTE

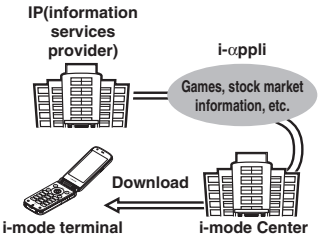
- Even when 2in1 is set to B mode, a moved or copied SMS is saved as the one sent to Number A.

i-αppli

What is an i-αppli? 292
Downloading an i-αppli from a Site 293
Launching an i-αppli 295
Launching an i-αppli Automatically 300
Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To function 301
Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen ..... Set i-αppli stand-by 302
Organizing an i-αppli 303

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli programs from sites, you can make it more useful and enjoyable to use your i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There is also a mapping i-αppli that allows you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-αppli programs of which you can store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or schedule, or which is linked to Data box when saving or downloading images.



- To download an i-αppli→p.293
- To launch an i-αppli→p.295
- To launch an i-αppli automatically→p.300

NOTE

- ◆Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- ◆Some software applications use a FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set to run without communicating.
- ◆The following i-αppli may not be available depending on the mode in 2in1.
  - B mode: i-αppli of Message/Mail/Standby
  - Dual mode: Standby-appli

Using stored data

Some i-αppli programs can browse, store or use data (such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) stored on your i-mode terminal. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding to Phonebook
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Changing alarm settings
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Searching ToruCa
- Adding folders to My picture

● What is an i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX programs link up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mails, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-αppli programs even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mails on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you from who a call or message has come, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli DX programs can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-αppli programs (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information), but also data such as mails, Dialed calls record, Received calls record and ring tones. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding to Phonebook
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls record
- Browsing the latest Received calls record
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Videophone, Mail, MessageR, MessageF and Chat mail)
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving Chara-den
- Browsing Chara-den
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail, receiving MessageR/MessageF and menu icon)
- Changing the videophone substitute image setting
- Changing alarm settings
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Searching ToruCa
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Browsing Inbox/Outbox
- Adding folders to My picture
- Selecting or acquiring location history

NOTE

- ◆Regardless of software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of software. The frequency and timing of connections differ depending on the software.

● What is mail-connected i-αppli?

Mail-connected i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mails to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of

games, etc., allowing you to make your FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use. i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.

- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot launch an i-αppli which uses the mail function.

What is Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli?

Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli that reads and writes data in an IC card enables you to use useful functions such as downloading electronic money or ticket, etc. and browsing the balance or records in your mobile phone.

- "What is Osaifu-Keitai?"→p.306

NOTE

◆Using Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli sends the information stored in your IC card to an information service provider (IP) of the subscribing service. (Contract with DoCoMo is not forwarded.)

What is GPS i-αppli?

GPS i-αppli using the GPS function enables you to use your FOMA terminal more conveniently. For example, you can search for the information of your present location easily, or have the FOMA terminal to show the current location on a map and guide you to the destination.

NOTE

◆If you use a GPS i-αppli, your location information is sent to the information provider of the i-αppli.

◆To use the GPS function with a GPS i-αppli, set Location usage setting for the i-αppli to "Yes".

Other useful features

■ i-αppli standby screen

An i-αppli can be set to the standby screen, and you can receive a message or make a call on the screen. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm. →p.302

- This function is available for software programs that support i-αppli standby screens.

■ i-αppli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch an i-αppli by specifying a time, date or day of the week. Some i-αppli programs can be launched automatically at the intervals specified in the programs beforehand. →p.300

■ Photo mode

Some i-αppli programs allow you to take pictures using the camera built in an i-mode terminal. →p.184

- This function is available for software programs that support the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows an i-αppli running on a FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function.
This further expands the use of your FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices. →p.378

- This function is available for software programs that support the Infrared data exchange function.
- A FOMA terminal may be unable to communicate with some devices even if they are equipped with the Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows i-αppli programs to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. →p.384
For example, the pre-installed "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control) enables you to use your terminal as an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table. →p.299

- This function is available for software programs that support the infrared remote control function. The programs must be compatible with the controlled devices.

Downloading an i-αppli from a Site

You can download an i-αppli from an i-mode site and run it on your FOMA terminal.

- A FOMA terminal can hold up to 200 downloaded programs (up to 5 mail-connected i-αppli programs). Depending on the size of programs, the actual number of downloadable i-αppli programs varies between 15 and 200. The number includes partly downloaded i-αppli programs.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed. If Original lock is set for the i-αppli, the folder names are "i-αppli".
- If there are already 5 folders for mail-connected i-αppli, delete one or more of the existing folders for mail-connected i-αppli to create available space for new programs.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli that will use the same Inbox and Outbox folders as those for an i-αppli that has already been stored in your FOMA terminal.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αppli programs while Mail security is set. Cancel Mail security before download.
- Mails sent or received using a mail-connected i-αppli are automatically sorted into the folders created when the mail-connected i-αppli was downloaded. You can also sort received mails manually.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli without deleting its folders and then download the i-αppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αppli.

Continued on next page

1 Select a program

When the message "Completed" appears after downloading, press ●. Programs that are immediately launched from sites (p.301) start up without the completion message.

■ **To interrupt download while data are being received**

▶During download▶● or CLR

You can resume downloading if the message asking whether to do it appears.
Selecting "NO" displays a message that allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

■ **If a software setting screen appears**

▶Set the program▶"YES"

Select "NO" to not launch the i-αppli program.
Software setting→p.295

2 "YES"

When you launch an i-αppli program, "" appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αppli DX program is launched, "" appears.

■ **To not launch a program**

▶"NO"

● Downloading remains of a partly downloaded i-αppli

If you select a partly downloaded i-αppli ( ) on the Software list screen (p.295) or IC card content screen (p.307), a message asking whether to download the remaining data appears.
Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partially saved data.

- If remaining data are invalid, you cannot download the data. Attempting to download such data deletes the partially saved data.

● Downloading remains of an i-αppli that only has the management information

If you used "iC transfer service" (p.306) and have not downloaded the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, you cannot use data in the IC card. If this is the case, an i-αppli appears as the one that only has the management information ( ) on the "Software list" screen (p.295) or "IC card content" screen (p.307).

- Selecting an i-αppli that only has the management information shows a message asking whether to download the rest of the i-αppli data. Select "YES" to download the rest of the data. (For some i-αppli programs, the download site will open.)

NOTE

◆You may not be able to download an i-αppli depending on the site or the size of the i-αppli.
◆Some i-αppli programs may automatically perform communication after downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using "Network set" in "Software setting".
◆If you download an i-αppli or i-αppli DX that uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message notifying that the i-αppli will use the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers appears. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result.
◆When you are downloading a software program or software information from an SSL site, " " appears.
→p.215
◆When you download an i-αppli that uses the FOMA terminal's communication function or that can be set as a standby screen, the software setting screen appears. Perform settings according to the downloaded program and select whether to launch the i-αppli. (Press CLR to cancel the settings.)
◆Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download a Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli even when there is capacity available in the program storage area. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen to delete the displayed programs and then try downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli again. Depending on the i-αppli to be downloaded, some programs may not be deleted. Some programs may require you to launch the program to delete data on the IC card before deleting the program itself.
◆If you try to download the same program as the one already download using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message confirming that you will overwrite the program appears. Select "YES" to start download. After the download is completed, the program already downloaded is deleted.
◆"i-αppli mail" refers to mails sent by mail-connected i-αppli programs or those sent to you so that they will be used in mail-connected i-αppli programs. i-αppli mails contain i-αppli data that enable the mails to be automatically saved in the i-αppli mail folder.
◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, the confirmation screen for launching a program may not appear after download, depending on the i-αppli.

Viewing i-αppli information during download <Display software info>

Default setting: Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether to show the program information when downloading a program.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-αppli settings"▶"Disp. Software info"

Select "Display" or "Not display".

Launching an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

1 (MENU)▶**"i-αPPLI"**▶**"Software list"**

The "Software list" screen appears.
You can also open the "Software list" screen by pressing (i) ( ) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.



Software list

2 **Select an i-αppli to launch**

Function menu➡p.295

Quitting an i-αppli

1 (CLR) **(1 second or longer)**▶**"YES"**

Selecting ( )▶"YES" also ends an i-αppli.

■ For software developers

When a created i-αppli program does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of (MENU)▶"I-αPPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Trace info". The trace information appears in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy trace information by selecting "Copy info" from the function menu. To delete trace information, select "Delete info" from the function menu.

NOTE

◆You can set an i-αppli to be launched automatically.→p.300
◆You can enjoy rich-sound melodies with 3D sound compatible i-αppli programs.→p.128
◆If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call while a program is starting up, the program operation is paused. The program screen reappears when the call ends. If you receive a call during i-αppli communication, the FOMA terminal works according to the "V-phone while packet" setting.→p.88
◆Some i-αppli programs allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the program. However, you cannot use the functions from the i-αppli standby screen (p.302) (except when running an i-αppli).
◆i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.
◆Do not remove the battery pack while running a program. Doing so may delete the data or information that has been entered.
◆Some programs allows you to save the data you will use for the program (i-αppli data (microSD)) in the microSD memory card.
◆If you attempt to copy data to the microSD memory card, etc. while using an i-αppli, a message notifying that the operation cannot be performed may appear.
◆Images used in i-αppli programs* or data entered by a user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
*: Images used in i-αppli programs mean those shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-αppli, those retrieved using an i-αppli Infrared data exchange or iC communication function, those that an i-αppli downloaded from an i-mode site or website or those that an i-αppli retrieved from Data box.
◆If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
◆Some i-αppli programs may not make sounds.
◆If the camera was activated by an i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
◆If the camera is activated by an i-αppli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified by the i-αppli.
◆Some i-αppli programs enable you to activate the Bar code reader to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The scanned data are used by the i-αppli.
◆Depending on the program, the information service provider (IP) may access the program stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the program. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the program as a standby screen. You can only delete the program or view the program information. To use the program again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the program.
◆Depending on the program, the IP may send data to the program stored on your FOMA terminal.
◆When an IP sends disable or re-enable instructions or other data to a program stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the FOMA terminal starts communication and the " " icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.
◆When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, you may not be able to launch, operate or set an i-αppli depending on the application.
◆You cannot launch an i-αppli:
- While an image is edited
- While an i-motion, Chaku-Uta Full® or music channel is downloaded

Function menu (Software list screen)

Set i-αppli To	"Enabling a program to launch with i-αppli To"→p.301
Auto-start time	"Setting the launch date/time"→p.300
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.
• **Stand-by display**	"Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen"→p.302
• **Network set**	Sets whether to allow the network connection to be performed when launching an i-αppli. Setting to "Confirm every session" enables you to select online or offline communication every time you launch an i-αppli. ▶(✉) **(Finish)**
• **Stand-by net**	Sets whether to allow the network connection on the i-αppli set for the standby screen. ▶(✉) **(Finish)**

Continued on next page

• **Icon info**	Specifies whether to permit the use of icon information of unread mails or messages when launching an i-αppli. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Change mld./img.**	Sets whether to allow an i-αppli DX to change ring tones for calls, mails and messages, to change images such as those on the standby screen or used when mails are sent or received, or to change menu icons when launching the i-αppli DX .When "ON" is set, the ring tones, images or menu icons will be automatically changed. When "Check every change" is set, you can specify whether to change those items every time the i-αppli tries to change them. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **See P.book/ hist.**	Sets whether to allow an i-αppli DX to look up the phonebook, the latest Dialed and Received calls records and the latest unread mail when the i-αppli DX is launched. When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records will be automatically looked up. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Location usage**	Sets whether to permit the acquisition of location information when an i-αppli DX is launched. When "Yes" is set, the location information will be automatically acquired. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Power saver**	Sets whether to pause the i-αppli operation when the FOMA terminal is folded. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
Software info	"Checking i-αppli information"→p.296
Upgrade	"Upgrading an i-αppli"→p.303
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Memory info	Shows the i-αppli memory status.
Delete	"Deleting an i-αppli"→p.303

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

◆If specifying "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

◆If you set this function to "ON" for a program set as the i-αppli standby screen, as presence of unread mails and messages, appearance of the icons for in/out of service area and status of the battery level and Manner mode may be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.

◆If this function is set to "OFF", some programs that require icon information may not work.

<Software setting (Power saver)>

◆If this function is set to "ON", note that you may not be able to receive timely information since the i-αppli operation is paused when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Adjusting volume for i-αppli programs <i-αppli vol.>

You can adjust volume for i-αppli programs.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-αppli settings"▶ "i-αppli vol."

The "i-αppli vol. setting" screen appears.

2 Set volume

NOTE

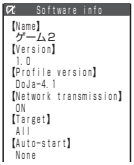
◆You can set the i-αppli volume to "Silent" or "Level 1 to 6" (default: Level 4).

◆Some programs enable you to set volume separately. However, if "i-αppli vol." is set to "Silent", they do not sound regardless of the volume set for the program.

◆The volume level for i-αppli programs while in Manner mode is specified according to the Manner mode settings. When Manner mode is set to Original, the i-αppli volume is specified by "i-αppli vol." under the Manner mode setting.

Checking i-αppli information

1 Software list screen (p.295) ▶ (FUNC)▶ "Software info"▶ Check the information



NOTE

◆Program names shown by this function cannot be changed.

◆On the Software list screen, program types and settings can be checked by the following icons:

: i-αppli DX→p.292

: Mail-connected i-αppli→p.292

: "Auto-start time" has been set.→p.300

: "Set i-αppli stand-by" has been set.

: "Auto-start time" and "Set i-αppli stand-by" have been set.

: "i-αppli To setting" can be set.

: "Set i-αppli stand-by" can be set.

: "i-αppli To setting" and "Set i-αppli stand-by" can be set.

: Downloaded from an SSL page

: Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli→p.306

: The data can be saved to the microSD memory card.→p.304

: Partly downloaded i-αppli

: i-αppli that has only the management information→p.294

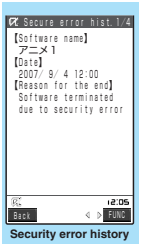
: GPS i-αppli→p.293

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 (MENU)▶"i-αPPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Security error history"

The "Security error history" screen appears.



Security error history

Function menu➡p.295

Function menu (Security error history screen)

Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error information.

Launching another program from an active program

You can launch another program from a currently active program. Downloading a program that launches the specified program enables you to launch the program without having to return to the Software list screen.

- Specify a program to launch if it is not specified.
- If the specified program is not stored on your FOMA terminal, you must download the program beforehand.

1 Select an item for launching a program

NOTE

◆If the linked program will use location information, a message asking whether to launch the program appears.

Pre-installed programs

Your FOMA terminal comes with several pre-installed programs "EXITEX", "桃鉄WORLD豪華版" (Momotetsu WORLD Goukaban), "ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), "デコメをつくろう" (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou), "カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ" (Camera de kensaku! ER search), "ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」" (iD credit payment service), "「DCMX」クレジットアプリ" ("DCMX" credit application), "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control), "FOMA通信環境確認アプリ" (FOMA communication environment check application), "デコメ絵文字ポケット" (Decorate PI Pocket), "iアプリバンキング" (i-αppli banking), "楽オク出品アプリ" (Rakuten Auction application)).

- Looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- If you want to restore a pre-installed i-αppli program that was deleted, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー ".

Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.39

- The "Software setting" items for pre-installed programs are set as follows at the time of purchase:

	EXITEX	桃鉄WORLD豪華版 (Momotetsu WORLD Goukaban)	ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	デコメをつくろう (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)	カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)	クレジット「iD（アイディ）」 (iD credit payment service)
Stand-by display	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Network set	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Stand-by net	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Icon info	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Change mld./img.	–	–	OFF	–	–	OFF
See P.book/hist.	–	–	ON	–	–	OFF
Location usage	–	–	ON	–	–	OFF
Power saver	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

	「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control)	FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)	デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decorate PI Pocket)	iアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)	楽オク出品アプリ (Rakuten Auction application)
Stand-by display	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Network set	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
Stand-by net	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Icon info	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Change mld./img.	OFF	OFF	OFF	–	OFF	OFF
See P.book/hist.	OFF	OFF	ON	–	OFF	OFF
Location usage	OFF	OFF	OFF	–	OFF	OFF
Power saver	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

● EXITEX

This is a game you play with puzzle action. Operate the character "Mr. ESC" to help out people, seek for the exit and get out.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶"EXITEX"

■ To exit the game

▶✉ (EXIT)▶"はい" (Yes)



■ To adjust the volume

▶● "メニュー" (Menu)▶"システム設定"(System setting)▶Select "アプリ音量設定" (αppli volume setting)▶⊖

2 ●▶"PLAY GAME"

■ To display how to play in detail

▶● "メニュー" (Menu)▶"操作方法説明" (Instructions for operation)

● 桃鉄WORLD豪華版 (Momotetsu WORLD Goukaban)

Enjoy the i-αppli version of a popular game, 桃太郎電鉄 (Momotaro Dentetsu) series.
Buy properties all over the world, aiming to become a millionaire.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶"桃鉄WORLD豪華版" (Momotetsu WORLD Goukaban)



■ **To exit the game**
▶✉ (やめる (Exit))▶"はい" (Yes)▶●

■ **To mute BGM**
▶i (♪ OFF)

2 ●▶"はじめから" (from the beginning)

The game starts.

■ **To start from where you stopped last time**
▶"つづき" (from the last stop)

● ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

For more information about "ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), see p.317.

● デコメをつくろう (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)

You can easily create Decorate PI that can be used as pictographs on i-mode mails. This program also enables you to create your original signature and save it as an image.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶"デコメをつくろう" (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)



■ **To exit the game**
▶i (終了 (Exit))

2 "デコメ絵文字" (Decorate PI)

Create a Decorate PI.

■ **To create an original signature**
▶"ネームプレート" (Name plate)

■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶"ヘルプ！" (Help!)

● カメラで ケンサク！ ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

This program enables you to easily acquire information about shopping, campaigns, etc. by shooting items such as images of magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves or logos and sending them.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶"カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ" (Camera de kensaku! ER search)



■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶✉ [ヘルプ] (Help)

2 Select "検索START!" (Start search)▶Select a genre▶"カメラ起動" (Activate camera)

3 Shoot an object▶"OK"

The characteristics of the shot image* are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.

*: The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

4 Select an item on the search result screen▶"YES"

A website appears.

● ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」 (iD credit payment service)

ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service) allows you to pay or use a cashing service only by holding your Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit, without having to take a credit card from your wallet and leave your signature. This makes your shopping easier and more enjoyable.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- To use iD, make an application for a card supporting iD and acquire the iD i-αppli and the card i-αppli provided by the card company.
- To use the iD i-αppli for the first time, agree with "ご利用上の注意" (Terms of Use), make the necessary preparations and download the card application.
- The cost for using the iD credit service (e.g. annual fee) varies depending on the card company.
- A packet communication charge is applied for downloading the iD i-αppli or the card i-αppli released by the card company.
- For information about iD, visit the iD website or i-mode site.
  Website (Only in Japanese):
  http://id-credit.com
  i-mode site (Only in Japanese):
  iMenu▶メニュー／検索 (Menu/search)▶ケータイクレジット「iD」 (iD credit payment service)

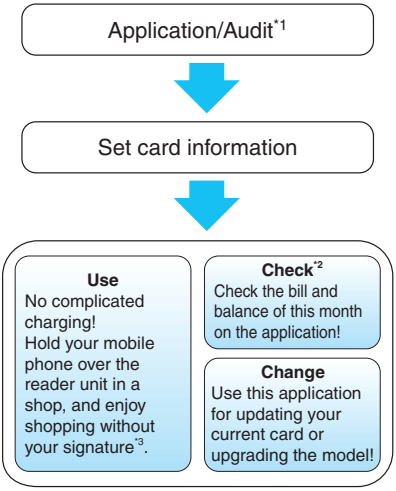
● 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ ("DCMX" credit application)

"DCMX" is a credit service that is compatible with "iD" and provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX that offers the higher limit than DCMX mini while earning DoCoMo Point. Use this application to subscribe to DCMX mini easily and quickly, and use the mobile credit service immediately.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

■ Application function



*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

*3: Entry of the security code may be required in some conditions.

- For details about the service and its application, visit the following: Website of DCMX:
  - From i-mode: iMenu▶DCMX
  - From a PC: http://dcmx.jp/
- For more information about this service, contact "For inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.

■ Information

- Agree to "ご利用上の注意" (Terms of Use) the first time you launch this application.
- Packet communication charges are applied for settings or operations.

■ Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.

● Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control)

"Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control) is a useful application equipped with the program guide and AV remote control function, which can be used free of charge. Get information about analog or digital TV programs easily anytime and anywhere. You can find a program title, contents and time.
When you find a program you want to watch, set your DVD recorder to record the program via the Internet. (The DVD recorder must support the Remote Scheduling Function and you need to perform initial setting for this application before using this function.)
You can search for information by any keywords such as a genre or your favorite TV personality. You can control TV, video or DVD player remotely (some models do not support this).

- Agree to the license agreement and make the initial settings the first time you use "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control).
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- To use this application overseas, set Japan time for "Set time" in your FOMA terminal.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



* The screen is only an image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

■ Online timer recording

With a DVD recorder that supports online timer recording, you can set timer recording using the program guide of this application via the Internet while away from home. You need to perform initial setting for this application before setting online timer recording.

- Initial setting
  ①Perform the Internet connection setting on your DVD recorder. (For more information, see the manual for the DVD recorder.)
  ②Launch this application, select "リモート録画予約" (Online timer recording) on メニュー (Menu) and perform the initial setting following the instructions.
- Timer recording
  After the initial setting, specify a program to record and select "リモート録画予約" (Online timer recording) on the menu. Then you connect to the DVD recorder set in this application via the Internet to set the timer recording.
  *If another recording has been already set for the time you specified, a message appears on the program guide.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.
◆Packet communication charges are applied for using i-mode communication such as "初期設定" (Initial setting) and "主なメニュー" (Main menu) in the i-αppli programs.
◆Note that if you set the i-αppli network setting to "OFF", i-mode communication is not available and you cannot use the functions on "主なメニュー (Main menu)" in the i-αppli programs as well as "初期設定 (Initial setting)".
◆NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on a FOMA terminal.

● FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)

1 "Software list" (p.295) ▶"FOMA通信環境確認" (FOMA communication environment check application)



■ To exit the software

▶✉ "終了" (End)▶"Yes"

2 "START"

● デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decorate PI Pocket)



"デコメ絵文字ポケット" (Decorate PI Pocket) is an i-αppli that enables you to easily search for and save Decorate PI that can be used as pictographs on i-mode mails.

You can search for Decorate PI offered by information service providers by themes such as "Category" and "Illustrations and characters" and you can easily save them in your FOMA terminal.

Multiple Decorate PI can be saved at a time. You can also see the introduction of the site that provides your favorite Decorate PI and access the site.

- The monthly information charge of "デコメ絵文字ポケット" (Decorate PI Pocket) is free. For viewing a site of an IP (information service provider), the i-mode information charge may apply separately.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● iアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)

This i-αppli enables you to conveniently use mobile banking. Mobile banking is a service that you can check your bank balance or account activity, or you can transfer money whenever or wherever, by using a mobile phone. Mobile banking for up to 2 banking facilities, only by entering the password you have set when launching the i-αppli.

- To use the mobile banking service by the i-αppli, a bank account of the banking facility and application to the mobile banking service is required.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- For detailed information on i-αppli banking, see the i-mode site.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

● 楽オク出品アプリ (Rakuten Auction application)

"楽オク出品アプリ" (Rakuten Auction application) is a useful application that you can easily sell goods at Rakuten Auction whenever and wherever. It provides a guidance display for new users who use the i-αppli for the first time. There are helpful functions such as shooting/editing a photo or saving the history, and you can bring goods to the auction in a shorter time than from a site.

- You need to agree "利用規約" (Terms and conditions) before you use the i-αppli for the first time.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Member subscription and auctioneer registration to Rakuten are required to sell goods on Rakuten Auction.
- For detailed information on Rakuten Auction, see the i-mode site.
  Website: http://a.rakuten.co.jp/
  i-mode site: iMenu→楽オク-オークション- (Rakuten Auction)



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Launching an i-αppli Automatically

Use this function to launch a program automatically at the specified date and time or any intervals.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto-start set>

Default setting: OFF

- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 programs.

1 (MENU)▶"i-αPPLI"▶"Auto-start set"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Setting the launch date/time <Auto-start time>

Default setting: All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when a program is automatically launched.

- A program does not start up automatically in the following situations:
  - When a FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - During communication
  - When an Alarm, Schedule, To Do list or Software Update alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶(FUNC)▶"Auto-start time"▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)

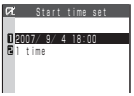
■ **To enable the time interval set for a program**
▶Check the "Time interval set" checkbox



■ **To set the launch date and time**
▶Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2 (Finish)▶Set the launch date and time

■ **To set the launch date and time**
▶Select a date and time▶Enter the launch date and time



■ **To set the automatic launch repetition**
▶Select the repeat setting item▶"Daily" or "Weekly" If you have selected "Weekly", use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) and press (Finish).

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆If you set the "Time interval set" and "Start time set" for the same program and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the program will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also check programs that failed to start up from the IC card function.

1 (MENU)▶"i-αPPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Auto-start info"

The screen shows information such as the program name, automatic launch time and whether or not the program was launched. "Start○" indicates that the program started up automatically, "Start×" indicates that it did not start up automatically and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.



NOTE

◆If a program could not be launched automatically, the " " (Not run soft) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the Auto-start info screen. Select the program to launch it. Desktop icons that give notice→p.152

◆Information is also logged when an program could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another application.

◆"Auto-start info" may include the information for the program you did not realize its launch.

<i-αppli To function>

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αppli from functions other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling a program to launch with i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting: All activated

Use this setting to specify whether to launch an i-αppli from i-mode sites, mails, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function or ToruCa.

- This setting can be specified separately for each i-αppli program.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶ (FUNC)▶"Set i-αppli To"▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) of an item▶ (Finish)

You can select any items from "Site 'i-αppli To' ", "Mail 'i-αppli To' ", "Ir 'i-αppli To' ", "Bar code 'i-αppli To' ", "IC card 'i-αppli To' " or "ToruCa 'i-αppli To' ".

Launching an i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli launch is specified on an i-mode site, you can launch the i-αppli from the site.

- This function is unavailable with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select an item to launch a program▶"YES"

NOTE

<i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site>

◆Unlike ordinary i-αppli programs, some i-αppli programs are immediately launched from i-mode sites.
- This type of program is not stored on a FOMA terminal even if you download it from an i-mode site. This program is not listed even on the Software list screen.
- A message asking whether to start communication may appear while a program is running.
- After a program ends, a message asking whether to store the program may appear.
- Some programs cannot be stored in a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, you can launch the i-αppli program from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.264)▶Select an item to launch a program▶"YES"

NOTE

◆If multiple data are pasted into a mail, the pasted data themselves may not be displayed.

Continued on next page

◆When you reply with a quote or forward an i-mode mail, an i-αppli launch specification can not be quoted. You cannot also quote a launch specification when forwarding a mail using DoCoMo keitai datalink, etc. or Infrared data exchange function.
◆i-αppli programs cannot be launched from i-mode mails in Secret folders.

Launching an i-αppli using the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli when receiving the i-αppli launch signal during Infrared data exchange.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Receive Ir data"▶"Receive"▶Receive the i-αppli launch signal

Launching an i-αppli using the Bar code reader

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the Bar code reader when a scanned bar code includes an i-αppli launch specification.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Bar code reader"▶ Scan a bar code

2 Select an item to launch a program▶"YES"

Launching an i-αppli using the IC card function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the IC card function by holding the FeliCa mark on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit.

- A program does not start up in the following situations:
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When the program to launch is not installed or partly downloaded
- When IC card lock is set, you cannot launch an i-αppli with the IC card function. When you launch an i-αppli with other function than IC card while IC card lock is set, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-αppli.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark " " on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

Launching an i-αppli from ToruCa

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into an acquired ToruCa, you can launch the i-αppli program from the ToruCa.

1 ToruCa display screen (p.309)▶Select an item to launch a program▶"YES"

<Set i-αppli stand-by>

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli program as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen appears, "α" or "dα" appears at the bottom of the screen.

- Only one i-αppli program can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some programs cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶(FUNC)▶"Software setting"▶"Stand-by display"▶"ON"▶(Finish)

NOTE

◆"α" appears for the program set as the standby screen.
◆If a program that communicates is set as the i-αppli standby screen, it may not run correctly due to poor signal status, etc.
◆If you select "OFF" for "Stand-by net" in "Software setting", you may not be able to receive timely information.
◆When the i-αppli standby screen is set, the image set for "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" (p.135) does not appear.
◆Even if the i-αppli standby screen is set, the screen set in "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears when you switch tasks to show the standby screen.
◆If the power is cycled while the i-αppli standby screen is set, a message asking whether to launch the i-αppli standby screen appears.
◆If "Dial lock" (p.161) or "Original lock" (p.167) is set or 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, while the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the screen ends. If "Dial lock" or "Original lock" is released or 2in1 is set to A mode while the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the screen reappears.

Running the i-αppli standby screen

Runs the software set for the i-αppli standby screen.

1 On the i-αppli standby screen▶CLR

The i-αppli starts up and the "α" or "dα" icon at the bottom of the screen changes to the flashing "α" or "dα" icon.



Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen <Deactivate i-αppli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while running an i-αppli

1 While running an i-αppli▶CLR (1 second or longer) or ⏻

Cancel	Cancels the i-αppli standby screen deactivation.
Ended	Quits the i-αppli standby screen without deactivating it and returns to the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminated	Deactivates the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while it is displayed

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-αppli settings"▶"End stand-by display"

2 "Terminate"▶"YES"

■ **To not deactivate the i-αppli standby screen**
▶"End"

NOTE

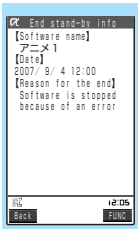
◆If you deactivate the i-αppli standby screen, the image set for "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears on the standby screen.

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurred and the i-αppli standby screen was deactivated, the name of the program which had the error, the time when the error occurred and the reason are logged so that you can check them.

1 MENU▶"i-αPPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"End stand-by info"

The "End stand-by info" screen appears.



End stand-by info

Function menu➡p.303

Function menu (End stand-by info screen)

Copy info	Copies the i-αppli standby screen exit information data.
Delete info	Deletes the i-αppli standby screen exit information data.

NOTE

◆No information is logged if the i-αppli standby screen ended normally.

Organizing an i-αppli

Upgrading an i-αppli <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade a downloaded i-αppli program when the new version is available on a site.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶ (FUNC)▶"Upgrade"▶"YES"

NOTE

◆You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αppli programs that change mail folder names when:
- Mail security is set
- Folder security is set
- Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

Deleting an i-αppli <Delete i-αppli>

Use this procedure to delete programs individually or delete all programs.

1 Software list screen (p.295)▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli program.
Delete selected	**▶Use ↕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple i-αppli programs.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored i-αppli programs.

NOTE

◆If you attempt to delete the program set as the i-αppli standby screen (marked with), the one set to launch automatically (marked with) or the one set as the i-αppli standby screen with the automatic launch function (marked with), the status of the program and a message asking whether to delete the program appear.

◆If you attempt to delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message asking whether to delete the folders for the mail-connected i-αppli appears. Select "NO" to delete only the i-αppli, or "YES" to delete the i-αppli and folders. Even if selecting "YES", you cannot delete the folders when the folders are being used, security is set for the folders or they contain a protected mail.

◆When a mail-connected i-αppli is deleted, a new i-αppli mail received during the selection of an i-αppli to be deleted may also be deleted.

Continued on next page

◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli programs may require you to delete IC card data before deleting the program. If "Delete this" is selected for such programs, the FOMA terminal launches the program following the confirmation screen to delete the IC card data and program. Selecting "Delete selected" or "Delete all" does not launch a program, so delete the IC card data before deleting the program.
◆ Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli having data with a key mark attached in FOMA terminal cannot be deleted until you clear the data with a key mark.
◆ When 2in1 is set to B mode, some i-αppli programs cannot be deleted.

Displaying the i-αppli data stored in the microSD memory card <microSD data>

Use this procedure to show the folder name list of the i-αppli data (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.

1 (MENU)▶"i-αPPLI"▶"microSD data"
The "microSD data list" screen appears.

Function menu (microSD data list screen)

Display info	Shows the information about the i-αppli data (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli data file (microSD).
Delete selected	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(✉) **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple i-αppli data files (microSD).
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the i-αppli data files (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.

NOTE
◆ i-αppli data saved to the microSD memory card (i-αppli data (microSD)) may not be used in other FOMA terminals.
◆ Use "Software info" (p.296) to check that the i-αppli data (i-αppli data (microSD)) will be saved to the microSD memory card.

Data information

You can check the following:

Maker	Who created the i-αppli If there is no information, "None" appears.
Available Software	Name of the i-αppli that can use the microSD memory card If there is no information, "None" appears.
Use saved data	Whether there is a reason the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card If at least one reason is indicated under "Reason", "None" appears. If not, "ON" appears.
Reason	
• **Software restriction**	There is no i-αppli available*
• **UIM restriction**	The FOMA card was not used when the i-αppli was run*
• **Model restriction**	The i-αppli (microSD) was run on other than FOMA N904i*
• **Series restriction**	The i-αppli (microSD) was run on other than the following models* • 904i series

*: If there is no reason the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card, the option is grayed out.

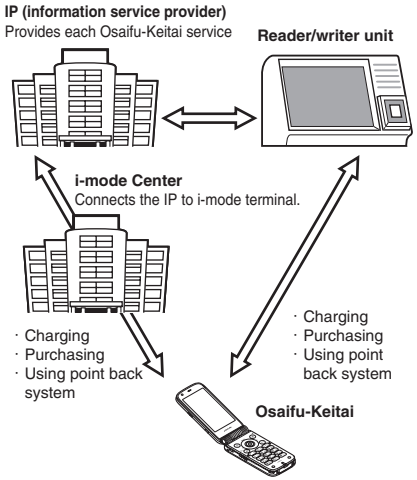
Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? 306
What is iC Transfer Service? 306
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 306
What is ToruCa? ..... ToruCa 307
Acquiring ToruCa ..... Acquire ToruCa 308
Viewing ToruCa ..... ToruCa viewer 309
Making the ToruCa Settings ..... ToruCa settings 311
Locking the IC Card Functions ..... IC card lock 311

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

"Osaifu-Keitai" refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.
FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit.*
Simply hold an Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit in a shop to use your phone as electronic cash to make payments, as an airline ticket or point card. Your FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.
Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards.



* To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting the IC card function.

- The ways to subscribe to or use the Osaifu-Keitai services depend on your IP (information service provider). Check with them directly. For cautions on using the services, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Take notes of the names or contact numbers of the Osaifu-Keitai services. Osaifu-Keitai malfunction, repair, model change, etc., may erase or alter data stored on the IC card. (In case of repair, you will be asked to erase data by yourself.) Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card. The way to erase data stored on the IC card and the warranty in the case of loss or alteration of the data depends on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- Take great care not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. If you have lost your Osaifu-Keitai, check with your IP (information service provider) for information on the Osaifu-Keitai services you have subscribed to. IC card functions can be restricted by Dial lock, Omakase Lock or IC card lock.
→p.161, 311

What is iC Transfer Service?

iC transfer service*1 is a service that allows you to move all IC card data*2 to a new Osaifu-Keitai when replacing your Osaifu-Keitai. Once you move IC card data, you can start using the Osaifu-Keitai services simply by downloading the Osaifu-Keitai iC-appli compatible with your Osaifu-Keitai.
iC transfer service is available at an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
This service is available between FOMA terminals which support iC transfer service*3.

*1: Service charge is required for using iC transfer service (except for some of the services). Furthermore, packet communication charge will be applied for downloading an Osaifu-Keitai iC-appli or performing the related settings.
*2: Some of the Osaifu-Keitai services are not supported by iC transfer service. Data of the unsupported services will be deleted when using the iC transfer service. Use the backup service of the Osaifu-Keitai service or delete the service data beforehand.
*3: 904i series, 903i series and 703i series (except for D703i, P703μ and N703μ)

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read/write IC card data

Launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli allows you to read/write data on the IC card and use useful functions, e.g. charging electronic cash or transportation tickets, or viewing the account balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care not to let others know your security codes and passwords for services.
- Data exchange between the software and the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. When this happens, data that has been exchanged is discarded. Operations to be performed after you finish talking depend on the services you have used:
  - There is an incoming call while an i-αppli is launched
  - If the battery runs out
- When you download or launch an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli for the first time, "Current UIM necessary to use IC card" appears. Subsequently you cannot use the IC card function unless you have inserted the FOMA card that matches the IC card.
  When you use IC card function with another FOMA card (UIM) inserted, the function does not work unless you insert a FOMA card that matches the IC card and delete all Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶"i-αPPLI"▶"Software list"

The "Software list" screen appears.

2 Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is launched.

Viewing Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

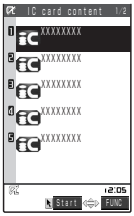
You can view the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"IC card content"

The "IC card content" screen appears.

■ **To launch an application**

▶Select an i-αppli to launch



IC card content

NOTE

- To run an i-αppli that only has the management information, download the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli. →p.294
- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode you cannot launch an i-αppli which uses the mail function.

Function menu (IC card content screen)

See the "Software list" function menu as the options are the same.
→p.295

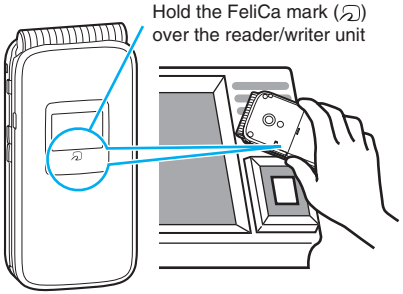
Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Holding the FeliCa mark "" on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit allows you to use the FOMA terminal as electronic cash or as a train ticket. To use this function, there is no need to launch an application.

- While you are talking on the phone, you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark " " over a reader/writer unit to use your desired service

The incoming call lamp and the light light up when the Osaifu-Keitai is used.



NOTE

- Attach the battery pack when using the Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or the battery is low, you still can use IC card functions by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit (cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli). Not using the battery pack for a long period of time or failing to charge the battery when the battery alarm sounds may make the IC card functions unavailable for use when needed, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- Do not subject a FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit. If a reader/writer unit does not recognize the FeliCa mark, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it a little in parallel to the surface of the unit.
- While the IC card lock is set, you may be unable to download, upgrade or uninstall the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
- Holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit may launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

<ToruCa>

What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc.
ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via a mail, Infrared data exchange or the microSD memory card.

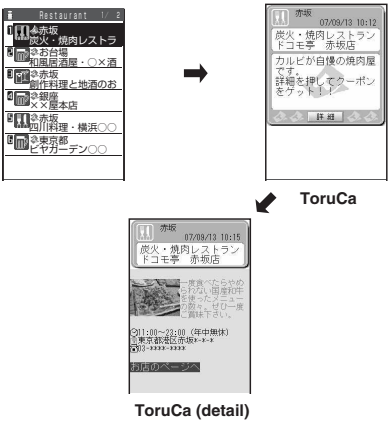
Continued on next page

- Acquired ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" under "LIFE KIT".
- This function is available with a terminal that supports ToruCa. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

ToruCa usage flow



Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer to acquire ToruCa.

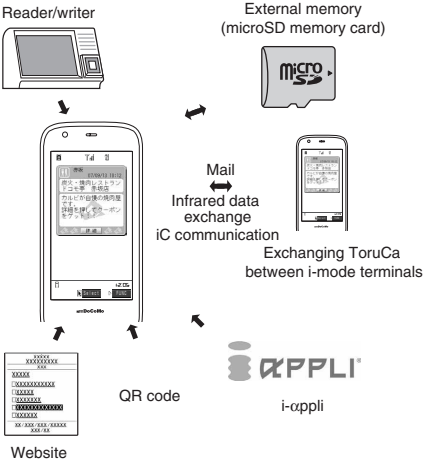


ToruCa

ToruCa (detail)

Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the "詳細" (Detail) button displays the detailed information.

How ToruCa is acquired



NOTE

◆A separate packet communication charge will be applied for downloading ToruCa and ToruCa details from a site.

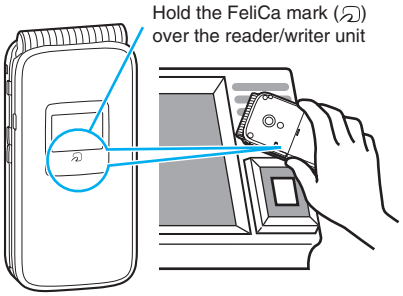
<Acquire ToruCa>

Acquiring ToruCa

Acquiring data via a reader/writer unit

1 Hold the FeliCa mark " " on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

The ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, the light blinks and the acquired ToruCa and ToruCa (detail) are displayed for about 15 seconds.



Hold the FeliCa mark ( ) over the reader/writer unit

NOTE

◆Acquired ToruCa does not appear when another function is running.
◆If the URL of detailed information is included in acquired ToruCa, a message asking whether to acquire the ToruCa (detail) appears.
◆ToruCa acquired via a reader/writer unit is saved to the "ToruCa" folder.
◆Up to 100* ToruCa can be stored. The maximum size of ToruCa that can be stored is 1K bytes each. The maximum size of ToruCa (detail) that can be stored is 100K bytes each.
*: Up to 20 ToruCa can be stored in the "Used ToruCa" folder separately.
◆You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone.
◆The volume of the ToruCa acquisition tone is the same as that specified in "Phone" under "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, the tone sounds at volume "Level 4".
◆The ToruCa acquisition tone does not sound in Manner mode.
◆ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit while Original lock is set.
◆You cannot acquire ToruCa via a reader/writer unit while IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.
◆Setting Dial lock sets IC card lock to "ON" to disable the IC card function. You cannot release IC card lock while Dial lock is set.

<ToruCa viewer>

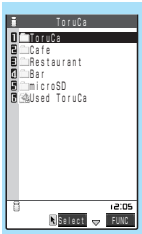
Viewing ToruCa

1 (MENU)▶**"LIFE KIT"**▶**"ToruCa"**

The "ToruCa folder list screen" appears.

2 **Select a folder**▶**Select ToruCa**

The "ToruCa display screen" appears.

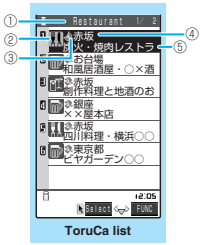


ToruCa folder list

Function menu➡p.309

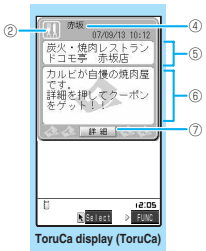
Guide to ToruCa list screen/ ToruCa display screen

ToruCa appears as follows:



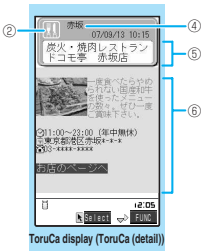
ToruCa list

Function menu➡p.310



ToruCa display (ToruCa)

Function menu➡p.310



ToruCa display (ToruCa (detail))

Function menu➡p.310

① Folder title
② ToruCa category icon
③ ToruCa condition
: Unread
: Read
: Expired
④ Place, etc. (index)
⑤ ToruCa title
⑥ ToruCa contents (You can use the Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To* function.)
*: Only available for ToruCa (detail)
⑦ Select here to display ToruCa (detail).

NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mails or no capacity is available in Draft.
- The Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To function may be unavailable for some ToruCa.
- The"詳細" (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.
- You cannot display the ToruCa display screen for ToruCa stored in the "Used ToruCa" folder.

Function menu (ToruCa folder list screen)

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** You can add up to 20 folders to the memory on a FOMA terminal. A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the microSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the microSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Search all*	**▶"Index" or "Title"▶Enter text to search for▶●**
Filter all*	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria ("Unread", "Read", "Genre"). If you have selected "Genre", specify a genre you prefer.
Display all*	Cancels displaying "Search all" and "Filter all".
iC trans. all*	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data*	
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"**
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Delete all ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

*: Does not appear for a folder in the "microSD" folder.

NOTE

<Add folder>
- A newly created folder appears above the "microSD" folder.

<Edit folder name>
- You cannot change the names of "ToruCa", "microSD" and "Used ToruCa".

<Search all>
- Data stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be filtered.

Continued on next page

<Filter all>
◆When you have selected "Genre", press (✉) (Icon) to switch from the genre list to the category icon display. To return to the genre list, press (✉) (Exit) or CLR.
◆Data stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be filtered.

<Display all>
◆Data stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be filtered.

<iC trans. all> <Send all Ir data>
◆Data stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be sent.

<Delete folder>
◆You cannot delete the "ToruCa", "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders.

<No. of messages>
◆The number of data items stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be displayed.

Function menu (ToruCa list screen)

Move[*1]	Moves ToruCa to another folder.
• **Move this**	▶**Select a folder**▶**"YES"** Moves the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Move selected**	▶**Select a folder**▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(✉)**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Moves the selected ToruCa.
• **Move all**	▶**Select a folder**▶**"YES"** Moves all ToruCa in the folder.
Copy[*1]	
• **Copy this**	▶**Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Select a folder**▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(✉)**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies the selected ToruCa.
• **Copy all**	▶**Select a folder** Copies all ToruCa in the folder.
Search[*1*2]	▶**"Index" or "Title"**▶**Enter text to search for**▶●
Disp all in folder[*1*2*3]	Cancels displaying "Search", "Filter" and "Sort".
Sort[*1*2]	Sorts ToruCa by the specified criteria.
Filter[*1*2]	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria ("Unread", "Read", "Genre"). If you have selected "Genre", specify a genre you prefer.
Compose message[*1*4]	Composes an i-mode mail with the highlighted ToruCa attached.
iC transmission[*1*2]	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data[*1*2]	
Copy to microSD[*1*5]	
• **Copy this**	▶**Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Select a folder**▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(✉)**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies the selected ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**Select a folder**▶**"YES"** Copies all ToruCa in the folder to the microSD memory card.
No. of ToruCa[*1]	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
ToruCa info[*1]	Displays the ToruCa information.
Delete	
• **Delete**	Deletes the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(✉)**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes the selected ToruCa.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all ToruCa in the folder.

*1: Does not appear for ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder.
*2: Does not appear for ToruCa in the "microSD" folder.
*3: "Display all" appears instead when "Search all", "Filter all" or "Display all" works on the ToruCa folder list screen.
*4: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.
*5: "Copy to phone" appears for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card. When "Copy to phone" appears, folders are not to be selected.

NOTE

<Move><Copy>
◆ToruCa cannot be moved or copied to the "microSD" or "Used ToruCa" folder.

<Send Ir data>
◆If ToruCa (detail) exists, a message asking whether to send the detailed information appears.

<No. of ToruCa>
◆The number of data items stored on the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders will not be displayed.

Function menu (ToruCa display screen)

Move	▶**Select a folder** Moves the displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	▶**Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa.
Compose message[*1]	Composes an i-mode mail with the displayed ToruCa attached.
iC transmission[*2]	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data[*2]	
Copy to microSD[*3]	▶**Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
Update[*2*4]	Updates the displayed ToruCa (detail).

Save image[*2*4]	Saves the displayed ToruCa (detail). Select "Normal image" or "Background image".
Add to phonebook[*2]	Adds a phone number or mail address contained in the displayed ToruCa to the phonebook.→p.107
Retry[*2*4]	Plays a Flash movie or animation in the displayed ToruCa (detail) from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed ToruCa.

*1: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.
*2: Does not appear for ToruCa in the "microSD" folder.
*3: "Copy to phone" appears for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card. When "Copy to phone" appears, folders are not to be selected.
*4: Can be selected when ToruCa (detail) appears.

NOTE

◆You may not send mails with attachments, send data using iC communication or Infrared data exchange, copy data to the microSD memory card or update information for some ToruCa.

<Move><Copy>
◆ToruCa cannot be moved or copied to the "microSD" or "Used ToruCa" folder.

<Send Ir data>
◆If ToruCa (detail) exists, a message asking whether to send the detailed information appears.

<Save image>
◆Some images cannot be saved.

<Retry>
◆Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<ToruCa settings>

Making the ToruCa Settings

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"ToruCa settings"▶Select any items

Receive from R/W (default: Accept)	Sets to acquire ToruCa (Accept) or not (Reject) when you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit. If you have selected "Accept", specify whether to check if the acquired ToruCa is duplicated with those stored in the FOMA terminal (Repetition check).
Auto reading setting (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically read an available ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit to use ToruCa. Set "ON" to automatically recognize an available ToruCa to move it to the "Used ToruCa" folder.
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the ToruCa display screen.

NOTE

<Receive from R/W>
◆If you have set "Yes" for Repetition check, you cannot acquire the same ToruCa. To acquire the same ToruCa, set "No". "Yes" is set at the time of purchase.
◆ToruCa stored in the "microSD" or "Used ToruCa" folder or expired ToruCa are not checked.

<Auto reading setting>
◆If you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit with the Auto reading set to "OFF", a message asking whether to use the auto reading function or a message notifying the auto reading function is disabled may appear. Select "YES" to set the function to "ON" when you use ToruCa.
◆This function is invalid for ToruCa in the "microSD" or "Used ToruCa" folder or expired ToruCa.

<IC card lock>

Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting: OFF

Lock the IC card functions in order to prevent other people from using the functions without your consent.

- Turning off the power does not unlock the IC card functions.

Setting/releasing IC card lock

- You can also set or release IC card lock easily by pressing 3 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card lock"▶Enter your security code▶"ON"

IC card lock is set and "IC" appears.



■ To release IC card lock
▶"OFF"
IC card lock is released and "IC" disappears from the screen.

Locking IC card functions when turning the power off <IC lock (power-off)>

Default setting	Maintain

- This function allows you to lock IC card functions to disable your Osaifu-Keitai when the power is turned off.

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card lock"▶Enter your security code▶(i) (FUNC)▶"IC lock (power-off)"▶Select any item

Maintain	Keeps the same IC card lock settings as before the power is turned off.
IC card lock ON	Locks IC card functions regardless of the IC card lock settings.

Using Face authentication to release IC card lock

If you have registered an image for "Face authentication" and selected "IC card lock" for "Function to reset", an authentication of read face data is performed to identify the user.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for "Face authentication" to release IC card lock.
- "Using Face Authentication"→p.174

1 On the standby screen▶3 (1 second or longer)

The "Face scanning" screen appears.

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display



Face scanning

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name ▶"OK"

3 Enter your security code

IC card lock is released and " IC " disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- ◆Selecting (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"IC card lock" also enables you to access IC card lock.
- ◆You cannot set or release IC card lock while on a videophone call.
- ◆Removing the battery pack sets IC card lock automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC card lock automatically.
- ◆Even if the battery runs out and the power is then turned off, the current IC card lock remains unreleased.

GPS Function

What is GPS? 314
Using the GPS Function 315
Checking Your Current Location ..... Position location 315
Setting Position Settings ..... Position settings 316
Using GPS i-αppli ..... GPS i-αppli 317
Providing Current Location Information on Request... Location request 321
Notifying the Current Location Information ..... LCS client 323
Viewing Location History ..... Location history 324

What is GPS?

GPS (Global Positioning System) is a system developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using the positioning radio waves broadcast by the satellites moving around the earth, the system allows you to know your current location (latitude, longitude, etc.). Using the positioning radio waves broadcast by the GPS satellites, the location information on your FOMA terminal (latitude, longitude) is obtained. The obtained information can be used for various services.

GPS function available for various services

■**See or search for the peripheral map or information (Position location→p.315)**
You can send the current location information and display a map, or search for peripheral information.

■**Use GPS i-αppli (Using GSP i-αppli→p.317)**
You can use location information for useful i-αppli. Using location information shows you the roads to the destination or train transfer guide. "ゼンリン地図+ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) stored at the time of purchase is also available to show you the roads.

■**Provide current location information on request (Permit to send loc.→p.321)**
If you are the search object for the location request services (DoCoMo's imadoco-search, etc.), the current location information is provided on request*. "imadoco-search" is a service whereby the requestors can find approximate locations of i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal users on a mobile phone's or PC's map. In addition, "Keitai-Osagashi Service" allows you to find the approximate location of your lost FOMA terminal on a PC's map. For details on "imadoco-search" or "Keitai-Osagashi Service", see the DoCoMo website.
*: If Permit to send loc. (p.321) is set to "ON", location information may be sent to the requestor even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

■**Notify the current location information (LCS client→p.323)**
Show your current location information to other people (service providers supporting location notification).

■**Add location information to an image →p.194**
You can add location information to an image. The added information can be used to view a map or use GPS i-αppli programs.

■**Send information on your current location or favorite place via mail→p.245**
You can encode location information into a URL and paste it into an i-mode message. The recipient can use the URL to view the peripheral map.
* The location information to be sent can be displayed only on i-mode compatible terminals.

■**Add location information to the phonebook→p.108**
You can add obtained location information to the phonebook and use it.

■**Set the notification tone or illumination→p.130**
You can set notification tone and illumination separately for Position location, Location notification and request.

Using location information from each data

- You can add obtained location information to:
  - An image in My picture
  - A phonebook entry
  - My Profile
- The added information can be pasted as URL into an i-mode message or used to access a GPS-compatible i-mode site to view the peripheral map.

Read a Map
- "Location info" - "Read a Map" on the image list and My picture function menus→p.344, 345
- "Read a map" on the Phonebook detail function menu→p.115
- "Read a map" on the My Profile function menu→p.429

Run i-αppli
- "Location info" - "Run i-αppli" on the image list and My picture function menus →p.344, 346
- "Run i-αppli" on the Phonebook detail function menu→p.115
- "Run i-αppli" on the My Profile function menu→p.429

Paste to mail
- "Location info" - "Paste to mail" on the image list and My picture function menus →p.344, 345
- "Paste to mail" on the Phonebook detail function menu→p.115
- "Paste to mail" on the My Profile function menu→p.429

Using the GPS Function

- The GPS function continues to be performed even if a call or mail message is received.
- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage, due to loss of opportunity such as positioning (communicating) result check, resulting from external causes such as failure, malfunction or battery death of the FOMA terminal or blackout.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used to navigate an aircraft, vehicle, person, etc. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage resulting from use of location information.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used as an accurate positioning GPS device. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage arising from positioning error.
- Position location, Location request and Location notification are not available under the following conditions:

Function	Condition
Position location	When "" appears, during a videophone call, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase Lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location notification	When"" appears, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase Lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location request	When"" appears, during positioning, in Self mode, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted

NOTE

◆You may need to subscribe to i-mode.
◆GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Depending on the defense of the United States, the GPS radio waves may be controlled (accuracy deterioration, radio wave interference, etc.).
◆GPS uses radio signals broadcast by satellites. The FOMA terminal cannot or hardly can receive the radio waves under the following conditions:
- In or under a building
- In a tunnel, under the ground or water
- In a bag or box
- Buildings or houses crowded
- In a jungle
- Near a high pressure line
- In a car or train
- Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
- Some interference (person, thing, etc.) around the mobile phone
- A hand covering the display, control keys, microphone, speaker, etc. of the mobile phone

In these cases, the error of the location information may be larger than 300m.
◆The GPS satellites are always moving. Even in the same environment, the signal reception is always varying. A large error may occur, or location may not be positioned.
◆You cannot use GPS function when your FOMA terminal is out of service area (or abroad).

Using location information on a site, ToruCa, etc.

Sending location information

Select a link on a site, ToruCa, etc. that can be used to send location information.

<Example: To send location information to a link destination>

1 Site screen (p.213)▶Select a link that can be used to send location information▶Select any item

Position location	Obtains and sends the current location information.
Location history	Sends location information from a log.
Phonebook	Searches for a phonebook entry and sends location information stored in the entry.

Using location information

Select a link with location information added on a site, ToruCa, etc., and you can use the location information.

<Example: To use location information added to a link destination>

1 Site screen (p.213)▶Select a link with location information added▶Select any item

Run i-αppli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs (that can use location information).
Read a Map	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Paste to mail*	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.

<Position location>

Checking Your Current Location

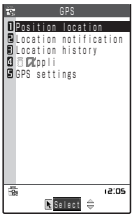
Determine your current location and obtain location information. The obtained location information can be used to view the current location on a map or use GPS i-αppli.

- Packet communications charges do not apply for positioning. However, separate packet communication charges apply, e.g. if you open a map from location information.

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"GPS"

The "GPS menu" screen appears.



GPS menu

2 "Position location"

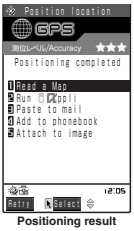
The "positioning result" screen appears.

■ **To cancel positioning**

▶Press (Cancel) or CLR

■ **To use location information retrieved during positioning**

▶Positioning▶● (Use)



Positioning result

Accuracy: ★★★ Almost accurate (error is less than 50m).

Accuracy: ★★☆ Relatively accurate (error is less than 300m).

Accuracy: ★☆☆ Rough (error is larger than 300m).

The Accuracy is only intended as an approximate guide. The actual positioning may vary depending on the ambient signal status, etc.

■ **To retrieve location information**

▶ (Retry)

Location information is retrieved in Quality mode.

3 Select any item

Read a Map[*1]	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-αppli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
Paste to mail[*2]	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	▶**Select an image**▶**"YES"** Adds location information to the image.

*1: After viewing a map, you can use "i-area" to check information on the surroundings. For details on "i-area", see the DoCoMo website.

*2: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.

NOTE

◆Pressing 1 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also obtains location information. In this case, the item set in "Making the GPS button setting" (p.316) is automatically selected.

<Position settings>

Setting Position Settings

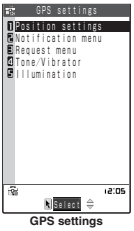
Making the GPS button setting

Default setting: Read a Map

Specify a function to be run automatically when 1 is pressed for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

1 GPS menu screen (p.316)▶"GPS settings"

The "GPS settings" screen appears.



GPS settings

2 "Position settings"▶"GPS button setting"▶Select any item

Read a Map[*1]	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-αppli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
Paste to mail[*2]	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	Adds location information to the image.
Check every position	Performs the same as when launched from the GPS menu screen (p.316).

*1: After viewing a map, you can use "i-area" to check information on the surroundings. For details on "i-area", see the DoCoMo website.

*2: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.

Setting the Positioning mode

Default setting: Standard mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Position settings"▶"Positioning mode"▶Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

<GPS i-αppli>

Using GPS i-αppli

Run a GPS-compatible i-αppli program. The obtained location information can be used.

- If you use a GPS-compatible i-αppli program, the location information is sent to the program's information provider.
- To use the GPS function with a GPS-compatible i-αppli program, set "Location usage setting" to "Yes" for the program.

1 GPS menu screen (p.316)▶"i-αppli"

A list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs appears.

2 Select i-αppli

"Launching an i-αppli"→p.295

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.

ゼンリン地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

If a mail message or site contains location information, ゼンリン地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) (referred to as this software) is available to view the map. In addition, the displayed map is available to check the peripheral information or find the route to the destination. Even if there is no location information, you can use the GPS function to check the current location information or view a map using information such as address or phone number.

- This software is preinstalled at the time of purchase.
- To restore this software after deleting it, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー ". Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213 If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.39

● Functions available free of charge

The following functions other than traffic information are available free of charge* for 90 days from the first launch of this software.
To use all the functions, a subscription is required (pay).
*: Packet communication charges will apply.

■Guide to the table

○: All functions are available.
△: Some of the functions are available.
×: To use the functions, a subscription is required (pay).

Menu	Description	Up to 90 days	After 90 days*1
現在(GPS) (Current location (GPS))	Uses GPS to position the current location or find peripheral information.	○	△*2
周辺検索 (Search around here)	Checks the center and peripheral of the displayed map.	○	△*2*3*4
地図を探す (Find a map)	Finds a map in various methods such as address, phone number, building or category of facilities.	○	△*2*3
ナビをする (Navigate)	Finds and navigates the route to the destination by walk and public transportation or by car.	○*6	△*2*3*5
周辺情報+✉ (Local information)	Registers the information on the displayed location or displays weather information.	○	△*7
登録／履歴 (Register/ History)	Displays the searched or registered location information or routes.	○	×
設定／ヘルプ (Settings/ Help)	Checks the subscription, settings for map and navigation, and usage.	○	○
閉じる (Exit)	Exits the menu.	○	○

*1: A message appears indicating that the available functions are limited the first time this software is started after 90 days.
*2: The map zoom is limited.
*3: The register/history function is unavailable.
*4: A small-window map is not displayed when the peripheral is searched.
*5: The timetable is not displayed. It is not possible to search for a route taking time into account.
*6: VICS information is unavailable. VICS information is delivered in real time for car navigation by Vehicle Information and Communication System Center collecting traffic information nationwide such as traffic jam and regulations.
*7: Location information cannot be registered.

● Useful functions

You can call or send information on an area that was searched before or that you want someone to know.

■Using logs/registered data

1 While running this software, press ✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶"登録／履歴" (Register/History)▶Select any item

履歴地点 (Logged location)	Displays a logged location on the map.
登録地点 (Registered location)	Displays a registered location on the map.
新規登録 (Register new)	Registers a name of the location.
履歴ルート (Logged route)	Searches for a logged route.
登録ルート (Registered route)	Searches for a registered route.
自宅登録 (Register home)	Registers location information on your home.

Continued on next page

■Using or checking location information

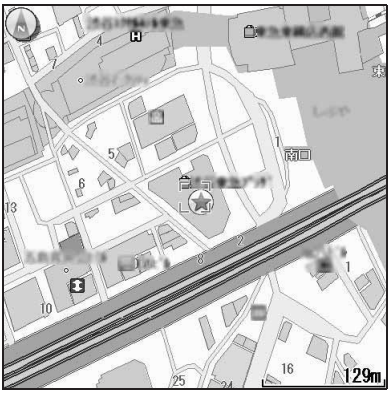
1 While running this software, press (メニュー (Menu))▶"周辺情報+✉" (Local information)▶Select any item

ココに行く (Get here)	Sets the start to search for a route.
ココを登録 (Register here)	Registers a location on the cursor.
ココをメール (Mail here)	Pastes location information into an i-mode message.
タクシーを呼ぶ (Taxi)	Selects a taxi company and makes a call.
緊急通報 (Emergency call)	Selects an emergency contact number and makes a call.
天気予報 (Weather)	Shows the weather forecast of the area. The weekly weather can also be displayed.

● Display and operations for map

- The screens shown here are only intended as an approximate guide and may look different from the actual screens.

■Map display



■Key operations when displaying a map

Control keys	Operation
(メニュー (Menu))	Displays the menu.
●	Displays the quick access menu.
(拡縮 (Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press ⏱ to display a wider range, or ⚲ to display the detailed map. Press (閉じる (Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
✥	Moves on the map in all directions. The Neuropointer is also available.
CLR	Exits the menu or returns to the first search result location (★).
*	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
0	Sets the north of the map to the north.
#	Rotates the map clockwise.

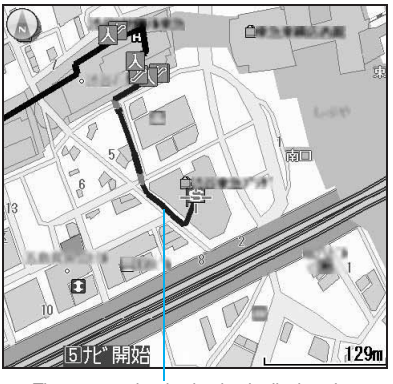
■Key operations when displaying the quick access menu

Control keys	Operation
(現在地(Current location))	Positions the current location.
(地図へ(Map))	Exits the quick access menu.
(自宅へ (Home))	Searches for a route from your home to the current location on the map.
⏱(周辺 (Peripheral))	Checks the center and peripheral of the displayed map.
⚲(ココへ(Here))	Searches for a route from a specified starting location to the center of the displayed map.
(メニュー(Menu))	Displays the menu.
(拡縮(Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press ⏱ to display a wider range, or ⚲ to display the detailed map. Press (閉じる (Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
1(3Dアイコン OFF (3D icon OFF)), (3Dアイコン ON (3D icon ON))	Switches 3D icon display ON/OFF.
2(画面 縦 ⇔横 (Display vert.⇔ hor.))	Switches the map display in vertical/ horizontal.
CLR	Exits the quick access menu.

● Display and operations for Route (walk)/Navigation (walk) display

- The screens shown here are only intended as an approximate guide and may look different from the actual screens.

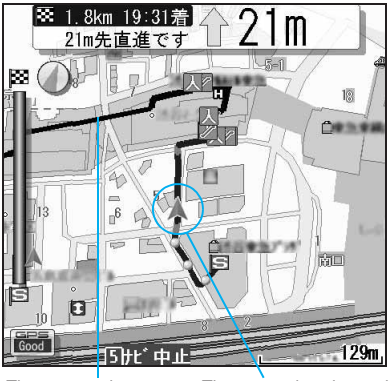
■Route (walk) display



The route to the destination is displayed.

■Navigation (walk) display

The guide along the route is displayed.



The route to the destination is displayed.

The current location and direction is displayed.

■Key operations during navigation

Control keys	Operation
✉(メニュー(Menu))	Displays the menu. →p.320
●	Displays the quick access menu.
▮(拡縮(Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press ⏱ to display a wider range, or ⚲ to display the detailed map. Press ▮ (閉じる(Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
✣	Moves on the map in all directions. The Neuropointer is also available.
CLR	Exits the menu or returns to the original cursor location.
2	Changes to the crossing mode.
5	Stops or starts navigation.
*	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
0	Sets the north of the map to the north.
#	Rotates the map clockwise.

■Key operations when displaying the quick access menu

The same operations are available as in "Display and operations for map" (p.318). However, ✉ (現在地 (Current location)), ▮ (自宅へ (Home)), ⏱ (周辺 (Peripheral)) and ⚲ (ココへ (Here)) are not displayed during navigation.

● Displaying a map from location information in a site or mail message

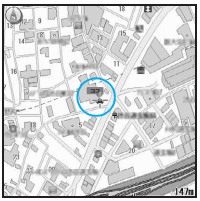
You can view a map from location information displayed in a webpage, mail message, etc.

<Example: To view a map from a site>

1 Select a location information item on a site screen▶"Run i-αppli"▶"ゼンリン地図+ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)▶"YES"



This software is launched and a map appears. "ココ" (here) appears on the map.



● Searching for a route to guide (navigate) you to the destination with sound and screen

Set the start and destination to search for a route. "ナビをする" (Navigate) shows a route by walk, public transportation or vehicles. After the route is found, you will be guided (navigated) to the destination with sound and screen.

1 While running this software▶✉ (Menu)▶"ナビをする" (Navigate)

2 "出発地" (Start)▶Select any item

現在地(GPS) (Current location (GPS))	Positions and sets the current location.
フリーワード検索 (By keyword)	Searches by keyword.
地図の中心 (Center)	Sets the center of the displayed map.
TEL／〒検索 (By number/code)	Searches by phone number or postal code.
住所一覧から (From address list)	Selects an address.
カテゴリから (From category)	Selects a category.
履歴から (From history)	Selects from previously viewed maps.
登録地点から (From registered location)	Selects from location information registered on the FOMA terminal.
自宅 (Home)	Sets location information on your home.
出発地の確認 (Check)	Checks information on the destination.

3 "目的地" (Destination)▶Select any item

Set the start as in Step 2.

4 "時間指定" (Specify time)▶Select any item

現時刻で検索 (Current time)	Checks the route using the current time.
出発時間指定 (Start time)	Sets the start time (date and time) to check the route.
到着時間指定 (Arrival time)	Sets the arrival time (date and time) to check the route.

Continued on next page

終電を利用 (Last train)	Checks the route with the last train of the day.

5 "条件設定" (Condition)▶Select any item▶"上記で設定" (Set above)

乗換条件 (Transfer)	Selects "早い" (Fast), "安い" (Cheap) or "楽々" (Easy) for transfer selection criteria.
徒歩ルート (Walking route)	Selects "おまかせ" (Recommended),"屋根多い" (Many roofs) or "階段少ない" (Less up-and-down) for route selection criteria.
特急利用 (Express)	Selects whether to use express.

6 "ルートを探す" (Find route)

Up to 5 routes are displayed.
If there is another transfer route, an icon indicates the characteristics of the route.

Icon	Meaning
早(Fast)	Takes a short time
安(Cheap)	Costs less
楽(Easy)	Fewer transfers
オススメ (Recommended)	Meets the above three conditions

■ **To register the route**
▶"ルートを登録" (Register route)

7 Select a route▶Select a starting location▶"ナビ" (Navi)/"ナビ (省電力)" (Navi (power-saving))

Navigation starts up to the destination.
Key operations during navigation→p.319

■ **To check the route**
▶"ルート確認" (Check route)

■ **To display the menu during navigation**
▶✉ (Menu)▶Select any item

ルート変更 (Change route)	Sets the cursor location on the map as the destination or halfway point.
モード切替 (Change mode)	Changes the list display of crossings (IC, JCT, etc.).
ナビ設定(Navi settings)	Changes the settings for navigation such as guide, route display or speed.
検索結果へ (Search result)	Displays a list of route search results.
ナビを終了 (Cancel Navigation)	Cancels the navigation and returns to the map display.
トップメニューへ (Top menu)	Cancels the navigation and returns to the menu display.
閉じる (Exit)	Exits the menu.

● Finding a map

You can view a map from keyword, address, phone number, postal code, etc. and search for information on the surroundings.

1 While running this software▶✉ (Menu)▶"地図を探す" (Find a map)▶Select any item

フリーワード検索 (By keyword)	Displays a map searching by keyword.
TEL／〒検索 (By number/code)	Displays a map searching by phone number or postal code.
住所一覧から (From address list)	Selects an address to display a map.
カテゴリから (From category)	Selects a category to display a map.
履歴から(From history)	Displays a previously-viewed map.
登録地点から (From registered location)	Displays a map of location information registered on the FOMA terminal.
OCR検索 (OCR search)	Scans text such as address with the camera, searches by keyword and displays the map.

2 Display a map, then press ✉ (Menu)▶"周辺検索" (Peripheral search)

You can select a category or enter a keyword to find a map. Not only can you find a map, but you can also the address, phone number, etc.

■ **To reserve a restaurant**
▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶"周辺検索" (Peripheral search)▶"ビジネス" (Business)▶"ファミリーレストラン" (Restaurant)▶Select a restaurant from the small-window map▶"詳細" (Details)▶Select "ココに電話" (Dial this number) to call

NOTE

◆In peripheral search, up to approx. 100 point information within radius 10 km centering around the cursor is displayed in near order.

● Using "設定／ヘルプ" (Settings/Help)

1 While running this software▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶"設定／ヘルプ" (Settings/Help)▶ Select any item

利用状況確認 (Check usage status)	Checks if you have subscribed to "ゼンリン地図+ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N).
アプリ設定(Application settings)	
• 地図／メニュー (Map/Menu)	Makes the general settings for the software such as the map display color or Neuropointer.
• ナビ設定 (Navi settings)	Makes the common settings for 徒歩ルート (Walking route) and 車ルート (Route by car) such as the guide, route display or walking speed.
自宅設定 (Set home)	Sets location information of your home.
ご利用案内 (Guide & Help)	Displays the usage, FAQ and usage regulations.

<Location request>

Providing Current Location Information on Request

Default setting: OFF

Set the location information to be provided when it is requested by a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search.

- To use a location request service, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use a location request service, you need to set "Permit to send loc." under "Request menu" (p.321) to "ON". It may be required to make the setting for each service.
- To use a location request service, see the service provider's or DoCoMo's website.

NOTE

◆This function is available only for Number A, regardless of the mode in 2in1. If the other party searches for Number B, the location information is not provided and the other party receives a notification indicating that the search is failed.

Accepting/rejecting location request

Set whether to provide the current location information when it is requested by the other party.

- "Operations when you set the period to accept location request"→p.321

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Request menu"▶"Permit to send loc."▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

ON	Provides location information on request.
OFF	Does not provide location information on request.
Permission schedule*	**▶Select any item▶✉ (Finish)**
• **Start time**	**▶Enter start time**
• **End time**	**▶Enter end time**
• **Repeat**	Selects "1 time", "Daily" or "Select day".
• **Term of validity**	Sets "Start date" and "End date" under "Repeat".

*: Operations when you set the period to accept location request→p.321

NOTE

◆If Permit to send loc. is set to "ON", location information may be sent to the requestor even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

◆If the same time is set to Start time and End time, the following will apply:

- When Term of validity and Repeat are not set:
  Location request is accepted for 24 hours from the set time.
- When Term of validity is set:
  Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after "End date".
- When "Select day" is set under Repeat:
  Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after the specified day.

Operations when you set the period to accept location request

<Example: Current time "2007/9/4 12:05", Start time 14:00, End time 21:00:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2007/9/4 14:00 to 2007/9/4 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	Every day from 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	Every day from 2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to 21:00
	1 time	Every day since 2007/9/4 14:00 to 21:00
Select day	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	Specified day from 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	Specified day from 2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to 21:00
	1 time	Specified day since 2007/9/4 14:00 to 21:00

<Example: Current time "2007/9/4 12:05", Start time 10:00, End time 21:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2007/9/4 12:05 to 2007/9/4 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	Every day from 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 10:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	Every day from 2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 9/4)
	1 time	Every day since 2007/9/4 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 9/4)
Select day	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	Specified day from 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 10:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 9/4)
	1 time	Specified day since 2007/9/4 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 9/4)

Continued on next page

<Example: Current time "2007/9/4 12:05", Start time 14:00, End time 10:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2007/9/4 14:00 to 2007/9/5 10:00
Daily	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	From 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	From 2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to next 10:00
	1 time	After 2007/9/3 14:00 to next 10:00
Select day	Start date: 2007/9/10 End date: 2007/9/16	From 2007/9/10 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2007/8/31 End date: 2007/9/16	From 2007/9/4 to 2007/9/16 14:00 to next 10:00
	1 time	Specified day since 2007/9/4 14:00 to next 10:00

Setting Positioning mode for Request menu

Default setting: Standard mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Request menu"▶"Positioning mode"▶Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

Setting the host

Set the host accessed for "Service settings".

- There is normally no need to change this setting.

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Request menu"▶"Host selection"▶Select a host

■ **To add a host**

▶Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Enter "Host name" and "Host address"▶ (Finish)

■ **To edit a host**

▶Highlight an item to edit, and press (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Edit "Host name" and "Host address"▶ (Finish)

■ **To delete a host**

▶Highlight an item to delete, and press (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

Making Service settings

Access a host set in "Setting the host" (p.322) and make the settings for location request.

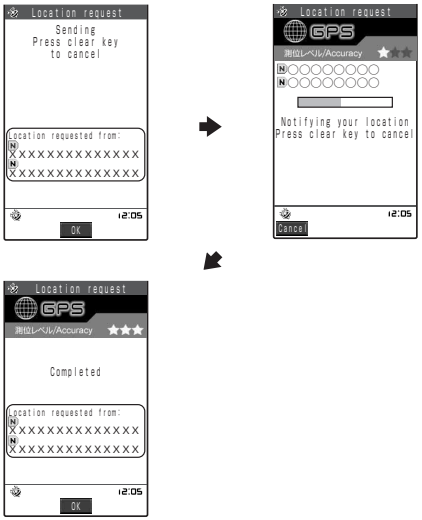
1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Request menu"▶"Service settings"▶Make the settings

For how to make the settings, contact the service provider.

If location information is requested

If location information is requested by the other party, the current location is positioned and the information is provided to the party.

- If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, a confirmation message appears.



NOTE

- (recipient) and (requestor) are displayed under "Location requested from". However, if the requestor is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number or mail address (requestor ID) may be displayed.
- Sent location information may not reach the service provider depending on the radio wave status.
- To cancel providing location information during positioning, press (Cancel). The location information may be sent depending on the timing of cancellation.
- The recipient may not appear on the screen.
- In Public mode (Driving mode), the following will apply:
  - If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, location information is not provided on request.
  - If the settings for each service are set to accept location request, the ring tone, vibrator and illumination do not work but the screen appears and location information is provided.

<LCS client>

Notifying the Current Location Information

Show your current location information to service providers, etc. supporting location notification.

- Charges apply to use of the location notification function.
- To use a service supporting location notification, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use the location notification function, see the service provider's or DoCoMo's website.

NOTE

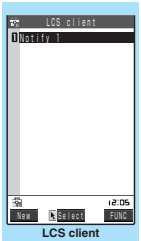
◆This function notifies the location information by Number A, regardless of the mode in 2in1.

Registering a party to notify of location information <Register LCS client>

- Up to 5 clients can be stored.
- No client is stored at the time of purchase.

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Notification menu"▶"Register LCS client"▶"LCS client"

The "LCS client" screen appears.



LCS client

Function menu➡p.323

2 ✉ (New)▶Select any item▶✉ (Finish)

Service client name*1	**▶Enter a client name**
Service client ID*2	**▶Enter a client ID**
Phone number*1	**▶Enter a phone number**
Notify at dialing	**▶Select "Yes", "No" or "Confirm each calling"** Sets whether to notify a registered client of location information when you make a voice/videophone call to the client. If your caller ID is not notified, location information is not notified.

*1: The item can be quoted from a phonebook entry. ▶▮ (FUNC)▶Refer to phonebook▶Select a phonebook entry

*2: Enter an ID specified by the service provider.

Function menu (LCS client screen)

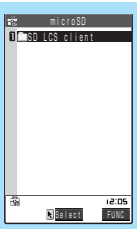
New	"Registering a party to notify of location information"→p.323
Edit	Edits the LCS client.
Add desktop icon	Pastes the LCS client as a desktop icon.
Copy to microSD	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)** Copies the selected LCS client to a microSD memory card.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data	
Add to Phonebook	Adds the client name and phone number of the highlighted LCS client to the phonebook.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted LCS client.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple LCS clients.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered LCS clients.

Registering a client from a microSD memory card

- No client is stored at the time of purchase.

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Notification menu"▶"Register LCS client"▶"microSD"

The "microSD client folder" screen appears.

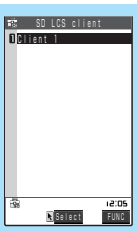


microSD client folder

Function menu➡p.324

2 Select a folder

The "microSD client list" screen appears.



microSD client list

Function menu➡p.324

3 Select a client to add

The "microSD client detail" screen appears.



microSD client detail

Function menu➡p.324

4 ▮ (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"

Function menu (microSD client folder screen)

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name**
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name**
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"**

Function menu (microSD client list screen)

Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted client to another folder.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves clients you select to another folder.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves all clients from the folder to another folder.
Copy	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the highlighted client.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies clients you select.
• **Copy all**	**▶Select a folder** Copies all clients in the folder.
Copy to phone	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)** Copies the selected client to the phone.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted client.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes clients you select.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all clients in the folder.

Function menu (microSD client detail screen)

Move	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves the displayed client to another folder.
Copy	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the displayed client.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies clients you select.
• **Copy all**	**▶Select a folder** Copies all clients in the folder.
Copy to phone	Copies the displayed client to the phone.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the displayed client.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes clients you select.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all clients in the folder.

Selecting a party to notify of location information <Location notification>

1 GPS menu screen (p.316)▶"Location notification"▶Select a client

The current location is positioned and the information is notified.

■ To enter a client directly

▶"Enter client ID"▶Enter a client ID▶● (Set)

NOTE

◆Even if the latitude and longitude are stored in "Location history" (p.324), the information may not have reached the other party depending on the radio wave status.

Setting Positioning mode for Location notification

Default setting: Standard mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.316)▶"Notification menu"▶"Positioning mode"▶Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

<Location history>

Viewing Location History

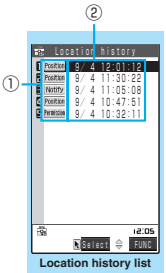
You can use the history of location information to view a map (DoCoMo site), run compatible i-αppli or add information to a still image.

- Up to 50 location logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.

1 GPS menu screen (p.316)▶"Location history"

The "Location history list" screen appears.

■ Guide to the Location history list screen



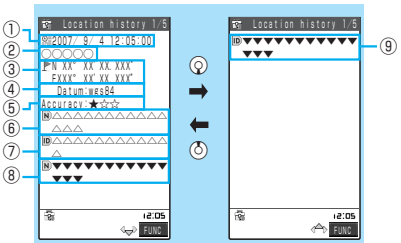
Location history list

Function menu➡p.325

① The function name appears.
Position : Position location
Notify : Location notification
Permission : Location request
② The date and time appear.

■ Guide to the Location history detail screen

- Select an item from the "Location history list" screen (p.325), and the "Location history detail" screen appears.



Location history detail

Function menu➡p.325

① The date and time appear.
② The function name appears.
③ The latitude (N) and longitude (E) of the location are described in degrees, minutes and seconds).
④ wgs84 (World Geodetic System datum*) appears.
⑤ The positioning accuracy appears.
⑥ The client name of the notification or the recipient name of the request appears.
⑦ The client ID of the notification or the recipient ID of the request appears.
⑧ The requestor name of the request appears.
⑨ The requestor ID of the request appears.

*: A reference point used for describing a point on the earth's surface, in latitude and longitude.

NOTE

◆On a location request, the name of the other party who sends the location request is displayed, by searching from the phonebook for each mode of 2in1.
◆The displayed accuracy is only an approximation, which may differ from the actual value.
◆If positioning fails, the log cannot be used for any functions other than "Mail to requestor", "Dialing requestor" and "Delete".
◆Even if the latitude and longitude are displayed in a location history log, the information may not have reached the recipient or requestor depending on the radio wave status.

Function menu (Location history list/detail screen)

Read a Map	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-αppli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
Paste to mail*	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Dialing requestor	Makes a call if the requestor ID is a phone number. "Phone To function"→p.226
Mail to requestor*	Displays the New mail screen with the mail address entered if the requestor ID is a mail address.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	▶**Select an image**▶**"YES"** Adds location information to the image.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted log.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use** ◯ **to select a checkbox (□)**▶ ✉ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple logs.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the logs.

*: When 2in1 is set to B mode, the function is not available.

Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC ..... Full Browser 328
Using Viewer type ..... Viewer type 328
Setting Viewer type ..... Viewer type settings 331
Using Standard type ..... Standard type 331
Setting Standard type ..... Standard type setting 335
Cookie 336
Referer 337

Home URL, bookmark and other data registered in Full Browser are not available for i-mode. Furthermore, the settings performed in Full Browser are invalid for i-mode.

<Full Browser>

Displaying Website Designed for PC

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the Full Browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly. The following two types are available for Full Browser.

- Viewer type: Use the function for zooming in/out a website page or perform the toolbar operations. →p.328
- Standard type: Save images or use the multi window function. →p.331

- Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if large volumes of data is acquired by viewing websites containing many image data or downloading files. For details on packet communication charges and billing plans, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Use Standard type to save an image from an Internet website. →p.334
- You can view a website composed of frames*1. You can also select a frame to display it. →p.333
- You can view TLS/SSL*2-compliant websites in Full Browser.

*1: The "frame" used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2: TLS and SSL are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

<Viewer type>

Using Viewer type

1 (i-mode)▶"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type"

2 Select any item

Home[*1]	Shows a website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark[*2]	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Last URL[*1]	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL[*1*3]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Viewer type settings	"Setting Viewer type" →p.331

*1: You can make settings or operate Viewer type/Standard type separately.

*2: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. →p.219

*3: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. →p.218

■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears

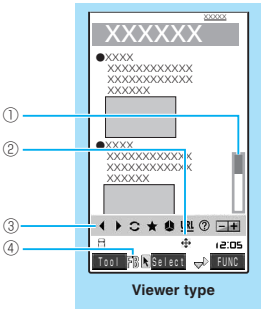
The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use Full Browser in Viewer type is "OFF".

When "OFF" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser in Viewer type appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting. When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "ON" is set for "Access setting" (p.331) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆On a screen to select Full Browser, highlight "Viewer type" and press (i) (FUNC), to select "Add desktop icon".
- ◆It may take time to display some websites.
- ◆You cannot save a page displayed in Full Browser as a screen memo.
- ◆Websites displayed in Viewer type cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆Viewer type supports Flash movies and PDF.
- ◆Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- ◆You cannot view the home URL site in Viewer type even when pressing ▲ on the standby screen.
- ◆When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".

Viewer type screen



Viewer type

Function menu➡p.330

① View position
Indicates the position on the current page. →p.330

② Original layout
Appears when Original layout mode is used.

③ Toolbar
Select items to perform various operations. →p.330

④ FB
Appears during connection to the Internet with Full Browser.

Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout.

- The default mode can be set in Display Mode setting of Viewer type settings (p.331).
- You can switch the current display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout from the toolbar or the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when Full Browser is exit. The same display mode is applied when Viewer type is activated next time.

Original layout

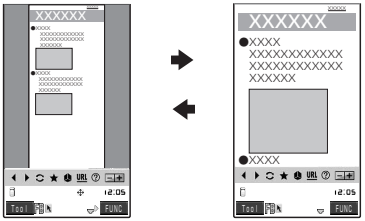
The whole page of a website is displayed on the screen.

Mobile layout

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites. The display can be scrolled horizontally if the display is zoomed.

1 Viewer type screen (p.329)▶(FUNC)▶"Change disp. mode"

The display mode is switched between Original layout and Mobile layout.

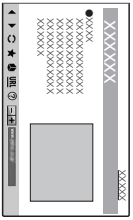

Original layout　Mobile layout

NOTE

◆When you display a website with frames, the page may not be displayed properly. The icon indicating that an SSL page is currently displayed may not appear if some frames in the page are not compatible with SSL. Display →p.28

Using the landscape screen

1 Viewer type screen (p.329)▶(FUNC)▶"Change side mode"



To return to the portrait screen
▶CLR
You can also return to the portrait screen by selecting "Release side mode" from the function menu.

Scrolling

To scroll using

Scrolls to the direction that is pressed. The screen is scrolled continuously in the same direction.

To scroll using ▲ or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK)

Press ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down one screen, or ▲ to scroll up one screen. Furthermore, pressing ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and ▲ for 1 second or longer to jump to the top of the page.

To scroll using the Neuropointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to "▲▼" (depending on the scroll direction).

Continued on next page

■ **To switch to scroll mode**

Select "Scroll mode" in the Viewer type function menu (p.330) to switch to scroll mode. In scroll mode, the screen is scrolled in the direction where ● is slid. Keep moving the cursor to scroll a screen continuously.
In Original layout mode, you can scroll 360 degrees (8 directions).
In Mobile layout mode, you can scroll in 2 directions (up and down).
Scroll mode can be set/released by pressing [ ] .

● Displaying View position

This function enables you to show the entire image of the enlarged page on the lower right side of the Viewer type screen and indicate the position of the currently displayed part in red so that you can check where you are viewing on the website page.

1 Viewer type screen (p.329) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "View pos. display"

2 Use ● to scroll the screen

■ **To cancel the View pos. display**

▶ [7] or [CLR]

● Uploading images

Upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites.

- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

NOTE

- ◆You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- ◆Some websites may not support uploading function.
- ◆You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device outside the FOMA terminal.

● Using the toolbar to display a website

You can display the toolbar on the Viewer type screen and select items to perform various operations.

1 Viewer type screen (p.329) ▶ [*] ▶ Select any item

◀	Goes back one page from the current page.
▶	◀/Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing.
↻	Refreshes the displayed page.
★	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.*
◭	Changes the display mode
URL	Enters a URL using the keyboard to display a website. Use ● key to select characters to enter.
?	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
−+	Zooms in/out the display size of a site.

*: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. →p.219

■ **To switch view/close of the toolbar**

▶ (Tool)

● Using keys to display a website

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
●	"Scrolling" →p.329
[1]	Zooms out the display size of a site.
[3]	Zooms in the display size of a site.
[4]	Goes back one page from the current page.
[5]	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
[6]	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing [4] ("History back").
[7]	"Displaying View position" →p.330
[9]	"Using the landscape screen" →p.329
[0]	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
[*]	Switches the operation on a page in a website and on the tool bar.

Function menu (Viewer type screen)

History back	Goes back one page from the current page.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing "History back".
Add bookmark*1	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark*1	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Enter URL*2	Enters a URL to display the website.
Change side mode, Release side mode	"Using the landscape screen" →p.329
Change disp. mode	"Changing display mode" →p.329
View pos. display/Clear view pos.	"Displaying View position →p.330
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home URL. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home URL.
Scroll mode	"To switch to scroll mode" →p.330

Retry	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Change CHR code[*3]	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Site info	
• **Title**	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, " " appears instead of images.
Referer setting	"Setting Referer"→p.337
Cookie settings	"Setting Cookie"→p.336
Delete Cookies	"Deleting Cookie"→p.336
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.219
*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.218
*3: New communication may be established.

NOTE

<Bookmark>
◆Bookmarks stored in Viewer type and Standard type modes are listed.

<Scroll mode>
◆Pressing on a site screen also switches to/cancels Scroll mode.

<Viewer type settings>

Setting Viewer type

1 (i-mode)▶"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type"▶"Viewer type settings"▶ Select any item

Access setting	Sets whether to use Viewer type.→p.328
Home URL	Sets the home URL.
Scroll	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from "High speed" or "Low speed".
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, " " appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	"Setting Cookie"→p.336
Delete Cookies	"Deleting Cookie"→p.336
Referer setting	"Setting Referer"→p.337
Display Mode setting	Select "Original layout" or "Mobile layout".→p.329
Script setting	▶**"Valid" or "Invalid"** Sets whether to validate JavaScript* when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless "Script setting" is set to "Valid".
Check Viewer type set.	Enables you to check the contents of "Viewer type settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No "last URL" remains after this operation is performed.
Reset Viewer type set.	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Returns the Viewer type settings to default.

*: JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

<Standard type>

Using Standard type

1 (i-mode)▶"Full Browser"▶"Standard type"

2 Select any item

Home[*1]	Shows a website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark[*2]	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Last URL[*1]	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL[*1*3]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Standard type setting	"Setting Standard type→p.335

*1: You can make settings or operate Viewer type/Standard type separately.
*2: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.219
*3: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.218

Continued on next page

■ **When the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears**

The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use Full Browser in Standard type) is "OFF".

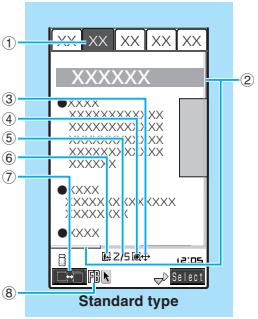
When "OFF" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser in Standard type mode appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "ON" is set for "Access setting" (p.335) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆It may take time to display some websites.
- ◆You cannot save a page displayed in Standard type as a screen memo.
- ◆Websites displayed in Standard type cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆Standard type does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- ◆Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- ◆You cannot view the home URL site in Standard type even when pressing [i] on the standby screen.
- ◆When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".

Standard type screen



Standard type

Function menu➡p.334

① Tab
Indicates the title of the displayed page (if there is no title, the URL is displayed). As many tabs as the number of pages displayed simultaneously appear.

② Scroll bar
Indicates the current location in the displayed page.→p.329

③ Original layout
Appears when Original layout mode is used.
→p.329

④ Selected frame display icon
Indicates that the selected frame (p.333) appears.

⑤ 2/5 Number of activated multi windows
Indicates the order and number of activated windows.→p.333

⑥
"" flashes when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is shown (p.333). "" flashes when another frame is in communication while multiple windows are active (p.333).

⑦ Change window icon
Pressing [✉] ( ) switches pages when multiple websites are open.

⑧ FB
Appears during connection to the Internet in Full Browser mode.

● Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout.

- The default mode can be set in "Display Mode setting" of "Standard type setting" (p.335).
- You can switch the current display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout by using the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when Full Browser is exit. The same display mode is applied the next time Standard type is activated.

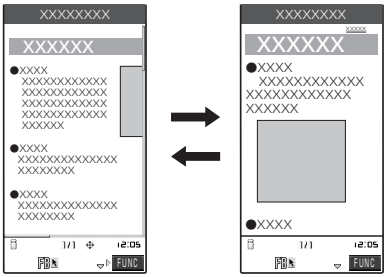
■Original layout

Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high on a PC. You can view websites by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

■Mobile layout

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

1 "Standard type menu screen" (p.332)▶(FUNC)▶"Change disp. mode"



Original layout　　Mobile layout

NOTE

◆When you use "Display Mode setting" (p.335) under "Standard type setting", select the zoom factor of the display size or the font size after selecting the display mode.

Using the landscape screen

You can use the landscape screen to display a page in Original layout mode→p.329

NOTE

◆You cannot change the zoom factor of the display size for the landscape screen. The zoom factor is always 100%.

Scrolling

You can perform operations using , , (MEMO/CHECK), Neuropointer, Scroll mode →p.329

Returning to the previous page/ going to the next page

Press to return to the page previously displayed before the current page. To go back to the original page, press (only in Mobile layout mode).
Use the function menu to return to the previous page or go to the next page in Original layout mode.→p.335

Using multi window

You can open up to 5 websites simultaneously in Standard type mode.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

1 Standard type screen (p.332)▶(FUNC)▶"Open new window"▶Select any item

Bookmark[*1]	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Enter URL[*2]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Display home	Shows the website registered as home URL.
Link	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.219
*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.218

The selected website opens with a new window.

■ To display other pages

Press ( ) to change pages to display. If "Tab setting" is set to "ON", you can also change pages by using the Neuropointer.

■ To close a page

▶Display the page you want to close▶(FUNC)▶"Close window"▶"YES"

NOTE

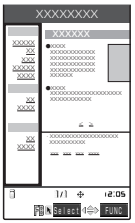
◆You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.
◆You can change websites to display from the function menu.
▶Standard type screen (p.332)▶(FUNC)▶"Change window"▶Select the title of the website
◆Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

Displaying a page composed of frames

You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

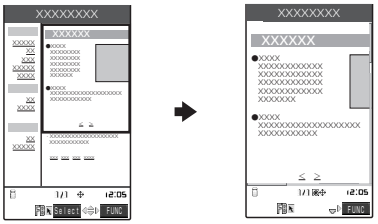
- You can select a frame to display.

1 Viewer type screen (p.329)▶Display a page composed of frames



2 Use to select a frame▶

The selected frame appears. Neuropointer is also available to select frames.



All frames　　Selected frame

■ **To return to the all-frames screen**

▶(i) (FUNC)▶"All frames"

Pressing CLR also returns to the all-frames screen.

NOTE

◆For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

● Displaying a desired portion of the entire page

You can view a desired portion of the entire page in Original layout mode.

1 Standard type screen (p.332)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Zoom"▶ "Page size fitting"

The entire page is displayed with a zoom factor of 60%.

2 Use ⊕ to select a desired portion to display▶●

The selected portion appears in the same size as before "Page size fitting" was selected. Neuropointer is also available to select the desired portion.

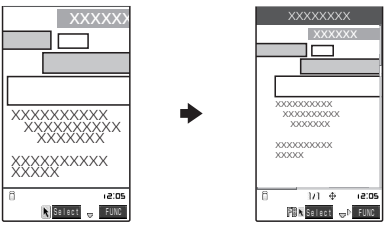
● Uploading images

You can perform the operations as you do on the Viewer type screen. →p.330

● Switching from i-mode to Standard type

Switch to Full Browser to display websites incompatible with i-mode.

1 Website screen displayed in i-mode▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Switch to FB"▶"YES"



Switch to Full Browser to correctly display websites incompatible with i-mode (e.g. websites designed for PC). Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

NOTE

◆Websites displayed in Standard type mode cannot be viewed in i-mode.

◆If the display mode is changed to Standard type during character entry, the entered characters are cleared.

◆The packet communication fee for using Standard type is charged separately from "Pake-Houdai".

● Using keys to display a website

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
⊕	"Scrolling"→p.329
1	Zooms out the display size of a site.*2
2*1	"Displaying a desired portion of the entire page"→p.334
3	Zooms in the display size of a site.*2
4	Goes back one page from the current page.
5	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
6	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing 4 ("History back").
7	"Using multi window"→p.333
8	Closes the displayed window.
9*1	"Using the landscape screen"→p.333
0	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1: Does not appear when the display is Mobile layout.
*2: Changes the font size when the site is displayed in Mobile layout mode.

Function menu (Standard type screen)

Add bookmark*1	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark*1	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Save image	**▶Use ⊕ to select an image, then press ● (SET)▶"YES"▶Select a folder** Saves the image in the displayed page. When selecting an image in Original layout mode, press ⊕ to go down, or ⊕ to go up.
Enter URL*2	Enters a URL to display the website.
Change side mode, Release side mode	"Using the landscape screen"→p.333
Open new window	"Using multi window"→p.333
Close window	Closes the displayed window.
Zoom*3	Selects the zoom factor of display size from "250%", "200%", "150%", "100%", "60%" or "Page size fitting". For "Page size fitting", see "Displaying a desired portion of the entire page"(p.334).
Change window	Switches windows when multiple websites are open.

All frames	Returns to the all frames screen.
Change disp. mode	"Changing display mode"→p.332
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
History back	Goes back one page from the current page.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing "History back".
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home URL. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home URL.
Site info	
• **Title**	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Browser settings	
• **Set image disp.**	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "" appears instead of images.
• **Tab setting**	Sets whether to display the tab. If the tab is displayed, the title of the displayed page is displayed. You can use the tab to switch the websites when multiple websites are open.→p.333
• **Referer setting**	"Setting Referer"→p.337
• **Cookie settings**	"Setting Cookie"→p.336
• **Retry**	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
• **Scroll mode**	"To switch to scroll mode"→p.330
• **Delete Cookies**	"Deleting Cookie"→p.336
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key. You can select any items except those grayed out.

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.219
*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.218
*3: In Mobile layout mode, "Change font size" menu appears instead. Select from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".

NOTE

<Bookmark>
◆Bookmarks stored in Viewer type and Standard type modes are listed.

<Save image>
◆PNG and BMP images are automatically saved in an "OUDXXX" (XXX are numerals) folder under the "OTHER" folder of the microSD memory card.→p.367

<Scroll mode>
◆Pressing [clear] on a site screen also switches to/cancels Scroll mode.

<Standard type setting>

Setting Standard type

1 (i-mode)▶"Full Browser"▶"Standard type"▶"Standard type setting"▶Select any item

Access setting	Sets whether to use Standard type.→p.332
Home URL	Sets the home URL.
Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and whether to display linked pages.
• **Speed**	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from "High speed" or "Low speed".
• **During scroll in focus**	Sets whether to highlight the pages (linked pages) when scrolling a website.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "" appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	"Setting Cookie"→p.336
Delete Cookies	"Deleting Cookie"→p.336
Referer setting	"Setting Referer"→p.337
Display Mode setting	Select "Original layout" or "Mobile layout".→p.332
• **Original layout**	Select the screen display from 250%, 200%, 150%, 100% or 60%.
• **Mobile layout**	Select the font size from Standard, Small, or Large.
Tab setting	Sets whether to display the tab. If the tab is displayed, the title of the displayed page is displayed. You can use the tab to switch the websites when multiple websites are open.→p.333
Script setting	▶**"Valid" or "Invalid"** Sets whether to validate JavaScript* when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless "Script setting" is set to "Valid".
Window Open Guard	▶**"Valid" or "Invalid"** Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript*. Setting to "Valid" does not open a window automatically.
Check std. type set.	Checks the settings specified in "Mail settings".

Continued on next page

Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No "last URL" remains after this operation is performed.
Reset Std. type set.	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Returns the Standard type setting to default.

*: JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Default setting
Valid

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

*: Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service.
If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie.
However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie setting for their correct display and use.

- Viewer type and Standard type can be set individually.

Setting Cookie

1 (i)(i-mode)▶ **"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type/Standard type"▶"Viewer type settings/Standard type setting"▶"Cookie settings"▶Select any item**

Valid	Always validates Cookie. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.
Invalid	Always invalidates Cookie.
Notify (sending)	Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
Notify (receiving)	Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.
Notify (send/recv.)	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

■ **To set Cookie for Standard type**

"Standard type menu screen" (p.335)
▶"Standard type set." ▶ "Cookie settings"

NOTE

- ◆Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- ◆Resetting the settings of Viewer type deletes Cookies for Viewer type, and resetting the settings of Standard type deletes Cookies for Standard type.
- ◆When "Notify" is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) Cookie.

Deleting Cookie

You can delete the Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal.

1 (i)(i-mode)▶ **"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type/Standard type"▶"Viewer type settings/Standard type setting"▶"Delete Cookies"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"**

All the Cookies for Viewer type/Standard type stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

Default setting
Send

You can set whether to send Referer*.

*: Referer is information of source link. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer. However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

- Viewer type and Standard type can be set individually.

Setting Referer

1 (i)(iモード)▶ "Full Browser"▶ "Viewer type/Standard type"▶ "Viewer type settings/Standard type setting"▶"Referer setting"▶Select any item

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

■ **To set Referer for Standard type**

"Standard type menu screen" (p.335) ▶"Standard type set." ▶ "Referer setting"

NOTE

- Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending en "Notify" is set, the message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Mastering still images
Data Box 340
Displaying Still Images ..... My picture 342
Editing Images ..... Edit image 348

Mastering movies
Playing Movies/i-motion ..... i-motion 351
Editing Movies ..... Edit movie 356
Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card ..... Movable contents 357

Mastering Chara-den
What is Chara-den? ..... Chara-den 358

Mastering melodies
Playing Melodies ..... Melody 361

Mastering Kisekae Tool
Using Kisekae Tool ..... Kisekae Tool 364

Mastering memory cards
microSD Memory Card 365
Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card 369
Using the microSD Memory Card ..... SD-PIM 369
Managing the microSD Memory Card 373
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer 373

Mastering various data
Working with Folders and Files 375
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding ..... Forwarding image 378

Transferring data via Infrared data exchange/cable connection
Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/iC Communication/Cable Connection ..... Infrared data exchange/iC communication/OBEX 378
Transferring One Data at a Time 381
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time 382
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 384

Mastering PDF viewer
Viewing PDF Data ..... My document 384

Mastering Document viewer
Viewing Documents ..... Document viewer 389

Printing a still image
Printing Stored Images ..... PictBridge print 392

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the N904i (Phone):
  My picture: 720 including images you shoot
  Music: 100
  i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
  Melody: 400
  My document: 400 PDF documents
  Chara-den: 10 including characters preinstalled at the time of purchase
  Kisekae Tool: 100 including packages preinstalled at the time of purchase
  Up to 100 data, up to 10M bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 2M bytes in Secret under i-motion.*
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody and My document, respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody and My document can be moved to another folder in the same item.

*: An i-motion with 10M bytes size is preinstalled at the time of purchase. Delete the i-motion if you save a movie recorded with the camera or downloaded data.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	All images can be saved here. Images copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Decorate PI*2	JPEG, GIF	Decorate PI that are downloaded, preinstalled at the time of purchase or attached to mail messages or copied to a microSD memory card are saved here.
Auto Decomail		Images downloaded for Auto Decomail are categorized into emotions.
Pre-installed	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret*3	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.
microSD Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations copied from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Decorate PI*2		Decorate PI that are copied form the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC into a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Image Box		GIF animations that are copied from the FOMA terminal or JPEG images/GIF animations that are saved from a PC into a microSD memory card are stored. →p.367
Frame	IFM	Frames stored at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Stamp		Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.

Music

Folder	File format	Content
Playlist	—	Playlists created on the FOMA terminal are saved.
Inbox	3GP	Music data can be saved here.
SD-Audio	SA1	Music data transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
WMA	WMA	
Movable contents	SB2	Music data moved between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card (data stored on a microSD memory card) are saved here.
Pre-installed	3GP	Music data preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Music data can be saved here.

i-motion

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies or i-motion copied/ moved from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Pre-installed		i-motion preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
Secret*3		Stores movies or i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Movies and i-motion can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
microSD SD Video*4	MP4, ASF*5	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal, or movies transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Multimedia *6		
Movable contents	SB1	Movies or i-motion moved between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card (data stored on a microSD memory card) are saved here.
Playlist*7	—	—

Melody

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
Voice announce	—	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
microSD	SMF, MFi	Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
Playlist*7	—	—

My document

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	PDF	PDF documents preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. All PDF documents can be saved here. PDF documents copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	PDF	PDF documents can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
microSD		PDF documents copied from the FOMA terminal or transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.

Chara-den

Folder	File format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

Kisekae Tool

Folder	File format	Content
—	UCM, UCP	Packages stored at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded packages will be saved.

Document viewer

Folder	File format	Content
microSD	Word, Excel, PowerPoint	Documents attached to mail messages or saved from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.

*1: SWF is a file format for Flash movies.
*2: Only Decorate PI (20 dots wide x 20 dots high, file unrestricted) can be saved.
*3: This folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/ i-motion stored at the time of purchase.
*4: Movies or i-motion with video will be saved.
*5: ASF format is play-only.
*6: Voice-only movies or i-motion without video will be saved.
*7: Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

Important

- It is recommended to copy data stored in the Data box to a microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using a microSD memory card or by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be stored on a microSD memory card or transferred to a PC).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to a microSD memory card, or use the DoCoMo keitai datalink to save the data to your PC just in case.

<My picture> MENU 46

Displaying Still Images

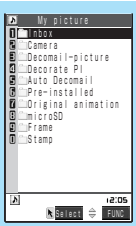
Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites or stored on a microSD memory card appear in My picture under the Data box.

- You cannot display an image as follows:
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots
  - An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots
  - An image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes
  - A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
  - A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 x 480 dots

Progressive JPEG images→p.223

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"My picture"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
The "Secret" folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in My picture→p.340



Folder list

Function menu➡p.375

2 Select a folder

The "Image list (Picture list)" screen appears.
Picture list screen→p.342



Image list

Function menu➡p.344

3 Select an image

The "My picture" screen appears.
Use (Navigation) to view the previous or next image.



My picture

Function menu➡p.345

■ To zoom in an image

▶(Center) ( )
The image is zoomed in.
(Volume Up): Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.
(Volume Down): Zooms out by one step each time you press the key.
To return to the original zoom, press (Center) (Back).
If the image does not fit in the screen, use (Navigation) or Neuropointer to scroll the image.

NOTE

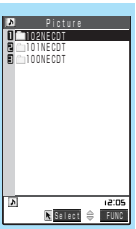
- If an image is displayed in the enlarged size, you cannot use (Navigation) to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- Original animation, GIF animation or Flash movie cannot be enlarged.
- It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or on a microSD memory card.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. If "Step" is set, Flash movies are played at volume "Level 2".

Displaying images stored on a microSD memory card

1 Folder list screen (p.342)▶"microSD"▶"Picture", "Decorate PI" or "Image Box"

The "microSD folder list" screen appears.

2 Select a folder▶Select an image



Example: microSD folder list (Picture)

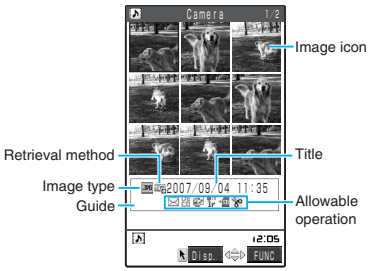
Function menu➡p.376

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

■ Picture list

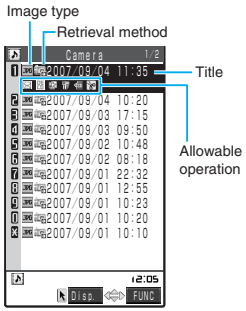
Nine images* stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

*: Four images appear simultaneously as for the images stored on a microSD memory card (Picture).



■ Title list

Titles of 11 images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.



■ Image type icon

Icon	Description
JPG	JPEG image*1
GIF	GIF image*1
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp*1
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion*1*2
(Note in blue)	MP4 i-motion with sound effects*1*2
(Note in orange)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions*2*3
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions*3
*4/*5 (Note in green)	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*6
*4/*5 (Note in blue)	Sound-effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*6
/	i-motion that is not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1: " " is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail, Infrared data exchange or iC communication, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.
*2: " " appears for partly downloaded i-motion.
*3: " " turns to " " for i-motion whose playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.
*4: i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.
*5: i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.
*6: " " appears for i-motion with playback count and playback period restrictions. " " turns to " " when the playback count reaches the limit or the playback period expires.

■ Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, message or ToruCa, or acquired from i-αppli
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from a microSD memory card or PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or Bar code reader
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp
	Data clipped from a PDF document

■ Allowable operation icon

The icon does not appear if the data is stored on a microSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
QVGA	Movies/i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide x 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
VGA	Movies/i-motion of VGA (640 dots wide x 480 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set for a screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Contains location information
Ir	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
SD	Can be copied to a microSD memory card
	Can be edited
*1/*2	i-motion that can be moved to a microSD memory card
	Larger than 10M bytes. Appears only in the microSD folder.

*1: i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.
*2: i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.

Continued on next page

■ Titles and file names

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.
  Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  (Year/Month/Day Time)
  File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx
  Date and time
  (xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)
  * Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the "Auto save set" is set to "OFF", the time when the movie is saved appears.
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

● Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and microSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Viewer settings"▶Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (Image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images"→p.348
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the selected image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. As for microSD memory card (Picture), the title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. **■To set as Stand-by display ▶Select an item▶Select a display mode** **■To set to screens such as Dialing or Calling ▶Select an item** **■To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶Select an item▶Check the image▶●▶"YES"**
Image info	"Image information"→p.346
Location info	
• **Read a Map**	Accesses an i-mode site (location site) via location information contained in the selected image and displays the peripheral map, etc.
• **Paste to mail**[*1]	Pastes location information contained in the selected image into a mail message.
• **Run i-αppli**	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
• **Add to Phonebook**	Adds location information contained in the selected image to a phonebook entry.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the selected image.
• **From loc. history**	Adds location information picked up from the location history to the selected image.
• **Loc. info detail**	Checks location information contained in the selected image.
• **Delete loc. info**	Deletes location information contained in the selected image.
Compose message[*1]	
• **Attach image**	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.347
• **Insert image**	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.347
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Copy to microSD	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card"→p.376
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to a phonebook entry.→p.107
Edit file name	**▶Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the selected image. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected image.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

Move	"Moving data to another folder" →p.376
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a microSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	"Making a composite image out of 4 images" →p.347
PictBridge print	"Printing Stored Images" →p.392
Store in Center	"Saving images to the Data Security Center" →p.346
Delete	"Deleting data" →p.377
Keep in secret*2	"Hiding Various Data" →p.164
Copy to phone*3	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" →p.377
DPOF setting*3	"Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card" →p.394
Copy*3	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card" →p.377

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*2: The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. →p.164
*3: The options appear only for images stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit title>
◆You may be unable to edit a title if there is little capacity available on the microSD memory card.
◆You cannot edit the titles of images stored at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>
◆Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or user-created folders can be set to the following screens:
- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record VP message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set for the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.
◆You cannot set an image for the screens if:
- The width is larger than 854 dots or the height is larger than 854 dots
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes (except Stand-by display and Wake-up display)

◆Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
◆Some images cannot be set for screens.

<Add image to PB>
◆You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and whose width or height is 854 dots or smaller.
◆You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>
◆You cannot edit the file name of an image if it is:
- Stored at the time of purchase
- A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
- Not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>
◆You cannot restrict an image if it is:
- Neither JPEG nor GIF
- A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation. The capacity in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts images in the following order:
①Images downloaded or acquired via i-αppli or ToruCa
②Images shot with the camera
③Images copied from a microSD memory card, etc. or acquired via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
④Chara-den shots
⑤Images clipped out of PDF documents
⑥Images stored at the time of purchase
* The order may vary depending on the folder.

Function menu (My picture screen)

● The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images" →p.348
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. **■To set as Stand-by display ▶Select an item▶Select a display mode** **■To set to screens such as Dialing or Calling ▶Select an item** **■To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶Select an item▶Check the image▶●▶"YES"**
Image info	"Image information" →p.346
Location info	
• **Read a Map**	Accesses an i-mode site (location site) via location information contained in the displayed image and displays the peripheral map, etc.
• **Paste to mail*1**	Pastes location information contained in the image into a mail message.

Continued on next page

• **Run i-αppli**	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
• **Add to Phonebook**	Adds location information contained in the displayed image to a phonebook entry.
• **From position loc.**	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
• **From loc. history**	Adds location information picked up from the location history to the image.
• **Loc. info detail**	Checks location information contained in the displayed image.
• **Delete loc. info**	Deletes location information contained in the displayed image.
Compose message[*1]	
• **Attach image**	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.347
• **Insert image**	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.347
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the indicator display area (240 dots wide x 427 dots high or 480 dots wide x 854 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Copy to microSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed image.
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to a phonebook entry.→p.107
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
PictBridge print	"Printing Stored Images"→p.392
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.
Copy to phone[*2]	Copies the displayed image.
DPOF setting[*2]	"Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card"→p.394

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*2: The options appear only for images stored on a microSD memory card.

● Saving images to the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

Save images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail and user-created folders under "My picture" to DoCoMo's Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service→p.123, 181

1 Image list screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Store in Center"

2 Use to select images▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Enter your security code▶"YES"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

◆You cannot save an image if the size exceeds 100K bytes, it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or it is a Decomail-picture or Decorate PI stored at the time of purchase.

■ Retrieving images

Images stored at the Data Security Center can be retrieved to the FOMA terminal. To retrieve, connect to i-mode. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Display size	The file display size (wide x high in dots) The format of Flash movies does not appear.
Source	From where the file was acquired
Move to microSD[*1]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Move to phone[*2]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Set as display[*1]	Where the image is set When no image is set, "No set" appears.
DPOF setting[*3]	
• **Prints**	The specified number of prints When it is not set, "No set" appears. When 100 or higher is specified, "＊＊" appears.
• **Date**	Whether or not the date is specified

*1: The option appears only for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The option appears only for images stored on a microSD memory card.
*3: The option appears only for images stored on a microSD memory card (Picture).

Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.342)▶(FUNC)▶"Compose message"▶"Attach image"

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide x 320 dots high or 320 dots wide x 240 dots high
▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

2 Compose an i-mode message

Creating and sending an i-mode message→p.243

NOTE

◆If an image contains location information, a message appears asking whether to paste the information into the message.
Select "YES" to paste the URL of the information into the message.
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft
- A Flash movie is to be attached
- The image is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

Composing a Deco-mail message

- If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.342)▶(FUNC)▶"Compose message"▶"Insert image"

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide x 96 dots high or 96 dots wide x 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message
▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*

*: If the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message

Composing and sending a Deco-mail message →p.247

NOTE

◆If an image contains location information, a message appears asking whether to paste the information into the message.
Select "YES" to paste the URL of the information into the message.
◆You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft
- The image is GIF whose size exceeds 90K bytes
- A Flash movie is to be attached
- The image is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

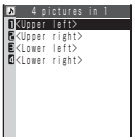
Making a composite image out of 4 images

- You cannot set an image larger than 640 dots wide x 480 dots high or 480 dots wide x 640 dots high.

1 Image list screen (p.342)▶(FUNC)▶"Composite image"

2 Select a position▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat to select four images in total

■ To cancel a specified image
▶Select an image to cancel▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



3 (Finish)▶●

■ To retry creating a composite image
▶(Cancel)

NOTE

◆The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
◆Four images are composed without changing the aspect ratio of width and height. The original images are not resized.
◆Pressing (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image, though cannot be viewed in the actual size.

Creating animations <Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

- You can create up to 20 animations.

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"My picture"▶"Original animation"

The "Original animation list" screen appears.



Original animation list

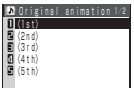
Function menu➡p.348

2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat to select images

■ **To cancel a specified image**

▶Select a frame to cancel▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



4 (Finish)

NOTE

◆Pressing (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image.

◆Only frames with an image specified are played in order.

◆You can set a JPEG image or picture whose size is 854 dots wide x 854 dots high or smaller to an original animation.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when "<New>" is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).
Set as display	▶**Select an item** Sets the highlighted original animation for the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. When no animation is set, "No set" appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An animation can be set for the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Wake-up display
- Dialing
- Calling
- V.phone dialing
- V.phone calling
- Mail sending
- Mail receiving
- Checking

Playing an original animation

1 **Original animation list screen (p.348)▶Select an original animation**

The "Original animation playback" screen appears.

If there are two or more original animations, use to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback

Function menu➡p.348

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

Set as display	▶**Select an item** Sets the animation being played for the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the indicator display area (240 dots wide x 427 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays an animation in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an animation to the display size.
Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An animation can be set for the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Wake-up display
- Dialing
- Calling
- V.phone dialing
- V.phone calling
- Mail sending
- Mail receiving
- Checking

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

● The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image.→p.350	Up to 480 dots wide x 854 dots high*1
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image.→p.349	Up to 854 dots wide x 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide x 854 dots high

Method	Size of editable file
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image. →p.350	2,304 dots wide x 1,728 dots high*2 1,728 dots wide x 2,304 dots high*2 2,048 dots wide x 1,536 dots high*2 1,536 dots wide x 2,048 dots high*2 1,616 dots wide x 1,212 dots high*2 1,212 dots wide x 1,616 dots high*2 1,280 dots wide x 960 dots high*2 960 dots wide x 1,280 dots high*2 Up to 854 dots wide x 480 dots high*3 Up to 480 dots wide x 854 dots high*3
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image. →p.350	
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size. →p.351	
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness. →p.349	
Rotate • Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90° or 180°. →p.349	
Change size • Resizes an image. →p.349	
Correct backlight • Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight. →p.349	Up to 854 dots wide x 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide x 854 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Corrects the skin parts. →p.349	

*1: You can frame an image only if the size is 480 x 854, 480 x 640, 352 x 288, 288 x 352, 240 x 320, 320 x 240, 240 x 427, 427 x 240, 176 x 144, 144 x 176, 128 x 96 or 96 x 128 (dots wide x dots high).
*2: An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide x 480 dots high or 480 dots wide x 640 dots high.
*3: Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images →p.343
- When "Edit image" is selected from the image checking function menu, only "Frame", "Retouch", "Correct backlight" and "Refresh skin tone" are available.

1 My picture screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"

The Edit image function menu (p.349) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image▶●

The "Edit image" screen appears. To edit further, press (FUNC) to select a method.



Edit Image

Function menu➡p.349

4 ●▶"YES" or "NO"

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image.
Selecting "NO" saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

◆Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
◆Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	"Adding frames" →p.350
Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• **Sharp**	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• **Blur**	Softens the outline of an image.
• **Sepia**	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• **Emboss**	Impresses an image in relief.
• **Negative**	Makes a negative image.
• **Horizontal flip**	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	"Pasting marker stamps" →p.350
Character stamp	"Pasting character stamps" →p.350
Trim away	"Trimming" →p.351
Brightness	**▶Use to adjust the brightness▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "-2 to (+-)0 to +2".
Rotate*1	Rotates an image. Select "90° to right", "90° to left" or "180°".
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select "VGA (640 x 480)", "CIF (352 x 288)", "QVGA (320 x 240)", "QCIF (176 x 144)", "SubQCIF (128 x 96)", "Screen (480 x 854)", "VGA V. (480 x 640)", "Screen (240 x 427)", "QVGA V. (240 x 320)", "CIF V. (288 x 352)", "QCIF V. (144 x 176)" or "SubQCIF V. (96 x 128)".*2
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part caused by the backlight clear.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message*3	"Composing a message with an image attached" →p.347
Save	Saves the edited image.

Continued on next page

*1: Rotating may change the aspect ratio.
*2: Dots wide x dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.
*3: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

Adding frames

- You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.493).

1 My picture screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Frame"▶Select a frame

The image appears in the selected frame.
Use to try another frame.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶ (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶ (FUNC)▶"Cancel"

NOTE

- ◆The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
- ◆If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

- You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
- You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Marker stamp"▶Select a marker stamp

■ **To edit a marker stamp**
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp▶

Use or Neuropointer to position the marker stamp.

■ **To use another marker stamp**
▶ (Add)▶Repeat Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

- ◆You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide x 240 dots high or smaller. Stamps of other sizes are regarded as GIF images.
- ◆You can repeatedly enlarge and reduce a marker stamp.
- ◆A marker stamp cannot be larger than the image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Font size: Standard size

- A character stamp can contain up to 3 to 15 double-byte or 6 to 30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

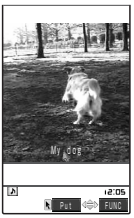
1 My picture screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Character stamp"▶Enter text

■ **To edit a character stamp**
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Character input	**▶Enter text** Reenters text.
Character color	**▶Use to select a color** Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Font	Selects "Gothic style" or "Pop style" as the font setting.
Font size	Selects "Enlargement size", "Standard size" or "Reduction size" as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp▶

Use or Neuropointer to position the character stamp.



NOTE

◆The font thickness is specified in the "Font" setting.

Trimming

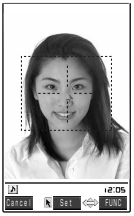
1 My picture screen (p.342)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Trim away"

Select "VGA (640 x 480)", "CIF (352 x 288)", "QVGA (320 x 240)", "QCIF (176 x 144)", "SubQCIF (128 x 96)", "VGA V. (480 x 640)", "Screen (240 x 427)", "QVGA V. (240 x 320)", "CIF V. (288 x 352)", "QCIF V. (144 x 176)", "SubQCIF V. (96 x 128)", "Menu icon (64 x 80)" or "Chat (80 x 80)".*

*: Dots wide x dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip▶●

Use ✣ or Neuropointer to position the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on a microSD memory card and i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of VGA (640 x 480) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal →p.234
- Using "Set repeat play", after starting playback of a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded.→p.355

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"i-motion"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
The "Secret" folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in the i-motion folder →p.341



Folder list

Function menu➡p.375

2 Select a folder

The "Movie list" screen (Preview) appears.
Movie list screen→p.352



Movie list (Preview)

Function menu➡p.352

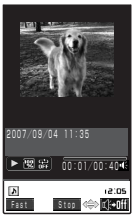
■ For partly downloaded i-motion

A message asking whether to download the rest of the data appears. You cannot play the i-motion unless you download the rest of the data.

- Selecting "YES" starts downloading of the rest of the data.
- Selecting "NO" returns to the movie list screen.

3 Select a movie

The "i-motion" screen appears to play the movie.
Operation during playback →p.354



i-motion (high)

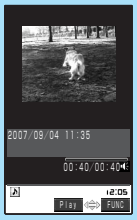
■ If the message "Play continue? YES/NO" appears

- Selecting "YES" plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting "NO" plays the movie from the beginning.



i-motion (wide)

When playback ends, the "i-motion stopped" screen appears.



i-motion stopped

Function menu➡p.355

NOTE

◆Video or sound of a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
◆A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N904i.
◆A movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time in the following cases. It may not be played from the exact point.
- You receive a voice call, etc. during playback
- Playback is stopped by pressing CLR or ⏻
◆For some i-motions, you can also select a chapter to play.

Continued on next page

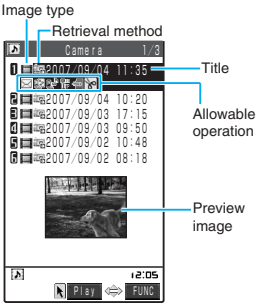
◆When you play an i-motion for the first time, a message asking whether to play i-motion in full screen mode appears. If you select "YES", the i-motion is enlarged to the size of the screen and if you select "NO", it is played in the original size.

Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings→p.343
- Titles and file names→p.344

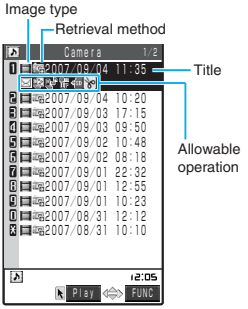
■ Preview

The screen shows 6 movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie. A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice).



■ Title list

Titles of 11 movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.



Function menu (Movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion[*1]	"Editing Movies"→p.356
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted movie. ■**Inbox, Camera, User-created folders** The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. ■**microSD, Movable contents folders** The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Select ring tone[*2]	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone.→p.126
Stand-by display[*2]	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen.→p.137
i-motion info	"i-motion information"→p.353
Compose message[*3*4]	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached.
Touch to send data[*1]	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data[*1]	
Copy to microSD[*1]	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card"→p.376
Move to microSD[*1]	"Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card"→p.357
Move	"Moving data to another folder"→p.376
Add desktop icon[*1]	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Edit file name[*1]	▶**Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted movie. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction[*1]	
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a microSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort[*1]	Sorts movies by specified criteria.

List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
• **Title**[*1]	Changes to the title list.
• **Title+image**[*1] (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Name**[*5*6]	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
• **Name+image**[*5*6] (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Title, File name**[*5]	Switches between File name and Title.
Delete	"Deleting data"→p.377
Keep in secret[*7]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.164
Copy to phone[*5]	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.377
Move to phone[*8]	"Moving i-motion stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.357
Copy[*5]	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card"→p.377

*1: The options only appear for movies stored in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The options only appear for movies or i-motion stored in the Movable contents folder or in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*3: The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored in the microSD folder or in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*4: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*5: The options only appear for movies or i-motion stored in the microSD memory card.
*6: The name is either file name or title.
*7: The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.
*8: The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored in the Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>
◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
- The movie or i-motion contains no sound
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie or i-motion contains ticker

◆A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
◆If the size is larger than QVGA (320 x 240) and smaller than VGA (640 x 480) or smaller, it cannot be set as a ring tone.
◆If a movie larger than VGA (640 x 480) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.
◆A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.

<Stand-by display>
◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion for the standby screen when:
- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 x 240)

◆Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
◆You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Compose message>
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- It is a movie of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
- The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation. The capacity in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
①i-motion downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Movies shot with the built-in camera
③Movies copied from a microSD memory card or acquired via Infrared data exchange or Touch to send data
④Chara-den movies

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide x high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Description	The file description If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"

Continued on next page

Replay restriction	
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count
• If there are period restrictions	Date of play period
• If there are span restrictions	"Playable date ~ Date of play span"
• If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted"
Video	"Included"/"Not included"/ "Unplayable" for video
Audio	Audio information "AMR"/"AAC"/"Not included"/"Playable"/"Unplayable (MP4)"/"Unplayable (ASF)" /Enhanced aacPlus/HE-AAC
Text	"Included"/"Not included"/ "Unplayable" for text
Moved to microSD[*1]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to a microSD memory card.[*2] "Yes (Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Moved to phone[*3]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone). "Yes (Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Ring tone[*4]	Whether a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable" When the i-motion is set as a ring tone, it is shown where the i-motion is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is "Available" or "Unavailable" When the i-motion is set to a receive display, it is shown where the i-motion is set.

*1: The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: If the i-motion is launched from a running i-αppli, the indicated information is only intended as an approximate guide.
*3: The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on a microSD memory card.
*4: "Unavailable" always appears for movies or i-motion stored in the Movable contents folder although it may be set as a ring tone.

Operation during i-motion playback

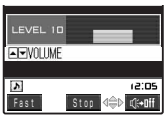
You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control key	Operation
●	Pauses/resumes playback
○(▲), ○(▼)(MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume
○	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion[*1*2]
✉	Winds forward[*2]
ⓘ	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio)
○ (1 second or longer)	Skips backward[*3]
○ (1 second or longer)	Skips forward[*3]
● to pause playback, then ✉	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)[*2]
● to pause playback, then "Slow" from the function menu	Plays slow[*2]
CLR	Ends

*1: You cannot operate these if you play it from the data acquisition screen (p.234).
*2: The operations are unavailable for a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is played during downloading.
*3: The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

NOTE

◆The volume for i-motion is set to "Level 10" at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between "Level 0" and "Level 20", and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.
◆The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
◆Seek (skip back/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or paused.
◆Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/ forward).
◆Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:
- A streaming-type i-motion is played
- The i-motion can be played during downloading
- There are no seek points in the i-motion
- The interval between seek points is too long
- A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
- The i-motion is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data

◆Tickers are not shown during seeking (skip backward/ forward) or during frame advance.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.226) if:
  - An underlined phone number, mail address or URL appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
  - A phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running ticker then you select "Select link" from the function menu

- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.
- Adding information to phonebook
  "Adding Information to the Phonebook"→p.107



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	▶▶**Select a point where playback is to start**▶● Starts playback from the specified point.
Chapter list	Displays the chapter list. If you select a chapter, the selected chapter will be played.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.226) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running ticker.
Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies"→p.356
Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached.
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone.
Stand-by display	Sets the i-motion being played for the standby screen.
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play i-motion programs continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select "ON" (play repeatedly) or "OFF".
i-motion info	"i-motion information"→p.353
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed i-motion.
Copy to phone*2	Copies the displayed i-motion.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Screen setting	
• **Normal screen mode** (default)	Plays the i-motion in the actual size.
• **Full screen mode**	Enlarges the i-motion to the display size to play on the landscape screen.
Set image disp.	
• **Normal** (default)	Plays the i-motion in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges the i-motion to the display size.
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*2: The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Slow>
◆An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
◆You cannot play slow a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>
◆An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
◆You cannot play fast a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>
◆You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion programs.

<Chapter list>
◆A Chapter list cannot be displayed for an i-motion that does not have any chapter information.

<Compose message>
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- It is a movie of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
- The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

Continued on next page

<Select ring tone>

◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
- The movie or i-motion contains no sound
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie or i-motion contains ticker

◆A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

◆If the size is larger than QVGA (320 x 240) and smaller than VGA (640 x 480), it cannot be set as a ring tone.

◆If a movie larger than VGA (640 x 480) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.

◆A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.

<Stand-by display>

◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion for the standby screen when:
- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 x 240)

◆Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.

◆You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>

◆The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing an i-motion.

◆If Set repeat play is set to "ON", data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from an i-motion.

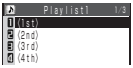
◆If you attempt to play an i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

● Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

You can select and add i-motion programs or movies to play consecutively. Up to 25 i-motion programs or movies can be added in a single folder. There are 5 folders from Playlist1 to 5.

1 Folder list screen (p.351)▶Select "Playlist"▶Highlight a folder to register and press (FUNC)▶"Edit playlist"▶Select No. for the movie or i-motion▶Select a folder▶Select a movie or i-motion▶Repeat steps to add

■ To release an added movie



▶Select a movie to release▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen▶"YES"

2 (Finish)

The i-motion Playlist folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

◆Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

◆i-motion or movie data with the size of up to approximately 2M bytes can be saved from microSD memory card.

Function menu (program folder list screen)

Edit playlist	Starts editing the playlist. You can edit a playlist which is already set.
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

<Edit movie>

Editing Movies

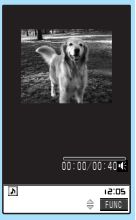
- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing a movie.
- Editable movies→p.343

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, user-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.351)▶(FUNC)▶"Edit i-motion"

The "Edit movie" screen appears.

2 (FUNC)▶Select an editing method →p.356



Edit movie

Function menu➡p.356

NOTE

◆Editing a movie may impair the movie quality.

◆While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call, fold the FOMA terminal or the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.

◆The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (Edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	"Clipping a part of a movie"→p.357
Compose message*	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached.
File restriction	
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft.

Clipping a part of a movie

1 Edit movie screen (p.356)▶ (FUNC)▶"Trim i-motion"▶ (Start)

Clipping starts.

■ **To start clipping from your desired frame**

▶●▶Press ● when you want to start clipping▶ (Start)

2 Press ● when you want to finish clipping▶ (End)

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

■ **To check the clipped section again**

▶ (Play)

3 ●▶●▶"YES"

NOTE

◆The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.

◆A movie whose size is larger than QCIF (176 x 144) cannot be clipped.

<Movable contents>

Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card

● Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction. In addition, data being moved may be deleted.

Moving i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Move movable i-motion programs with copyrights to a microSD memory card. Moved i-motion programs are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.341) under i-motion.

1 Movie list screen (p.351)▶ (FUNC)▶"Move to microSD"▶ Select any item

Move this	**▶Select the destination folder▶●** Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶●▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves multiple i-motion programs you select.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶●▶"YES"** Moves all movable i-motion programs in the folder.

NOTE

◆An i-motion whose Replay restriction has expired or that is partly downloaded cannot be moved to a microSD memory card.

◆See "Allowable operation icon" (p.343) to check whether the i-motion can be moved.

◆If you press (Quit) during moving to a microSD memory card, the operation may not be canceled depending on when (Quit) is pressed.

Moving i-motion stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move i-motion programs stored in the "Movable contents" folder under i-motion (p.341) to the FOMA terminal.

● Moved i-motion programs are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

1 Folder list screen (p.351)▶"Movable contents"▶Select a folder▶●

The "movie list" screen (p.351) appears.

2 (FUNC)▶"Move to phone"▶ Select any item

Move this	Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves multiple i-motion programs you select.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Moves all movable i-motion programs in the folder.

NOTE

◆An i-motion whose Replay restriction has expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.

◆See "Image type icon" (p.343) to check whether the i-motion can be moved.

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a videophone call.
You can check actions available during a videophone call, or use a still image or movie as a character.

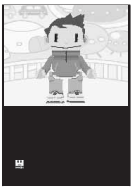
Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image: Dimo

- Downloading Chara-den characters→p.225
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:



Dimo



ビーンズ (Beans)



サンデー(Sunday)

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"Chara-den"

The "Chara-den list" screen appears.
Guide to the Chara-den list →p.358

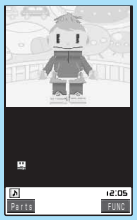


Chara-den list

Function menu➡p.359

2 Select a Chara-den character

The "Chara-den player" screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.358



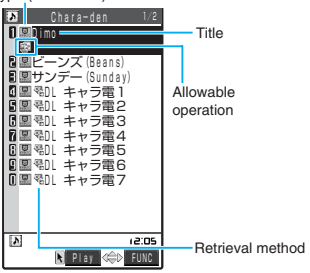
Chara-den player

Function menu➡p.359

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings→p.343
- Titles and file names→p.344

Image type (Chara-den)



Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.358)▶Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list

▶(*)

Actions shown in the list depend on the character type.
No. such as "1" or "#1" appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.



■ To check the action details

▶Highlight an action▶(Mail) (Detail)▶Check the details▶(Clear) (Exit)

■ **To change the action mode**

▶ (Parts) or (Whole)

The mode is Parts action when appears and Whole action when appears.

(Whole):

The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Parts):

The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ **To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback**

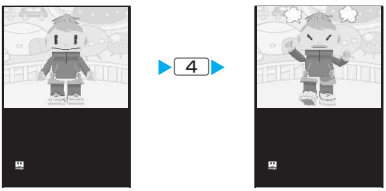
Press the following keys to perform character actions:

"Whole":
1-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or # 1 to # 9
"Parts":
2-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 1 to 9 9)

<Example: "怒る" (Angry) in Whole action mode>

* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

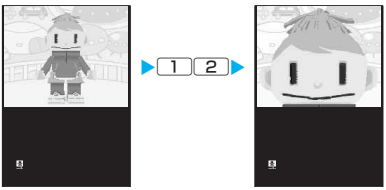
▶ (Whole)▶



▶4▶

<Example: "顔アップ" (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶ (Parts)▶



▶1 2▶

■ **To have a character's mouth synchronize your voice**

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking.
If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.



Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	**▶Enter a phone number▶ or** Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as a substitute image. Use to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie"→p.360
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Chara-den info	"Chara-den information"→p.360
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Set image disp.	
• **Normal**	Displays the character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges the character to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	"Deleting data"→p.377

NOTE

<Memory info>

◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	**▶Enter a phone number▶ or** Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as a substitute image. Use to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie"→p.360
Switch Chara-den	**▶Select a Chara-den character** Changes a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	"To change the action mode"→p.359
Chara-den info	"Chara-den information"→p.360
Set image disp.	
• **Normal**	Displays the character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges the character to the display size.

● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

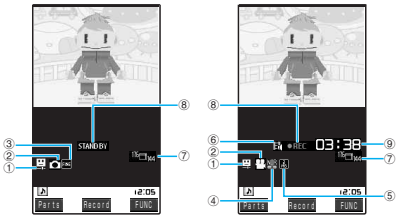
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" An unrestricted Chara-den character becomes restricted after downloaded.
Rec. File Restriction	"File restricted"/"Not restricted"
Display size	The file display size (wide x high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD	Always "No"
Substitute image	Where the substitute image is set When no image is set, "No setting" appears.

NOTE

◆"Rec. File Restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using Chara-den is edited, copied to a microSD memory card or attached to a message.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



Recording a still image　　Recording a movie

① Shows the currently selected action mode.
- : Whole
- : Parts

② Shows the shooting mode.
- : Photo mode
- : Movie mode

③ Shows the "Storage setting" (image).
- NOR: Normal
- FINE: Fine
- S FINE: Super Fine

④ Shows the "Storage setting" (movie).
- NOR: Normal
- : Prefer img qual
- : Prefer time
- : Prefer motion spd

⑤ Shows the "File size setting".
- 500 KB: 500KB
- 2 MB: 2MB

⑥ Shows the "Movie type set".
- : Video + voice
- : Video

⑦ Shows the size selected in "Select size".
- 176 144: QCIF (176 x 144)
- 117 96: Small (117 x 96)

⑧ Shows the shooting status.
- STANDBY: Stand-by
- ●REC: Shooting

⑨ Shows the remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until shooting starts).

● Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.358) ▶● (FUNC)▶"Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den" (image) screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (image)

Function menu➡p.361

2 Perform an action▶●

Performing an action→p.358

■ To perform a Parts action

▶✉ (Parts)

■ To compose an i-mode message with a shot image attached/inserted

▶✉ (MAIL)▶Select "Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ To retake the shot

▶CLR

3 ●

The shot image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

NOTE

◆No shooting tone is sounded when:
- "Phone" under Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- The ring volume is set to "Silent" in Manner mode, etc.

Function menu (Rec. Chara-den screen)

Switch Chara-den	▶**Select a Chara-den character** Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode.→p.359
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• **Normal**	Displays the character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges the character to the display size.
Movie mode*1	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.
Select size*2	Sets the size of character to shoot.
• **QCIF (176 x 144)** (default)	Shoots a character in 176 dots wide x 144 dots high (QCIF).
• **Small (117 x 96)**	Shoots a character in 117 dots wide x 96 dots high.
Movie type set*3	Sets the movie shooting mode.
• **Video + voice** (default)	Shoots a movie including sound.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without any sound.
Storage setting*3	
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• **Prefer img qual**	Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Prefer time**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Prefer motion spd**	Shoots a movie with smoother motion.
Storage setting*2	Sets the quality for image shooting.
File size setting*3	
• **500KB**	You can shoot up to 500K bytes.
• **2MB** (default)	You can shoot up to 2M bytes.

*1: When you are using Movie mode, "Photo mode" appears here. Photo mode is selected at the time of purchase.
*2: The options cannot be set in Movie mode.
*3: The options cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>
◆Changing a Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

Shooting movies

1 Rec. Chara-den (image) screen (p.360) ▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Movie mode"

The "Rec. Chara-den" (movie) screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (movie)

Function menu➡p.361

2 ● ▶Perform an action▶●

Performing an action→p.358

■ **To perform a Parts action**
▶✉ (Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with the movie attached**
▶✉ (MAIL)

■ **To check the movie**
▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Check w/ playing"

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR

3 ●

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

◆Only QCIF (176 x 144) can be selected for the size, which cannot be changed.
◆No shooting tone is sounded when:
- "Phone" under Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- The ring volume is set to "Silent" in Manner mode, etc.

◆When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, a sound is recorded according to the "Select microphone" setting.
◆Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

<Melody> MENU16

Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"Melody"

The "Folder list" screen appears.



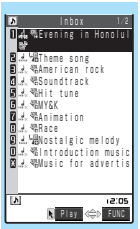
Folder list

Function menu➡p.375

Continued on next page

2 Select a folder

The "Melody list" screen appears.
Melody list screen→p.362

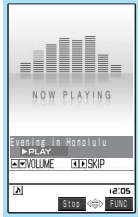


Melody list

Function menu➡p.362

3 Select a melody

The "Melody" screen appears to play the melody.
Operation during playback →p.362



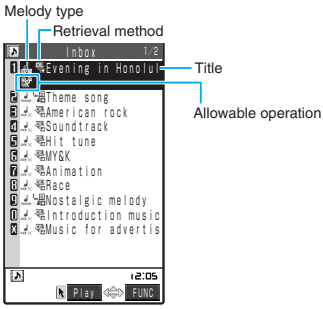
Melody

Function menu➡p.363

NOTE

◆Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. They are played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.
◆You can enjoy rich-sound melody with 3D sound compatible melody.→p.128

Guide to the melody list



■ Melody type icon

	MFi/SMF*1*2

*1: " " is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

*2: A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

■ Retrieval method icon

No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from a microSD memory card or PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or Bar code reader

■ Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
Ir	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
SD	Can be copied to a microSD memory card

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.
The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.
The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
If a file name contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).
The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control key	Operation
⊙	Plays the previous or next melody
⊙(▲), ⊙(▼)(MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume*1*2
0 to 9, ✱, #, ⌐, ✉, ●	Stops playback
CLR	Ends

*1: After you adjust the volume, if you press ● or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.
*2: Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, microSD or user-created folders→p.363
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce→p.363

■ Melody list function menu for Inbox, microSD or user-created folders

Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted melody. The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.
Edit file name[*1]	▶**Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted melody. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
Play melody	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone[*1]	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. →p.126
File restriction[*1]	
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon[*1]	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Compose message[*2]	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached.
Touch to send data[*1]	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data[*1]	
Copy to microSD[*1]	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card"→p.376
Copy to phone[*3]	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.377
Melody info	"Melody information"→p.364
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.
Copy[*3]	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card"→p.377
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Sort[*1]	Sorts melodies by the specified criteria.
Move	"Moving data to another folder"→p.376
Delete	"Deleting data"→p.377

*1: The option appears only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder.
*2: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*3: The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>
◆You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or OBEX.

<Compose message>
◆A melody stored on a microSD memory card that exceeds 2M bytes cannot be attached to an i-mode message.

<Melody info>
◆You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
①Melody downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Melody acquired via Infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce

Play melody	Plays the highlighted melody.
Ring tone	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. →p.126

Function menu (Melody screen)

Ring tone[*1]	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone. →p.126
Set repeat play[*2]	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon[*3]	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.149
Compose message[*4*5]	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached.
Copy to microSD[*3]	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the melody to a microSD memory card.
Copy to phone[*6]	Copies the melody to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
Melody info[*4]	"Melody information"→p.364

*1: The option appears only for melodies stored in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The option appears only for melodies stored in the Inbox, Pre-installed or user-created folder.
*3: The options appear only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder.
*4: The options appear only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder or on a microSD memory card.
*5: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*6: The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

● Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
File classification	Melody file type "MFi" or "SMF"
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD*1	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the melody can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Moved to phone*2	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the melody can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Vibrator linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Illumination linkage
Ring tone*1	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, "No set" appears.

*1: The options appear only for melodies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (p.361)▶Highlight "Playlist" and press (FUNC)▶"Edit playlist"▶Select No. for the melody▶Select a folder▶Select a melody▶Repeat steps to add



■ **To release an added melody**
▶Select a melody to release▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen

2 (Finish)
The melody folder list screen appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE
◆The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the added melodies or delete data.

<Kisekae Tool>

Using Kisekae Tool

Check the packages of Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites. Packages stored at the time of purchase can also be checked.

- Downloading from sites→p.225
- Kisekae Tool package settings→p.144

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"Kisekae Tool"
The "Package list" screen appears.
Package list screen→p.364

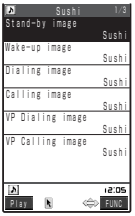


Package list
Function menu➡p.365

2 Select a package
The "Package" screen appears.

■ **To check the content of items that can be set**
▶Highlight an item to check and press (Play)

■ **To set the packages**
▶(FUNC)▶"Set all"

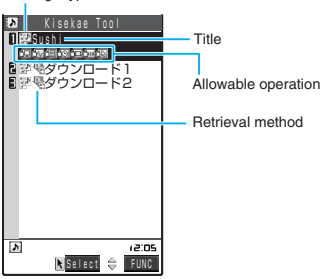


Package

■ **If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data**
You are attempting to open a partially downloaded package, due to interruption at data acquisition, etc. The remaining pages must be downloaded.→p.225

NOTE
◆Sound-related items, e.g. ring tones being checked are played at the volume set in "Ring volume". Sound is not heard when "Silent" is set.

Guide to the package list



■ Package type icon

Icon	Description
	All the data have been downloaded.
	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. Download all the remaining data to set as Kisekae Tool.
	Subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function

■ Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from a site

■ Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be set for the standby screen or Wake-up display
	Can be set for the Dialing, etc. other than standby screen or Wake-up display
	Can be set as a ring tone or clock alarm tone
	Can be set as a menu icon
	Can be set as a clock display
	Can be set as a color pattern
	Can be set as an icon e.g. battery icon
	Can be set as the Neuropointer icon

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded packages.
The titles appear on the package list screen.

Function menu (Package list screen)

Set all	"Setting Kisekae Tool Package" →p.144
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted package. The title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Kisekae Tool info	"Package information"→p.365
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Kisekae Tool data stored and available space.
Sort	Sorts packages by the specified criteria.
Delete	"Deleting data"→p.377

● Package information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	Always "File restricted"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a package preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD	Always "No"

microSD Memory Card

N904i supports microSD memory cards with up to 2G-byte (commercially available) (As of April, 2007). Visit the following site for the latest compatibility information including manufactures and capacities of microSD memory cards. Note that microSD memory cards that are not listed in the compatibility information may not work.

- From i-mode:
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213
- From PCs:
  http://www.n-keitai.com/ (Only in Japanese)

Note that the listed compatibility information is only the results from operation checks and does not guarantee operations for all cases.

Notes

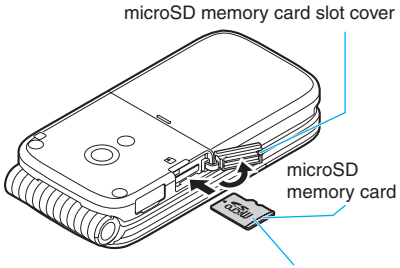
* Format a microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A microSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal. →p.373

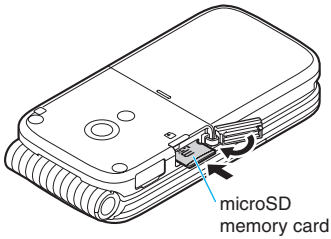
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a microSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or sticker on a microSD memory card.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your microSD memory card. Note that under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or alteration of data stored on your microSD memory card.

Inserting/removing a microSD memory card

Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting a microSD memory card.





1 Open the cap of the microSD memory card slot

2 Insert the microSD memory card into the microSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the microSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side up.
Fully inserting locks the card into place.

3 Close the cap of the microSD memory card slot

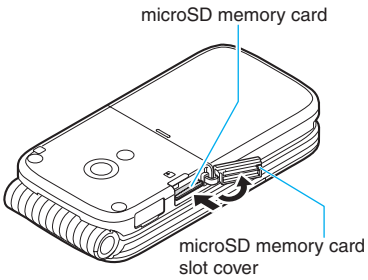
After you insert the microSD memory card then turn on the FOMA terminal, " SD " appears on the screen.

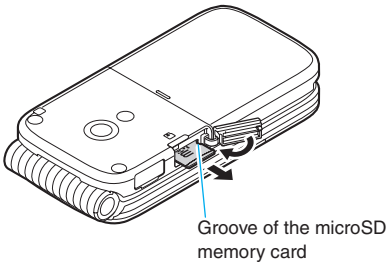
NOTE

◆If the microSD memory card is failed or it is incorrectly formatted, " SD " appears on the screen.

Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing the microSD memory card.





1 Open the cap of the microSD memory card slot

2 Gently push the microSD memory card in

When you push the microSD memory card in and release it, the card pops out slightly.
Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the microSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the microSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Close the cap of the microSD memory card slot

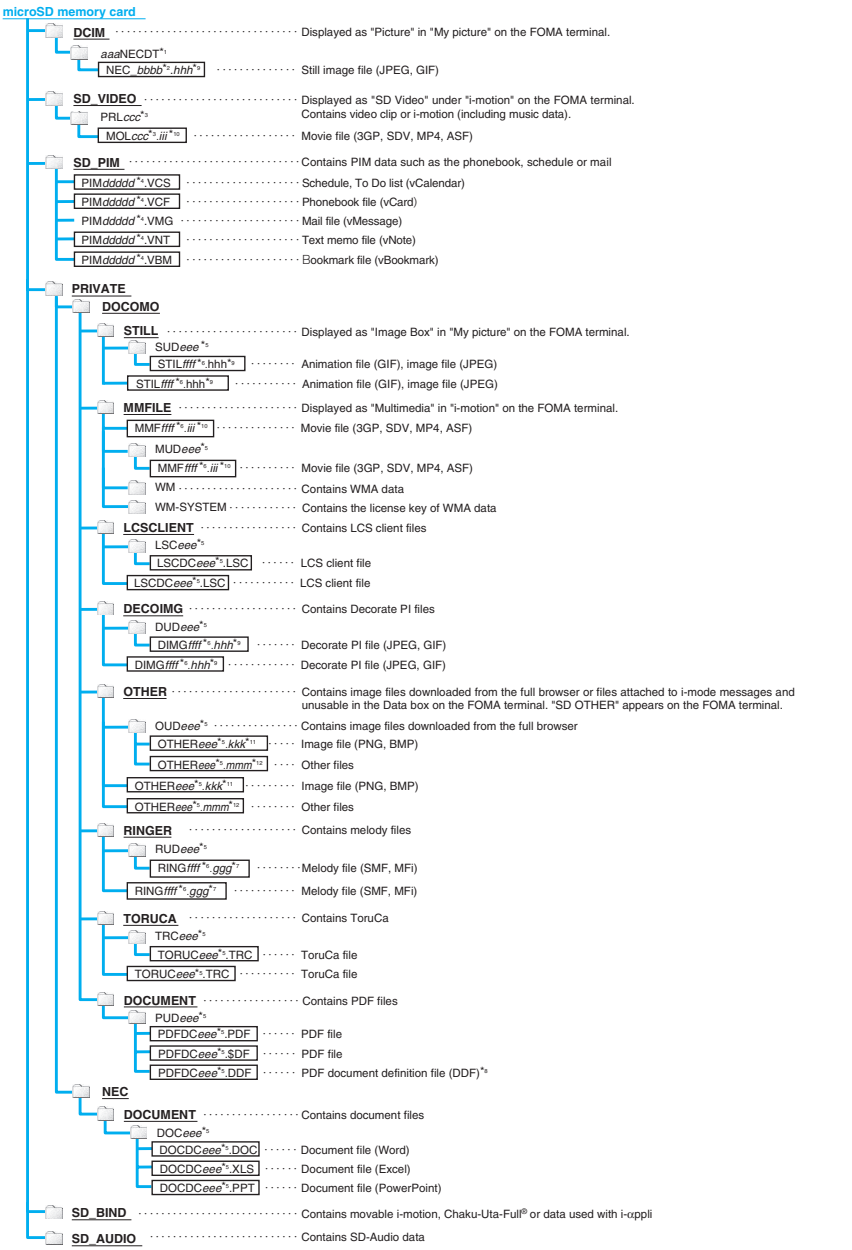
NOTE

◆Do not insert or remove a microSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. Doing so may damage the microSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
◆The microSD memory card may spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
◆After removing the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case that came with the product. Storing the microSD memory card in another case may cause the microSD memory card to become unusable.
◆Check that the microSD memory card is facing in the right direction, and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the microSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
◆It may take long to read or write data for the first time after the microSD memory card is inserted.

Folder tree on a microSD memory card

If data are copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, the folders shown below will be created and the data will be saved to the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and subfolders are automatically named as shown below.

● When copying data from a PC or another device to a microSD memory card, create and name the folders and files as shown below:



Continued on next page

*1: "*aaa*" is a 3-digit number between 100 and 999. "NECDT" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*2: "*bbbb*" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999. "NEC_" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*3: "*ccc*" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF, using 0 to 9 and A to F.
*4: "*ddddd*" is a 5-digit number between 00001 and 65535.
*5: "*eee*" is a 3-digit number between 001 and 999.
*6: "*ffff*" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999.
*7: "*ggg*" is a file extension, MLD or MID.
*8: The folder appears only if it is viewed on a PC, etc.
*9: "*hhh*" is a file extension, JPG or GIF.
*10: "*iii*" is a file extension, 3GP, SDV, MP4 or ASF.
*11: "*kkk*" is a file extension, PNG or BMP.
*12: "*mmm*" is a file extension.

NOTE

◆If two or more data are copied to the SD_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically given to the title names.
◆Although a movie with video can be copied from a PC, etc. to the MMFILE folder, it cannot be played on the FOMA terminal.
◆On some PCs, folder names and file names may appear in lower case.
◆A file edited on a PC then saved to a microSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N904i if you name the file using different characters from the folder/file names shown on p.367.
◆If a microSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT, MMFILE.DAT or DCIM.DAT is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. To reset the settings, launch "Select to save" (p.193, p.198). Turning off the FOMA terminal or inserting/removing the microSD memory card does not cancel the settings.
◆Do not use a PC to delete or move folders stored on a microSD memory card. Doing so may prevent FOMA N904i from reading the microSD memory card.
◆FOMA N904i cannot recognize data that are stored on a microSD memory card but are unsupported by FOMA N904i.
◆The FOMA terminal may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from other device to a microSD memory card. Also, other device may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card.
◆Before purchasing the microSD reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the microSD memory card if it is compatible to your FOMA terminal.
◆A microSD memory card formatted on a device other than FOMA N904i may not function correctly.

● Number of files storable on a microSD memory card

The number of files storable on a microSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the microSD memory card. The following table shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. If a folder is added to change the copy destination, more files can be stored on the microSD memory card. Note that the maximum number of files storable may vary depending on the file size.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files storable in each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
LCSCLIENT	999	999
DECOIMG	999	9,999
OTHER	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999
DOCUMENT	999	999

Use the "Checking how a microSD memory card is used" (p.373) to check the used and available capacity of the microSD memory card. However, the displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the microSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the microSD memory card and you attempt to copy phonebook entries, My Profile, schedule entries, To Do list entries, text memos or bookmarks, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied due to lack of space. In cases of messages, images, movies and i-motion programs, "Copy to microSD" and "Move to microSD" on the function menu are grayed out. In this case, insert another microSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data from the card, then retry to copy the data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card (SD_AUDIO or WM folders).
- When the number of files in the folder to which a file is to be copied has already reached the limit then you attempt to copy:
  - Data to other than the SD_PIM folder, a new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder except if a still image shot with the built-in camera is directly saved to a microSD memory card.
  - Data to the SD_PIM folder, a message appears indicating that the folder is full of data, and the file cannot be copied to the microSD memory card.
- When the microSD memory card is full, you cannot add another folder for images, movies or i-motion programs, edit titles or copy/move files. Delete any unnecessary data and retry.

Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card

The following table shows data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card:

■ PIM data such as phonebook entries or mail messages

- Copying PIM data between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card→p.369

Data type	Details
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Location info, Memory number*1, Secret store*2*3, Group number*3, Group name*3, PushTalk phone number*4, PushTalk group number*4, PushTalk group name*4
Schedule	Date(from), Date(to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2, Category*5, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*6, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received mail*7, Sent mail*7, Draft mail, SMS	Unread/Read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/ Send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark*7*8	Title, URL

*1: Data cannot be copied by "Copy & add this", when the same memory number has been saved, etc.
*2: Secret store shows if it is stored as a secret data.
*3: Data can be copied by "Copy all".
*4: Data can be copied by "Copy selected" or "Copy all".
*5: Category is the icon information setting that was set in Schedule.
*6: Category is set in To Do list.
*7: Folder names remain unchanged after you copy all of received messages, sent messages and bookmarks to a microSD memory card.
*8: An i-mode bookmark copied from a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "i-mode menu". A Full Browser bookmark is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "Full Browser".

■ Data stored in Data box

- Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Data box) and a microSD memory card→p.376

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail, microSD and user-created folders
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, microSD and user-created folders
PDF data	PDF documents stored in Inbox, microSD and user-created folders
Melody	MFi/SMF melodies stored in Inbox, microSD and user-created folders

■ Other data

- Copying ToruCa between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card→p.310
- Copying LCS client data between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card→p.323

Data type	Details
ToruCa	ToruCa stored in ToruCa, microSD and user-created folders
LCS client	Service client name, Service client ID, Phone number, Notify at dialing

NOTE

◆If a schedule with a user icon set is copied, the "Category" information is not sent.
◆A data cannot be copied if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal. However, a "File restricted" data on the FOMA terminal can be copied.

<SD-PIM>

Using the microSD Memory Card

Phonebook entries, Schedule, To Do list, Text memo, Mail messages and Bookmark stored on the FOMA terminal can be copied to a microSD memory card. The data can be viewed using "SD-PIM" or copied back to the FOMA terminal.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.365

Previewing data stored on the microSD memory card

Display and check data stored on a microSD memory card.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"SD-PIM"

The "Categories" screen appears.



Categories

Function menu➡p.370

Continued on next page

2 Select any item

The "File list" screen appears.



File list

Function menu➡p.370

3 Select a file

The "Data list" screen appears.

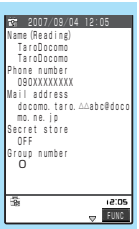


Data list

Function menu➡p.371

4 Select a data

The "Data detail" screen appears.



Data detail

Function menu➡p.371

NOTE

- ◆While running SD-PIM or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- ◆A Deco-mail message appears without decoration.
- ◆" " appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and " " for the one added on the Full Browser screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

microSD info	"Checking how a microSD memory card is used"→p.373
Copy from phone*	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all data stored in the highlighted item to the microSD memory card.
microSD format	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Formats the microSD memory card.
Check microSD	Checks the microSD memory card. Checking the microSD memory card may fix problems.

*: If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "Full brw." or "All".

NOTE

<Check microSD>

- ◆Do not remove the microSD memory card during Check microSD. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆You cannot check unformatted or incompatible microSD memory cards.
- ◆" " flashes during Check microSD.
- ◆If you press (Quit) or during Check microSD, the Check microSD is stopped and " " appears.
- ◆If the Check microSD is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. In these cases, Check microSD again.
- ◆It may take long to check the microSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- ◆Some data may not be recovered depending on the microSD memory card.
- ◆If Check microSD is performed, the titles of data stored on the microSD memory card are renamed to the file names.

Titles and file names→p.344

Function menu (File list screen)

- Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the microSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted file. The title can contain up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.
Copy & add	Copies data to the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & add this**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & add selected**	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)** ▶ **(Finish)**▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & add all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all data in all files.

Copy & overwrite[*1]	Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & OW this**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"**[*2] Overwrites with all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & OW selected**	**▶Use ⊛ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"**[*2] Overwrites with all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & OW all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"**[*2] Overwrites with all data in all files.
Copy from phone[*3]	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in the selected item from the FOMA terminal.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted file.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ⊛ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple files.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all files stored in the selected item.

*1: In case of Schedule, To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).
*2: In case of phonebook, if only one file is to be copied, a screen appears asking whether to set the first data as your own data.
*3: If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "Full brw." or "All".

NOTE

<Delete>
◆If a file to delete is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Function menu (Data list/detail screen)

- Copy & OW all overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the microSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Copy & add this	Copies the highlighted or displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & add all[*1]	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & OW all[*1]	**■Phonebook** **▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"▶"YES" or "NO"** **■Schedule**[*2]**, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark** **▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"** Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal with all data stored in a file.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

*1: The option appears only for the Data list screen.
*2: To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).

Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Copy phonebook entries, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail messages and bookmark stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card.

■ To copy one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy to microSD" then "Copy this" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy, or "Copy to microSD" from the function menu on the detail screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy multiple data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy to microSD" then "Copy selected" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored in a folder on the FOMA terminal (Inbox, Outbox, Bookmark)

Select "Copy to microSD" then "Copy all" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy from phone" from the function menu on the Categories screen.→p.370
You can also copy all data in the following methods:

- Phonebook, Schedule, To Do list, Draft, Text memo
  Select "Copy to microSD" then "Copy all" from the function menu on the list or detail screen of the data you want to copy.
- Inbox, Outbox, Bookmark
  Select "CopyAll to microSD" from the function menu on the folder list screen.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If you copy a message with the i-αppli launch settings, the settings are deleted from the message.
◆If you use Copy this/Copy selected to your secret data (phonebook, schedule), the secret is released.
◆If all data are copied to the microSD memory card, secret data (phonebook, schedule) are also copied, except data stored in the Secret folder.
◆If you attempt to copy all phonebook data, a message asking whether to copy "My Profile" contents. All PushTalk phonebook data are also copied.
◆If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
◆"Copy all" cannot be selected from the phonebook detail screen or message detail screen.
◆Copying messages may delete some types of files attached.
◆If you copy one entry in "My Profile" but do not "Display all data", the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as a phonebook entry. If you "Display all data" to copy one data, all the stored data are saved as a phonebook entry.

Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy & add or overwrite phonebook entries, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail messages and bookmark stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

● Copying to the FOMA terminal

■ **To add all data stored in a file**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add this" from the "File list function menu"→p.370
"Copy & add all" from the "Data list function menu"→p.371

■ **To add all data stored in the selected files**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add selected" from the "File list function menu"→p.370

■ **To add all data stored in all files**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add all" from the "File list function menu"→p.370

■ **To add one selected data**
"Copy & add this" from the "Data list/detail function menu"→p.371

● Overwriting to the FOMA terminal

■ **To overwrite all data stored in a file**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW this" from the "File list function menu"→p.371
"Copy & OW all" from the "Data list function menu"→p.371

■ **To overwrite all data stored in the selected files**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW selected" from the "File list function menu"→p.371

■ **To overwrite all data stored in all files**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW all" from the "File list function menu"→p.371

NOTE

◆You cannot copy phonebook data while "Restrict dialing" is set.
◆It may take long to read or write data on the microSD memory card if there are many files stored.
◆If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the copy process, the copy is interrupted. Already copied data are saved.

<To use the file list function menu to copy>
◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selected/Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW selected/Copy & OW all) is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not added when "Copy & add" is selected.
◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selected/Copy & add all) is selected but group names on the microSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to "No Group" in the phonebook.
◆Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selected/Copy & add all) cannot copy:
- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

<To use the data list/detail function menu to copy>
◆If Copy & add all or Copy & OW all is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not added when "Copy & add all" is selected.
◆If Copy & add all is selected but group names on the microSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to "No Group" in the phonebook.
◆Copy & add this and Copy & add all cannot copy:
- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

◆When Outbox is full, copying one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected message.
◆When Inbox is full, copying one received message overwrites the oldest unprotected read message.

Managing the microSD Memory Card

Format a microSD memory card or check how data are used.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.365

Formatting a microSD memory card

* Format a microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A microSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.

Format a microSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a microSD memory card deletes all data stored on the card. Before formatting the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

1 Categories screen (p.369)▶ (FUNC)▶"microSD format"▶ Enter your security code▶"YES"

NOTE

◆Do not remove the microSD memory card during the format process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
◆Data saved to the microSD memory card are not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
◆The "" flashes during the format process.
◆If you press (Quit) or during the format process, the format is stopped and "" appears. Format the card again.

Checking how a microSD memory card is used

Check the amounts of available space and data stored on a microSD memory card.
Number of files storable on a microSD memory card→p.368

1 Categories screen (p.369)▶ (FUNC)▶"microSD info"

Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with a microSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write data stored on the microSD memory card.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.365
- To use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese edition)

1 USB mode setting screen (p.375)▶"microSD mode"

If "microSD mode" is set, "" appears.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable

"" will appear when microSD mode is set, a microSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.
The microSD memory card appears in the My Computer window on a PC as storage memory (external storage device).
To remove the FOMA USB Cable, follow the Windows safe removal procedure.

NOTE

◆You cannot change the USB mode setting or access the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being read/written between a PC and the microSD memory card. You cannot access the microSD memory card from a PC while data is being read/written between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.

Continued on next page

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being exchanged between a PC and the FOMA terminal. Doing so may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.

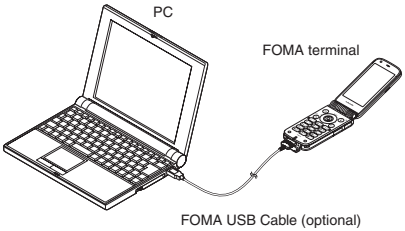
Setting USB mode

<USB mode setting> Default setting: Communication mode

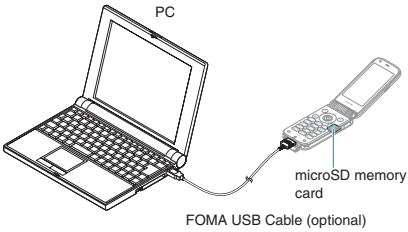
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

- USB mode is categorized into "Communication mode", "microSD mode", "Print mode" and "MTP mode".

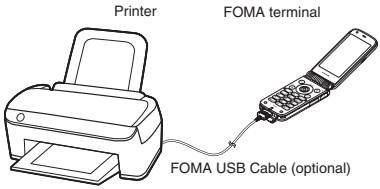
<Communication mode>



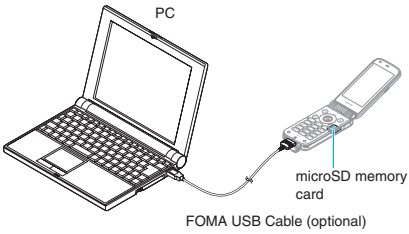
<microSD mode>



<Print mode>

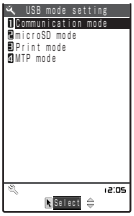


<MTP mode>



1 (MENU)▶**"SETTINGS"**▶**"External connection"**▶**"USB mode setting"**

The "USB mode setting" screen appears.



USB mode setting

2 Select any item

Communication mode	Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange via cable connection. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC • "": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC
microSD mode	Uses the external connector as a microSD memory card reader/writer. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected • "": The FOMA USB Cable is connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card, display data in memory or format the microSD memory card)
Print mode	Uses the external connector for PictBridge print. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be printed • "": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be printed
MTP mode	Uses the external connector for WMA data exchange. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected • "": The FOMA USB Cable is connected

Working with Folders and Files

Add folders to the folder/microSD folder list screens of My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody, My document and Document viewer for organizing the files.

- If an i-αppli program is saving data to a microSD memory card and attempting to access data stored on the microSD memory card, a message appears indicating that the access is denied.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (folder list screen)

- The following function menu also appears on the list screen of the Movable contents folder under Music (p.340):

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Edit a folder name** Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Add desktop icon*1	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Delete folder	**■Music** **▶Enter your security code▶Select deletion mode▶"YES"** **■Other than Music** **▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** You can delete a folder containing data.
Delete all*2*3	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.
Edit playlist*4	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing melodies in your preferred order"→p.364
Release playlist*4	Releases a playlist.

*1: The option is displayed only in Music.
*2: "Delete all image" appears for My picture, and "Delete all" for i-motion and Melody.
*3: The option does not appear for the Movable contents folder under Music.
*4: The options only appear in folders under and Melody.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Add folder>

◆The Movable contents folder can contain up to 65,535 folders, each of which can contain up to 65,535 files.

<Edit folder name>

◆You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image> <Delete all>

◆You can delete only user-created folders.

◆If you attempt to use "Delete folder", "Delete all image" and "Delete all" to delete an image or movie that has been set for a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens, ring tones or alarms is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.
- Original animation and playlist are released.
- The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which "" was set.

Function menu (microSD folder list screen)

For ToruCa, see "ToruCa folder list function menu" (p.309), and for Bookmark, see "Bookmark folder list function menu" (p.220).

● The following function menu also appears on the list screen (p.341) of Movable contents folder under i-motion:

Edit folder name[*1]	**▶Edit a title** Edits a folder title. The title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.[*2]
Create folder[*1]	**▶Enter a title** Creates a folder. The folder title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.[*2]
DPOF Print[*1][*3]	"Printing Stored Images"→p.392
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the highlighted folder.

*1: The options do not appear for "Image Box" or "Decorate PI".

*2: The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for "Melody" and the Movable contents folder under "i-motion".

*3: The option does not appear for "i-motion", "Melody", "My document" or "Document viewer".

NOTE

<Create folder>

◆You cannot create a folder in the "Image Box" and "Decorate PI" on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.

◆The Movable contents folder can contain up to 65,535 folders, each of which can contain up to 65,535 files.

<Delete folder>

◆A message appears asking whether to delete a folder if the folder:

- Is read-only on a PC, etc.
- Contains a file

Moving data to another folder

Move images, movies or other data to another folder.

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.)▶ (FUNC)▶"Move"▶Select any item

Move this	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves the selected data.
Move selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Select data to move▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves multiple data.
Move all	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves all data from the folder.

Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Copy data stored in the Inbox folder, Camera folder, user-created folders, etc. to a microSD memory card.

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to microSD"▶Select any item

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Select data to copy▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple data.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all data from the folder.

NOTE

◆It may take long to copy a large amount of data.

◆Do not remove the microSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.

◆You cannot copy a data to a microSD memory card if:

- It is stored at the time of purchase
- It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- It is an image/movie of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
- There is little capacity available on the microSD memory card
- The microSD memory card is incompatible.

- An error occurs on the microSD memory card
- The microSD memory card is being inserted
- It is partly downloaded data (i-motion, PDF)

◆Receiving a call, message or alarm notification during the copy process cancels copying still images or movies to a microSD memory card.
◆When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and data are saved to the new folder.

<Copy image>
◆The following shows the file name after copied:
- File name: NEC_mmmm (mmmm = 0001 to 9999)

◆You cannot copy an image to a microSD memory card if:
- It is neither JPEG nor GIF
- The file size exceeds 2M bytes after copied

◆Copying an image to a microSD memory card may increase the file size.

<Copy movie>
◆The following shows the file name after copied:
- File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)

Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy data stored on a microSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.)▶i (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶Select any item

Copy this	Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	**▶Select data to copy▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple data.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data from the folder.

NOTE

◆It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
◆Do not remove the microSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
◆If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying an image, the copy continues. If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying a movie, the copy is interrupted.
◆Decorate PI are copied to the Decorate PI folder on the FOMA terminal.

<Copy image>
◆You cannot copy Flash movies.
◆You cannot copy an image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes.
◆You cannot copy an image as follows:
- An image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots
- An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots
- A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
- A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 x 480 dots

Progressive JPEG images→p.223
◆The name of the copied file is that of the one stored on the microSD memory card.

<Copy movie>
◆You cannot copy a movie when:
- It is not MP4
- It is MP4 but unplayable
- The movie is larger than 10M bytes.
- * You may be unable to copy some movies even when none of the above applies.

<Copy PDF data>
◆A PDF data cannot be copied if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card

Copy data stored on a microSD memory card to another folder on a microSD memory card.

● Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.375

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.)▶i (FUNC)▶"Copy"▶Select any item

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Select data to copy▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple data.
Copy all	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies all data from the folder.

Deleting data

Delete images, movies or other data.

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.)▶i (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the selected data.
Delete selected	**▶Select data to delete▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple data.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all data from the folder.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Delete image>

◆You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.

◆If you attempt to delete an image that has been set for a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, the set screen, etc. changes as follows:

- The screens are restored to the one set at the time of purchase.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen is replaced to the one to which "" was set.

◆Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted.

<Delete movie>

◆If a movie or i-motion that has been set for the standby screen is deleted, the standby screen is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

◆If an i-motion set as a ring tone or alarm tone is deleted, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Delete Chara-den>

◆If a Chara-den character set as a videophone substitute image is deleted, the pre-installed Chara-den "Dimo" is set as a substitute image. If you have already deleted "Dimo", a pre-installed still image is sent as a substitute image.

◆If a Chara-den character set in a phonebook entry is deleted, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

<Delete melody>

◆If a melody set as a ring tone or alarm tone is deleted, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

<Delete Kisekae Tool>

◆If a package set as Kisekae Tool is deleted, the set screen, etc. is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select "YES" on the message

■ **To cancel saving the data**

▶"NO"

2 Select a folder▶Select data to delete

■ **To delete Chaku-Uta-Full®, PDF data or Text memo**

Chaku-Uta-Full®, PDF data and Screen memo co-use a storage area for storing data.

▶Select a type of data to delete▶Select a folder▶Select data to delete (If "Text memo" is selected, the folder selection screen does not appear)

3 (Finish)▶"YES"

(Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated for data.

NOTE

◆When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set for a screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If "YES" is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting: ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when copying phonebook data to a microSD memory card or transferring phonebook data via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or data exchange (OBEX).

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Forwarding image"▶"OFF"

■ **To transfer**

▶"ON"

<Infrared data exchange/iC communication/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ iC Communication/Cable Connection

The Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

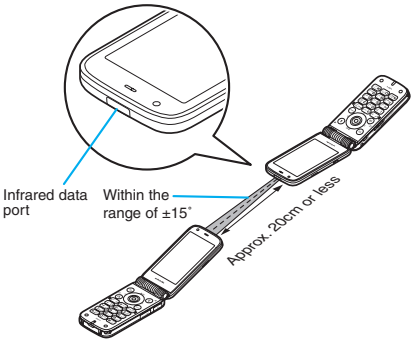
● You can transfer the following:

- Received mail, Sent mail, Draft mail
- i-mode or Full Browser bookmarks
- Phonebook
- PDF data*1
- ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
- My Profile data
- Text memo
- To Do list
- Holiday/Anniversary*2
- Schedule
- Still image*1
- Movie (i-motion)*1
- Melody*1
- LCS client
- Own dictionary
- Common phrases

*1: You cannot send all data via Infrared data exchange or iC communication.

*2: Data can only be transferred via cable connection.

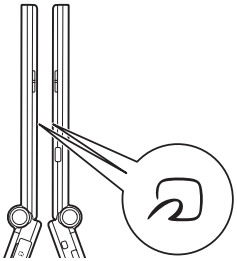
Transferring data via Infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby, and keep approx. 20 cm or less between the FOMA terminals.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via iC communication

Put the FeliCa mark "" of the sending FOMA terminal close to the FeliCa mark "" of the receiving FOMA terminal.



- Data transmission may not be smooth depending on the FOMA terminal of the other party. Move FOMA terminals so that the FeliCa marks of the sender and the receiver get close or distant, or move them to the right, left, up and down to be shifted to the opposite direction.

Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474).
- Before transferring data, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". →p.374

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N904i communication setting file (driver). →p.473
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal's battery level and the PC's power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while making/receiving a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call or using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication. →p.502
- You cannot transfer data while Dial lock, Self mode, Omakase Lock or Keypad lock is set. iC communication is unavailable while IC card lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send data with "Restrict dialing" and data in "My Profile".
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party's FOMA terminal. If you transfer with a terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via Infrared data exchange, cable connection or iC communication conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with a terminal or PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion, PDF document, PushTalk phonebook or ToruCa via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N904i.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange or iC communication will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
  - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
  - The sending device cannot find the receiving device

  Select "YES" to retry the communication. If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the communication will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set "Forwarding image" to "OFF", so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder	
Melody		
Movie/ i-motion	In date order in Inbox folder	
PDF data		
ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)[*1]	The first in the ToruCa folder	
Phonebook[*2]	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "999". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009".	
My Profile		
Schedule	In date order of received schedules	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list	
Received mail[*3]	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender
Sent mail[*3]	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender
Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>	
Common phrases	(Receive one)	The first <Not recorded>[*5]
	(Receive all)	The same order and contents as on the sender
Own dictionary	(Receive one)	The first under the Own dictionary
	(Receive all)	The same order as on the sender
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender[*4]
Full Browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under Full Browser
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under Full Browser in the same order as on the sender[*4]
LCS client	(Receive one)	The lowest number in the LCS client list
	(Receive all)	In order from the lowest number in the LCS client list

*1: When you transfer one data at a time via Infrared data exchange, a message appears asking whether to send ToruCa (detail) (Select "YES" to send ToruCa (detail)).

*2: The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, cable connection or iC communication. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

*3: A mail message larger than 2M bytes may not be sent correctly via Infrared data exchange.

*4: The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender's model.

*5: If original common phrases are already stored in all Folders 3 to 5 and fixed common phrases in Folders 1 and 2 have not been changed since the time of purchase, received common phrases will be stored in Folders 1 and 2, overwriting the fixed common phrases.

- Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
- Receiving the phonebook entries saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook entry, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
- Titles of still images, movies, i-motion programs or PDF documents can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook entry.

- You cannot send or receive:
  - UIM phonebook, SMS
  - Data stored in the Secret folder
  - Frame data (can be received only), Flash movie
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
  - Image other than JPEG or GIF
  - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
  - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
  - You receive an Own dictionary data with the same word and reading as that of the existing one
  - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data
- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:
  - The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, memo, birthday, still image, location info and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on a phonebook entry, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
  - The Secret code cannot be transferred.
  - If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication, the Secret is released before the transfer.
  - When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.
  - The "My Profile" data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of "My Profile" stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
  - Some pictographs or symbols in phonebook entries may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
  - When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred. When one data is transferred at a time, only Phone or UIM phonebook entries are transferred. However, a message appears asking whether to save the entries to the PushTalk phonebook after transferred, which means that they can be saved to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Note the following when you transfer mail data:
  - i-αppli launch information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection or copied from a microSD memory card.
  - If the attached file has not been completely retrieved, the file is deleted when sent.
  - If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, messages in the Trash box folder or older received messages are automatically deleted in order. The following messages are not deleted: unread messages, protected messages, i-mode messages and SMS in the Secret folder. It is recommended to protect important messages.
  - If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
  - Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.
  - You cannot transfer the Inbox folder or Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-αppli. All messages in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
  - Some pictographs or symbols in messages may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
  - You cannot transfer information on a mail-connected i-αppli inserted into an i-mode message.
  - The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.

Transferring One Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

Sending one data at a time via Infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶(FUNC)▶"Send Ir data"▶Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶"YES"

Make sure that the other party is set to standby. Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶(Quit)

Sending one data at a time via iC communication <iC transmission>

Select "iC transmission" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶"iC transmission"

2 Put the FeliCa mark "" close to the FeliCa mark "" of the other party▶"YES"

Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via Infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data> MENU79

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Receive Ir data"

The "Receive Ir data" screen appears.



Receive Ir data

2 "Receive"▶Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶Receive data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.
The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.

3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶"NO"

NOTE

◆Even if you select "Receive", you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.
◆Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function as a desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via iC communication <Touch to receive data>

1 Put the FeliCa mark "" close to the FeliCa mark "" of the other party▶Receive data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts and the progress bar appears.

2 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶"NO"

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC

2 Send data from a PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress bar showing the communication speed.

3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
The received data will be discarded if you do not operate within about 30 seconds after you receive the data.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶"NO"

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient.
"Session number"→p.383

- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the bar, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via Infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send all phonebook data>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶"Send all Ir data"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.383

3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶"YES"

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

Sending all data via iC communication <iC trans. all>

Select "iC trans. all" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send all phonebook data>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶"iC trans. all"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.383

3 Put the FeliCa mark " " close to the FeliCa mark " " of the other party▶"YES"

Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

Receiving all data via Infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

1 Receive Ir data screen (p.382)▶"Receive all"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.383

3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶"YES"

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

4 Select "YES" on the overwrite confirmation screen

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

5 Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

NOTE

◆Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving all data via iC communication <Touch to receive all>

1 Put the FeliCa mark " " close to the FeliCa mark " " of the other party

2 Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal

Continued on next page

3 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.383
Data transfer starts and the progress bar appears.

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶✉ (Quit)

4 Select "YES" on the overwrite confirmation screen

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 25 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶"NO"

Transferring all data via cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: To send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal

It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.

2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal▶Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal

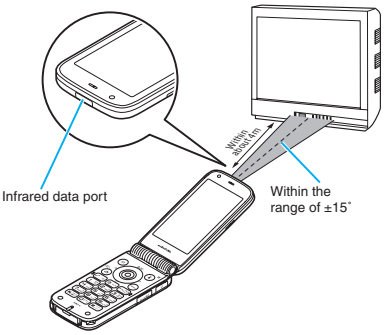
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
"Session number"→p.383

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- To use the remote control function, download the software compatible with the device to use.
- "G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control" are stored at the time of purchase.→p.299
- Key operations for remote control vary depending on the software to use.
- Some devices may not be remotely controlled.
- You cannot use the infrared remote control in Self mode.

Using remote control

- Direct the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on TV, etc. The remote control is effective within 4 meters away from the product. However, this may vary depending on the ambient light level.



<My document>

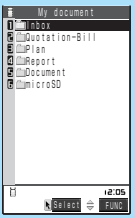
Viewing PDF Data

Use PDF Viewer to view PDF documents that have been downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view documents stored on a microSD memory card.

- Downloading from sites→p.223

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"My document"

The "Folder list" screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.375

2 Select a folder

The "PDF list" screen appears.



PDF list

Function menu➡p.388

3 Select a PDF document

The "PDF data" screen appears.



PDF data

Function menu➡p.388

■ If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the document.

■ If a message appears indicating that the download will be resumed

You are attempting to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on. →p.224

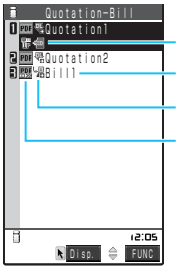
■ If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data

You are attempting to open a document, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages must be downloaded. →p.224

NOTE

- ◆It may take long to display some PDF data.
- ◆A PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by the PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆While viewing a part of a PDF data which has been downloaded by page, attempting to view a page that has not been downloaded starts the download. You can download the remaining pages all together. →p.224
- ◆To transfer a document from a PC to the microSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name. →p.367
  A PDF data cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
- ◆"" flashes while you view a PDF data stored on the microSD memory card.

Guide to the PDF list



Allowable operation icon

Document title

Retrieval method icon

PDF type icon

■ PDF type icon

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)*1	All the pages have been downloaded. The file size of a document with a blue icon (, *1) displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
(Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.*2 →p.224
(Pale blue)*3/ (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages*2 (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully). →p.224

*1: An icon including "" indicates that the document is file-restricted, which cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection, or copied to a microSD memory card.

*2: If all the remaining pages are downloaded and saved, the pale blue icon "", "" or "" will change to "" or "".

*3: A document cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection.

■ Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from a microSD memory card, PC, etc.

■ Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange and iC communication
	Can be copied to a microSD memory card

NOTE

- ◆A PDF data stored on a microSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon "" or "", cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Operations on the PDF screen

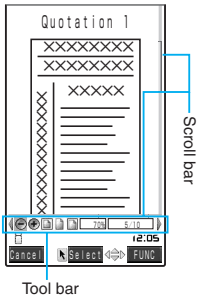
Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view a document.

■ Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

■ Tool bar

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.



■ To use icons on the tool bar

▶ (Tool)

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel).

Use to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use to change the display of the tool bar.
- The Neuropointer is also available to select an icon.

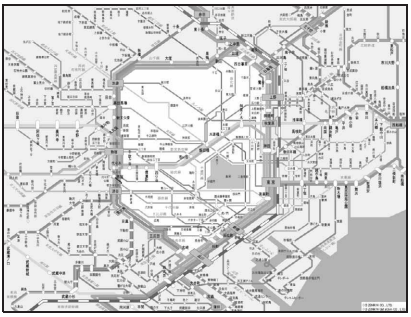
■ Icons on the tool bar

Zoom	Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.
Page	Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter "0005" to jump to p.5.
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Copies text. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →p.452 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
	Clips a part of the document as an image. →p.388
	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Displays a single page on the screen.
	Displays pages continuously.
	Displays the document in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

PDF documents stored at the time of purchase

The "鉄道路線図" (route map) PDF documents by "ゼンリン" (ZENRIN) are already stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



Tokyo metropolitan route map

NOTE

◆To restore a "鉄道路線図" (route map) PDF document after deleting it, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー ".
Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.213
If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using is not the one used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply. →p.39

Functions available on the PDF screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display mode. You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

- The tool bar is useful to change display mode of the PDF screen.

- The keys are also available to change page display mode.→p.388
- Some bookmarks are already placed in a document. You can also use "i-mode bookmark" as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

Scrolling

Use ⊕ to scroll

Use ⊕ in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen.

Use ▲▼ to scroll

Press ▲ to scroll up and ▼ to scroll down.

Use the Neuropointer to scroll

Press the Neuropointer in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen. You can scroll in 8 directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

◆You cannot use the Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press 8 to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

Changing page display mode

Use the tool bar to change the page display mode (e.g. zoom in/out).

1 PDF data screen (p.385)▶✉ (Tool)▶Select an icon

Use ⊕to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press ✉ (Cancel).
Icons on the tool bar→p.386
The PDF data screen reappears.

Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.385)▶✉ (Tool)▶🔭▶●▶Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶✉ (Search)



When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.
Press ✳ to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.
Press # to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

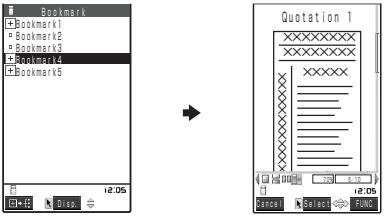
Using a bookmark to view a document

To use a "bookmark" placed in a document

- If bookmarks are placed in a document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

1 PDF data screen (p.385)▶✉ (Tool)▶▶Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.
If there are no bookmarks in the document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark was found.



Press ✉ ( ) with + bookmark highlighted, and other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

To use "i-mode bookmark"

- i-mode bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.385)▶▤ (FUNC)▶"i-mode bookmark"▶Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you placed the bookmark.

To add an i-mode bookmark

▶✉ (Add)▶"YES"▶Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

To edit the title of an i-mode bookmark

▶▤ (FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter a title

To delete an i-mode bookmark

▶▤ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶"YES"

Continued on next page

■ **To delete all i-mode bookmarks placed in a document**
▶(FUNC)▶"Delete all"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

● Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip▶(Tool)▶▶▶"YES"▶Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

NOTE

◆An image clipped out of a PDF document that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be output from the FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a message or copied to a microSD memory card.
◆You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

● Using keys to change page display mode

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2	Displays the entire page.
3	Zooms in.
4	Displays the previous page.
5	—
6	Displays the next page.
7	Searches for text in the document.
8	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. →p.387
9	—
0	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.
#	Searches next. →p.387
*	Searches previous. →p.387

Function menu (PDF list screen)

● The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit title	Edits a document title.
Display document	
• **From the last**	Displays a page that was displayed last time.
• **First page**	Displays the first page of a document.
• **i-mode bookmark**	Displays a page where the selected i-mode bookmark is placed.
Document info	"Document information" →p.389
DL remaining data	"Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially" →p.224
Add desktop icon[*1]	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.149
Compose message[*2]	Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document attached.
iC transmission[*1]	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data[*1]	
Copy to microSD[*1]	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card" →p.376
Move	"Moving data to another folder" →p.376
Memory Info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Sort[*1]	Sorts documents by the specified criteria.
Delete	"Deleting data" →p.377
Copy to phone[*3]	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" →p.377
Copy[*3]	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card" →p.377

*1: The options do not appear for the PDF list screen of a microSD memory card.
*2: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.
*3: The options do not appear for the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Compose message>
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no capacity is available in Draft
- Only partial data have been downloaded for the PDF document to attach
- The PDF document to attach is 2M bytes or larger
- "File restricted" is set for the PDF document to attach

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts documents in the following order:
①Downloaded from a site
②Acquired via Infrared data exchange or from a microSD memory card

Function menu (PDF data screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• **Zoom to**	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• **Fit page**	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• **Actual size**	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• **Fit width**	Adjusts the page width to the display.

Go to	
• **First page**	Displays the first page.
• **Previous page**	Displays the previous page.
• **Next page**	Displays the next page.
• **Last page**	Displays the last page.
• **Specified page**	▶**Enter a page number you want to view** Displays the specified page.
Search[*1]	
• **Search**	▶**Enter text**▶✉ **(Search)** "Searching for text"→p.387
• **Previous result**	Searches previous.→p.387
• **Next result**	Searches next.→p.387
Page layout	
• **Single page**	Displays a single page on the screen.
• **Continuous**	Displays pages continuously.
• **Continuous-Facing**	Displays the document in double-page spread.
Display link[*1]	Selects a URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose an i-mode message. The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press CLR to return to the normal PDF data screen.
Hide tool/ scr.bars[*2]	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.
Rotate view	
• **Clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• **Counterclockwise**	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Bookmark	"Using a bookmark to view a document"→p.387
Copy[*1]	Copies text. Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
i-mode bookmark	"To use "i-mode bookmark"→p.387
Mark[*1*3]	Puts (up to 10) marks on your desired positions.
• **Add**	Adds a mark.
• **Change**	Edits a mark.
• **Delete**	Deletes a mark.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all marks.
Capture screen[*1]	"Clipping a page"→p.388
Compose message[*1*3*5*6]	Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document attached.
Add desktop icon[*1*3*4*5]	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
DL remaining data[*1*3*4]	"Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially"→p.224
Save[*1]	Saves a downloaded document.
Help	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key.
Document property[*1]	Displays the document properties.
End	Closes the PDF data screen.
Document info[*1]	"Document information"→p.389
Delete this[*1*3*5]	Deletes the displayed document.

*1: The options do not appear when you view an attached PDF document while composing a message.
*2: If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, "Show tool/scr.bars" appears.
*3: The options do not appear when a PDF document attached to a sent/received message is viewed. They appear when the attached PDF document has been saved.
*4: The options do not appear for the PDF document stored on a microSD memory card.
*5: The options do not appear while browsing a PDF document on a site. They appear when the PDF document has been saved.
*6: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

NOTE

◆"i-mode bookmark" or "Mark" set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on a PC, etc.

● Document information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD[*1]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Moved to phone[*2]	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*1: The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The option appears only for PDF documents stored on a microSD memory card.

<Document viewer>

Viewing Documents

Document viewer is available to view a document attached to a mail message or stored on a microSD memory card.

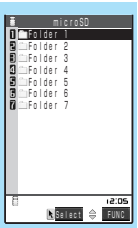
■ Viewable document type

Type	Extension
Excel	xls
Word	doc
PowerPoint	ppt

Continued on next page

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"Document viewer"

The "microSD folder list" screen appears.



microSD folder list (Document)

Function menu➡p.376

2 Select a folder

The "Document list" screen appears.

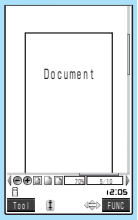


Document list

Function menu➡p.391

3 Select a document

The "Document view" screen appears.



Document view

Function menu➡p.392

NOTE

- ◆It may take long to display a document.
- ◆A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by Document viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆To transfer a document from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name.→p.367
  A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
- ◆" " flashes while a document stored on a microSD memory card is being loaded.

Guide to the document list



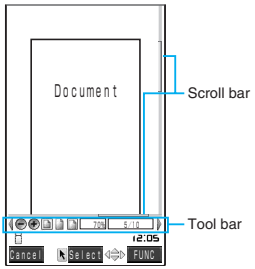
■ Document type icon

doc / xls / ppt	Viewable document type

■ Allowable operation icon

✉	Can be attached to a mail message

Operations on the document view screen



■ Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

■ Tool bar

▶✉ (Tool)

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.

To cancel using the icons, press ✉ (Cancel).

Use ◎ to select an icon.

Zoom	▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.
Page	▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. For example, enter "0005" to jump to p.5.
⊖	Zooms out.
⊕	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
⏮	Displays the first page.
◀	Displays the previous page.
▶	Displays the next page.
⏭	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
?	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.

NOTE

◆Use ⊛ to change the display of the tool bar.
◆The Neuropointer is also available to select an icon on the tool bar.

Functions available on the document view screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display mode.

- The tool bar is useful to change display mode of the document view screen. →p.390
- The keys are also available to change page display mode. →p.391

Scrolling

■ Use ⊛ to scroll

Use ⊛ in the direction you want to scroll on the document view screen.

■ Use ▲▼ to scroll

Press ▲ to scroll up and ▼ to scroll down.

■ To scroll using the Neuropointer



Press the Neuropointer in the direction you want to scroll on the document view screen. You can scroll in 8 directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

◆You cannot use the Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

To show/hide tool bar and scroll bar

Press 8 to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

Changing page display mode

Use the tool bar to change the page display mode (e.g. zoom in/out).

1 Document view screen (p.390)▶ ✉ (Tool)▶Select an icon

Use ⊛ to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press ✉ (Cancel).
Icons on the tool bar →p.390
The document view screen reappears.

Searching for text

1 Document view screen (p.390)▶ ✉ (Tool)▶🔭▶●▶Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶✉ (Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.
Press ✳ to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.
Press # to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

■ To search in an Excel file

Select "Search in page" or "Search in file". "Search in page" is available to search in the currently displayed sheet. "Search in file" is available to search in the whole Excel document.

Using keys to change page display mode

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2	Displays the entire page.
3	Zooms in.
4	Displays the previous page.
5	–
6	Displays the next page.
7	Searches for text in the document.
8	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. →p.391
9	–
0	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.
#	Searches next. →p.391
✳	Searches previous. →p.391

Function menu (Document list screen)

Edit title	Edits the title of the document.
Display document	Displays the first page of the document.
Document info	"Document information" →p.392
Compose message*	Composes an i-mode message with the document attached.
Move	"Moving data to another folder" →p.376

Continued on next page

Copy	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card"→p.377
Memory info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Delete	"Deleting data"→p.377

*: Unavailable when 2in1 is set to B mode.

Function menu (Document view screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• **Zoom to**	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• **Fit page**	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• **Actual size**	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• **Fit width**	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• **First page**	Displays the first page.
• **Previous page**	Displays the previous page.
• **Next page**	Displays the next page.
• **Last page**	Displays the last page.
• **Specified page**	▶**Enter a page number you want to view** Displays the specified page.
Search	
• **Search**	▶**Enter text**▶✉ **(Search)** "Searching for text"→p.391
• **Previous result**	Searches previous.→p.391
• **Next result**	Searches next.→p.391
Hide tool/ scr.bars[*1]	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.→p.391
Rotate view	
• **Clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• **Counterclockwise**	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Compose message[*2*4*5]	Composes an i-mode message with the document attached.
Save[*3*4]	Saves the displayed document.
Help	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.
End	Closes the document view screen.
Document info	"Document information"→p.392
Delete this[*2*4]	Deletes the displayed document.

*1: If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, "Show tool/scr.bars" appears.
*2: The options appear for documents stored on a microSD memory card. When viewing a document attached to a sent/received mail message, the options appear after saving the document.
*3: The option appears only for documents attached to sent/received mail messages.
*4: The options do not appear when you view an attached document while composing a mail.
*5: Not available if you set when 2in1 is set to B mode (p.466).

NOTE

◆You cannot go to or search for a page while a document is being loaded.

Document information

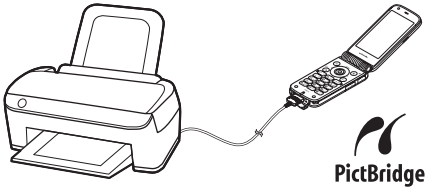
You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)

<PictBridge print>

Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can directly print JPEG images without using a PC.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, microSD)
*This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.
This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they were not shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can set how to print images stored on the microSD memory card.→p.394
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. "🖨" appears during communication.
- The print mode (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may be unavailable on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.375)▶"Print mode"

If "Print mode" is set, "🖨" appears.
Set "Print mode" before connecting the FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer via the FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting.

3 Image list screen (p.342) or Title list screen (p.343)▶Select an image to print, and press (FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

DPOF Print is available from the "image list screen" or "title list screen" on a microSD memory card.
It is not required to highlight an image if you print multiple images or perform DPOF print.

■ **To print from the "My picture" screen**

One image is printed if you select from the "My picture" (p.342) function menu. Go on to Step 5.
▶(FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

4 Select the print type

Selecting "DPOF Print" prints an image by following the print settings specified in "DPOF setting" and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	**▶Use ◈ to select images▶(Finish)** If it is the title list, use ◈ to select a checkbox (☐), and press (Finish). Prints images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints images stored on a microSD memory card by following the "DPOF setting".

5 Set the print settings

■ **Print settings**

Set the following:



Print Sheets*	**▶Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)**	
Print Style	**• Paper size** Sets the paper size. • L size • A4 • 2L size • Card • 8" x 10" • Default • Postcard	
	• Layout	
	• 1-up (borderless)	Prints one image on one sheet without a frame.
	• 1-up	Prints one image on one sheet with a frame.
	• 2-up	Prints two images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same two images are printed.
	• 4-up	Prints four images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same four images are printed.
	• 8-up	Prints eight images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same eight images are printed.
	• 16-up	Prints 16 images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same 16 images are printed.
	• Default	Prints in default layout.
a date	Sets whether to stamp the date.	

*: "Print Sheets" can be set only when "Print this" is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

When an error occurs on the printer

- If the "Error" message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the printer and fix the error.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that "🖨" appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable to the printer.

NOTE

◆For information on how to recover from the error of a printer, see the printer users guide.
◆Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.

Continued on next page

◆Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
◆When you set to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the image does not contain the shooting date and time, the "Saved at" information shown on the Image info screen will be stamped. However, even if you set to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
◆You cannot print an image as follows:
- An image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots
- An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots
- An image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes
- A progressive JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
- A progressive JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 x 480 dots

Progressive JPEG images→p.223
◆The Multitask function is unavailable for PictBridge print.
◆While printing, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode.

Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card <DPOF setting>

Set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on a microSD memory card.
- DPOF is a format for setting the print mode for images shot with a digital camera.
- Save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc. The images can be printed on a DPOF-compatible printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images on a PictBridge-compatible printer→p.392

1 Folder list screen (p.342)▶"microSD"▶"Picture"▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶(FUNC)▶"DPOF setting"▶Select any item

DPOF set One	Sets the print settings for the selected image.
DPOF set Choice	**▶Select an image▶(Finish)** Sets the print settings for images you select.

2 "Print"▶Specify "Print Sheets" (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and "a date" (whether to stamp the date)▶(Finish)

■ To cancel print settings for the displayed image
▶"Print OFF"

■ To cancel print settings for all stored images
▶"All print OFF"

NOTE
◆You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 images. However, the specified number of copies may not be printed on some printers.
◆You cannot set the DPOF setting for an image as follows:
- An image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots
- An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 x 1,728 dots
- An image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes

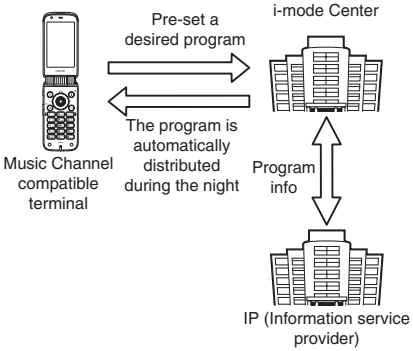
◆You may be unable to set the DPOF setting if there is little capacity available on the microSD memory card.
◆You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
◆The specified number of sheets can be checked in "Image info".

Music Channel/ Music Playback

What is Music Channel? 396
Setting Up Program 396
Playing Program 397
Using Music Player ..... Music player 401
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site 401
Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card ..... Movable contents 409
Saving SD-Audio Data to the microSD Memory Card 409
Saving WMA Data to the microSD Memory Card..... 411
Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player..... 411
Using Other Functions During Music Playback ..... BGM play (background play) 412
Playing Music with Car Stereo or Audio Equipment ..... FM transmitter 413

What is Music Channel?

Music channel is a service that a music program of up to one hour is automatically distributed during the night only by setting your favorite channel in advance. The program is updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program anytime such as during commuting time to work or school.



- Music channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (to subscribe to the music channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/Pake-hodai full beforehand).
- Some programs may charge you an information fee besides the music channel service charge.
- For cautions and details on how to use music channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- After you subscribe to the music channel service, inserting the FOMA card to a music channel incompatible FOMA terminal does not allow you to use the service. Even in this case, note that you would be charged the service fee unless you unsubscribe from the service.
- You cannot set or download programs during international roaming.* Stop the distribution before you go abroad. Restart the distribution service after you come back. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

*: Note that the packet communication charges for the i-mode connection when you attempt to set or download programs during international roaming.

■BGM play (Background play)

You can view i-mode sites or mails while playing a music channel program.
"Using Other Functions During Music Playback"→p.412

■Important

- Saved program may be lost through damage or repair on your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Setting Up Program

When you set a desired program beforehand, the program data is automatically delivered at night.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶"▶"▶●

The "Music channel" screen appears.



Music Channel

Function menu➡p.400

2 Select "Set program"

3 Set up a program following the on-screen instructions

For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

- ◆You can set one program for music channel at a time.
- ◆You need to add a site providing music channel programs to My Menu before setting a program. →p.218
- ◆When you have not subscribed to the music channel service, the message notifies you that the service is not subscribed at the procedure 2. When you select "ミュージックチャネルのお申し込みへ" on the screen, you can subscribe to the music channel service.
- ◆Following the steps below also displays the "Music channel" screen:
  - (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Music Channel"

● Viewing/Canceling program setting

1 Music channel screen (p.396)▶"Set program"▶Follow the on-screen instructions

You can check or reset the program that is currently set. For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

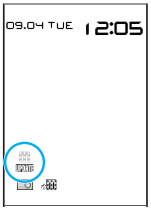
- ◆Resetting the program does not delete the added My Menu.

After Setting Up Program

- " " appears on the standby screen 12 hours before the downloading starts.



- Program is automatically downloaded at night, and the desktop icon indicating Music Channel is updated appears after successful downloading. Selecting the desktop icon opens the music channel screen.



NOTE

- If the communication is interrupted, the FOMA terminal attempts to resume the downloading up to 5 times at 3-minute intervals.
- Starting or completing download does not vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash either.
- One program can be saved. When a new program is downloaded, the previously downloaded program is deleted and you cannot play it.
- You cannot copy or move the downloaded program to Data box.
- You cannot save the downloaded program to an external memory.
- You cannot delete the downloaded program.
- Downloading a program may take time so make sure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and used in an area where the signal status is good.
- Downloading failure is caused by the following reasons: "out of the service area", "the terminal is switched off", "no sufficient battery", "cancelled by the user during the download", "combination of Multitask/Multi access", etc. In case that the downloading is failed for those reasons, the FOMA terminal will download the program at the next night
- You cannot re-download a program whose playback restrictions have expired. You cannot update until the next distribution date.
- The FOMA terminal cannot download a program automatically when you insert a different FOMA card or after you initialize the terminal. Set the program again from the music channel screen.
- When you eject a FOMA card from a FOMA terminal that you set a program, and insert the card into other music channel compatible FOMA terminal, the program is not downloaded automatically. When you select "Set program" on the music channel screen, the FOMA terminal updates its program settings automatically and the program can be downloaded automatically.

Guide to the icons on the music channel screen

You can view the status for the program as an icon displayed on the music channel screen.

Icon	Description
	Successfully downloaded program
	Successfully downloaded program with playback restrictions*
	Partly downloaded program
	Partly downloaded program with playback restrictions*
	Program downloaded in failure
WEB	Program included information for site access(URL)

*: For a program whose playback count reaches the limit or playback period or limit has expired, " " turns to " ".

Manually download a program

When the desktop icon " Miss " indicating, update of Music channel is failed appears after the download failure, you can download the program manually.

1 Music channel screen (p.396)▶ Select the program▶"YES"

NOTE

- The desktop icon indicating update of Music Channel is failed disappears once you display the "Music channel" screen You can manually download a program that you failed to download even if the desktop icon disappears.
- When download is interrupted, the partly downloaded program until the interruption can be saved. You can operate the FOMA terminal to resume the downloading for the remaining data except during specific hours.
- You cannot re-download a program whose playback restrictions have expired. You cannot update until the next distribution date.
- During certain hours of a day, you may not be able to download a program manually.

Playing Program

1 On the standby screen▶●▶" "▶●

The "Music channel" screen appears.

2 Select a program

The "Music channel" screen appears to play the program. Operation during playback →p.398



Music Channel play

Function menu➡p.399

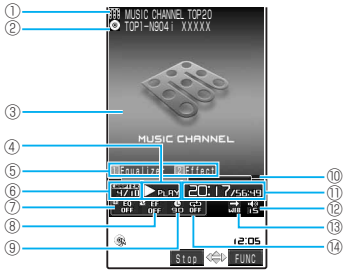
NOTE

- When an earphone is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- When you select a program that you stop the playback last time, the playback will start from the beginning of the chapter where you stop the playback.
- Folding a FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The indicator display shows information on the program being played. →p.412

Continued on next page

◆Some programs have playback restrictions. " " appears at the beginning of the title of a program with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. Programs restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.
If the battery pack is removed from a FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, programs with restrictions on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
"Program information"→p.400
◆You cannot play a program using a FOMA card that was not used for setting the program.
◆For a partly downloaded program, the confirmation message appears asking whether to resume the downloading for the remaining part or play the part of the program that you have downloaded.
◆Following the steps below also displays the "Music channel" screen:
• MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Music Channel"

Guide to the Music channel player screen



①Program title
②Chapter title - Artist name
③Image of chapter or program
④Playback status
PLAY: Playing PAUSE: Pausing
FF: Skipping forward REW: Skipping backward
⑤Operation guidance
⑥Chapter number (number within a program)
⑦Sound quality
Sound quality set in "Equalizer" (p.399)
EQ OFF: Equalizer OFF
Pop/Live/Vocal/Break/L.Light/Woofe/Ballad/Rap/Concert/Rock/Kiss/Loud: For each genre
EQ User1/EQ User2/EQ User3: User setting 1 to 3
⑧Effect
Sound effect set in "Effect" (p.399)
EF OFF: Effect OFF
Loud Enhanced/Sparkle Enhanced/Bass Enhanced/Natural Enhanced/Groove Bass/Crystal/Panorama Grandeur/Vivid/BBE MH: For each track
EF User1/EF User2/EF User3: User setting 1 to 3
⑨Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.399)
⑩Playback position display
A gray marker indicates the current playback position. If you move the marker using ⊙ during pause and then press ●, the playback can be played from the position (you can specify a position within the chapter being played).
⑪Time elapsed/Total playback time (Minute:Second)
⑫Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.
⑬Web To function
Accesses the URL included in the program.
⑭Repeat setting
Whether to repeat the program. appears when the program will repeat. When the program will not repeat, OFF appears instead.

Operations on the music channel player screen

You can perform the following operations during music channel playback:

Control key	Operation
●	Pauses/resumes playback
⊙(▲), ⊙(▼(MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume.
⊙ (or ▲ for 1 second or longer)*1	Plays from the beginning of the chapter. Plays the previous chapter when pressed within 1 second from the beginning of the chapter*2.
⊙ (or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer)*1	Plays the next chapter*3
⊙ (1 second or longer)*1	Skips backward.
⊙ (1 second or longer)*1	Skips forward.
⊙ during pause*1	Moves the marker of the playback position display (p.398) and press ● to play the program from the position (you can specify a position within the chapter being played).
#/*	Switches images when two or more jacket images are registered to the chapter.
CLR	Ends playback.
⌐	Displays the music menu/ music channel menu →p.412
1	Equalizer ON/OFF
2	Effect ON/OFF

*1: A playback restriction with the currently playing program does not allow you to do the regarding operations.
*2: Press and hold ▲ to skip to the previous chapter consecutively.
*3: Press and hold ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to skip to the next chapter consecutively.

Function menu (Music channel player screen)

● The settings can be changed during playback.

Chapter list	Title, artist and playback time of each chapter are listed. If you select a chapter, the selected chapter will be played.*1 "Chapter list"→p.400
Chapter info	Displays the information of the chapter being played. "Chapter info"→p.400
Sound effect	Selects the sound quality and effect for playing program.
• **Equalizer**	Selects the sound quality for playing program.
• **Pop** (default) • **Live** • **Vocal** • **Break** • **C.Light** • **Woofe** • **Ballad** • **Rap** • **Concert** • **Rock** • **Kiss** • **Loud**	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• **User1** • **User2** • **User3**	Sets customized sound quality you want to apply. ■**To change the sound quality** ▶(✉) **(Detail)**▶**Use** (◇) **to set a frequency**▶**Use** (◇) **to adjust the level**▶(●) ■**To reset the sound quality to the default** ▶(✉) **(FLAT)**
• **Effect**	Selects the effect for playing program.
• **Loud Enhanced** (default) • **Sparkle Enhanced** • **Bass Enhanced** • **Natural Enhanced** • **GrooveBass** • **Crystal** • **Panoramic Grandeur** • **Vivid** • **BBE M3**	Sets the effect for each music.
• **User1** • **User2** • **User3**	Sets customized effect you want to apply. ■**To change the effect** ▶(✉) **(Detail)**▶**Use** (◇) **to set an effect**▶**Use** (◇) **to adjust the level**▶(●) ■**To modify an existing effect** ▶(✉) **(Detail)**▶(▮) **(Mode)**▶**Select an effect**▶(●) ■**To reset the effects to the default of the set mode** ▶(✉) **(Init)**
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of the playback. You can select from "OFF", "30 minutes", "60 minutes" or "90 minutes".
Repeat setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to repeat the program.
Chapter image	Displays images registered to the chapter being played.*2
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the program.
FM transmitter (default: OFF)	Sets FM transmitter to ON/OFF.
FM frequency (default: 86.9MHz)	Sets FM transmitter frequency ranging from 86.1 to 87.3MHz.

*1: You cannot select a chapter that you have not downloaded all the data.
*2: When an animation GIF image is registered, the animation is played. However, images registered to chapters cannot be saved.

NOTE

<Equalizer> <Effect>

◆Press [1] to reflect the sound quality settings, and press [2] to reflect the effect settings on the music channel player screen.

◆Some settings may cause clipping noise.

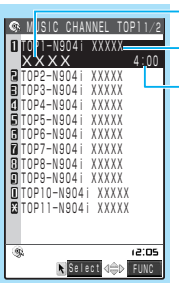
● If a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) is connected

You can operate the following operations using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

Operation	Switch operation
Play/Pause	Press the switch to select between play/pause.
Plays the next chapter	Press the switch twice in a row during playback.
Plays the previous chapter	Press the switch three times in a row during playback. If the music has been played for more than three seconds, it goes back to the beginning.

● Chapter list

Chapters of a program are listed. You can see artist name and playback time of each chapter.



Chapter list

Function menu➡p.400

Function menu (Chapter list screen)

Chapter info	Displays information about the highlighted chapter. "Chapter info"→p.400
Chapter image	Displays the images registered to the highlighted chapter.*
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the program.

*: When an animation GIF image is registered, the animation is played. However, images registered to chapters cannot be saved.

● Chapter info

Title	When there is no chapter info, "Unknown" is displayed.
Artist	When there is no information on artist, "Unknown" is displayed.
Comment	When there is no comment, "Unknown" is displayed.
Composer	When there is no information on composer name, "Unknown" is displayed.
Lyricist	When there is no information on lyricist name "Unknown" is displayed.
Rights holder	When there is no information on rights holder, "Unknown" is displayed.
Selling agency	When there is no information on selling agency, "Unknown" is displayed.
Rights information	When there is no rights information, "Unknown" is displayed.
Label	When there is no information on label, "Unknown" is displayed.
Play time	Playback time of the chapter (minutes:seconds)
File size	The file size of the chapter in K bytes

Function menu (Music channel screen)

Chapter list	Displays title, artist and playback time of each chapter in list. If you select a chapter, the selected chapter is played.*1 "Chapter list" →p.400
Program info	Displays the program information. "Program information"→p.400
Program image	Displays the images registered to the chapter being played.*2
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the program.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the music channel list screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.149

*1: You need to obtain all the data of the chapter before you play it.
*2: When an animation GIF image is registered, the animation is played. You cannot save program images.

● Program information

Title	When there is no information on program title, "Unknown" is displayed.
Creator	When there is no information on creator "Unknown" is displayed.
Rights information	When there is no rights information, "Unknown" is displayed.
Distributor	When there is no information on distributor, "Unknown" is displayed.
Program image	"Included" or "Not included" for program image
URL	URL for Web To function
Play time	Playback time of the program (minutes:seconds)
Replay restriction	Remaining play count and total play count When there is no playback restriction on play count, "Not restricted" is displayed
Expiration date	"Up to date of play period" When there is no playback restriction on play period, "Not restricted" is displayed
File valid	"Playable date ~ Date of play span" When there is no playback restriction on play limit, "Not restricted" is displayed
Fast forward	"Restricted" or "Not restricted" on fast forward

Rewind	"Restricted" or "Not restricted" on rewind
Chapter skip	"Restricted" or "Not restricted" on chapter skip
Chapter back	"Restricted" or "Not restricted" on chapter back
File restriction	Always "Restricted"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Comment	When there is no comment, "Unknown" is displayed.

<Music player>

Using Music Player

Using the music player, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full® and music stored in the microSD memory card.

- You can play music you prefer in order of your choice by registering the music on a playlist. →p.407
- Besides the pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites and music data transferred from music CDs.
  Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full®→p.401
  Saving SD-Audio or WMA Data to the microSD Memory Card→p.409, p.411
- Use "i-motion" (p.351) to play music data downloaded from i-mode sites (i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice).
- Enjoy stereo sound coming out of the built-in stereo speaker or flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional).
- When an earphone is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.

■BGM play (Background play)

You can view i-mode sites or mails while playing music.
"Using Other Functions During Music Playback"→p.412

■Important

- Saved data such as Chaku-Uta-Full® may be lost through damage or repair on your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a site to play it

1 Sites screen (p.213)▶Select Chaku-Uta-Full®

The "Data acquisition" screen appears when the data download is completed.

■To cancel downloading

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

When a message asking whether to resume downloading appears, select "YES" to resume downloading or "NO" to cancel downloading. Then if the data acquisition screen appears, you can save the Chaku-Uta-Full®.

2 "Play"

Play the downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®.→p.406

■To display the Chaku-Uta-Full® information

▶"Property"



Data acquisition

NOTE

◆Up to approx. 80M bytes of Chaku-Uta-Full® data can be saved in Music folders in Data box.
◆Some Chaku-Uta-Full® have playback restrictions." " appears at the beginning of the title of the Chaku-Uta-Full® with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. Chaku-Uta-Full® restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.
If the battery pack is removed from a FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, Chaku-Uta-Full® with restrictions on the playback period or time limit cannot be played. However, you can play some Chaku-Uta-Full® by updating the playback restrictions.
"Music information"→p.404
◆You cannot download Chaku-Uta-Full® with unknown size or that exceeds 5M bytes.
◆To play Chaku-Uta-Full® from a screen memo, select "Add screen memo" from the data acquisition (p.401) function menu to save the Chaku-Uta-Full® as a "screen memo" (p.221).
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following types of Chaku-Uta-Full® as "screen memo":
• Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions
• Incomplete Chaku-Uta-Full®
◆Chaku-Uta-Full® saved in screen memo are not listed in the Music folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot add them to playlists or set them for ring tones.

● Updating replay restrictions for Uta-hodai tracks

When you play a playlist or folder contains Uta-hodai tracks whose playback restrictions have expired and can be updated, a message to require the update of the playback restrictions appears. Select "YES" to connect to the site and update the playback restrictions. When you select "NO", you cannot play the data.
When there are two or more Uta-hodai tracks whose playback restrictions can be updated, select an online music distribution site you want to update. (Packet communication fee is charged.)

- Uta-hodai is music data that is allowed to play while you subscribe to the service of a contents provider. The playback period is specified by the license information downloaded with the music data. Music data whose playback period has expired can be played back again by updating the license. The license information may include playback extension period in addition to the playback period. You can play the music data without updating the playback period during the playback extension period, but the data cannot be played after the playback extension period has elapsed.
  If you download a music data without updating the playback period, the music data cannot be played until it is saved.
- The packet communication charges for the update of the playback period during international roaming is not covered by Pake-Houdai or Pake-hodai full.
- Icons on the "music list" screen enable you to distinguish the status of playback restrictions. →p.403
- Since updating playback restrictions is performed while connecting a site, packet communication charges will apply.
- It is recommended to initialize your FOMA terminal when you exchange the FOMA card.

Saving Chaku-Uta-Full®

- You can save up to 100 Chaku-Uta-Full® songs to your FOMA terminal (the number of songs that can be saved may be less depending on the data size of saved Chaku-Uta-Full®, etc.)

1 Data acquisition screen (p.401)▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ **To cancel saving**
▶"NO"
Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the song was saved.

■ **Chaku-Uta-Full® that can be set as a ring tone**
After the Chaku-Uta-Full® is saved, a message asking whether to set it as a ring tone appears.
Setting ring tones→p.126

● Downloading the remains of a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

When you select a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® from Music in Data box, a message asking whether to download the rest of the data appears. Select "YES" to connect to the site and download the rest of the data. Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partly saved data.

- Icons on the "music list" screen enable you to distinguish the conditions of downloaded data. →p.403
- If the playback period or time limit of a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® has expired, the rest of the data cannot be downloaded (except for Uta-hodai tracks). Furthermore, you can delete partly saved data before downloading.

Playing music

1 (MENU)▶"DATA BOX"▶"Music"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
Operation during playback →p.406



Folder list

Function menu➡p.375

2 Select a folder

The "Music list" screen appears.
Guide to music list→p.403



Music list

Function menu➡p.404

3 Select a music file

The "Music player" screen appears to play the music file.
Operation during playback →p.406

■ **Partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®**
A message asking whether to download the rest of the data appears. Select "YES" to download the rest of the data.
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full®→p.401



Music player

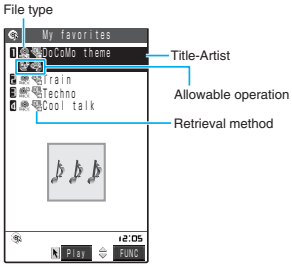
Function menu➡p.406

NOTE

- When an earphone is connected, sound comes out of the earphone even in Manner mode. If the earphone is removed in Manner mode, playback is paused.
- When a hands-free device is connected, sound only comes out of the hands-free device.
- Folding a FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The indicator display shows information on music being played. →p.412
- When you make/receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, 64K data communication or packet communication, playback is paused.
- If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", and you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF, playback is paused.
- If "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and you receive an alarm for "Schedule", "Alarm" or "To Do list", playback is paused.
- A file that cannot be played with the music player is skipped during playback.
- Some music files have playback restrictions. " " appears at the beginning of the title of the music with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. Music files restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. However, you can play some Chaku-Uta-Full® by updating the playback restrictions.
- While playing music continuously, remaining playback count and the message that allows you to select whether to play appear before playing music restricted on its playback count. Music whose playback count reaches the limit or playback period or time limit expires is skipped.

Guide to music list

Titles of music are listed on the screen. Icons show the music type, retrieval method and settings that can be specified for the music.



File type icon

Icon	Description
(gray)	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1
(gray)	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) with playback restrictions*1*2
(pale blue)*2	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) with playback restrictions, which are available to be updated*1*2
(gray)*3/ (gray)*4	Music stored on the microSD memory card and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1
(gray)*3/ (gray)*4	Music stored on the microSD memory card with playback restrictions and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1*2
(blue)/ (blue)	Music stored on the microSD memory card and not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) These icons also appear on the playlist music list screen of the FOMA terminal (Phone) if the microSD memory card storing music listed in the playlist is not inserted.
(pale blue)*2/ (pale blue)*2	Music stored on the microSD memory card with playback restrictions, which are available to be updated*1*2
	Unplayable music data, or music data with playback restrictions which are unavailable to be updated
SD Audio	SD-Audio music
WMA	WMA music
WMA	WMA music with playback restrictions*2
	Partly downloaded music
	Partly-downloaded with playback restrictions (count, period, time)
	Partly-downloaded and its playback restrictions (period, time) have expired
	Music to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1: " " is displayed with an icon for file-restricted music.
*2: " " turns to " " when the playback count reaches the limit or the playback period or time limit expires.
*3: Can be played only when the same model and the same FOMA card (UIM) are used as the music is stored.
*4: Can be played only when the same FOMA card (UIM) is used as the music is stored.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Music stored at the time of purchase
	Music downloaded from a site
	Music copied from a PC

Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be set as a ring tone.
/	Can be moved to the microSD memory card.
WEB	Can use the Web To function.

Function menu (Music list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit information	**▶Select an item▶Edit information** Edits the title, artist name, album name, genre, track number, year and comment.
Edit disp. title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of music displayed on music list screen. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Create playlist	"Creating a playlist"→p.407
Add playlist	**▶Select a playlist** Adds the highlighted music to the end of the playlist.
Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted music as a ring tone.→p.126
• **Fullsong ring tone**	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
• **Point ring tone**	**▶Use ◎ to select a part to set as a ring tone▶Select any item** Sets the selected part of the song as a ring tone.
Move*3	
• **Move this**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted music to another folder.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select the destination folder▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves the selected music to another folder.
• **Move all**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves all the music in the folder to another folder.
Move to microSD*1	"Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card"→p.409
File property	Displays information about the highlighted music. "Music information" →p.404
Memory info	Displays the amounts of music data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.
Reset info	Restores the music information to the original.
Search*1	Searches music by the specified criteria.
Sort*1	Sorts music by the specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use ◎ to switch pages.
Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more images, use ◎ to switch images.
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the music.
List setting	Selects a music-list format from "Title" or "Title+image".
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted music.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the selected music.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all music from the folder.
Move to phone*2	"Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.409

*1: Not available on the music list screen of the SD-Audio folder, Movable contents folder or WMA folder.
*2: Only available for the Movable contents folder.
*3: Press CLR after selecting the destination folder for data in Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Move to microSD>

◆To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, select "File property" to see the music information. Some Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved only between the same models.

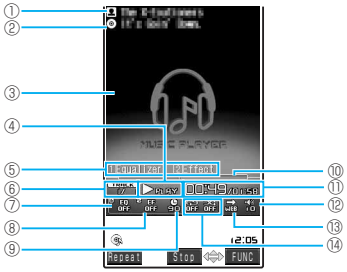
Music information

File name	The file name
File classification	The music file type→p.403
File restriction	Always "File restricted"
Replay restriction	
• **If there are count restrictions**	Remaining play count and total play count
• **If there are period (up to date) restrictions**	"Up to date of play period"/ "Up to play period"
• **If there are span restrictions**	"Playable date ~ Date of play span"
• **If there are period (playable date) restrictions**	"From playable date"
• **If there are period (playable date) and count restrictions**	"From playable date and the remaining count"
• **If there are period (up to date) and count restrictions**	"Until up to date and the remaining count"
• **If there are period and count restrictions**	"Playable date ~ Date of play span and the remaining count"
• **If there are time limit restrictions**	"For XXhours playable from the first use"
• **If there are no playback restrictions**	"NO"
• **Unplayable music**	"----/--/--"
Fullsong ring tone*1	Displays whether Fullsong ring tone is "Available"/ "Unavailable".
Point ring tone*1	Displays whether Point ring tone is "Available"/"Unavailable".

Savable jacket image	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" of the jacket image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable image	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" of the image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable lyric	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" of the lyrics information which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Title, Artist, Album, Year, Genre, Comment, Track number, Composer, Lyricist, Rights holder, Selling agency, Rights information and Label	Shows music information and copyright information.
URL Information	URL for the Web To function or the title of the page linked to the URL
Audio	Audio information "AAC/ Enhanced aacPlus/HE-AAC/ SD-Audio/WMA/Unplayable"
Bit rate	Bit rate in kbps
Play time	Playback time (minutes:seconds)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the music was acquired (i-mode/Data exchange)
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/ Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to microSD*2	"Yes"/"Yes(Same model only)"/ "No" indicates whether the music can be moved to the microSD memory card.
Move to phone*3	"Yes"/"Yes(Same model only)"/ "No" indicates whether the music can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*1: "Unavailable" always appears for Chaku-Uta-Full® stored in the Movable contents folder although it may be set as a ring tone.
*2: Appears only for music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*3: Appears only for music stored on the microSD memory card.

Guide to music player screen



①Artist
②Track name
③Jacket image
④Playback status
PLAY: Playing PAUSE: Pausing
FF: Skipping forward REW: Skipping backward
⑤Operation guidance
⑥Track number being played/Total number of tracks
⑦Sound quality
Sound quality set in "Equalizer" (p.406)
EQ OFF: Equalizer OFF
Pop / Live / Vocal / Break / C.Light / Woofe / Ballad / Rap / Concert / Rock / Kiss / Loud: For each genre
EQ User1 / EQ User2 / EQ User3: User setting 1 to 3
⑧Effect
Sound effect set in "Effect" (p.406)
EF OFF: Effect OFF
Loud Enhancer / Sparkle Enhancer / Bass Enhancer / Natural Enhancer / Groove Bass / Crystal / Panorama Grandeur / Vivid / BBE MP: For each track
EF User1 / EF User2 / EF User3: User setting 1 to 3
⑨Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.407)
⑩Playback position display
<While playing/pausing>
A gray marker indicates the current playback position.
If you move the marker using ◎ during pause and then press ●, the track can be played from the position.
<When "Position to play" selected>
When selecting "Position to play" (p.407) from the function menu, use ◎ to change the position to playback (displayed in yellow).
⑪Time elapsed/Playback time (Minute:Second)
⑫Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.
⑬Web To function
Accesses the URL included in the music data.
⑭Playback mode
: Playing at shuffle
: Playing at shuffle OFF
: Playing at repeat OFF
: Playing all repeatedly
: Playing one repeatedly

Operations on the music player screen

Control key	Operation
●	Pauses/resumes playback
○(▲), ○(▼(MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume.
○ (or ▲ for 1 second or longer)	Plays from the beginning of the music. Plays the previous music in the folder or playlist when pressed within 1 second from the beginning of the music*1. During shuffle playback, the previous music is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
○ (or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next music in the folder or playlist*2. During shuffle playback, the next music is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
○ (1 second or longer)	Skips backward.
○ (1 second or longer)	Skips forward.
○ during pause	Move the marker of the playback position display (p.405) and press ● to play the music from the position.
#/*	Switches images when two or more jacket images are registered.
CLR	Ends playback.
⌐	Displays the music menu/music channel menu→p.412
1	Equalizer ON/OFF
2	Effect ON/OFF

*1: Press and hold ▲ to skip to the previous music consecutively.
*2: Press and hold ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) to skip to the next music consecutively.

NOTE

◆The volume set on the music player screen does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".

● If a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) is connected

The following operations are available with the switch:

Operation	Switch operation
Playing/Pausing	Press the switch to select between play/pause.
Playing the next music during playback	Press the switch twice in a row during playback.
Playing the previous music during playback	Press the switch three times in a row during playback. If the music has been played for more than three seconds, it goes back to the beginning.

Function menu (Music player screen)

● The settings can be changed during playback.

Change music*1	**▶Select a folder▶Select a track** Plays the selected track.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the music being played. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use ○ to switch pages.
Jacket image	**▶Use ○ to switch the jacket image▶●** Switches the jacket images of the music being played.
Sound effect	Selects the sound quality and effect for playing music.
• **Equalizer**	Selects the sound quality for playing music.
• **Pop** (default) • **Live** • **Vocal** • **Break** • **C.Light** • **Woofe** • **Ballad** • **Rap** • **Concert** • **Rock** • **Kiss** • **Loud**	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• **User1** • **User2** • **User3**	Sets customized sound quality you want to apply. **■To change the sound quality ▶✉ (Detail)▶Use ○ to set a frequency▶Use ○ to adjust the level▶●** **■To reset the sound quality to the default ▶✉ (FLAT)**
• **Effect**	Selects the effect for playing music.
• **Loud Enhanced** (default) • **Sparkle Enhanced** • **Bass Enhanced** • **Natural Enhanced** • **GrooveBass** • **Crystal** • **Panoramic Grandeur** • **Vivid** • **BBE M3**	Sets the effect for each music.

• **User1** • **User2** • **User3**	Sets customized effect you want to apply. ■**To change the effect** ▶(Detail)▶**Use** ◯ **to set an effect**▶**Use** ◯ **to adjust the level**▶● ■**To modify an existing effect** ▶(Detail)▶▯ **(Mode)**▶**Select an effect**▶● ■**To reset the effects to the default of the set mode** ▶ **(Init)**
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of the playback.
Repeat setting	Sets whether to repeat the music.
• **OFF** (default)	Does not repeat the currently played (paused) music.
• **Repeat**	Repeats all music in the folder.
• **Repeat 1**	Repeats the currently played (paused) music.
Shuffle (default: OFF)	Sets shuffle playback to ON or OFF.
Position to play*2	▶◯**Select a point where you want to start the playback**▶● Plays a part of music from the selected point.
Select ring tone	Sets the music being played as a ring tone.→p.126
• **Fullsong ring tone**	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
• **Point ring tone**	▶**Use** ◯ **to select a part to set as a ring tone**▶**Select any item** Sets the selected part of the music as a ring tone.
File property	Displays the information of the music being played. "Music information" →p.404
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the music being played.
Change skin	Selects a skin for the music player screen from "Standard", "Green Graphic", "Blue Geometric".
FM transmitter (default: OFF)	Sets FM transmitter to ON/OFF..
FM frequency (default: 86.9MHz)	Sets FM transmitter frequency ranging from 86.1 to 87.3MHz.

*1: You can only select music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) when changing music.
*2: Position to play is not available for some music.

NOTE

◆Select "Save" from the function menu while displaying the lyrics or jacket image to save it. Select "Image info" from the function menu to display the information about the lyrics or jacket image.

<Equalizer> <Effect>

◆Press 1 to reflect the sound quality settings, and press 2 to reflect the effect settings on the music player screen.

◆Some settings may cause clipping noise.

Using a playlist

Enjoy your favorite music in the order you prefer by adding the music to a playlist on your FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The numbers of tracks and playlists that can be stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) are:

Tracks	Up to 100
Playlists*	Up to 21 (including a list of all tracks)

*: Up to 99 tracks can be added to each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

- Music stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) (Chaku-Uta-Full®), music on the microSD memory card (Chaku-Uta-Full®), SD-Audio data and WMA data can be added to the same playlist.

Creating a playlist

1 Folder list screen (p.402)▶Select a folder▶Highlight music and press ▯ (FUNC)▶"Create playlist"▶Select any item

Set this	Adds the highlighted music to a playlist.
Set select	▶**Use** ◯ **to select a checkbox (☐)**▶ **(Finish)** Adds the selected multiple music to a playlist.
Set all	Adds all the music in the folder to a playlist.

2 Enter a playlist name

The playlist is created and the "Playlist music list" screen appears.

■**To play the playlist**
▶● (Play)

Playing a playlist

1 Folder list screen (p.402)▶"Playlist"

The "Playlist" screen appears.

■ **To play a playlist immediately**

▶✉ (Play)

The highlighted playlist is played.



Playlist

Function menu➡p.408

2 Select a playlist

The "Playlist music list" screen appears.

■ **If "All tracks (phone)" is selected**

The playlist containing all (playable) music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is displayed.



Playlist music list

Function menu➡p.408

3 ● (Play)

The playlist playback starts and music are played in the order you added them.

NOTE

◆The list of all tracks (phone) does not contain music in the pre-installed folder.

◆Deleting all music saved in a playlist also deletes the playlist itself.

◆" WMA " appears for a playlist created with Windows Media Player, " SD Audio " appears for a playlist created with SD-Jukebox on the playlist screen.

Function menu (Playlist screen)

Edit playlist name	**▶Edit a playlist name** Edits the highlighted playlist name. The title can contain up to 128 double-byte or 256 single-byte characters.
Copy to playlist	Create a copy of the highlighted playlist in the playlist list.
Search	Searches music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Playlist Info	Displays the playlist name, number of tracks in the playlist and playback time of the playlist.
Delete playlist	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted playlist.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the selected playlists.
• **Delete all**	Deletes all playlists.

Function menu (Playlist music list screen)

Create playlist	"Creating a playlist"→p.407
Edit playlist	
• **Sort playlist**	**▶Use ◯ to select a position and press ●** Rearranges the highlighted music in the playlist.
• **Add music**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Adds the selected multiple music to the last of the playlist.
• **Release settings**	
• **Release this**	Excludes the highlighted music from the playlist.
• **Release selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Excludes the selected multiple music from the playlist.
• **Release all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Excludes all music from the playlist and deletes the playlist.
File property	Displays information about the highlighted music. "Music information"→p.404
Search	Searches music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Sort	Sorts music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use ◯ to switch pages.
Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more images, use ◯ to switch images.
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.227) if the URL is included in the music.
List setting	Select the format of the playlist music list screen from "Title" or "Title+image".

NOTE

◆Even if music is excluded from a playlist, the original data is not deleted.

<Movable contents>

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

You can move movable Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD memory card. Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.340) under Music.

1 Music list screen (p.402)▶(FUNC)▶"Move to microSD"▶Select any item

Move this	**▶Select the destination folder▶●** Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶● ▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves the selected multiple Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶●▶"YES"** Moves all Chaku-Uta-Full® (except immovable ones) in the folder displayed as a list.

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- Partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® or Chaku-Uta-Full®/Uta-hodai tracks with playback restrictions that have expired cannot be moved to the microSD memory card.
- See "Allowable operation icon" (p.403) to check whether Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved.

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

You can move Chaku-Uta-Full® stored in the "Movable contents" folder under Music (p.340) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to Inbox under Music.

1 Folder list screen (p.402)▶"Movable contents"▶Select a folder▶●

The "Music list" screen (p.402) appears.

2 (FUNC)▶"Move to phone"▶Select any item

Move this	Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move selected	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves the selected multiple Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Moves all Chaku-Uta-Full® (except immovable ones) in the folder displayed as a list.

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions that have expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- See "File type icon" (p.403) to check whether Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved.

Saving SD-Audio Data to the microSD Memory Card

Use "SD-Jukebox" stored in the bundled "FOMA N904i CD-ROM" to convert music data acquired from a CD or via music delivery service to SD-Audio data and save them to the microSD memory card.

- The following are data format, number of playlists and number of tracks that are available on the FOMA terminal:

File format	MPEG2-AAC(LC)/ADTS Stream
Bit rate	16 to 128kbps
Number of tracks	Up to 999
Number of playlists*	Up to 100 (including a list of all tracks)

*: Up to 99 tracks can be added to each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

- If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.

* You can enjoy music stored on the microSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright and other rights.

1 Prepare the following

- PC that complies with the operating environment for "SD-Jukebox" (p.410)
- microSD memory card reader/writer compatible with copyright protection function*
- microSD memory card

*: This is required to copy data from a PC to the microSD memory card. The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is also available to use a FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.→p.373

2 Install the SD-Audio compatible music software "SD-Jukebox" on your PC

Installing→p.410

Continued on next page

3 Launch "SD-Jukebox" on the PC and convert music data stored on a CD, etc. to AAC format

For how to use "SD-Jukebox", see the "SD-Jukebox" help.
If the data are already converted, go on to Step 4.

4 Use "SD-Jukebox" to save SD-Audio data to the microSD memory card

NOTE

◆SD-Audio data saved using "SD-Jukebox" can be played on a FOMA terminal or added to a playlist stored on a FOMA terminal. However, a playlist stored in the "SD-Audio" folder cannot be edited on a FOMA terminal.

SD-Audio compatible music software (SD-Jukebox)

SD-Jukebox can be used to copy music data from a CD to a PC or record copied music data on an SD memory card or microSD memory card then play them with an SD-Audio-compatible player.

- Use SD-Jukebox to record music data on the microSD memory card, so that you can play them on your FOMA terminal.
- For more information about the operating environment, installation and uninstallation of SD-Jukebox, see "manual.pdf" stored under "SD-Jukebox" - "SD-JukeboxV6" - "External" - "JP" in the bundled "FOMA N904i CD-ROM". To see "manual.pdf" and the SD-Jukebox help (user guide), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the same CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

Installing SD-Jukebox

- Use a user account with administrator permissions to install the software. If a non-administrative account is used to install, an error occurs. For the administrative settings, check with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft.

1 Start Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i" into a PC

The CD-ROM runs automatically, and the menu screen appears.
Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended.
If your PC does not have the recommended version of the software or the menu does not appear after the CD-ROM is inserted, follow the steps below:

①Select "スタート" (Start) then "マイコンピュータ "(My Computer)
②Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
③Double-click "index.html"

2 Click "エンターテイメントツール" (Entertainment Tool)

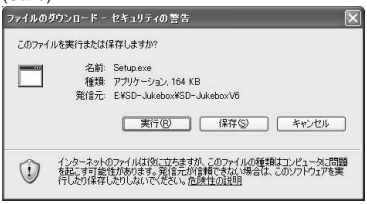
3 Click "インストール "(Install) in "SD-Jukebox"

When clicking "インストール" (Install), the warning screen as shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software.

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.

■ When "ファイルのダウンロードーセキュリティの警告 "(Download file－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行 "(Execute).
The software is not installed by clicking "保存" (Save).



■ When "Internet Explorerーセキュリティの警告 "(Internet Explorer－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行する" (Execute).



Follow the on-screen instructions.

NOTE

◆When installing SD-Jukebox, it is required to enter the serial number described on the CD-ROM sleeve. Keep the serial number in a safe place.

For this software, contact
Panasonic Software Help Desk (In Japanese only)
Everyday/Open: 9:00 - 20:00

From ordinary phones: 0120-853-334
From mobile phones: 0570-087-555 (Charged)

※Cannot be called from PHSs.

- Make sure that you dial the correct number.
- You can also refer to the web page.

http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/ (Only in Japanese)

Saving WMA Data to the microSD Memory Card

Convert music data in a music CD to WMA data with "Windows Media Player" and save to the microSD memory card.

- WMA data saved in the microSD memory card in another FOMA terminal may not be displayed on this FOMA terminal.
- The following are data format, number of playlists and number of tracks that are available on the FOMA terminal:

File format	WMA9 (Windows Media Audio 9 Standard)
Bit rate	32 to 192kbps
DRM	Windows Media DRM10 for Portable Devices
Number of tracks	Up to 999
Playlists*	Up to 100 (including a list of all tracks)

*: Up to 999 tracks can be added to each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

- Windows Media Player 10
  Use Windows XP Service Pack 2 or a later version to use Windows Media Player 10. For how to operate the software, see of Windows Media Player 10 help.
- If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.
  * You can enjoy music stored on the microSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright and other rights.

1 Prepare the following

- PC that complies with the operating environment for "Windows Media Player"
- microSD memory card

2 Launch "Windows Media Player" on the PC and convert music data in a music CD, etc to WMA format

If the music data is already converted, go on to Step 3.

3 USB mode setting screen (p.375)▶MTP mode

If MTP mode is set, " " appears.

4 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable

" " will appear when MTP mode is set, a microSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

5 Copying WMA data stored on a PC to a microSD memory card

6 Disconnect the FOMA USB Cable after the data transfer

7 Set back to "Communication mode" of "USB mode" of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

◆Do not remove the microSD memory card during or immediately after data transmission. It may cause the microSD memory card to malfunction.

◆Napster®
Music data can also be saved with using Napster®.

- Download Napster® application from the following webpage(as of April, 2007):
  http://www.napster.jp/
- For detailed information about Napster®, visit the following webpage(as of April, 2007):
  http://www.napster.jp/support/

Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player

The "assist key" is available for operating the music player and music channel.

Launch*	▶**Assist key (1 second or longer)** Starts the music player to play music.
While playing music	▶**Assist key** Pauses. ▶**Assist key (1 second or longer)** Ends playback and exits the music player or music channel.
While pausing	▶**Assist key** Resumes playback. ■**To resume playback while another function is being displayed** ▶**Assist key (1 second or longer)**
On the music list screen*	▶**Assist key** Starts playback. ▶**Assist key (1 second or longer)** Starts playback with the last played track.
On the playlist screen*	▶**Assist key (1 second or longer)** Starts playback with the last played track.

*: Not available for music channel.

● Pressing the assist key for 1 second or longer to start playback

Playback starts from the resumed point of the last played track. However, if the last playback went through the end of the playlist, the first track is to be played. If the tracks were played at shuffle last time, shuffle playback will go on.

- Even pressing the assist key for 1 second or longer does not start the music player while in Manner mode. However, it starts when an earphone is connected.

● Indicator display during playback

You can check the status of playback on the indicator display when the FOMA terminal is folded.



①Music player: track name, artist (ticker)
Music channel: artist, chapter title (ticker)

②Playback status
▶: Playing ❚❚: Pausing

③Auto timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.407)

④Music player: track number being played/Total number of tracks
Music channel: chapter number being played/Total number of chapters

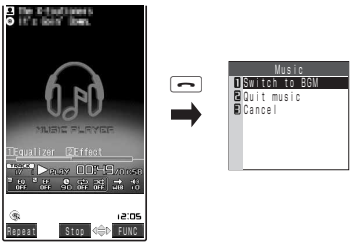
⑤Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.

⑥Playback mode
: Playing at repeat OFF
: Playing all repeatedly
: Playing one repeatedly (only for music player)
: Playing at shuffle (only for music player)
: Playing at shuffle OFF (only for music player)

<BGM play (background play)>

Using Other Functions During Music Playback

1 Music channel player screen (p.397) /Music player screen (p.402)▶ ▶"Switch to BGM"



The standby screen appears then you can use other functions.

■ Functions for the music menu/music channel menu

Switch to BGM	Displays the standby screen while playing a program/music. While using Music channel, "Background play" is applied.
Quit music Channel*1	Ends the program playback.
Quit music*2	Ends the music playback.
Cancel	Hides the menu.

*1: Only appears while playing a program with music channel.
*2: Only appears while playing music with music player.

● Functions available during BGM play

Function	Availability
Voice call/Video phone call/PushTalk	×
Mail	○*
i-mode	○
i-αppli	×
Data box	△
LifeKit	△
Phonebook	○
Own data	○
Settings	△
Service	△
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	○

○: Available △: Available partly ×: Unavailable
*: If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", receiving a message pauses playback. (receiving a message on the standby screen pauses playback even if you set "Operation preferred"). While composing a message, you cannot use some functions such as "Activate camera".

<FM transmitter>

Playing Music with Car Stereo or Audio Equipment

Default setting: OFF

You can output the sound of music channel or music player as FM radio wave to play with equipment that can receive FM radio such as a car stereo or audio product to play.

- You cannot use the FM transmitter in the following cases:
  - While Self mode is set
  - While connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) or other peripherals.
  - While charging.
- The FM transmitter of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. Use it only in Japan. You may be punished if you use it overseas.

<Example; To play with a car stereo while driving>

1 Music channel player screen (p.397) /Music player screen (p.402)▶● (FUNC)▶"FM transmitter"▶"ON"

Outputs FM radio wave, and stops the sound from the speaker of the FOMA terminal.

2 Adjust the frequency to the FM transmitter with the car stereo

Frequency is set to "86.9MHz" at the default.
"Set frequency of the FM transmitter" →p.413

NOTE

- ◆When you use this function, adjust the volume using the equipment that receives the sound. Take care of the volume adjustment of the receiver so that mega-volumed noise would occur after playback.
- ◆If the sound from the equipment is heard intermittently or a noise exists, change the orientation of the FOMA terminal. However, since the FM radio wave from the FOMA terminal is feeble, it may not be improved depending on the environment or equipment you are using.
- ◆Even in Manner mode, the FM radio wave can be output and the sound from the equipment is heard.
- ◆The FM radio wave output is stopped automatically in the following cases:
  - When you activate other functions and this function cannot be used.
  - After 1 minutes have elapsed with pausing the playback.
- ◆To change to other music while playing a playlist, select "Change music" from the function menu of the music player screen. This function is deactivated when you press CLR and select other music on the playlist music list screen to play.
- ◆Noise or sound interruption may occur if there is an interference between the receiver device and the FOMA terminal or if there is a metal object near the FOMA terminal.
- ◆This function is available when you are outside the service area.
- ◆Ring tone for phone calls or mails and alarm tone sounds from the speaker on the FOMA terminal even during FM radio wave output. The FM radio wave output stops in the meantime. After the call/communication has been disconnected and Music channel or Music player has resumed, the FM radio wave output restarts.

Set frequency of the FM transmitter<FM frequency>

Default setting	FM frequency: 86.9MHz

- Set the FM frequency other than those used by broadcasting stations.

1 Music channel player screen (p.397) /Music player screen (p.402)▶● (FUNC)▶"FM frequency"

2 Use ◎ or ◎ to select frequency (from 86.1MHz ~ 87.3MHz)▶●

Other Convenient Functions

Multi Access..... Multi access 416
Multitask..... Multitask 417
Using the Assist Key to Read out Messages or Alarms ..... Assist key 418
Setting Alarm Mode ..... Alarm setting 419
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock ..... Alarm 422
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries ..... Schedule 423
Adding To Do List Items..... To Do list 427
Storing Your Name and Image..... My Profile 428
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice ..... Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo (in-standby) 430
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones ..... Voice announce 431
Checking Call Times and Charges ..... Call data 432
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm ..... Notice designate calls 433
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator ..... Calculator 434
Composing Text Memos ..... Text memo 434
Using Dictionaries..... Dictionary 435
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch ..... Earphone/microphone with switch 436
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected ..... Auto dial setting 437
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/Microphone Attached..... Automatic answer 438
Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone ..... Select microphone 438
Resetting Function Settings..... Reset settings 438
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default..... Initialize 440

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, use packet communication and SMS at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.
"Multi Access Combination Patterns"
→p.501

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

By using the multi access function, a FOMA terminal can concurrently use the three communication lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli or i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- Multi access is not available during a PushTalk call or 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

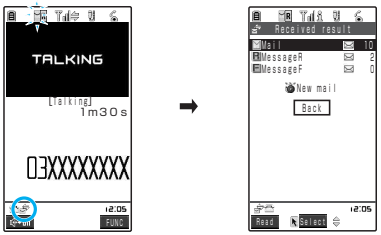
When you receive a call or mail during communication

Receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

1 (ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select "Transmission" and press ●

The reception results screen for the i-mode mail appears.
Switching tasks→p.418



2 Checking the i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail→p.262

3 (ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select "Talking" and press ●

The voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/ MessageF during a voice call, the "Mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF" icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If no operations are performed on the reception results screen, the in-call screen reappears.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

1 📞

The voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without answering a voice call

▶(ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●

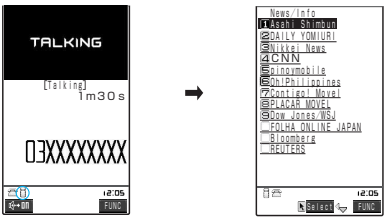
The caller hears ringing without a message.

2 To end the call, press 📵

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call

▶(ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●



Using two types of communication simultaneously

Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch screens during multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area.→p.418

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

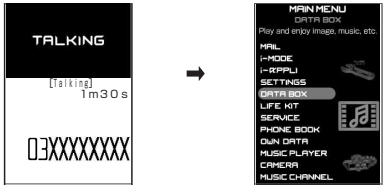
During a voice call, press (MENU) and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode.→p.212

Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, press (MENU) and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a voice call▶(MENU)▶Select the Mail menu

Using menus→p.32



2 Compose an i-mode mail▶Send it

Creating and sending an i-mode message→p.243

3 (ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select "☎Talking" and press ●

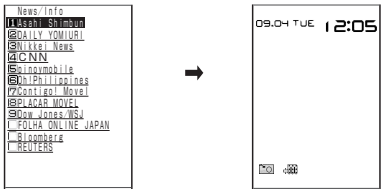
The voice in-call screen reappears.

Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode▶(MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

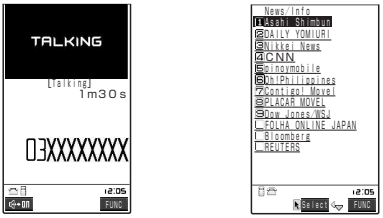
Making voice calls→p.51

3 To end the call, press ⌐

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call**

▶(ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●



NOTE

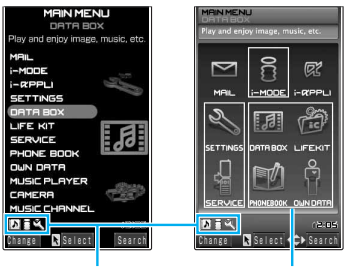
- If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the "Disconnecting" message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.
- When you attempt to make a PushTalk call during i-mode, a message asking whether to disconnect i-mode appears. Select "YES" to disconnect i-mode and make the call. When the PushTalk call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multitask>

Multitask

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 3 functions can be performed at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.

"Multitask Combination Patterns"→p.502



The running tasks are expressed by icons.

The running groups are enclosed by frames.

Group	Main menu item (task)
Mail	MAIL
i-mode	i-MODE
i-αppli	i-αPPLI
Settings	SETTINGS and SERVICE
Tools	DATA BOX, LIFE KIT, PHONE BOOK and OWN DATA

- The Music group is included in addition to the groups shown above, which does not appear as a main menu item and contains the Music Player or Music Channel during playback of them.

Continued on next page

- While receiving a Music Channel program , a function enters the "operated" mode and the task icon "" appears.
- The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While using a task▶(MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. It may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not currently running

■ **To activate a task from the main menu**
▶(MENU)▶Select a task→p.32

■ **To activate a task using the menu number**
▶(MENU)▶Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate→p.486

■ **To activate a task from the Mail menu**
▶(✉)(MAIL)→p.242

■ **To activate a task from the i-mode menu**
▶(i)(i-mode)→p.212

NOTE

◆When you try to activate another task from the group in which you are currently editing data, the message "XXX Cancel editing and switch?" (XXX is a task name such as Mail or i-mode or group name) appears. Select "YES" to end the editing and switch tasks. Select "NO" to return to the previous screen. If having no edited data, you can directly activate the selected task.

◆In the following cases, one task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail. If 3 tasks are already running and you try to perform one of the operations below, a message notifying that the task cannot run appears. End a task not belonging to the Mail group and then perform the operation. "Ending tasks"→p.418

- Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
- Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
- Using a template to create a Deco-mail
- Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
- Editing a sent mail
- Editing a draft mail

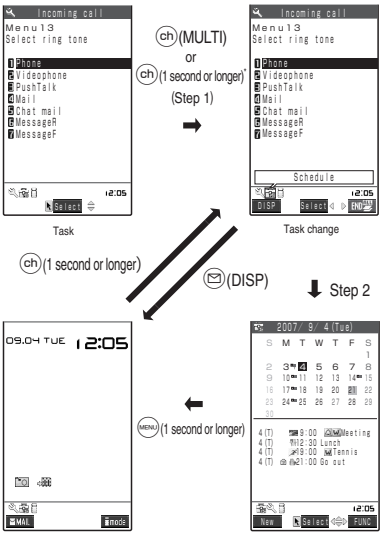
Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

1 While activating multiple tasks▶(ch) (MULTI) or (ch) (for 1 second or longer)*

The "Task change" screen appears.

2 Use (ch) (MULTI) or (◎) to select a task icon you want to switch and press (●)



*: To switch tasks on the standby screen, the "Phonebook list" screen (tabs) or the member/group member list in the PushTalk phonebook, press (ch) (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to show the "Task change" screen. On the standby screen, you can also switch tasks by selecting a task icon on the task icon display area with the Neuropointer.

Ending tasks

■ **To end a task**
- Open the task screen you want to end▶(end)
- On the task change screen, select a task icon you want to end (end)▶"YES"

■ **To end all tasks**
- On the task change screen▶(i)(END ALL)▶"YES"

<Assist key>

Using the Assist Key to Read out Messages or Alarms

When receiving a message or alarm, press the Assist key, so that the FOMA terminal reads out the contents.

- The assist key is also available to operate the Music Player.→p.411

NOTE

◆Voice reading out text may be heard around you, so move to an area where it will not disturb other people before starting reading out.

◆A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". When "Silent" or "Step" is set, "Level 2" is applied.

Reading out mail messages

- Set "Read out received mail" under "Read out setting" to "ON" beforehand. You can select a voice under "Select voice".→p.276
- Messages are read out only when "Select language" is set to "日本語" (Japanese).

Reading out a new message when the FOMA terminal is folded

When "✉" appears on the indicator display, the message can be read out with the FOMA terminal folded.

- To have the folded FOMA terminal read out the data, set "External keys guard" to "OFF" beforehand.→p.174

1 Press the Assist key with the FOMA terminal folded▶Press the Assist key again within 10 seconds

The FOMA terminal starts to read out the mail or chat mail message.

■ **If "Info notice setting" is set to "OFF"**

Readout starts when the Assist key is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.

Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is opened

Message can be read out when:

- You receive a mail/chat mail message with the FOMA terminal opened and the reception screen appears
- You perform "Check new messages" and the checking screen appears
- The received mail detail screen appears

<Example: When the Check new messages is performed>

1 Press the Assist key while the checking result screen appears

A FOMA terminal starts to read out the received mail or chat mail messages.

■ **When multiple new mails or chat mails are received**

A FOMA terminal reads out mails in reverse chronological order of reception date. Pressing the Assist key or ⟳ during reading out enables the terminal to read out the next mail. After completing the reading out, the terminal automatically starts reading out the next mail.

NOTE

- ◆When you press the Assist key or ⟳ during reading out, a FOMA terminal emits the bleep sound before reading out the next mail. If the terminal has no more mail to read out, it emits the "pipip" tone and ends the reading out.
- ◆After the reception or checking results screen ends and the other screen such as the standby screen appears, message cannot be read out even if the Assist key is pressed.
- ◆Opening or folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt the readout operation.
- ◆MessageR/MessageF cannot be read out.
- ◆A new mail/chat mail message is not read out:
  - When a mail-connected i-αppli mail message or SMS report is received
  - During a call or communication (except packet communication)
  - In Manner mode if no equipment such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected
  - During playback of a Music Player/Music Channel
- ◆If the sender's name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification "○○さんからのメール" (This is from ○○). However, the voice notification is not given on the received mail detail screen.

Reading out the alarm message during the alarm

When the FOMA terminal is folded and you receive an alarm notification, pressing the Assist key during the alarm notification stops the alarm and reads out the alarm message.

- Only when setting "Info notice setting" to "ON", it reads out.

1 Press the Assist key during the alarm

Readout starts.
The following table shows the contents to be read out:

Alarm type	Contents
Alarm	Current time
Schedule	Up to 20 characters of the schedule summary or contents→p.424
To Do list	Up to 20 characters of the event contents→p.427

NOTE

- ◆If you press the Assist key during readout, the readout stops.
- ◆Scheduled events stored as secret data are not read out (except in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode").
- ◆The voice reading out an alarm message cannot be changed.
- ◆An alarm message is not read out when the FOMA terminal is opened.

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode

Default setting: Alarm preferred

You can select either "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" as the alarm setting for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Alarm setting"▶"Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred"

Continued on next page

■ **When Operation preferred is selected**
The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

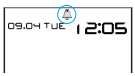
■ **When Alarm preferred is selected**
The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions

When you set an alarm for the "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

● When you set an alarm

When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list", an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ **For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**
"" appears.

■ **For alarms set for tomorrow or later**
"" appears.

NOTE

◆If Schedule or To Do list item is stored with "OFF" selected, neither "" nor "" appears.

● When the specified time is reached

An alarm is given as follows for each function.



Alarm*1



Schedule*1



To Do list*1

Change status	Function	
	Alarm	Schedule To Do list
Standby screen shown	If "Snooze OFF" is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified ring time (01 to 10 minutes). If "Snooze ON" is selected, the alarm tone first sounds once (for 1 minute), then it sounds repeatedly at the interval specified for the ring interval and the number of times specified for the number of times of a ring (for 1 minute). An animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If "Auto power ON" is selected for the "Auto power ON" setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to "Auto power OFF", the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The "" (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A Voice call, Videophone call or PushTalk call in progress*2	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal's earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Making/ Receiving a Voice call, Videophone or PushTalk*2	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm is given, the alarm tone sounds and an animation appears on the display and indicator display. When an alarms is not given at the setting time, the alarm tone sounds after becoming the condition of giving.	
i-mode or sending/ receiving a mail*2	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed".	
Infrared data exchange, iC communication or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the "" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.421	
Earphone/ microphone connected	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed". The alarm sounds both through the earphone and speaker according to the setting of "Earphone".	
PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry screen is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on.*2	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed". When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.

Change status	Function	
	Alarm	Schedule To Do list
Dial lock/ Omakase Lock/ Original lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When Original lock is set, the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking.→p.421	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When Original lock is set, the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking.→p.421

*1: The animation shown for the "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list", the image appears during the alarm.

*2: This operation is performed when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.→p.421

NOTE

◆The alarm volume for "Schedule" and "To Do list" follows the "Phone" setting under "Ring volume".

◆The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".

◆Even if "Snooze ON" is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm during a call.

◆Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.

◆Even if an i-motion is set in "Alarm tone", the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

◆When the "Alarm", "Schedule" and "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows.

①Alarm ②To Do list ③Schedule

To stop an alarm tone

Alarm

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message "Snooze..." appears. After the "Snooze..." message appears for the time specified for the ring interval setting, the alarm is given again. If you press [ ] while the "Snooze..." message appears, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is released.

Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any external key with a FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm" snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

◆Snooze is canceled when:

- A voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call is received
- "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting" and then the alarm for Alarm, Schedule or To Do list is given

◆If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶" "

The missed alarm information for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" appears.



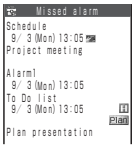
2 Check the details▶CLR

The standby screen reappears and the " " (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarms have been set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.



◆To clear the desktop icon "MISS", press CLR for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

<Alarm> MENU 44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

Default setting
All OFF

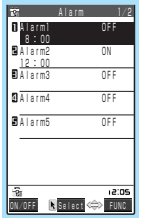
● Up to 10 alarms can be stored.

Setting Alarm

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Alarm"

The "Alarm" screen appears. If you have set the Alarm before, the previously specified settings appear.

2 Select an item to set ▶Set the respective parameters▶(✉) (Finish)



Alarm

Function menu➡p.423

Title	**▶Enter a title** Enters the details of an alarm. A subject can consist of up to 6 double-byte or 12 single-byte characters. The entered subject appears on the screen during the alarm.
Time setting	**▶Enter a time** Enters a time when the alarm will sound.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of the alarm.
• **1 time**	Sounds the alarm only once.
• **Daily (D)**	Sounds the alarm every day.
• **Select day (W)**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)** Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
Clock Alarm Tone	Selects an alarm tone.
• **Clock Alarm Tone**	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set".
• **Melody**	**▶Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Music**	**▶Select a folder** Selects a track.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
• **Random melody**	**▶Select a folder** Automatically selects a ring tone to set it as an alarm tone.
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Volume	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume▶●** Sets the alarm tone volume.
Snooze setting	Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.
• **ON**	**▶Enter the number of times of a ring (01 to 10 times)▶Enter the ring interval (01 to 10 minutes)** The alarm tone first sounds once (for 1 minute), then it sounds repeatedly at the specified interval and number of times (for 1 minute).
• **OFF**	**▶Enter the alarm time (01 to 10 minutes)** Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time.
Auto power ON	Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.

NOTE

◆When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON" and a melody or i-motion downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the "alarm tone" sounds due to the FOMA card operational restriction function.

◆Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm screen)

Edit	Edits an alarm.
Finish(Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm settings.

<Schedule> MENU 45

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms→p.419

1 (MENU)▶**"LIFE KIT"**▶**"Schedule"**

The "Schedule" screen appears.



Schedule

Function menu➡p.423

Function menu (Schedule screen)

New	"Adding schedule events"→p.424 "Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.424
Weekly display, Monthly display	"Changing the schedule display mode"→p.424
Icon display	▶**Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon"→p.425
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.428)
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", entries stored as secret events also appear.
iC trans. all **Send all Ir data**	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.
Delete	
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉)(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶Select any item▶"YES"** Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past***	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the highlighted day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

*: Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

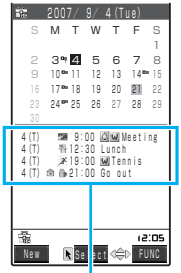
NOTE

◆Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.

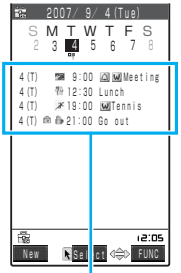
◆Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: "Monthly display" and "Weekly display". Use ⊕ to select a date so that you can check the number and icons of schedule and To Do list stored on the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

Blue date: Saturday
Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday
Pink date: Anniversary
__: Today
□: There is an event scheduled for the morning.
■: There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.
T : There is a To Do list item.

Public holidays are based on "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成17年法律第43号までのもの）" (the Public Holiday Law and the partially amended version of the Elder Law (Up to 2005, No. 43)). The official dates of vernal and autumnal equinoxes are gazetted on February 1 the previous year, and they may differ from ones preset on the FOMA terminal (as of April, 2007).

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: To store a holiday>

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Schedule"▶ (Mail) (New)▶"Holiday"

■ To store an anniversary
▶"Anniversary"

2 Set the respective parameters▶ (Mail) (Finish)

Date setting	**▶Enter the date** Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
• **1 time**	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
• **Annually (Y)**	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.
Edit holiday/ Edit anniversary	**▶Enter a message** Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

NOTE

◆If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

1 Schedule screen (p.423)▶ (Mail) (New)▶"Schedule"▶Set the respective parameters▶ (Mail) (Finish)

Edit schedule	**▶Enter a message▶Select an icon** Enters the scheduled event details. Contents can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the plan appears on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and plan are entered, the summary appears first and the plan next.
Date setting (from)*	**▶Enter "Start Year", "Start Date" and "Start Time"** Enters the start date and time for the schedule event.
Date setting (to)*	**▶Enter "End Year", "End Date" and "End Time"** Enters the end date and time for the schedule event.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of the scheduled event.
• **1 time**	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
• **Daily (D)**	Sets the event to repeat every day.
• **Select day (W)**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)** Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun. to Sat.).

Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the start date and time is reached.
• **ON**	An alarm is given at the start date and time.
• **ON/Set time**	▶**Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes)** Sets how many minutes before the start date and time the alarm is given.
• **OFF**	No alarm is given when the start time is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone.
• **Clock Alarm Tone**	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set".
• **Melody**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	▶**Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Music**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a track.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.431
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Edit summary	▶**Enter a message** Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.

*: Selecting this option shows the "Date setting" screen on which you can set both Date (from) and Date (to) of Date setting.

NOTE

◆If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.
◆If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.
◆Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
◆If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.
◆If you store a schedule event during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as "" to "" on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given. Also, "" appears on the indicator display.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.423)▶ (FUNC)▶"User icon settg."▶ "<Not recorded>"

To change a user icon already set
▶Choose an item you want to change



To cancel all the user icon settings
▶"Release all"▶"YES"
This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders.
Selecting images→p.342



To cancel an icon set for schedule events
▶"Release this"▶"YES"

To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events
▶"Release this"

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is previewed. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

To preview
▶Select an image to preview▶ (Play)

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when "" is set.

Checking schedule details

Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.423)▶Select the date for which the scheduled event to check is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.
The following icons appear on the list screen:



Schedule list

Function menu➡p.426

: Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored.
: A holiday is stored.
: An anniversary is stored.
: There is a To Do list item.
: An alarm is set.
: Repeated daily
: Repeated weekly
: Repeated annually
: There is more than one day from the start date and time and to the end date and time.

2 Select an item to check in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	"Adding schedule events"→p.424 "Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.424
Edit	Edits schedule entries.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	**▶Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (or) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon"→p.425
Switch To Do list	Switches to the "To Do list" screen (p.428).
Release secret	"Changing secret data back to normal"→p.164
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Attach to mail	Composes a message with a schedule entry attached.→p.252
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data	
Copy to microSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted schedule entry.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple schedule entries.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all schedule entries.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted schedule entry.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select any item▶"YES"** Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past**	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

NOTE

◆Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
◆Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
◆If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete selected" to delete scheduled events which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting "YES" deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.
◆When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.

<To Do list> MENU95

Adding To Do List Items

You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- To Do list alarms →p.419

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".
- You can set from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037 on "Due date" or "Completion date".

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"To Do list"▶(Mail) (New)

■ **To add a new item when other items have been stored**
▶(i) (FUNC)▶"New"

■ **To edit an already stored item**
▶Select an item to edit▶(Mail) (Edit)

2 Set the respective parameters▶(Mail) (Finish)

Contents	**▶Enter the details of an item** Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
Due date	
• **Enter date**	**▶Enter the date and time** Enters the date and time.
• **Choose date**	**▶Select a date from the calendar▶Enter a time** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a due date.
Priority	
• H	Sets H (high) priority.
• L	Sets L (low) priority.
• **None**	Does not set priority.
Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• **ON**	An alarm is given on the due date.
• **ON/Set time**	**▶Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes)** Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given.
• **OFF**	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone.
• **Clock Alarm Tone**	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set".
• **Melody**	**▶Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Music**	**▶Select a folder** Selects a track.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.431
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Completion date*	
• **Enter date**	**▶Enter the date** Enters the date.
• **Choose date**	**▶Select a date from the calendar** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a completion date.

*: Shown only when you edit an existing item whose "Status" is "Completion".

NOTE

◆If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the date the To Do list item is stored (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.
◆If you store an item during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Continued on next page

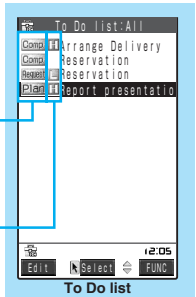
Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

Checking items

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"To Do list"

The "To Do list" screen appears.



Shows the entry status. The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.

To Do list

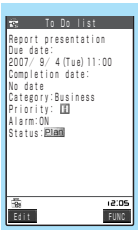
Function menu➡p.428

2 Select an item to check

■ **To edit an item**

▶(✉) (Edit)

"Adding and editing items" →p.427



To Do list detail

Function menu➡p.428

Function menu (To Do list screen/ To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items" →p.427
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the "Schedule" screen (p.423).
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display*	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter*	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.149
Attach to mail	Composes a message with a To Do list item attached. →p.252
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all*	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" →p.382
Send all Ir data*	
Copy to microSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted To Do list item.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use (○) to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple To Do list items.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all the To Do list items.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected item.
• **Delete selected***	▶**Use (○) to select a checkbox (□)▶(✉) (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple items.
• **Delete completed***	Deletes a finished item.
• **Delete all***	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all items.

*: Available only on the To Do list screen.

<My Profile> MENU 0

Storing Your Name and Image

Default setting: Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your Own number.
- Items other than Own number are stored on a FOMA terminal. Even if a different FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the items stored on your FOMA terminal appear except for Own number.

Showing My Profile

This function only shows your name, Own number and the first e-mail address listed.

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"My Profile"

The "My Profile" screen appears.
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting "Display all data" from the function menu and entering your security code.



My Profile

Function menu➡p.429

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, press ⇔ in the "My Profile" screen to show the information of Number B. A appears in the "My Profile" screen of Number A, B appears in the "My Profile" screen of Number B.

◆Information on the Number B and Address B of 2in1 can be obtained using each operation shown below:

- Number B: In the "My Profile" screen of Number B, run a function menu "Check 2in1"
- Address B: Run the "Acquire Automatically" function on your e-mail address while storing My Profile of Number B.

◆Reset My Profile in B mode when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM) while using 2in1.→p.429

Function menu (My Profile screen)

Edit	"Storing My Profile" →p.429
Display all data	**▶Enter your security code▶Use ⇔ to check the details**
Copy name	Copies a name stored in My Profile. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Copy phone number*1	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Attach to mail*2	Composes a message with My Profile data attached.
Run i-αppli*3	Displays an i-αppli list screen.
Read a map*3	Uses the location information stored in My profile to connect to the location site.
Paste to mail*3	Composing a message with a location information URL pasted.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	"Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card" →p.369
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Check 2in1*4	**▶Enter your security code** Obtains information on Number B and stores it in the "My Profile" screen of Number B.
Reset	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Resets (deletes) the My Profile other than your Own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected "Display all data" to show the My Profile, you do not need to enter your security code.
Delete phone No.*5	Deletes the phone number currently shown.

*1: Depending upon what you have selected, "Copy mail add.", "Copy address", "Copy loc. Info", "Copy birthday", or "Copy memorandums" is displayed.
*2: Available with "Display all data".
*3: Available when selecting the location information with "Display all data".
*4: Available while My Profile screen of Number B in 2in1 is displayed.
*5: Depending upon what you have selected, "Delete mail add.", "Delete address", "Delete loc. Info", "Delete birthday", "Delete memorandums", or "Delete image" is displayed.

Storing My Profile

1 (MENU)▶"LIFE KIT"▶"My Profile"▶ (✉) (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Set the respective parameters▶(✉) (Finish)

FN Last name	**▶Enter your last name** Enters your last name. The last name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters including your "First name", consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
R Reading	**▶Enter the reading of your last name** Enters the reading of your last name. Entering your last name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters including the "Reading" of your "First name", consisting of katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
N First name	**▶Enter your first name** Enters your first name. Enterable characters are the same as entering your last name.
R Reading	**▶Enter the reading of your first name** Enters the reading of your first name. Entering your first name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. Enterable characters are the same as entering the reading of your last name.
☎ Phone number	**▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon** Adds a phone number other than your Own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows "☎<Not stored>" on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.

Continued on next page

Mail address	**▶"Direct Input"▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon** Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Select "Acquire Automatically" to automatically get the set e-mail address from i-mode Center. Storing the first e-mail address shows "<Not stored>" on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. **■To edit a stored e-mail address ▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon**
Address	**▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a prefecture▶Enter a city▶Enter a street▶Enter an apartment name, etc.▶(Finish)** Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can be stored up to 7 single-byte digits. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.*
Location information	**▶Select a method of storing location information** Stores the present location by GPS or from Location history.
Birthday	**▶Enter a birthday** Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	**▶Enter a memo** Enters a memo (short note).A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Sets an image to be shown for your personal data.
• **Photo mode**	Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data.
• **Select image**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an image.
• **Release this**	Cancels the image set for your personal data.

*: An address except the ZIP code can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters as the total of prefecture, city, town, street, apartment, etc.

NOTE

◆Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored in this function until you change it manually.

Quoting personal data (My Profile)

Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal and quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen or i-mode.

<Example: To quote personal data on the i-mode site>

The items to select are different according to the site.

1 Display a site to quote the personal data



2 Select "Quote My Profile"▶Enter your security code

Quotable items are listed.

■To select items to quote

▶Use ◎ to clear checkboxes of items that you will not quote

■When 2in1 is set to Dual mode▶ "My Profile A" of "My Profile B"

3 (Finish)

The items to be quoted are automatically entered.



NOTE

◆When you quote a street address on the Text entry or i-mode site, a space may be entered between items.

◆When you quote the My Profile, the data except the items entered automatically are not quoted.

<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo (in-standby)>

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo is divided into two types. "Voice memo (in-call)" enables you to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call whereas "Voice memo (in-standby)" enables you to record your own voice while the standby screen appears.

- You can record either one voice memo (in-call) or one voice memo (in-standby), which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos →p.82

Recording the other party's voice during a call

1 During a call▶▼ (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the in-call screen.



In-call

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR, ☎ or ▼ (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

Pressing ☎ ends the call as well as recording. Pressing CLR does not stop recording during a videophone call.

NOTE

◆If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm, recording stops.
◆You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.
◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, when you record the other party's voice received at the unused number, "★" does not appear on the "Play/Erase msg." screen and you cannot play the voice memo.
◆While you are holding a voice call, you can activate Voice memo (in-call) to record voice by following the steps below:
▶MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Voice memo*"
*: "Voice memo (in-call)" may appear as the menu item depending on the menu theme.

Recording your voice in standby mode MENU43

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Voice memo*"▶"YES"▶Record a voice memo

*: "Voice memo (in-standby)" may appear as the menu item depending on the menu theme.

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the "LIFE KIT" list screen.

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce> MENU91

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- You can record a memo for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:
  - Ring tone
  - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
  - Ring tone for Multi Number
  - Ring tone for Number B of 2in1
  - On hold tone
  - Holding tone
  - Answer message for Record message
  - Alarm tone for Alarm
  - Alarm tone for Schedule
  - Alarm tone for To Do list
  - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Voice announce"▶Select an item to record voice▶"YES"



Voice announce

Function menu➡p.432

2 Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ during recording returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

◆You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.
◆If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Voice announce"▶Select an item to record voice

■ **To stop playback**

▶●, CLR or ☎

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data> MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is a total of dialed and received call times, and indicated respectively for voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
- Charges are only indicated for dialed calls. If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥＊＊" appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
  * Charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) is not available to be displayed FOMA terminals released before the models below.
    • 901i series
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.
- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.
- If you have subscribed to the 2in1, the total amount of Number A/B appears as the Call times and Total calls cost.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Call data"

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. "Talk" shows the charge for voice calls and "Digital" for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0"). "Talk" shows the total duration of voice calls and "Digital" does the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds "199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the call time count returns to 0 second.
- Call time and charge are not counted during PushTalk calls, i-mode or packet communication or Chaku-moji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received at the time of contract.
- The time during receiving or making a call and switching between a voice and videophone call is not counted.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge for the last call to "0 second" and "¥＊＊" respectively.
- The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- International call charges when you use WORLD CALL are counted. Other international calls are not counted.

Resetting the total calls time and cost <Reset total> MENU60

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Reset total"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
Reset total cost	**▶"YES"▶Enter the PIN2 code** Resets the accumulated charge.

Resetting charges automatically

<Auto reset total cost> Default setting: OFF

You can set the accumulated charge shown in "Call data" to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Auto reset total cost"▶Enter your security code

2 "Auto reset"▶Select any items

ON	**▶Enter the PIN2 code** Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code→p.158
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

NOTE

◆The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
◆If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
◆If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
◆Setting Auto reset total cost to "ON" and changing the month in "Set time" reset the total call charges automatically.
◆When Auto reset total cost is set to "ON", the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
◆Auto reset total cost is set to "OFF" if:
- You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
- You press CLR on the PIN2 code entry screen displayed when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
- The PIN2 code is locked. →p.159
- The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting	Cost limit setting: Not set Notify cost limit: OFF

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in "Call data" exceeds the specified cost limit.

- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Notice designate calls"▶Enter your security code▶Set the respective parameters▶✉(Finish)

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between 10 and 100,000 by 10.
Notify setting	
• **Notify cost limit**	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting "OFF" does not given an alarm. Setting "ON" gives an alarm following the settings of "Alarm tone" and "Volume".
• **Alarm tone**	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item. "Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder.
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as an alarm tone.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.431
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
• **Volume**	Use ◉ to set the alarm tone volume.

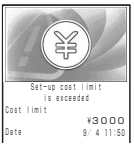
NOTE

◆The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in "Phone vol. " under "Original".
◆The charges for PushTalk calls, i-mode and packet communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received at the time of contract.

● Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

■ When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to other than "OFF"



When the accumulated call charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm sounds for about five minutes after three seconds after calling with the screen which notifies that. To stop the alarm, press any key. After the alarm, pressing CLR or ⏻ shows the "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.

■ When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to "OFF"

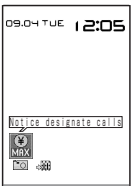
When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Checking the details of "¥MAX"(Notice designate calls)

Selecting the "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen▶◉▶"¥MAX"▶Enter your security code

The alarm information on "Notice designate calls" is shown.



2 Check the details▶◉

The standby screen reappears and the "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆The " " (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls charge in "Cost limit setting".
◆If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.
◆You can choose the alarm mode between "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" in "Alarm setting".

<Calculator> MENU85

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (+ (addition), - (subtraction), x (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

- The number can contain up to 10 digits. It can also contain up to 9 digits after decimal point.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with ".E".

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Calculator"▶Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

■ To calculate "23 + 57"

2 3 + 5 7 =

[2] [3] ○ [5] [7] ●



■ To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert "-" before the first digit.

− 2 3 + 5 7 =

○ [2] [3] ○ [5] [7] ●

NOTE

◆CLR (AC or C) is available as follows:
- Pressing +, -, x, ÷ or = shows AC. Pressing CLR allows you to recalculate from scratch.
- When C appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing CLR allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

<Text memo> MENU42

Composing Text Memos

The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Text memo"

The "Text memo" screen appears.



Text memo

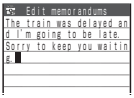
Function menu➡p.434

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo

▶Select an item to edit▶ (Edit)

3 Compose a memo



NOTE

◆Highlighting "<Not recorded>" on the "Text memo" screen and pressing ● also enables you to compose a text memo.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

1 MENU▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Text memo"▶Select an item to check in detail▶Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.243
Edit schedule	"Adding schedule events"→p.424
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" →p.382
Send all Ir data	
Copy to microSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted text memo.

• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple text memos.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all text memos.
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a highlighted text memo into "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected text memo.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple text memos.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all text memos.

<Dictionary>

Using Dictionaries

● Using dictionaries from other functions→p.436

Activating a dictionary

1 MENU **▶"LIFE KIT"▶"Dictionary"**

The "Dictionary" screen appears.



Dictionary

Function menu➡p.435

2 Select any item

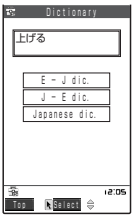
Enter word	**▶Enter a word** A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Access reader	**▶"Dic. (Japanese)" or "Dic. (English)"▶Scan text** Enters a word from the access reader. "Scanning Text"→p.206
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. "Using reference history"→p.435

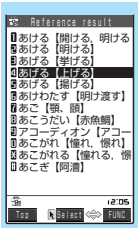
3 Select the dictionary type

The "Reference result (list)" screen appears.
If there is no word candidate, a cursor is placed on the closest word from the entered character.

■ **To open the previous or next list**

▶Reference result (list) screen▶◯





Reference result (list)

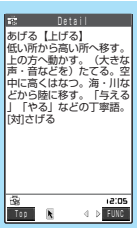
Function menu➡p.435

4 Select a word from the reference result list

The "Reference result (detail)" screen appears.

■ **To view the previous or next word**

▶Reference result (detail) screen▶◯



Reference result (detail)

Function menu➡p.436

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.435)▶"Reference history"

The "Reference history" screen appears.



Reference history

Function menu➡p.435

2 Select a word

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionary, characters in brackets (【】) in search results are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search results are copied. The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Change window*1	Switches the screen between Reference result and Edit.
Copy	Copies the text selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied text can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Re-reference	"Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen"→p.436
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit*2	Edits text referring to the searched word. "Changing the active window"→p.445

*1: Shown only when switching the window is available.
*2: Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

1. **Reference result (detail) screen (p.435)▶(FUNC)▶"Re-reference"**
2. **▶Press ● on the first character of the string to search for**
3. **▶Move the cursor to the end of the string to search for, then press ●**
4. **Select the dictionary type▶Select a word from the reference result list**

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dic." from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- A webpage or screen memo

■When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".
Selecting "Select area" allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

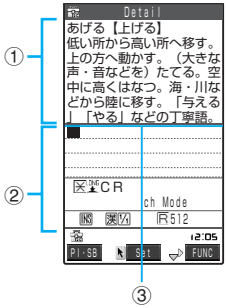
■When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

You can select "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".
Selecting "Select area" allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo

You can select "Enter word", "Site refer(enter)" or "Reference history".
Selecting "Site refer(enter)" allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.

Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting "Refer edit" or "Site refer(enter)" splits the screen into the upper and lower.
Selecting "Change window" from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②.
Moving the Neuropointer onto a window to activate also enables you to switch the active window.

■When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen

① shows the dictionary detail screen.
② shows the text edit screen.
③ draws a border line.
To exit the dictionary, select "Quit dic." from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press (End).

■When you select Site refer(enter) from a webpage or screen memo

① shows the webpage or screen memo.
② shows the word entry screen.
③ draws a border line.
Enter a word and then press ●. The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cap and insert the connecting plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into the socket.→p.24
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the "Keypad sound" setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call or PushTalk call.

- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal during a call may generate noise.

Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting" (p.437).
Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting".

■ To make calls from the phonebook list screen

▶Phonebook list screen (p.112)▶Select a phonebook entry▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.
You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (list)" screen or "Received calls (list)" screen.

■ To make calls from the phonebook detail screen

▶Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶Select a phone number▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number.
You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (detail)" screen (p.60) or "Received calls (detail)" screen (p.62).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ To receive voice calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ To receive videophone calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting "Substitute image" from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

■ To answer PushTalk calls

A FOMA terminal emits the confirmation tone and answers a PushTalk call.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- ◆You can set "Earphone" to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- ◆A ring tone does not sound if "Phone", "Videophone" or "PushTalk" under "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or while in Manner mode.
- ◆While in Manner mode (Manner mode or Super silent mode), sound only comes out of the earphone.
- ◆The beeps sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol." is not "Silent" according to the setting in "Earphone".
- ◆If you subscribe to "Call Waiting", you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.
- ◆Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting: OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Auto dial setting"▶"ON"

■ To not dial automatically

▶"OFF"

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.112)▶Show a phone number to set▶●

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112

NOTE

- ◆You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number, UIM phonebook entry or PushTalk phonebook entry.
- ◆Deleting the phonebook entry set in this function disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to "ON".
- ◆If the phone number set in this function is not available due to the 2in1 setting, you cannot dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

<Automatic answer> MENU94

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/Microphone Attached

Default setting	Automatic answer: OFF Ring time: 6 seconds

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"External connection"▶"Automatic answer"▶Select any item

ON	**▶Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds)** Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time.
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

◆When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting "My side" from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.

◆The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for "Record message" or "Remote monitoring".

◆To give priority to this function when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

◆If the mute time set in "Ring time (sec.)" is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.

◆The shorter of the ring times set in "Ring time setting" and "Automatic answer" is applied for Automatic answer performed when a PushTalk call arrives.

◆Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

<Select microphone>

Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting	External microphone

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"External connection"▶"Select microphone"▶Select any item

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

NOTE

◆When "Select microphone" is set to "Internal microphone", the microphone sensitivity is set at the same level as when the hands-free operation is set to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

<Reset settings> MENU23

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake "Initialize" for "Reset settings". Selecting "Initialize" will delete all data you have stored.
→p.440

- If a FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not reset to default.
- To reset the functions below to default, run "Reset settings" in each function:
  - i-mode functions: "Reset i-mode settings" →p.228
  - Mail functions: "Reset mail settings" →p.277
  - Full Browser functions: "Reset Viewer type set.", "Reset Std. type set." →p.331, 336

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Reset settings"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

■ To cancel the reset
▶"NO"

● Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see "Menu Function List" (p.486). In addition to the functions listed in "Menu Function List", the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological
My picture function menu	
• **Set image disp.**	Standard
i-motion	
i-motion	
• **Volume**	Level 10
Movie list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (microSD)
• **Sort**	Chronological
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
• **Screen setting**	Normal screen mode
• **Set image disp.**	Standard
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player/Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• **Substitute image**	Dimo
• **Set image disp.**	Fit-in-display
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• **Rec. Chara-den**	Photo mode
Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 x 144)
• **Movie type set**	Video + voice
• **Storage setting (Movie)**	Normal
• **Storage setting (Image)**	Fine
• **File size setting**	Smaller than 2M bytes
Kisekae Tool	
Package list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological
My document	
PDF list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological
Music/Music Channel	
Music Player/Music Channel playback screen	
• **Volume**	Level 10
Music list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title + image
Music Player/Music Channel Function menu	
• **Sound effect**	Equalizer: Pop Effect: Loud Enhanced
• **Off timer**	90 minutes
• **Repeat setting**	OFF
• **Shuffle**[*1]	OFF
• **FM transmitter**	OFF
• **FM frequency**	86.9MHz
• **Change skin**[*1]	Standard (Phone color: Orange Cut, Pink Soda), Blue Geometric (Phone color: Day and Night), Green Graphic (Phone color: Urban Blue)
Front camera, Rear camera	
Movie mode	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 x 144)
• **File size**	Smaller than 2M bytes
• **Quality setting**	Normal
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Photo mode	
• **Select size**	Front camera: Screen (240 x 427) Rear camera: Screen (480 x 854)
• **Quality setting**	Super Fine
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• **Camera**	Rear camera
• **Auto timer**	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• **Auto save set**	OFF
• **File restriction**	OFF
• **Display size**	Normal
• **Shake correction**	Auto
Setting Continuous mode→p.194	

Continued on next page

Function	Default setting
Schedule function menu	
• **Monthly display, Weekly display**	Monthly display
• **User icon settg.**	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• **Discern connect**	All OFF
• **Restrictions**	All OFF
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font
PushTalk phonebook function menu	
PushTalk setting	
• **Auto answer setting**	OFF
• **Ring time setting**	30 seconds
• **Setting when folded**	Speaker talk
• **Caller ID setting**	OFF
• **PushTalk arrival act**	Answer
• **Hands-free setting**	ON
My Profile function menu	
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font
Videophone in-call function menu	
• **V.phone settings**	Brightness: 0
• **Display light**	All time ON
Last one function[*2]	
• **Main menu**	Data box
• **Search phonebook**	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode	Release

*1: The function menu in the Music player playback screen only appears.
*2: "Last one function" allows the latest selected function to be pre-selected at the next same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing "Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images and melodies, i-αppli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.
- For more information on the default settings to restore, see "Reset settings" (p.438).
- Performing "Initialize" returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the "Reset settings" function to default set at the time of purchase:
  - Mail data[*1]
  - Mail folders[*1]
  - Template[*1]
  - Color palette history[*1]
  - Chat member for chat mail[*1]
  - i-mode settings
  - Home
  - Setting Viewer type
  - Setting Standard type
  - Channel list
  - Software list
  - i-αppli Auto-start set
  - i-αppli action info
  - Call data
  - Set time (date/time)
  - Kisekae Tool
  - Pause dial
  - Security code
  - Learning record (Clear learned under Character input set)
  - Privacy angle
  - To Do list
  - Schedule
  - Text memo
  - Play/Erase msg.
  - Play/Erase VP msg.
  - Voice memo
  - Voice announce
  - Mail settings[*1]
  - Message
  - Access reader
  - Bar code reader
  - Dictionary
  - Music Channel program setting
  - 2in1 setting
  - Bookmark
  - Screen memo
  - Last URL
  - Go to location
  - Chaku-moji Sent messages record
  - Additional service
  - Multi Number (Number Setting)
  - FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook[*2]
  - PushTalk phonebook[*2]
  - Group setting[*2]
  - Received calls[*1]
  - Redial/Dialed calls[*1]
  - Received address[*1]
  - Sent address[*1]
  - Mail member[*1]
  - Chat group[*1]
  - Own dictionary[*1]
  - DL dictionary[*1]
  - Location history (GPS function)
  - Register LCS client data (GPS function)
  - External IC card information (IC card authentic.)
  - Image data saved for Face authentication
  - Exchanging history (Data Security serv.)
  - Data added by user[*3]
  - Chara-den
  - PDF data
  - Interrupted programs/ tracks playback information
  - Decorate PI

*1: Even when 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode and there is data not currently displayed, all the data are initialized.
*2: Even when 2in1 is set to A mode and the phonebook set for B is not displayed, the phonebook data for B is also initialized.
*3: Saved data, downloaded data, i-αppli programs, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, etc.

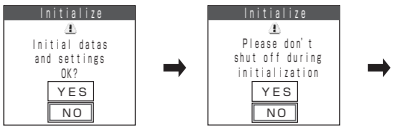
- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.

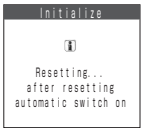
● You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls or mails.

● Performing "Initialize" restores a FOMA terminal to default.
It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) or a microSD memory card (p.365).

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Initialize"▶Enter your security code

2 "YES"▶"YES"





Initialization begins.
Initialization may take several minutes.
When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted and displays the Software Update (Push notification) desktop icon.

■ If initialization is failed

▶Press "OK" after turning a FOMA terminal on
Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

◆Performing initialization deletes i-αppli programs if they:
- Had been pre-installed at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- Had been pre-installed at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- Were downloaded after purchase

You can download the i-αppli programs that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase from the "みんなNらんど" page in the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.213

◆After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-Channel ticker does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the ticker appears automatically.

◆Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and data on the IC card are not deleted.

◆You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.

◆Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or microSD memory card are not deleted.

◆Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.

◆If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

◆When 2in1 is set to ON, entering your security code displays the screen asking if you want to initialize data and settings in all the modes. Select "YES" to start initializing them.

◆i-motion data preinstalled in "Inbox" folder in Data box are deleted at the initialization. You can download the deleted i-motion from the "みんなNらんど" page in the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.213

◆If you delete a pre-installed Decorate PI on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from "みんなNらんど" (only in Japanese) in "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.213

Character Entry

Entering Text 444
Entering Kana ..... Mode 1 (5-touch) 445
Editing and Storing Common Phrases ..... Common phrases 451
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 452
Using Kuten Codes ..... Kuten code 452
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... Own dictionary 453
Resetting the Learning Record ..... Clear learned 453
Using Downloaded Dictionaries ..... Download dictionary 453
Entering Text in 2-touch Mode ..... Mode 2 (2-touch) 454
Entering Text in T9 Input Mode ..... Mode 3 (T9 input) 454

For "Kuten Code List", see the PDF "Kuten Code List" in the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the "Kuten Code List", Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install it from the CD-ROM. For details on the usage, etc., see the Adobe Reader help.

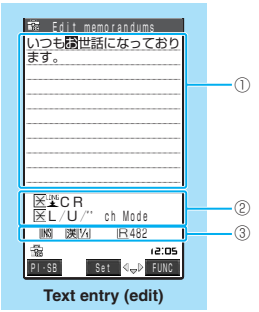
Entering Text

"5-touch mode", "2-touch mode" and "T9 input mode" are the 3 text entry methods. This section mainly explains how to enter text in "5-touch mode".

- For text entry settings, the characteristic of the each text entry method and entry methods, see the following:
  "Selecting the text entry method"→p.445
  "Entering Kana"→p.445
  "Entering Text in 2-touch Mode"→p.454
  "Entering Text in T9 Input Mode"→p.454

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: text entry, operation guidance and information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry method, input mode and remaining character count.



Text entry (edit)

Function menu➡p.450

① **Text entry area**

Icon	Description
■	Cursor (Text entry position)
◀	End mark (Text's end position)

② **Operation guidance area**

Icon	Description
▲▼ CHG	Can be converted using ◎ →p.446
▲▼ All ▲▼ Search	◎ can be used for phonebook search→p.112
◀▶▲▼ Area	Appears to specify a range to be copied (cut)→p.452
LONG CR	* can be pressed for 1 second or longer to start a new line →p.448
L/U/゛゜	* can be used to switch between upper case and lower case, or to attach dakuten/han-dakuten→p.447
AA→aa	* can be used to release the CapsLock modep.454
aa→Aa	* can be used to set the Shift mode→p.454
Aa→AA	* can be used to set the CapsLock mode→p.454
Back	C is available to return to the previous reading when you press more times than appropriate in Kana input mode (Example: え→う)
Space	Appears when Back is not displayed in Mode 1 (5-touch) →p.448
ch Mode	Character modes (漢 カナ 日 123) can be changed by pressing ch →p.447

③ **Information display area**

Icon	Description
2 あ	Character input mode (2-touch/T9 input) (An icon does not appear in Kana input mode)→p.454, 454
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode→p.448
日 123 漢 カナ	Character mode
	Kuten code mode→p.452
1/1 1/2	Single-byte/Double-byte mode →p.447, 454
Sm	Lower case mode→p.447
Shift CAPS LOCK	"Shift mode"/"CapsLock mode" →p.454
R	Remaining number of characters that can be entered (Single-byte: 1, Double-byte: 2)
In	Number of characters that have been entered when you are adding entries to the UIM phonebook or composing an SMS

NOTE

◆In addition to the keys, Access reader and Bar code reader are available to enter text.

Displaying guidance MENU 35 Default setting ON

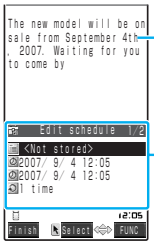
Use this procedure to specify whether to display guidance (p.444) on the text entry (edit) screen.

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Guidance"▶"ON"

■ **To hide the guidance**
▶"OFF"

Changing the active window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the text entry (edit) screen.



Save schedule from the i-mode screen

- The function operation screen and text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
  - Saving schedule entries from the i-mode screen
  - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
  - Chat screen for chat mail
  - Editing text while viewing dictionary search results

Changing the active window

When the operating window of each function and the text entry (edit) window are displayed at the same time, you can change between the windows. Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between the windows:

■Using the function menu

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active window.

■Using the Neuropointer

Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key to display the pointer and then use it to select the active window.

NOTE

- ◆When you switch to the other screen, the entered text and cursor location on the current screen remain unchanged.
- ◆You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press [#] in alphabetic input mode to enter "http://", etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.
- ◆If you change from the text edit screen to the i-mode screen, only scrolling can be performed.
- ◆You cannot switch screens in the chat screen for chat mail.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting	Input mode: Mode 1 (5-touch)

There are three methods to enter text:

- Mode 1 (5-touch)→p.445
  Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch)→p.454
  Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.
- Mode 3 (T9 input)→p.454
  Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Input mode"▶Select any item

Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

- The text entry method that you changed will remain stored the same even after you close the text entry (edit) screen.
- The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as postal code.

■Using the function menu

"CHG input method" under the text entry (edit) function menu→p.450

■Pressing (✉) (PI•SB) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes in order of "Mode 1 (5-touch)"→"Mode 2 (2-touch)"→"Mode 3 (T9 input)" each time you press and hold (✉) (PI•SB) for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting	CHG input size: Standard

- Select "Small", "Standard", "Large 1" or "Large 2" for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"CHG input size"▶Select any item

<Mode 1 (5-touch)>

Entering Kana

- Selecting the text entry method→p.445
- Key Assignment (5-touch input)→p.496

<Example: To enter "携帯二郎">

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶Enter hiragana

[2] 4 times (け), [1] 2 times (い), [4] 1 time (た), [1] 2 times (い)

[3] 2 times (し), [*] 1 time ゛(dakuten), [9] 5 times (ろ), [1] 3 times (う)

Continued on next page

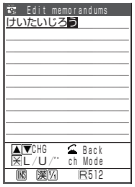
■ **If you press a wrong key**

▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again

■ **If you press more times than appropriate**

▶

Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key.



■ **To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key**

▶Press or the key again for 1 second or longer

The cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ **To confirm the hiragana**

▶

■ **To display the conversion candidates for English and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)**

▶ (ABC123)

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana. The numeric conversion candidates are also displayed depending on how many times you press the key; e.g. pressing the same key continuously converts "さ" to "２２".

2 Use or press (CHG) to convert to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted, and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined (_).



■ **If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji**

▶

The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ **To change the conversion range**

▶Use to change the conversion range

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

3 Use to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.



Conversion candidate list screen

■ **If all the characters in the conversion range belong to "あ" column**

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE

- ◆You can convert up to 20 hiragana characters to kanji, up to 6 phrases at once.
- ◆If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the reading to the "on" or "kun" reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- ◆When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at once, convert one character at a time.
- ◆If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten codes. →p.452
- ◆Some complicated kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- ◆If the number of converted characters exceeds the limit, a message appears asking whether to confirm the number of characters that does not exceed the limit.

Character count and scrolling

■ **The numbers of characters remaining and entered**

Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark "◀" appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

- ● A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.
- ● A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

Double-byte: Ａ Ｂ Ｃ Ｄ Ｅ

5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

Single-byte: ABCDEFGHIJ

10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ **Character combinations**

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entered "ﾄﾞｺﾓ" in single-byte kana input mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/Hiragana input mode

ﾄﾞ ｺﾓ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)

１１１１２２２２２ (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

- ● Single-byte dakuten "ﾞ" and han-dakuten "ﾟ" are each counted as 1 character.

■ **Scrolling**

On the conversion candidate list screen, use to scroll by line, or (MEMO/CHECK) or to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use to scroll by line, or , (MEMO/CHECK) or to scroll by page.

Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text on the text entry (edit) screen and the battery runs out or you receive a voice call, the entered text is saved and not cleared from the screen.

■ **If the battery runs out**

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the text entry (edit) screen changes to the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved, so that you can continue entering text when you turn the FOMA terminal back on and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, text that is unconfirmed or being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries →p.109

■ **If you press** [ ]

If you press [ ] during text entry, a message appears asking whether to finish text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To exit without saving text>

Select "YES". The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text.

Pressing [ ] is also available to exit the entry screen without saving the entered text.

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed.

[CLR] is also available to redisplay the text entry (edit) screen.

■ **When you receive a voice call**

If you receive a voice call during text entry, you can answer the call leaving the text. When the call ends, the text entry (edit) screen reappears. If you press [ch] (MULTI) during a voice call to display the task switch screen, you can redisplay the text entry (edit) screen and continue talking.

→p.418

Using word prediction MENU35

Default setting: ON

The FOMA terminal's word prediction provides the functions to predict terms for only one entered character and to predict subsequent terms for the selected terms. These functions allow you to enter text easily by entering only a few characters.

- Candidates for word prediction is stored at the time of purchase.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Prediction"▶"ON"

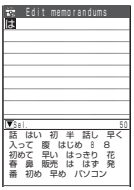
■ **To deactivate the word prediction**

▶"OFF"

Using word prediction to enter text

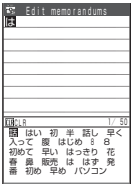
1 Enter the reading

The predicted candidates are listed in the guidance area. In Mode 3 (T9 input), entering a character displays the candidates in gray, which can be selected.



2 [ ]

The cursor appears in the guidance area, and you can choose from the predicted candidates.



■ **To return to reading entry**

▶[CLR]

■ **If no predicted candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates**

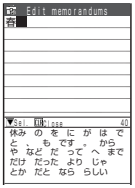
▶Enter the reading unchanged

■ **To delete predicted candidates**

▶[CLR] (1 second or longer)▶"YES"

3 Select a predicted candidate

Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.



4 [ ]

The cursor appears in the guidance area, and you can choose from the predicted candidates.

5 Select a candidate

■ **If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates**

▶Enter the next section of text unchanged

Other entry functions

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶[ch]

In kana or T9 input mode, the input mode changes in "Alphabetic (single-byte)" → "Numeric (single-byte)" → "Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)" → "Kana (single-byte)" order each time you press [ch] (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Switching between double-byte and single-byte

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶[ ] (FUNC)▶"Full pitch"/"Half pitch"

In the information display area, "[1/1]" appears for double-byte and "[1/2]" for single-byte.

You cannot switch between double-byte and single-byte in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode".

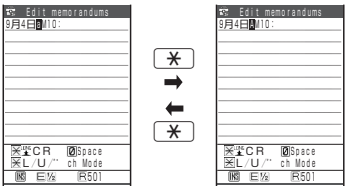
Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ **Pressing [ ] to change the case of a character**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶Press [ ] with the cursor placed on a character you want to change

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when "[ ](L/U/゛ ゜)" is displayed in the operation guidance.



Continued on next page

■ **Using the function menu before entering**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ (FUNC)▶"Lower case"/"Upper case"

When you change to "Lower case", "Sm" appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

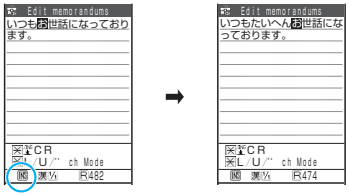
When you enter text in "Insert" mode, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite" mode, the new text replaces the existing entered text.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ (FUNC)▶"Overwrite"/"Insert"

In "Insert" mode, "INS" appears, and "OVR" in "Overwrite" mode.
When the text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always set.

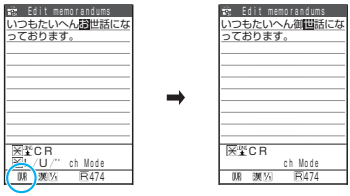
● Inserting text

In "Insert" mode, use ⊕ to move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the cursor position.



● Overwriting text

In "Overwrite" mode, use ⊕ to move the cursor to the character you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



● Restoring the status of an entered character to previous

You can restore the status of the entered (such as by converting, pasting) or cut text to the previous.

■ **Pressing [C] for 1 second or longer**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ [C] (for 1 second or longer)

■ **Restoring the status to the previous from the function menu**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ (FUNC)▶"UNDO"

In the message body entry area, select "UNDO" from the function menu.

● Inserting a space (blank)

- Move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter a space (blank). A double-byte space is entered in double-byte input mode and a single-byte space in single-byte input mode. A space is counted as a character.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ (FUNC)▶"Space"

You can also enter a space by pressing [#], then [C] in Kanji/Hiragana input mode or by pressing [1], then [C] in alphabetic input mode.

● Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "↵". There are the following methods to insert a line feed "↵".

■ **Pressing ○ at the end of a sentence**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶Press ○ with the cursor placed at the end of a sentence

The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ **Pressing [*] for 1 second or longer**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶Press [*] (for 1 second or longer) with the cursor placed on the position where you want to break a line

This method can only be used when "LONG CR" is displayed in the operation guidance area.
The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ **Using the function menu**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ (FUNC)▶"Line feed"

The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

◆The line feed symbol "↲" can be deleted or overwritten like a character.
◆The line feed symbol "↲" is counted as 1 double-byte character. However, the counting method is different for the SMS message entry. →p.286
◆You may not be able to insert a line feed "↲" in an i-mode text box.

Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units.
You cannot enter double-byte symbols on the e-mail address entry screen, i-mode mail address entry screen or URL entry screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ⓜ (FUNC)▶"Symbols"▶Select a symbol to enter

"Symbols and Special Characters" →p.498

NOTE

◆Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

Entering face symbols

You can select face symbols to enter from the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ⓜ (FUNC)▶"Face Mark"

The "face mark list" screen appears. The meaning appears under the face mark.



2 Select a face symbol to enter

"Smiley Face Symbols" →p.500

NOTE

◆If you select a download face symbol dictionary in "Download dictionary", the face symbols stored in the Download dictionary are also displayed.
◆The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal on the text entry (edit) screens such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Pictograph 1, Pictograph 2 and Decorate PI (Pictograph D) can respectively store up to 15 (12 for Decorate PI (Pictograph D)) previously entered pictographs. The stored pictographs are displayed on the first line of each screen. Pictographs entered using ✉ (PI•SB) are also stored.
- You can use Decorate PI (Pictograph D) data stored in the Decorate PI folder under My picture only on the i-mode mail message entry screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ⓜ (FUNC)▶"Pictograph"▶Select a pictograph

"Pictographs" →p.499
The list changes in "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Pictograph D*" → "Full pitch 1" → "Full pitch 2" → "Half pitch" order each time you press ✉.

*: Only i-mode mail message entry screen

■ **To set PI•SB input mode**
▶ⓜ (PI•SB)

Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

- Entering symbols →p.498
- Pictographs →p.499

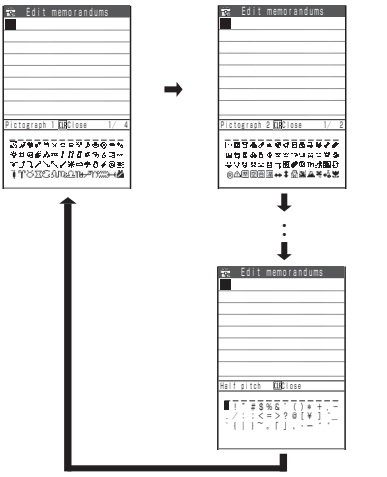
1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶✉ (PI•SB)

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The "current page/total pages" figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press ✉ (PI•SB) to change the candidate screen

The list changes in "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Pictograph D*" → "Full pitch 1" → "Full pitch 2" → "Half pitch" order each time you press ✉ (PI•SB).

*: Only i-mode mail message entry screen



■ **To set the full screen mode**
▶ⓜ (Full)

Continued on next page

3 Select a symbol or pictograph



The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs. Symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.

4 Press CLR to finish entering

Continuous pictograph/symbol entry is finished.

● Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In "Kanji/Hiragana input mode", you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting "きごう" in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode" displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as "かっこ" or "さんかく".

"Symbols in Japanese conversion"→p.499

■ Entering face symbols

Entering and converting "かお" or "かおもじ" in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode" displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as "ありがとう" or "さよなら".

"Smiley Face Symbols"→p.500

■ Entering pictographs

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as "はーと" or "おんぷ" in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode" displays pictograph candidates.

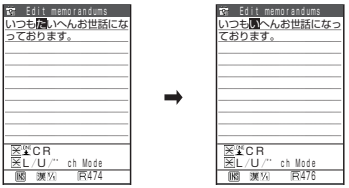
"Pictographs"→p.499

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	"Entering face symbols"→p.449
Lower case, Upper case	"Switching between upper case and lower case"→p.447
Half pitch, Full pitch	"Switching between double-byte and single-byte"→p.447, 454
Copy	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.452
Cut	
Paste	
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases"→p.451
Space	"Inserting a space (blank)"→p.448
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed"→p.448
Symbols	"Inserting symbols"→p.449
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs"→p.449
Kuten code	"Kuten code"→p.452
Overwrite, Insert	"Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode"→p.448
Quote data	
• **Quote phonebook**	"Entering text by quoting from phonebook or My Profile"→p.451
• **Quote My Profile**	
• **Access reader**	"Scanning Text"→p.206
• **Bar code reader**	"Scanning codes"→p.204
Refer dic.	"Using Dictionaries"→p.435
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Sets word prediction ON or OFF.→p.447
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	Specify whether to convert entered characters to kanji or to kana when you enter text using the T9 input method. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in "T9 change mode" under "Character input set".
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of a sentence.
Undo	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	"Changing the active window"→p.445

Deleting text

Use ⊕ to move the cursor to a character to delete, and press CLR shortly (for less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character left to the cursor is deleted.

■ If you press CLR for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters right to the cursor are deleted.

■ If there is no character right to the cursor and you press CLR for 1 second or longer

All the text is deleted.

Entering common phrases

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶(FUNC)▶"Common phrases"▶Select a folder

"Common Phrases"→p.501

2 Select a common phrase▶●

NOTE

◆Common phrases can be used on the following text entry (edit) screens:

- Text memo
- Common phrases
- Common phrases folder name
- Schedule
- Alarm
- To Do list
- Wake-up message
- Edit in i-mode text box
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation mark
- Auto-sort subject
- Search mail subject
- Text edit with i-αppli
- Dictionary

◆Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is "Kanji/Hiragana input mode" in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or "double-byte input mode" in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as "single-byte katakana" when another text entry method is used.
(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Entering text by quoting from phonebook or My Profile

On the text entry (edit) screen such as e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use quote the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, location, birthday or memo from the "Phonebook" or "My Profile". You can activate camera to scan and quote text or code.

- Data cannot be quoted into some text entry (edit) screens.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶(FUNC)▶"Quote data"▶Select any item

Quote phonebook	**▶Select "Search group", "Search column" or "Search all"▶Search for a phonebook entry to quote from▶Select an item to quote ▶(Finish)**
Quote My Profile	**▶Enter your security code▶Select an item to quote ▶(Finish)**
Access reader	"Scanning Text"→p.206
Bar code reader	"Scanning codes"→p.204

NOTE

◆When you quote a street address, the postal code "〒" symbol and "-" are not quoted.

<Quote My Profile>

◆When you quote a street address, a blank may be entered between the items.

◆Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for problems arising from wrongly entered owner information.

<Common phrases> **MENU38**

Editing and Storing Common Phrases

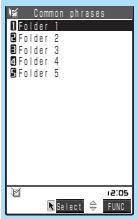
This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved during text entry. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are categorized into 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 fixed common phrases that are already stored at the time of purchase. You can modify the fixed common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 can each contain up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.
- Common Phrases→p.501

Composing a new common phrase

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Common phrases"

The "Common phrases folder list" screen appears.



Common phrase folder list

Function menu➡p.452

2 Select a folder

The "common phrase list" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit)▶Enter a common phrase



Common phrase list

Function menu➡p.452

NOTE

◆Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.

◆When you create an original common phrase to be used for mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or quotation marks, do not use "single-byte katakana" or "pictographs" as these may not be displayed correctly (pictographs can be used for i-mode mail).

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	▶**Edit a folder name** Renames a highlighted folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset name	Restores a folder name to default.
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data	

NOTE

◆If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	▶**Edit a common phrase** Edits a highlighted common phrase.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**"YES"** Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

◆If you delete a fixed common phrase that has been edited, it is restored to default. Unedited fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

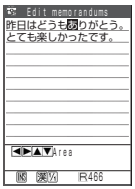
- Only one item of copied or cut data can be retained. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously retained text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Copy" or "Cut"

You can also copy text using the PDF data function menu (p.388).

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut▶●



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut▶●

The selected range of the text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the text is deleted although it is stored in the FOMA terminal.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Paste"

■ If the text to be pasted includes a character that cannot be entered on the text entry (edit) screen

A message appears notifying you that the character will be replaced with a space when the text is pasted.

<Kuten code>

Using Kuten Codes

This function allows you to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.
- For "Kuten Code List", see the PDF "Kuten Code List" in the bundled CD-ROM.

<Example: To enter "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

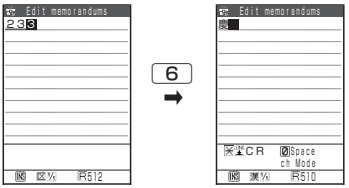
1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Kuten code"

The input mode changes to "Kuten code" mode and "区" appears in the information display area.



2 Enter kuten code 2 3 3 6

The character ("慶" in this example) corresponding to the entered code appears, and the input mode is restored to default.



■ If no character corresponds to the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

<Own dictionary> MENU 82

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting: Not stored

Save a frequently used word with your preferred reading to your own dictionary. You can recall the word by entering and converting the reading on the text entry (edit) screen.

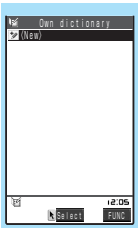
- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Own dictionary"

The "Own dictionary" screen appears.

2 "<New>"▶Enter a word▶Enter the reading



Own dictionary

Function menu➡p.453

NOTE

◆You cannot enter a line feed or common phrase as a word or its reading.

◆Symbols (、。・！？) other than dakuten or han-dakuten cannot be stored in a reading.

◆A space entered in a reading is automatically deleted.

Checking words

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"Own dictionary"

2 Select a word to check



■ To edit a word

▶Select a word to edit▶✉ (Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
iC transmission	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.381
Send Ir data	
iC trans. all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.382
Send all Ir data	
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes a highlighted word.
• **Delete selected**	▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple words.
• **Delete all**	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all words.

<Clear learned> MENU 35

Resetting the Learning Record

The learned strings that were entered and automatically stored as conversion candidates are cleared and restored to default.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Clear learned"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

T9/Expect words/ Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3 (T9 input)", "Prediction", "pictographs" and "symbols".
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning records stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

<Download dictionary>

Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Default setting: Not stored

This function allows you to download dictionaries from i-mode sites, etc. and set them for use in conversion.

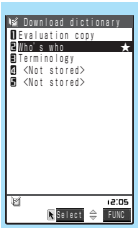
- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloading dictionaries→p.226

1 (MENU)▶"OWN DATA"▶"DL dictionary"

The "Download dictionary" screen appears.

2 Select a dictionary to set

"★" appears on the selected dictionary.



Download dictionary

Function menu➡p.454

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

▶Select the dictionary with "★"

The dictionary is deselected and "★" disappears.

NOTE

◆If pictographs are added in a downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.

◆If you set a downloaded dictionary for face marks, up to 600 face marks (including the preinstalled 100 face marks) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select "Face Mark" from the function menu during text entry.

◆If you add two downloaded dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face marks stored in the first-activated downloaded dictionary will be listed.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of a highlighted download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on a highlighted download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code** **▶"YES"** Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

◆If you attempt to rename a dictionary and confirm the name without entering any characters, it is restored to default.

<Mode 2 (2-touch)>

Entering Text in 2-touch Mode

- Selecting the text entry method→p.445
- Key Assignment (2-touch input)→p.497

Switching the input mode (double-byte/single-byte)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ch

"Single-byte" and "Double-byte" are switched each time ch is pressed ("Half pitch" and "Full pitch" are also available from the function menu).
In the information display area, "1/1" appears for double-byte and "1/2" for single-byte.

Entering text

<Example: To enter "携帯二郎">

1 ch▶"Double-byte"▶Enter characters to be converted

2 4 (け) 1 2 (い) 4 1 (た) 1 2 (い)
3 2 (し) 0 4 (゛(dakuten)) 9 5 (ろ) 1 3 (う)

In Mode 2 (2-touch), entering a single digit and then confirming the entry deletes the character. Always enter 2 digits.

2 Edit the entered characters

The characters are to be edited in the same method as in 5-touch mode.→p.445

<Mode 3 (T9 input)>

Entering Text in T9 Input Mode

This mode allows easy text entry with few key operations.
For example, to enter a reading "あした", you need to press 1 once, 3 twice and 4 once in Mode 1 (5-touch). In Mode 3 (T9 input), you only need to press 1 3 4 corresponding to the keys of columns to which the characters belong.
Column characters are assigned to one key. Every time you press a key, a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter desired readings.
Mode 3 (T9 input) features the "Yomi edit" function that helps your input and it allows you to edit entered reading candidates. In addition, linking Mode 3 (T9 input) to the Prediction function (p.447) allows faster and easier text entry.

- Selecting the text entry method→p.445
- Key Assignment (T9 input)→p.498

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.444)▶ch

The input mode changes in "Alphabetic (single-byte)" → "Numeric (single-byte)" → "Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)" → "Kana (single-byte)" order each time you press ch (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).
Mode 3 (T9 input) works in "Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)", "Kana (double-byte)", "Kana (single-byte)", "Alphabetic (double-byte)" and "Alphabetic (single-byte)".

- In "Numeric (double-byte)" and "Numeric (single-byte)", Mode 1 (kana) is automatically selected.
- In "Alphabetic (double-byte)" or "Alphabetic (single-byte)" , the mode changes in "Mode released" → "Shift"→ "CapsLock" each time you press *.
- Entered characters are always upper case in "CapsLock mode". In "Shift mode", only the first character is entered in upper case, and subsequent characters will be in lower case. Entered characters are always lower case when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in "Shift mode", the mode is released.

● Entering text

<Example: To enter "春" in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 (ch)▶"Kanji/Hiragana input mode"▶Enter characters to be converted



6 (は column), 9 (ら column)

Candidates, which are predicted from a combination of "は column" and "ら column", appear.

■ **If you press the wrong key**

▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again

■ **If there are no recognized candidates for the entered characters**

▶Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray▶Use ⊙ to change the range for candidates

■ **To change the conversion candidate display mode (Kanji/Kana)**

▶#

■ **To change the conversion candidate display mode (Alphabetic)**

▶(ch)

2 Use ◉▶⊙ to select the conversion candidates



The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

■ **To return to entering characters to be converted**

▶CLR

■ **To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates**

▶(i) (CHG)▶Use ◉ to select a candidate

● Editing conversion candidates

<Example: To enter "らわらわた" and convert it to "爛々と">

1 Enter characters to be converted



9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 4 (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from "らわらわた" are displayed. In this case, "らんらんと" does not appear.

2 (Yomi)

Yomi edit mode is set, and the cursor moves to the first character. The "ら column" characters are listed in the operation guidance area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character to enter



In this case, press 1 (ら). After you change the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Repeat the step to edit the conversion candidate.

■ **If you do not want to edit a conversion candidate**

▶Use ⊙ to move the cursor to the next character to be edited

■ **To quit editing in mid-operation**

▶(Return)

The already edited text appears as a conversion candidate.

4 Use ◉ to select "爛々と"



"らわらわた" will appear as the first conversion candidate when "爛々と" is entered from the next time.

Setting T9 change mode MENU35

Specify whether to convert entered characters to kanji or to kana when you enter text using the T9 input method.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"T9 change mode"▶Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts entered characters to kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts entered characters to kana.

Network Services

Available Network Services 458
Voice Mail Service ..... Voice Mail 458
Call Waiting Service..... Call Waiting 459
Call Forwarding Service..... Call Forwarding 461
Nuisance Call Blocking ..... Nuisance Call Blocking 462
Caller ID Request Service ..... Caller ID Request 462
Dual Network Service ..... Dual Network 462
English Guidance..... English Guidance 463
Service Numbers ..... Service Numbers 463
Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call
..... In-Call Function Selection 463
Setting up Remote Control ..... Remote Control 464
Multi Number ..... Multi Number 465
2in1 ..... 2in1 466
OFFICEED..... 470
Adding and Using Services ..... Additional service 470

This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of following DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the available services.

- When you are out of the service area or in a place where the reception is poor, you cannot use the services.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services])".
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.

Service	Subscription	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Pay	p.458
Call Waiting	Required	Pay	p.459
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.461
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.462
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.48
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.462
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.77
Public mode (power off)			p.78
Dual Network	Required	Pay	p.462
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.463
Multi Number	Required	Pay	p.465
2in1	Required	Pay	p.466
OFFICEED	Required	Pay	p.470

NOTE

◆This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal.
◆"OFFICEED" is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. For more details, see the DoCoMo corporate website (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/) (in Japanese only).
◆When DoCoMo provides a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu (Additional service).→p.470

<Voice Mail>

Voice Mail Service

Subscription Required

When you are out of the service area, turning the FOMA terminal off or cannot answer the phone, the Voice Mail service announces to a caller and keeps a message for you.

- To place priority on the Voice Mail service when setting "Record message" (p.80) at the same time, set shorter the ring time of Voice Mail service than the record message.
- If the Voice Mail service does not answer the incoming voice or videophone calls when it is "Active", the calls are logged in the "Received calls" as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Voice Mail service activated

↓

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice/ videophone call

↓

You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice Mail service center

↓

The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answering message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing #.

↓

The Voice Mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message

↓

You listen to the recorded message

NOTE

◆20 messages of up to 3 minutes each can be recorded for each of voice call and videophone call. Messages are stored for up to 72 hours.
◆If you receive a call while the Voice Mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
◆When connecting to the voice mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu. →p.54

Using the Voice Mail service

1 MENU ▶"SERVICE"▶"Voice Mail"▶ Select any item

Play messages*1	When you select "YES", the FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.

Activate*1	**▶"YES"▶"YES"▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** If you set the ring time for 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
Deactivate*1	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	**▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Changes the ring time only.
Check setting*1	Displays the current service settings. • Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select "Check setting" →p.459
Setting	When you select "YES", follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message that checking is completed.
Message notification*2	Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to "Level 2".
Erase icon	Deletes the icon "" (Voice Mail) on the standby screen.
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.287) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.
• **All Calls**	Notifies you of all calls.
• **Calls with Caller ID**	Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

*1: When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the screen appears to select Number A or Number B. However, a selection screen appear for "Check setting" even in B mode.
*2: The option is available only for voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages><Setting>
◆If you press keys ([0] to [9], [*], [#]) following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if [end] is pressed. In this case, press [end] again.
◆To change the settings for the videophone on the voice mail, make a voice call to "1412".

<Activate>
◆If the mute time set under "Ring time (sec.)" (p.179) is longer than the ring time of the Voice Mail service, the ring tone does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time of the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check setting>
◆When checking Number B settings for 2in1, only "Active" or "Inactive" appears.

<Check messages>
◆If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the "" (Voice Mail icon) and "" ("Voice Mail" desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.
◆The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages ("", "", ""... "" (10 messages or more)).
The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages. The number of messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.
◆Messages received afterwards may not be able to be checked with this function.

<Message notification>
◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, the notification sound does not emit when a message is recorded for the unused number.

<Erase icon>
◆Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>
◆Call logs are notified even with "Reject All SMS" set.
◆One SMS notifies up to five call logs.
◆The charge of setting and notification (SMS reception) is free.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

<Call Waiting>

Call Waiting Service

Subscription Required

When you received another call while you are talking on a phone, the Call Waiting service notifies you with a ring tone during the call and enables you to answer the new call putting the current call on hold. In addition, you can also make another call putting the current call on hold with the service.

- To use Call Waiting, select "Answer" in "Incoming Call Mng" (p.463) beforehand. If other item is set, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even with Call Waiting activated.

Continued on next page

- If the Call Waiting is activated and "Incoming Call Mng" is set to "Answer", you can answer an incoming videophone call during a voice call, or an incoming voice/videophone call during a videophone call. However, you need to end the current voice call or videophone call (you cannot hold the current call). →p.463

Using the Call Waiting service

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Call Waiting"▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

◆If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing [ ] or ● automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a newly received voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press [ ] or ●



Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the call with the second caller**

▶[ ]▶[ ] or ●

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the second call on hold**

▶[ ]

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing [ ].

You can also switch the calls by selecting "Change held call" from the function menu.

■ **To end a voice call on hold**

▶(FUNC)▶"End held call"

NOTE

◆If you receive another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, you can disconnect the current voice call to answer the incoming call.

Ending the current voice call to answer a newly received voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press [ ]

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

2 [ ] or ●

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

1 Dial another phone number during a call▶[ ]



The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.

You can also make a call by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook →p.111

2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the new call**

▶[ ]▶[ ] or ●

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the new call on hold**

▶[ ]

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing [ ].

You can also switch the calls by selecting "Change held call" from the function menu.

■ **To end a voice call on hold**

▶(FUNC)▶"End held call"

NOTE

◆If you receive an incoming voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, you can disconnect the current voice call to answer the incoming call.

<Call Forwarding>

Call Forwarding Service

Subscription Required

The Call Forwarding service forwards the voice or videophone call when you are in a place where the reception is poor, the FOMA terminal is turned off or does not answer the phone in the set ring time.

- To place priority on the Call Forwarding service when setting "Record message" (p.80) at the same time, set the ring time of Call Forwarding service shorter than the record message.
- If the Call Forwarding service does not answer the incoming voice or videophone calls when it is "Activate", the calls are logged in the "Received calls" as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service

Call Forwarding number registered

↓

Call Forwarding service activated

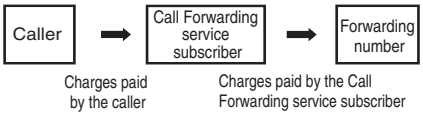
↓

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice or videophone call

↓

If you do not answer the voice or videophone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number

Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

◆You can answer an incoming call while ringing even if the Call Forwarding service is activated.

Using the Call Forwarding service

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Call Forwarding"▶Select any item

Activate[*1]	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
• **Register fwd number**	▶**Enter a forwarding number** Use ⓘ to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.112 Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".
• **Set ring time**	▶**Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time". If you set the ring time for 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
• **Activate**	Activates the Call Forwarding service.
Deactivate[*1]	Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+ Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy[*2]	When the forwarding number is busy, a received voice call can be transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
Check setting[*1]	Displays the current service settings.

*1: When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the screen appears to select Number A or Number B. However, a selection screen appear for "Check setting" even in B mode.
*2: It is required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail service".

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, you cannot select "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time" in "Activate" and "Change No. + Activate" in "Change forwarding No" cannot be selected.
◆If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".
◆To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Remote monitoring", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Remote monitoring".
◆If the mute time set under "Ring time (sec.)" is longer than the ring time of the Call Forwarding service, the ring tone does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring tone sound before the Call Forwarding service is activated, set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

<Check setting>

◆When checking Number B settings for 2in1, only "Active" or "Inactive" appears.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen

▶1 4 2 9 ▶ ☎

Follow the voice instructions.
For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

<Nuisance Call Blocking>

Nuisance Call Blocking

Subscription Required

The Nuisance Call Blocking service rejects an incoming "nuisance call". Once you have added a phone number in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the calls from the number are automatically rejected and the call rejection guidance message is played to the caller.

- Even if you receive a call from the number added in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the ring tone does not ring and the call will not be logged in the "Received calls".

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Nuisance Call Blk"▶Select any item

Register Caller	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Adds the last caller to your list of nuisance call.
Register number	**▶Enter or quote a phone number ▶"YES"▶"OK"** Directly enter an phone number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. • Enter a part of the phone number then use ↕, and you can enter the phone number by searching the phonebook. • Use ↕ to enter the phone number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.112 • Press ⟲ to search the Received calls record, ⟳ to search the Redial calls record to enter the phone number.
Delete last entry	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Deletes the phone number that was last added. Repeat the operation to delete phone numbers 1 number at a time from the last added phone number.
Delete all entries	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Deletes all the rejected numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the phone number of nuisance call.

<Caller ID Request>

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription Not

When you receive a voice or videophone call from a caller who does not show his or her phone number (caller ID), "Caller ID Request" service sends a message which requests the caller to show the phone number and then automatically ends the call.

- Calls rejected by the "Caller ID Request" service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

1 (MENU)▶"Service"▶"Caller ID Request"▶Select any item

Activate	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Activates the "Caller ID Request" service.
Deactivate	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Deactivates the "Caller ID Request" service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

<Dual Network>

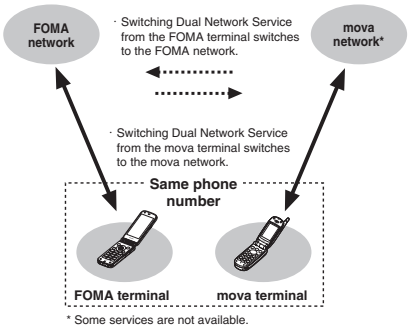
Dual Network Service

Subscription Required

You can use a mova terminal with your FOMA terminal phone number. You can choose between FOMA and mova depending on the service area.

- You cannot use FOMA and mova terminals at the same time.
- Use an unused terminal to switch the Dual Network Service mode.

Overview of Dual Network Service



* Some services are not available.

NOTE

◆For how to operate from a mova terminal and other details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Using Dual Network Service

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Dual Network"▶Select any item

Dual Network switching	**▶"YES"▶Enter your network security code** Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

◆If you use Dual Network Service on a mova terminal in Japan after using a FOMA terminal overseas, turn on the FOMA terminal before use.

<Dual Network switching>

◆End communication on the terminal that can access the services before switching networks.

<English Guidance>

English Guidance

Subscription
Not

This function enables you to set English as the language for audio messages given when settings for a network service (e.g. Voice Mail) are performed or your FOMA terminal is out of the service area.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing call (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming call (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese + English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English + Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

NOTE

◆For the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller's setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver's setting for incoming calls.

Using the English Guidance

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"English Guidance"▶Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• **Outgoing+ Incoming**	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• **Outgoing call**	Sets the language of guidance used for outgoing calls.
• **Incoming call**	Sets the language of guidance used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Check the current guidance settings.

<Service Numbers>

Service Numbers

This function enables you to call the DoCoMo general inquiries or technical inquiries.

- The options below may not appear or different options may appear depending on the FOMA card you are using.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Service Numbers"▶Select any item

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.

NOTE

◆If inquiries are not displayed, it is recommended that you store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual in the phonebook.

<In-Call Function Selection>

Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call

You can specify how you handle a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call that arrives during another call if you have subscribed to "Voice Mail", "Call Forwarding" or "Call Waiting" service.

- If you have not subscribed to "Voice Mail", "Call Forwarding" or "Call Waiting" service, you cannot answer a call that arrives during another call.
- To use "Incoming Call Mng", set "Set in-call arrival" to "Activate".

Specifying how to handle incoming calls while on another call <Incoming Call Mng>

Default setting
Answer

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Incoming Call Mng"▶Select any item

Voice Mail	Transfers a voice call and a videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the "Call Waiting" and "Voice Mail" service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the "Call Waiting" and "Call Forwarding" service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a voice call, videophone call and 64K data communications received while on another call.

Continued on next page

Answer	If you activate "Call Waiting" and receive a voice call while on another voice call, "Call Waiting" is available. If you are on a voice call with Call Waiting deactivated, or on a videophone call or 64K data communications, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: • Ending the voice, videophone or 64K data communications in progress and answering the new voice, videophone or 64K data communications. • Manually handling a voice, videophone or 64K data communications received while on another call using the function menu. →p.464 • If "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is activated, calls are handled according to those service settings.

Activating/Deactivating "Incoming Call Mng" <Set in-call arrival>

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Set in-call arrival"▶Select any item

Activate	Activates the "Incoming Call Mng" setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates the "Incoming Call Mng" setting.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: To end a voice call in progress to answer a new voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press [end]

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ **For videophone call or 64K data communications**

An incoming call screen displays.

▶[end]

2 [talk] or ●

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ **For 64K data communications**

▶Take the call on a PC

When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone call or 64K data communication while on a voice call, if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication while on a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: To end a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming voice call>

1 You hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and the incoming voice call screen appears

When you receive 64K data communications, you do not hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

2 [talk] or ●

■ **For 64K data communications**

▶[end]▶Take the call on a PC

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When "Set in-call arrival" is set to "Active" and "Incoming Call Mng" is set to "Answer">

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press (FUNC)

■ **When you receive a call other than voice call while on a voice call**

▶[FUNC]

2 Select how to handle the received call

■ **To reject an incoming call**

▶"Call Rejection"

■ **To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number**

▶"Call Forwarding"

■ **To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center**

▶"Voice Mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting up Remote Control

This function enables you to use "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, etc. from a touch-tone general subscriber phone, pay phone or DoCoMo mobile phone.

- To use "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service overseas, set Remote Control beforehand.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Remote Control"▶Select any item

Activate	Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

NOTE

◆For how to operate a network service from a payphone, etc., see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

<Multi Number>

Multi Number

Subscription Required

Besides Basic Number, you can add up to two numbers (Additional Number 1 and 2) as your FOMA terminal phone number.

- Cannot be used at the same time as 2in1.
- The name corresponding to Multi Number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) appears on the dialing or receiving screen.
- When you dial using the Redial/Dialed calls or Received calls record, the Multi Number logged in the record appears on the screen and will be used for dialing.

NOTE

◆Additional numbers are notified at the time of application for Multi Number.
◆For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services])".
◆Switch a phone number in Set Multi Number enables you to use the specified phone number for all calls you will make.
◆You can also switch phone numbers each time making a call. →p.466
◆You can receive voice calls, videophone calls or 64K data communications that are made to Additional Number 1 or 2. You can also set a ring tone for each phone number. →p.465
◆Selecting "Multi Number" from the function menu to make a call will display the item selected when making a call ("Basic Number" or registered name of Additional Number 1 or 2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to "Multi Number".
If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls.
◆When you use a phone number from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call, the call is made from the item ("Basic Number", Additional Number 1 or 2) displayed in the record. If only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in "Set Multi Number" (p.465).
◆When you make a call using Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the "Set Multi Number" (p.465) setting.
◆When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the registered name of the number is displayed on the receiving screen or on the received calls detail screen.
◆In Public mode (Driving mode), if an incoming call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number. →p.77

Using Multi Number

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Multi Number"▶ Select any item

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
• **Basic Number**	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number1***	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number2***	
Check setting	Checks the "Set Multi Number" setting.
Number Setting	**▶Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press (Edit)▶Enter a name▶ Enter an additional number** Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number for the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. • The "Multi Number setting" screen function menu displayed when you select "Number Setting" →p.465
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. "Changing Ring Tones" →p.126

*: The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

◆The settings in "Number setting " and "Select ring tone" are stored even when replacing FOMA card to another or reattach the card.

<Number Setting>
◆The name is displayed when you specify the Multi Number settings and select a phone number used for a call.

<Select ring tone>
◆When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. →p.128

Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone numbers each time when making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

1 "Phone number entry" screen (p.51)▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Multi Number"▶Select any item

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	
Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the "Set Multi Number" setting.

*: The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

◆You can also switch phone numbers using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen.

<2in1>

2in1

Subscription Required

You can separately use 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses on your FOMA terminal as if you have 2 terminals.

- In this function, your phone number and mail address is called "Number A and Address A" and the additional phone number and mail address is "Number B and Address B".
- Cannot be used at the same time as Multi Number.

NOTE

◆Information of Number B and Address B can be obtained with the following operation.
- Number B: Run "Check 2in1" from the function menu in the My Profile screen for Number B →p.429
- Address B: Run "Acquire Automatically" for the mail address when registering My Profile for Number B →p.430

◆For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

◆Dialing or AT command dialing from an external device uses Number A regardless of the mode in 2in1.
<Memory dial>
Dialing to a phone number in Memory dial for A mode is available from Number A, even in B mode.
<Redial>
Dialing to the most recent record in Dialed calls is available from Number A, regardless of the mode setting.

About Modes

In 2in1, modes can be set to "A mode", "B mode" or "Dual mode". Operations when set to each mode are as follows.

A mode	You can dial with your phone number (Number A), send i-mode mails with Address A, or browse related data.
B mode	You can dial with 2in1 phone number (Number B), access to sites where WEB mail is available with Address B, and browse related data.
Dual Mode	The mode that supports both functions of A and B mode.

*: See "Services available for each mode" (p.468) for the details of available services in each mode.

NOTE

◆Mail transmission for Address B is executed in the specified WEB mail site.

◆Packet communication in B mode is available while subscribing to the i-mode service.

◆Set A mode before you replace a FOMA card with the subscription to 2in1 service to the FOMA card without subscription.

Using 2in1

Set 2in1 to ON and perform settings operations.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"2in1 setting"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶Select any item

■When 2in1 is set to ON

After entering the security code, 2in1 setting screen appears without showing the screen to confirm whether to set 2in1 to ON is not displayed.

Mode switching	In 2in1, modes can be selected from "A mode", "B mode" or "Dual mode" to set. For details on each mode, see "About Modes" (p.466).
Phonebook 2in1 setting	**▶"Phonebook 2in1 setting"▶Search phonebook▶Highlight phonebook entry to set (●)▶(✉)(Finish)** Sets phonebook 2in1 setting to A, B or common. Highlight the phonebook and press (●) (Switch) to change phonebook 2in1 setting from A (A) to B (B) to AB (Common) Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.111 **■When setting by group ▶Group 2in1 setting ▶Highlight group to set (●) ▶(✉)(Finish)** For groups, press (●) to change from no settings to AB (Common) to A (A) to B (B).

Standby display	Sets the standby screen displayed when Change mode is set to B mode or Dual mode.
• **Dual mode** • **B mode**	Sets standby screen→p.137 "★" appears next to the selected item. **■To reset the selected item to the default** **▶Highlight an item with "★" and press ▶✉ (Release)**
Set call/receive No.	Sets font color to differentiate between Number A and Address A from Number B and Address B or set call receiving image or ring tones for Number B.
• **Disp. call/ receive No.**	Sets to display different font color for Number A and Address A, and Number B and Address B to tell information apart.
• **Number A (Address A)** • **Number B (Address B)**	**▶Use ✥ to select a color** To use another color palette, press ✉ (Change). **■To reset the set color to the default** **▶i (Reset)▶"YES"**
• **Ringtone for Number B**	Sets ring tone, receiving screen, illumination, vibration and answer message when receiving voice or videophone call on Number B.
• **Voice call (recv.)** • **V.phone (recv.)**	**▶Select an item to edit** Sets ring tone.→p.126 Sets call receiving screen.→p.136 Sets incoming call lamp.→p.147 Sets vibrator.→p.129 Sets answer message.→p.81
2in1 function OFF	**▶"YES"** Sets 2in1 to OFF.

NOTE

◆When 2in1 is set to OFF, you can also perform "2in1 settings" by pressing 2 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

<Mode switching>

◆You can also change mode by pressing 2 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

<Phonebook 2in1 setting>

◆Phonebook entries in B setting cannot be added to PushTalk phonebook.

◆When the mode for phonebook entries added to PushTalk phonebook is set to B, a confirmation screen appears informing you that PushTalk calls cannot be made.

◆You cannot set this function to UIM phonebook entries.

◆Select "Display detail" from the function menu to display "Phonebook detail screen" from "Phonebook list screen" in this function.

<Standby display>

◆When Change Mode is set to A mode, standby screens are displayed according to "Display setting" (p.135).

<Disp. call/receive No.>

◆Names, phone numbers and mail addresses in the screens below will be displayed in the set color.
- In-call screen
- Dialing/Receiving screen
- Redial/Dialed calls (list/detail)
- Received calls (list/detail)
- Sent*/Received address record screen (list/detail)
- Chaku-moji Sent messages record screen

*: In B mode, the screen for sent addresses cannot be displayed.

◆The setting for Number A/Number B (Address A/ Address B) is referred in the screen while incoming a call, even when 2in1 is set to OFF.

<Ringtone for Number B>

◆When making the same settings to Number A and Address A, set each item as same as Number A".

◆When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies.→p.128

Switching phone numbers each time when making a call

When 2in1 is set to ON and the mode is set to Dual mode, phone numbers can be switched when making a call.

<Example: When making a call using the phonebook>

1 "Phonebook detail screen" (p.112)▶i (FUNC)▶"Dial setting"▶"2in1/Multi Num."▶Select any item

Number A	Allows calls to be made from Number A.
Number B	Allows calls to be made from Number B.
Cancel number	Allows calls to made according to phonebook 2in1 setting.

■ From Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls screen

▶i (FUNC)▶"2in1/Multi Num."

NOTE

◆When switching phone numbers from the function menu of the Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen, you can dial according to each 2in1 setting.

◆"2in1/Multi Num." in the function menu cannot be selected when the mode is set to A mode or B mode.

◆When the following operations are performed, the phone number selection screen is displayed and the phone number to use can be selected.
- When making calls by entering phone number in the phone number entry screen
- When using services from the special number registered in Additional service
- When "Dialing" from the function menu in Sent/ Received address list is selected.
- When using the Phone to function
- When pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) on the phone number entry screen

◆When making a call from an external device plugged in to the FOMA terminal, calls are made from the Number A regardless of the setting in "Mode switching".

Services available for each mode

- Only the functions with different operations depending on the mode are listed. (Those which operate in the same way as A mode are omitted.)

Service			A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice call/ Videophone	Making		Number A	Number B	Selectable on making a call[*2]
	Receiving		All		
Phonebook[*7]	View type[*8]		A: Common	B: Common	All
	Name conversion[*6]		A: Common	B: Common	All
	2in1 setting on a new entry		A	B	A
	Receives all data through infrared data port/iC/ microSD memory card.		Copies Phonebook 2in1 setting in the original source.[*1]		
	Receives single data through infrared data port/ iC/microSD memory card.		A	B	A
	UIM phonebook	Copy to UIM	Phonebook 2in1 setting is common.		
		Copy to phone	A	B	A
Redial	View type		Dials with Number A	Dials with Number B	All
Received calls	View type		Receives with Number A	Receives with Number B	All
Mail/SMS	View type[*8]		Sent/received mails with Address A Sent/received SMS with Number A	(FOMA terminal) Received mails (when "端末に保存 (Save to the terminal)" is selected on the WEB mail site) or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B which are saved in your FOMA terminal SMS received with Number B (WEB mail site) Sent/received mails with Address B	(FOMA terminal) Sent/received mails with Address A, and received mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B which are saved in your FOMA terminal Sent/received SMS with Number A Displays SMS received with Number B (WEB mail site) Sent/received mails with Address B
	Sending		(FOMA terminal) Mails from Address A SMS from Number A	(FOMA terminal) Unavailable for sending mails/SMS (WEB mail site) Mails with Address B	(FOMA terminal) Mails with Address A[*5] SMS from Number A (WEB mail site) Mails with Address B
	Receiving		Mails to Address A/SMS to Number A (vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (no vibration)	Mails to Address A/SMS to Number A (no vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (vibration)	Mails to Address A/SMS to Number A (vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (vibration)
	Receives all data through infrared data port/iC/ microSD memory card.		Copies the status in the original source.[*1]		
	Receives single data through infrared data port/iC/microSD memory card.		A		
	FOMA card (UIM) (only for SMS)	Copy to UIM	A		
		Copy to phone	A		
PushTalk	Dialing		Number A	Unavailable	Number A
	Receiving		Number A		
	PushTalk Phonebook		View type	Unavailable	View type

Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
i-αppli	All available	Available*3	Available*4
My Profile	Number A and Address A	Number B and Address B	Number A/B Address A/B

*1: A is applied when the terminal of the sender does not support 2in1.
*2: When A or common setting phonebook is set, dialing is made with Number A, and Number B is applied with B setting phonebook.
*3: Unavailable for each appli of Message/Mail/Standby.
*4: Unavailable for Standby-appli.
*5: The destination address is selectable from B setting phonebook when composing a new mail in Dual mode, however, please note that the mail is sent from Address A. Note that if you forward a mail to Address B in Dual mode, the mail is sent from Address A.
*6: This function shows names which are checked against the name of data saved in phonebook with each number/address and converted into that name, when phone numbers on dialing/incoming, numbers on sending/receiving or addresses on sending/receiving are saved in phonebook.
*7: Gives priority to Secret data when the data is saved as secret.
*8: In B mode, all phonebook entries in microSD memory card are displayed in a list. However the details are not displayed when 2in1 is set to A mode.
Although mails/SMS are also listed, the details are not displayed if the mail/SMS has been sent to Number A/Address A.

OFFICEED

Subscription Required

"OFFICEED" is a flat-rate group service provided by the specified IMCS (indoor mobile communication system). You need to separately subscribe to the services. For more details, see the DoCoMo corporate website (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/) (in Japanese only).

<Additional service>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo offers new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the services to a menu.

Adding additional service and response message

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Additional service"▶Select any item

Additional service	**▶Highlight "<Not stored>" and (i) (FUNC)▶"Add new service"▶Enter a service name** Adds a new service. A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Additional service function menu displayed when you select "Additional service"→p.470
• **Enter number**	**▶Enter a number▶"YES"** Uses the special number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.
• **Enter USSD number**	**▶Enter a number▶"YES"** Uses the service code to connect. The number can contain up to 40 digits.
Additional guidance	**▶"Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (i) (FUNC)▶"Add new guidance"▶Enter a command▶Enter an answer message▶"YES"** Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using "service code (USSD)" to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Additional guidance function menu displayed when you select "Additional guidance"→p.470

NOTE

◆When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "special number" or "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should register the "special number" or "service code" on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

◆You can add up to 12 new network services.

◆Enter a "service code" in the "Enter USSD number" field on the screen for adding new services.

<Additional service>

◆To use a service, enter the "special number" or "service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "special number" is the number used to connect to the service center. The "service code (USSD)" is the code to notify the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Additional service"▶"Additional service"

2 Select a service▶●

Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal.... 472
Before Using 473
Checking the Procedure 473
AT Commands 474
CD-ROM 474
DoCoMo Keitai Datalink..... 474

For details on data communication, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

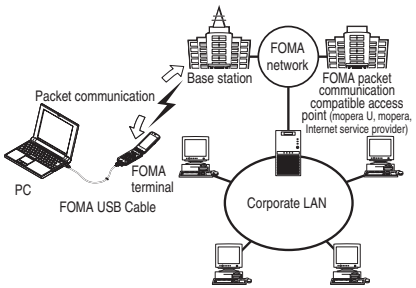
- Packet communication
  The data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6Mbps and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps.* Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.
  - When you use packet communication with DoCoMo PDA "sigmarion Ⅲ" or "musea", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving. It is not compatible with FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area communication.

  *: The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving outside FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- 64K data communication
  Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA. Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".

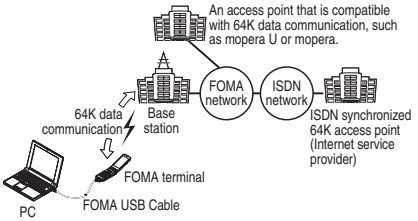
- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available. When you use access points for "mopera", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving.



■For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA. Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U".

- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a pay service for which you need to apply. "mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass-compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) under the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is only in Japanese.) To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe Reader help.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege
If you do not have this privilege on Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Vista, access is limited and you are unable to install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)
A string to identify the Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)
A registration number used to register a packet communication APN to the FOMA terminal. It is similar to a memory number in a phonebook. Up to 10 numbers from 1 to 10 can be registered.

DNS (Domain Name System)
A system that translates a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" into an IP address (a complicated string of numbers), so that a computer can easily manage it.

HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access)
A standard designed to speed up data communication of the third-generation (3G) cell-phone system, "W-CDMA".

OBEX (Object Exchange)
An international standard protocol of data communication developed by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or applications to transfer data between various devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)
Service quality about network communication speed. Set the QoS settings on the FOMA terminal to connect at any speed or only at the highest speed.

Wireless Profiled TCP (W-TCP)
TCP parameter used to make the most of the TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended.
OS*1	• Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese edition)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*2 • Windows Vista: 512M bytes or more*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or more of free space*2

*1: The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.
*2: The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

NOTE

◆You can transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". Update "musea" when you connect it to a FOMA terminal for data communication. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
◆This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
◆This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.
• "FOMA USB Cable" (optional) or "FOMA Rechargeable USB Cable 01" (optional)
• CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i"

NOTE

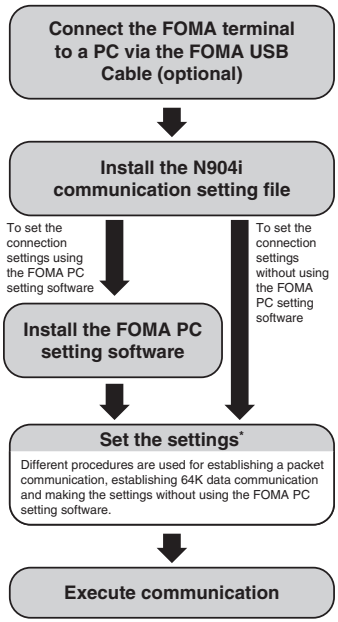
◆Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA Rechargeable USB Cable 01". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.
◆This manual gives an example when you use "FOMA USB Cable".

Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



*: To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. This FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, this FOMA terminal supports some extended commands and its own AT commands. To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal's functions on a PC, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains applications to perform data communication with the FOMA terminal, "Manual for Data Communication" and "Kuten Code List" (PDF). For details, see the bundled CD-ROM.

Contained applications/PDF documents

The bundled CD-ROM contains the following applications/PDF documents.

- N904i communication setting file
- FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)
- FOMAバイトカウンタ (FOMA byte counter)
- Guide to DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)
- Guide to mopera U (mopera U start up tool /mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data)
- SD Jukebox
- "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF)
- "Kuten Code List" (PDF)
- Adobe® Reader® 8.0
- Guide to Napster®

NOTE

◆When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the warning screen as shown right may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software. Click "はい" (Yes).

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" is software that allows you to back up your "phonebook" entries, "mail" messages, etc. and edit the data on your PC. For more details and the download, visit the following DoCoMo website. You can also access the website from the bundled CD-ROM:

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/

The above software and website are only available in Japanese. For details such as how to download/install/operate the software, transferable data, supported OS, operating environment and restrictions, see the website above. For how to operate the software after it is installed, see the help. To use "DoCoMo keitai datalink", you need to purchase the "FOMA USB Cable (optional)".

Overseas Use

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING) 476
Available Services 476
Before Using Overseas 477
Making a Call Abroad 479
Receiving a Call Abroad 480
Setting the Search Mode of the Operator ..... NW search mode 480
Displaying the Roaming Operator's Name .. Display operator name 481
Commencing Roaming Guidance ..... Roam. Guidance 481
Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming ..... Bar incoming when roam 482
Network Services During Roaming ..... Service(Int.) 482

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service provided by DoCoMo to FOMA users that allows you to make/receive calls or use i-mode through the network of roaming service operator in your travel destinations.

- You can use your usual mobile phone number and mail address overseas as you do in Japan. You can make/receive voice/videophone calls, use i-mode and SMS. Moreover, Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and other convenient network services are available.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or after September 1, 2005, you do not need to apply for "WORLD WING". However, if you did not wish to use it at the time of subscription to FOMA services, you need to make an application at your nearest DoCoMo Shop etc.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or before August 31, 2005 and have not applied for "WORLD WING" yet, you need to apply for the services separately.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- In order to use the international roaming service, it is required to insert a WORLD WING-compatible FOMA card (except blue) into this FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal can be used only in the overseas DoCoMo roaming areas*1. For the service area and charges, see the DoCoMo "International Services website".
- DoCoMo's roaming area is a 3rd generation mobile network that is compliant with the 3GPP*2 global standard.

*1: This terminal cannot be used in the GSM/GPRS service area.
*2: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is an organization that produces globally applicable technical specifications for a 3rd generation mobile system (IMT-2000).

■Country codes of major countries

Enter the following numbers to make international calls (p.56) or for "Int'l dial assistance" (p.58) (as of April, 2007):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	1	Germany	49
United Kingdom	44	Turkey	90
Italy	39	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7
China	86		

* For other country codes and the details, see the DoCoMo "International Services website".

Available Services

Communication services and functions available on this FOMA terminal vary depending on where it is used (in Japan or overseas) or which roaming operator is used overseas. They also vary depending on the roaming operator used overseas.

- See international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" for detailed descriptions on the communication services available during the international roaming.

■Communications services overseas

The following communications services are available overseas: *1

- Voice call*2
- Videophone call*2*3
- i-mode mail
- i-mode (including Full BrowserFull Browser)
- SMS (Short Message)
- i-Channel*1*4*5

*1: The service may not be usable depending on the operator or area.
*2: Incoming and outgoing calls using Number B of 2in1 setting cannot be used.
*3: International videophone calls are available with users of specific roaming operators or FOMA terminals in Japan.
*4: The automatic update will be automatically paused when a roaming operator is connected. To resume the i-Channel automatic update, it is required to reset the i-Channel setting. The monthly charge does not include packet communications charges.
*5: When you automatically update information on "Basic Channel" packet communication charges for international roaming services will apply separately.

NOTE

◆During international roaming, you cannot receive MessageF, send/receive Chaku-moji, make/receive PushTalk calls, run "Update" and "Set auto-update" of the scanning function, update software, or use packet communication or 64K data communication, ON in 2in1 setting, dialing with Number B in 2in1 setting via a PC. However, you can delete data or cancel running an application that may cause failure.

◆You cannot set or download Music channel during international roaming*. Stop the distribution before you go abroad. Restart the distribution service after you come back. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

*: Note that the packet communication charges for the i-mode connection when you attempt to set or download programs during international roaming.

◆Depending on the network condition of the country, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the normal times.

Skillful use of battery→p.42

◆The GPS function is not available overseas.

■Sending and receiving SMS

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to roaming operators other than DoCoMo. See the DoCoMo "International Services website" for countries and roaming operators available.
- To send an SMS to a user of a roaming operator, follow the steps described in the table below. Moreover, if a character contained in the message is not supported by the mobile phone of the recipient, the character may not be properly displayed. See international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" for details.

Recipient	To specify the recipient
DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	As in Japan, simply enter the phone number of the recipient.
Another roaming operator*	Enter "+", "Country code" and the mobile phone number of the recipient. You can also send an SMS by entering in order of "010" - "Country code" - "Mobile phone number of the recipient" (To reply to an SMS received from overseas, enter "010" to send overseas).

*: When the other party's mobile phone number begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing.

■Network services settings

- When using network services overseas, even if Activate/Deactivate, etc. are available, the services may be restricted or unavailable. See the international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" for details.

Service	Description
Chaku-moji	Can be set but the service is not available.
Voice Mail →p.458	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Call Waiting →p.459	
Call forwarding →p.461	
Nuisance Call Blocking →p.462	
Caller ID Notification →p.48	May be unavailable depending upon the service area. The caller ID may not be properly displayed.
Caller ID Request →p.462	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Public mode (Driving mode)	Can be set but the service is not available. Release the setting overseas.
Dual Network	Cannot be set.
English Guidance →p.463	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Multi Number →p.465	May be unavailable depending upon the service area. The additional number cannot be used to dial. A call with an additional number can be received although you may not be able to check to which number the call was made.
Roam. Guidance →p.481	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Bar incoming when roam →p.482	
Voice Mail (Int.) →p.482	Can be set and the service is available.
Call forwarding (Int.) →p.482	
Caller ID Request (Int.) →p.483	
Roam. Guidance (Int.) →p.482	
Remote access (Int.) →p.483	

* With the FOMA network, settings can be made for all the above services.

Before Using Overseas

- When using overseas, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Usage charges for the services are included in your monthly bill of FOMA services. Communication charges may be included in subsequent monthly bills due to conditions of your travel destination's roaming operator.
- When using overseas, call charges in "Call data" (p.432) include both incoming and outgoing calls. However, the displayed call charges may be different from the actual charges.
- By default, when the FOMA terminal is turned on overseas, the network will be automatically searched and set as a local roaming operator. When the user moves outside the service area of the operator, another available operator will be automatically searched and reset.
  An operator to be connected can be manually set.→p.480

Inquiries overseas

For inquiries overseas such as lost, stolen, charge accumulation or malfunction, dial "Universal Number International ID Code" or "International Access Code" before a contact number described in "Lost, Stolen, Charge Accumulation, etc. Overseas" or "Malfunction Overseas" on the back cover of this manual.

- See the DoCoMo "International Services website" for the latest details on the Universal Number International ID Codes and International Access Codes.

■International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)

If the Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) is not available to make inquiries overseas, use the International Access Code. The following are International Access Codes of major countries (as of April, 2007):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041 0021 0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

■Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2)

Dial the Universal Number International ID Code and corresponding number to make various inquiries overseas.
The following are Universal Number International ID Codes (as of April, 2007):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Taiwan	00
United States of America	011	China	00
Argentina	00	Denmark	00
United Kingdom	00	Germany	00
Israel	014	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
Australia	0011	Hungary	00
Austria	00	Philippines	00
Holland	00	Finland	990
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Portugal	00
Switzerland	00	Hong Kong	001
Sweden	00	Malaysia	00
Spain	00	South Africa	09
Thailand	001	Luxemburg	00

* The universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.
* The universal numbers are only available in the above countries.
* If you make a call from a hotel, the fees may be charged by the hotel. Check with the hotel before using.

Preparation before traveling

- WORLD WING-compatible FOMA card (except blue)
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional)/ FOMA AC Adapter 02 (optional)

NOTE

◆"FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use" and FOMA AC Adapter 02 (optional) supports voltage from 100V AC to 240V AC, but the power plug shape of the bundled AC power cord is for 100V AC (national specification). For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. You can purchase the conversion plug adapter at your local electronics stores or travel goods stores.
◆Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery.

Before leaving

- To view i-mode sites while using international roaming service, first make the "International Settings" from the "iMenu".
- To use network services overseas, set "Remote Control" (p.464) to "Activate" in advance.
  To use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service overseas, subscribe to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding".
- Depending on the roaming operator, network services may not be set or checked. See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" before leaving Japan.

NOTE

◆For the preparation and settings, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Use in the local area

This FOMA terminal is available in 3G roaming service areas. When the FOMA terminal is turned on after you arrive overseas, a local roaming operator will be automatically set.

Display, date and time

While using overseas, the name of the operator connected appears on the standby screen.

- The display mode for an operator being used can be set under "Display operator name" (p.481).
- To display the local time on the standby screen, select the city under "World watch" (p.48) and "World watch ON" from "Display type" under "Clock display" (p.149).
- In overseas as well as in Japan, i-mode messages stored in Redial, Dialed calls, Received calls, Missed calls and Outbox list are timestamped as the date and time set under "Set time" on the FOMA terminal. Regardless of this "Set time" setting, SMS messages stored in the Outbox list are timestamped as the date and time at local time, while SMS messages stored in the Inbox list are timestamped as the date and time in Japan standard time.
- If "Set time" is set to "Auto time set ON" overseas, Japan Standard Time will be retrieved (data and time at local time will not be retrieved).

Troubleshooting

- "" does not disappear from the screen
  - Set "NW search mode" to "Auto".
  - Since this FOMA terminal is compatible with international roaming, it may take long to detect radio waves immediately after the power is turned on, and "" may appear on the screen.
- The other party's caller ID is not notified
  - Even if the caller attempts to notify you of the caller ID, if the caller ID is not sent via the roaming operator you use, it will not appear on the FOMA terminal.

After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan and turn on the FOMA terminal, the network will be automatically searched and set as the FOMA network (DoCoMo) If "NW search mode" (p.480) is set to "Manual", reset it to "Auto".

Making a Call Abroad

Use your FOMA terminal and the international roaming service to make voice or videophone calls from outside Japan.

- Make sure that the battery is fully charged and the reception is good.

Videophone

Enter an international phone number then press (✉) (V.phone) to use "International Videophone" if you and the other party are using an operator compatible with FOMA videophone.

- For available countries and operators, see the DoCoMo "International Services website".
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)

- To make a call to Italy, etc., "0" may be required at the beginning of the area code (long distance code).

1 On the standby screen, dial + (0 for 1 second or longer) Country code Area code (long distance code) Phone number

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.
If the other party is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", dial "81" (Japan) as the country code.

2 (📞) or (✉) (V.phone)

Making a call to a country registered in "Int'l dial assistance"

Register the country name and code of a party you often call to "Int'l dial assistance", which simplifies the dialing operation.

- An international call can be made from the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls, etc.

1 Enter a phone number

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party. To call a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, dial the phone number as is.

2 (i) (FUNC)▶"Int'l call"▶Select a country▶(📞) or (✉) (V.phone)

"+" and "Country code" are prefixed and an international call is made.
If the other party is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", select "日本" (Japan) as the country name.

■ **Making a call to a country set in "Auto int'l call set." under "Int'l dial assistance"**

▶Phonebook detail screen (p.112)/Redial (detail) screen (p.60), Dialed calls (detail) screen , etc. (the phonebook used) ▶(📞) or (✉) (V.phone)▶"Dial"

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆When you select a country other than "イタリア" (Italy) from "Int'l call", and the other party's phone number begins with "0", "0" is deleted.

◆To make a call to outside your destination country (including Japan) using "Phone To function" from the i-mode site or mail detail screen, select "Int'l call" on the "Dialing" screen (p.226), a country name then "Dial". "+" and "Country code" are prefixed to the original phone number. If the country code of the country is not registered in "Int'l dial assistance", "Phone To function" is not available to make an international call.

Making a local call abroad

You can make a call simply by dialing the other party's landline or mobile phone number as you do in Japan.

1 Enter a phone number

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party.
If the other party is a user of "WORLD WING", even if the other party is in the same country, make a call as an international call to Japan.

2 [Call] or [Mail] ([V.phone])

Calling a WORLD WING user overseas

If the other party is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", even if the other party is in the same country, make a call as an international call to Japan by making a call to a country registered in "Int'l dial assistance" (p.58), making a call from the phonebook or "Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)" (p.479).

Receiving a Call Abroad

You can use the international roaming service to receive a call overseas without having to change the phone number.

1 When a call arrives, press [Call] or [●]

"Receiving a voice call"→p.70

■ **Videophone**

To answer a call as videophone, press [Call] or [Mail] ([V.phone])

To answer with an alternative image, press [●]

"Receiving a videophone call"→p.71

The other party making a call

■ **To have the other party make a call from Japan to your destination country**

To have the other party make a call from Japan to your FOMA terminal in your destination country, the other party only needs to dial the phone number as he/she does in Japan.
090 (or 080) - XXXX - XXXX

■ **To have the other party make a call from outside Japan to your destination country**

No matter whether you are in Japan or overseas, have the other party dial the international access code + "81" (country code of Japan).
International access code - 81- 90 (or 80) - XXXX- XXXX

NOTE

◆When you receive a call while using international roaming services, the call is sent to your usual mobile phone number in Japan and then forwarded to your travel destination no matter from which country the call originates. The caller has to bear charges for calls to Japan, and you have to bear incoming call charges including international forwarding charges.

<NW search mode>

Setting the Search Mode of the Operator

When you move from in range to out of range of the network of an operator being used, the FOMA terminal is reconnected to another operator.

- This function may not be set due to conditions of radio waves or the network.
- As of April, 2007, no operator other than NTT DoCoMo can be selected in Japan.
- After you return to Japan, if "[icon]" appears, check that "NW search mode" is set to "Auto".

Changing the operator manually

Default setting: Auto (DoCoMo)

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Network setting"▶"NW search mode"

The "NW search mode" screen appears.



NW search mode

2 "Manual"▶Select an operator

■ **To change the operator automatically**

▶"Auto"

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when searching automatically.
→p.481

Re-searching for the network <Network re-search>

- Re-search for a network then connect to the network if "NW search mode" is set to "Auto" and an operator could not be searched for, or if "NW search mode" is set to "Manual" and you want to change operators.

1 NW search mode screen (p.480)▶ "Network re-search"▶ Select an operator

■ **If "NW search mode" is set to "Auto"**
▶"Network re-search"
A network is searched then automatically accessed.

Setting an operator to be preferably connected

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when a network is automatically searched or re-searched.

- Up to 20 operators can be registered to the PLMN network list.
- Operators designated by DoCoMo are registered to the PLMN network list.

1 NW search mode screen (p.480)▶ "PLMN setting"
The PLMN setting screen appears. Operators are listed in priority order.

2 Highlight an operator whose priority is to be changed▶ (FUNC)▶"Change priority"

3 Highlight a position to move to▶●
Move to the highlighted position. Select "last" to move to the end.

4 ✉ (Finish)▶"YES"

Function menu (PLMN setting screen)

PLMN manual select	**▶Enter the country code and network number▶"YES"** Enters and registers the country code and network number manually.
PLMN select	**▶Select an item to be registered ▶●▶"YES"** Selects and registers an operator from the list.
Set VPLMN to PLMN	Registers the operator being connected.
Change priority	"Setting an operator to be preferably connected"→p.481
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted operator.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) of an operator▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes selected operators.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the operators.

NOTE

◆You cannot register an operator to the PLMN network list if the operator is already registered.
◆The priority may not apply due to conditions of radio waves or the network.

<Display operator name>

Displaying the Roaming Operator's Name

Default setting: Display ON

Set whether to display the name of an operator currently connected in the task icon area (p.30) during international roaming.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Network setting"▶"Display operator name"

2 "Display ON"
The operator's name appears.

■ **To hide the operator's name**
▶"Display OFF"

NOTE

◆Even if it is set to "Display ON", when you are in the domestic area (FOMA network), the operator's name is not displayed.
◆While "NW search mode" is set to "Manual" and "" appears or you move from in range to out of range, "select net" appears regardless of the setting of this function.

<Roam. Guidance>

Commencing Roaming Guidance

Set to notify the other party that you are roaming internationally when you receive a voice call or videophone call during international roaming.

1 MENU▶"SERVICE"▶"Roam. Guidance"▶Select any item

Activate	Activates/Deactivates the roaming guidance.
Deactivate	

Continued on next page

Check setting	Displays the roaming guidance setting.

NOTE

◆The service may not be set in some service areas.
◆Even if the guidance is not set, the ringback tone provided by your travel destination's roaming operator is played.
◆Even if the guidance is set, foreign-language announcements may be played due to conditions of the roaming operator.

<Bar incoming when roam>

Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming

- You can select whether to bar videophone calls only or all incoming calls.

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Bar incoming when roam"▶Select any item

Activate	Sets reception during international roaming.
• **Bar All incoming**	**▶"YES"▶Enter your network security code** Bars all incoming calls.
• **Data calls Barring**	**▶"YES"▶Enter your network security code** Bars incoming videophone calls and 64K data communications.*
Deactivate	**▶"YES"▶Enter your network security code** Deactivates incoming call barring during roaming.
Check setting	Displays the settings for Bar incoming when roam.

*: 64K data communication is not available on this FOMA terminal during international roaming.

<Service(Int.)>

Network Services During Roaming

- Use some network services overseas such as "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding". The roaming guidance can also be set.
- To use "Voice Mail (Int.)" or "Call Forwarding (Int.)", apply for "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" beforehand. In addition, set "Remote Control" beforehand. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".
- You cannot perform the international services when "  " appears.
- When operating overseas, you must bear international call charges in your destination country.
- For details on the network services, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]", etc.

Operating the Voice Mail service in your destination country <Voice Mail (Int.)>

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Service(Int.)"▶"Voice Mail (Int.)"▶Select any item

Activate	**▶"YES"** From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Deactivate	
Play messages	
Set ring time*	
Setting	

*: As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

NOTE

◆For details on the Voice Mail service, see "Voice Mail" (p.458).

Operating the Call Forwarding service in your destination country <Call Forwarding(Int.)>

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Service(Int.)"▶"Call Forwarding(Int.)"▶Select any item

Activate	**▶"YES"** From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Deactivate	
Setting*	

*: As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

NOTE

◆For details on the Call Forwarding service, see "Call Forwarding Service" (p.461).

Operating the roaming guidance in your destination country <Roam. Guidance(Int.)>

1 (MENU)▶"SERVICE"▶"Service(Int.)"▶"Roam.Guidance(Int.)"▶"YES"

From here on, follow the voice instructions.

Setting remote control in your destination country <Remote access(Int.)*>

1 MENU ▶"SERVICE"▶"Service(Int.)"▶"Remote access(Int.)"▶"YES"

From here on, follow the voice instructions.

*: As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

NOTE

◆For details on Remote Access, see "Setting up Remote Control" (p.464).

Operating the Caller ID Request service in your destination country <Caller ID req.(Int.)*>

1 MENU ▶"SERVICE"▶"Service(Int.)"▶"Caller ID req.(Int.)"▶"YES"

From here on, follow the voice instructions.

*: As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

NOTE

◆For details on the Caller ID Request service, see "Caller ID Request Service" (p.462).

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List 486
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase 493
Key Assignment (5-touch input) 496
Key Assignment (2-touch input) 497
Key Assignment (T9 input) 498
Symbols and Special Characters 498
Pictographs 499
Smiley Face Symbols 500
Common Phrases 501
Multi Access Combination Patterns 501
Multitask Combination Patterns 502
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal 503
Options and Accessories 504
Movie Playing Software 504

Troubleshooting

Malfunction Checklist 504
If Any Error Message Appears 509
Warranty and After-Sales Service 516
About the i-mode malfunction check site 518
Updating Software ..... Software Update 518
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data ..... Scanning function 524
Specifications 526
Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal 527
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones 528
Export Administration Regulations 528

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by "Reset settings" (p.438).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
MAIL	Inbox		—		—	p.262
	Outbox		—		—	p.262
	Draft		—		—	p.253
	Compose message		—		—	p.243
	WEB mail		—		—	p.243
	Chat mail		—		—	p.282
	Compose SMS		—		—	p.281
	Check new messages		(1second or longer)		—	p.230
	Receive option		—		—	p.256
	Check new SMS		—		—	p.288
	Template		—		—	p.250
	Mail settings		—		—	p.276
i-MODE	iMenu		—		—	p.213
	Bookmark		—		—	p.219
	Screen memo		—		—	p.221
	Last URL		—		—	p.215
	Go to location		—		—	p.218
	i-Channel		ch		—	p.236
	MessageR/F		—		—	p.231
	Check new messages		(1second or longer)		—	p.230
	Client certificate		—		—	p.232
	i-mode settings		—		—	p.227
	Full Browser		—		—	p.328
i-αPPLI	Software list		( ) (1 second or longer)		—	p.295
	microSD data		—		—	p.304
	Auto-start set		—		—	p.300
	i-αppli action info		—		—	p.301
SETTINGS	Kisekae Tool setting		—		—	p.144
	Incoming call	Ring volume	MENU50		All Level 4	p.74
		Select ring tone	MENU13	Phone	Pattern 1	p.126
				Videophone	Pattern 3	
				PushTalk	Pattern 4	
				Mail	Alarm 2 (Phone color: Orange Cut, Pink Soda), Alarm 3 (Phone color: Day and Night, Urban Blue)	
				Chat mail		
				MessageR	Alarm 3 (Phone color: Orange Cut, Pink Soda), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Day and Night, Urban Blue)	
				MessageF		
		Sound effect	MENU64	Surround	OFF	p.128
				3Dsound	ON	
		Vibrator	MENU54		All OFF	p.129
		Illumination	MENU89	Set color	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1	p.147
				Set pattern	Standard	
				Adjust color	Edit color name: Color 1 to 12 Adjust color tone: Default	
				Missed info	ON	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
SETTINGS	Incoming call	Manner mode set	MENU20		Manner mode (Original settings: Default→p.133)	p.133
		Disp. phonebook image	—		ON	p.138
		Answer setting	MENU58		Any key answer	p.73
		Mail/Msg. ring time	MENU68		All ON (Ring time: 5 seconds)	p.132
		Ring time (sec.)	MENU90	Set mute seconds	OFF Mute seconds:1 sec (Set mute seconds is set to "ON")	p.179
				Missed calls display	Display	
		Info notice setting	MENU65		Japanese display: ボイス (Voice) 名前通知 (Name notification) :OFF English display: ON	p.79
		Record message	MENU55		OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record message is set to "ON") Ringing time: 13 seconds (When Record message is set to "ON")	p.80
		Disp. call/receive No.	—		White	p.155
	Talk	Noise reduction	MENU76		ON	p.69
		Quality alarm	MENU75		High tone	p.131
		Reconnect signal	MENU77		High tone	p.69
		Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.148
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.76
				Holding tone	Melody 1	
		Setting when folded	MENU18		End the call	p.73
	Dialing	Pause dial	MENU84		—	p.67
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.69
		Prefix setting	—		"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.68
		Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.437
		Int'l dial assistance	—	Auto int'l call set.	ON (automatically added)	p.58
				Country Code setting	"日本" (Country code: 81) User setting: 日本: 81, アメリカ: 1, 中国: 86, タイ: 66, フィリピン: 63, 台湾: 886, 韓国: 82, フランス: 33, 香港: 852, イギリス: 44, ドイツ: 49, シンガポール: 65, カナダ: 1, インドネシア: 62, イタリア: 39, オーストラリア: 61, マレーシア: 60, ベトナム: 84, インド: 91, オランダ: 31, スペイン: 34, ブラジル: 55	
				IDD Prefix setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.58
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.85
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.85
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den (Dimo)	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.85

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
SETTINGS	Videophone	Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.90
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.87
				Front camera Reverse	ON	
		Ntfy switch-mode	—		—	p.88
		Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.87
		V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.88
	Display	Display setting	**MENU56**	Stand-by display	Orange Cut (Phone color: Orange Cut), Day and Night (Phone color: Day and Night), Urban Blue (Phone color: Urban Blue), Bunny Character1 (Phone color: Pink Soda)	p.135
				Wake-up display	N904i (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Bunny Character2 (Phone color: Pink Soda) Wake-up message: Not stored	
				Dialing	Black	
				Calling		
				V.phone Dialing		
				V.phone Calling		
				Mail sending		
				Mail receiving		
				Check new messages		
		Backlight	**MENU70**	Lighting	ON (lighting) + Saver (Light time: 3 minutes)	p.140
				Charging	Standard	
				Area	LCD+Keys	
				Brightness	Level 2	
		Display design	**MENU86**	Color pattern	Pattern 5	p.141
				Background	OFF	
				Icon pattern	Battery icon: Standard (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Green (Phone color: Pink Soda)	
					Antenna icon: Standard (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Carrot (Phone color: Pink Soda)	
				Soft key	Standard	
		Indicator display	**MENU93**		ON Disp. clock only :OFF Clock type: Digital 3 Called (Incoming call display): ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON Background i-αppli: OFF Display time: 15 seconds	p.139
		Font	**MENU66**	Type	Font 1	p.148
				Thickness	Bold	
				Character size	Standard	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
SETTINGS	Display	Desktop icon	MENU63	Theme 1 to 3	Photo mode, Music Channel, Full Browser	p.149
		3D display setting	—		ON	p.153
		Select language	MENU15		Japanese	p.46
		Original menu	MENU52		My Profile Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm Change security code	p.144
		Menu display set	MENU57	Menu display	List	p.141
				Theme	Orange Icon (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night), Green Icon (Urban Blue), Bunny Character (Phone color: Pink Soda)	
				Memory focus	ON	
				Clear operated	—	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.344
		Automatic display	MENU47		OFF	p.122
		Icons	MENU36		—	p.28
		Icons setting	—		ON	p.154
		Privacy angle	—		OFF	p.139
	Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU61		—	p.432
		Notice designate calls	—	Cost limit setting	Not set	p.433
				Notify setting	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total	MENU60		—	p.432
		Auto reset total cost	—		OFF	p.432
	Clock	Set time	MENU31		Auto time set ON	p.47
		Clock display	MENU39	Display	Japanese display: ON English display: ON	p.149
				Size	Big	
				Color	White (Phone color: Orange Cut, Urban Blue, Pink Soda), Black (Day and Night)	
				Display type	World watch OFF	
		World watch	—	Time zone	GMT+00 (City: London)	p.48
				Summer time	OFF	
		Alarm setting	—		Alarm preferred	p.419
		Clock Alarm Tone set	—		Alarm Tone	p.131
	Lock/ Security	Lock — Dial lock	—		Release	p.161
		Lock — Original lock	—		Release	p.167
					Group and item settings Data disp. Edit del., GPS: All selected Dial/sending mail, Incoming/ Mail disp.: All deselected	
		IC card lock	—		OFF (IC lock (power-off): Maintain)	p.311
		Keypad lock	—		After folded: OFF Timer: OFF	p.171
		Face authentication	—		OFF	p.174
					New image: Not stored	
					Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected	
		Self mode	—		Release	p.180
		Secret mode	MENU40		Release	p.163

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
SETTINGS	Lock/ Security	Secret data only mode	**MENU41**		Release	p.163
		Reject unknown	—		Accept	p.180
		Call setting w/o ID	**MENU10**		All Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.178
		Change security code	**MENU29**		0000 (4 zeros)	p.159
		IC card authentic.	—		OFF	p.172
					External IC card: Not set	
		PIN setting	—		—	p.159
		Scanning function	—	Set scan	Scan: ON	p.524
					Message scan: ON	
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—		60 seconds	p.228
		Set check new messages	—		All checked	p.278
		Host selection	**MENU81**		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.228
		SMS center selection	—		DoCoMo User defined host: Not recorded	p.288
		Certificate	—		All Valid	p.232
		Certificate host	—		DoCoMo User defined host: Not recorded	p.233
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info	—		Not display	p.294
		End stand-by display	—		—	p.303
		i-αppli vol.	—		Level 4	p.296
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W	—		Accept (Repetition check: Yes)	p.311
		Auto reading setting	—		ON	p.311
		Scroll	—		1 line	p.311
	External connection	USB mode setting	—		Communication mode	p.374
		Earphone	**MENU51**		Earphone + Speaker	p.132
		Select microphone	—		External microphone	p.438
		Automatic answer	**MENU94**		OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to "ON")	p.438
	Network setting	NW search mode	—		Auto	p.480
		Display operator name	—		Display ON	p.481
	Other settings	Keypad sound	**MENU30**		ON	p.129
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.131
		IC card Illumination	—		ON	p.148
		Battery level	**MENU71**		—	p.45
		External keys guard	**MENU** ✱ (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.174
		Character input set	**MENU35**	Input mode	Mode 1 (5-touch)	p.445
				Prediction	ON	p.447
				Guidance	ON	p.444
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.455
				Clear learned	—	p.453
				CHG input size	Standard	p.445
		Neuropointer	—	Pointer	ON	p.146
				Speed	Simple: Normal	
				Slide	—	
				Pointer icon setting	Simple Shape (Phone color: Orange Cut, Day and Night, Urban Blue), Carrot (Phone color: Pink Soda)	
		Reset settings	**MENU23**		—	p.438
		Initialize	—		—	p.440
		Software Update	—	Update notification	Disable	p.518

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
DATA BOX	My picture		MENU46		—	p.342
	Music		—		—	p.402
	i-motion		—		—	p.351
	Melody		MENU16		—	p.361
	My document		—		—	p.384
	Chara-den		—		—	p.358
	Kisekae Tool		—		—	p.364
	Document viewer		—		—	p.389
LIFE KIT	Music Channel		—		—	p.396
	Bar code reader		—		—	p.204
	Receive Ir data		MENU79		—	p.382, 383
	ToruCa		—		—	p.307
	IC card content		—		—	p.307
	IC card lock		—		OFF (IC lock (power-OFF): Maintain)	p.311
	SD-PIM		—		—	p.369
	Camera		—		—	p.191, 197
	GPS		—	Position location	—	p.315
				Location notification	Not stored	p.324
				Location history	No location history	p.324
				i-αppli	ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビN (ZENRIN🏠 Maps + Navi N)	p.317
				GPS settings	Position settings GPS button setting: Read a Map Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.316
					Notification menu Register LCS client: Not stored Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.323
					Request menu Permit to send loc.: OFF Positioning mode: Standard mode Host selection: Initial address	p.321
					Service settings: —	
					Tone/Vibrator Ring volume: Level 4 Select ring tone: Alarm 8 Vibrator: Pattern 1 Ring time Position location: OFF Loc. notification, Loc. request/permit, Loc. request/confirm: ON (5 seconds)	p.130
					Illumination: Color 5	p.131
	Data security serv.		—	Sndg img in Phonebook	OFF	p.181
	Schedule		MENU45		—	p.423
	Alarm		MENU44		All OFF	p.422
	To Do list		MENU95		—	p.427
	Text memo		MENU42		—	p.434
	Calculator		MENU85		—	p.434
	Play/Erase msg.		▼(MEMO/CHECK)		—	p.82
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.83
	Voice memo*		MENU43		—	p.431
	Voice announce		MENU91		—	p.431
	UIM operation		—		—	p.116
	My Profile		MENU0		—	p.48, 428
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.378

*: "Voice memo" may appear depending on the menu theme.

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
LIFE KIT	Access reader		—		—	p.206
	Dictionary		—		—	p.435
SERVICE	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 messages pre-installed	p.63
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
				3D message display	ON	
	Caller ID Notification		MENU17		—	p.48
	Voice Mail		—		—	p.458
	Call Waiting		—		—	p.459
	Call Forwarding		—		—	p.461
	2in1 setting		—		OFF	p.466
				Mode switching	Dual mode	p.466
				Stand-by display	Dual mode: Pink Soda B mode: Geometric	p.467
				Set call/receive No.	Disp. call/receive No. Number A: White Number B: Gray Ringtone for Number B Voice call (recv.) Ring tone: Pattern 2 Other than above: Same as Number A V. phone (recv.) Ring tone: Pattern 2 Other than above: Same as Number A	p.467
	Nuisance Call Blk		—		—	p.462
	Caller ID Request		—		—	p.462
	Incoming Call Mng		—		Answer	p.463
	Set in-call arrival		—		—	p.464
	Remote Control		—		—	p.464
	Dual Network		—		—	p.462
	English Guidance		—		—	p.463
	Additional service		—		—	p.470
	Service Numbers		—		—	p.463
	Multi Number		—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.465
	Roam. Guidance		—		—	p.481
	Bar incoming when roam		—		—	p.482
	Service(Int.)		—		—	p.482
PHONE BOOK	Phonebook		—		—	p.107, 111
	PushTalk		—		—	p.99, 101
OWN DATA	Received calls		MENU24		—	p.62
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.60
	Mail member		MENU97		—	p.254
	Chat group		—		—	p.284
	Choku-Den		—		—	p.121
	Common phrases		MENU38		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)	p.451
	Own dictionary		MENU82		—	p.453
	DL dictionary		—		—	p.453

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

Stand-by display


Orange Cut


Day and Night

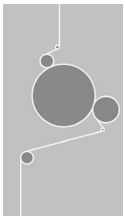

Urban Blue

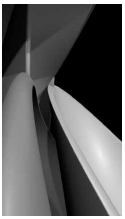

Bunny Character1

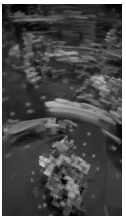

Bunny Character2

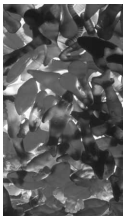


N904i


Geometric


Pink Soda

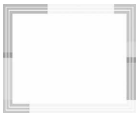

Splash


Candy


Disney1


Disney2

Frame


Line


Rainbow


Disney

Decomail-picture

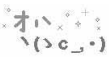

Disney 1


Disney 2

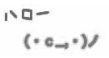

Disney 3


Disney 4


Disney 5



おはよう



こんにちは

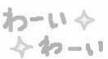

おやすみ



さようなら



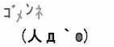
ありがとう

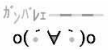


うれしい


おめでとう

Continued on next page


ごめんね

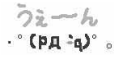

ファイト


ショック


すき

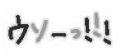

きらい


怒る


泣く


悩む


疲れた


驚き


食事


飲み会


ショッピング


ドライブ


桃太郎電鉄


ドキドキ


ショック


バイバイ


チッ、チッ、チッ


パチン


Bunny Character 1


Bunny Character 2


Bunny Character 3



Bunny Character 4



Bunny Character 5


あっかんべえ*


見ざる聞かざる*


ムンクの叫び*


カメ着ぐるみ*


クラッカー*


ん？？*


てるてる坊主*


雨のおでかけ*


急ぐ*


列車*


音符


キラキラ


雪


星


ハート


ケーキ


金魚


ゾウ


のりもの


きかんしゃ


蝶

サーフィン


鎖

*: ©Disney

NOTE

◆ The Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

● Pointer


Simple Shape


Orange


Blue


Carrot


Honeybee


Chopsticks


Disney

Battery icon


Standard


Orange


Blue


Green


Sushi


Disney

Antenna icon


Standard


Orange


Blue


Carrot


Sushi


Disney

Template



Disney 1



Disney 2



Disney 3



Disney 4



Disney 5



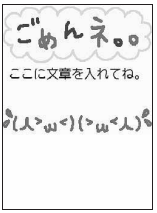
Good Morning



Good Night



Thank You



Sorry



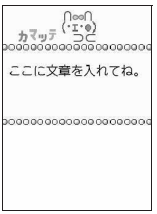
Glad



Love



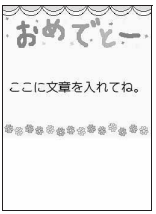
Shock



Bored



Good Job



Congratulations



Bunny Character 1



Bunny Character 2



Bunny Character 3



Bunny Character 4



Bunny Character 5

NOTE

◆ The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Stamp

Cross		Heart1		Heart2		Kiss		Tear		Flame	
Lightning		Sorry		Note		Flower		Love		Anger	
Right		Below		Left		Above		Here		No. 1	
No. 2		No. 3		Party		OK		NG		Person	
Car		Asleep		Question		Surprise		Shine		Whirlpool	
Punch		Nose									

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
0	わをんゎー	ワヲンヮ*1ー
*	゛ ゜ *2, *3	゛ ゜ *2, *3
#	、。？！・Space *4	、。？！・Space *4

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
1	. @ / ? ! ( ) , - _ : ‘ ’ *5 & ¥ 1 Space	1
2	ABCabc2	2
3	DEFdef3	3
4	GHIghi4	4
5	JKLjkl5	5
6	MNOmno6	6
7	PQRpqrS7	7
8	TUVtuv8	8
9	WXYZwxyz9	9
0	Space 0	0＋*6
*	———— *2,*3	＊*3
#	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*7	#

*1: Lower case "ワ" can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*2: When there are characters that cannot have dakuten/han-dakuten attached and the switching of the case is available, this will switch lowercase and uppercase. If "つ" or "ツ" is entered, lower case/upper case/voiced sound symbol can be switched.
*3: Pressing for 1 second or longer will enter a carriage return mark " ↵ ".
*4: "、", "。", "?", "!" and "・" cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.
*5: This symbol appears as "‾" in double-byte input mode.
*6: "+" can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
*7: Will not be displayed when switched to double-byte.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	ー	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*1 ☎	
	8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		*1 ♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ ゎ	を	ん	゛*3 、	゜*3 。	6	7	8	9	0

■ Single-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		*1 ☎	
	8	ﾔ ｬ	(	ﾕ ｭ	)	ﾖ ｮ	＊	＃		*1 ♥	*2
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5
	0	ﾜ ~	ﾖ '	ﾝ	ﾞ ,	ﾟ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

- A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

*1: Valid only when "Pictograph" is available, e.g. when you enter "Text memo" or "Common phrases". These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter "Pictograph" but "☎" and "♥" when composing SMS messages.

*2: Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time 8 0 is pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press ＊ to convert it to lower case.

*3: In double-byte input mode, "゛" and "゜" appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, "゛" and "゜" are replaced with spaces.

: A space is entered.

Key Assignment (T9 input)

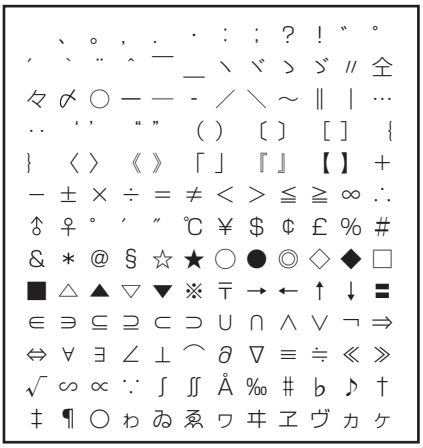
Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode
1	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	. @ / ? ! ( ) , - _ : ' " *5 & ¥ 1 Space
2	か column, 2	カ column, 2	ABCabc2
3	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	DEFdef3
4	た column, 4	タ column, 4	GHIghi4
5	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	JKLjkl5
6	は column, 6	ハ column, 6	MNOmno6
7	ま column, 7	マ column, 7	PQRSpqrs7
8	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8	TUVtuv8
9	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9	WXYZwxyz9
0	わをんゎー, 0	ワヲンヮ*4ー, 0	0
＊	*1,*2	*1,*2	*2,*6
＃	*3	*3	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp

- For "numeric input mode", see "Mode 1 (5-touch input)" key assignments.
- Number candidates do not appear when you enter a reading into a UIM phonebook entry or "Own dictionary".
- Immediately after "Alphabetic (double-byte)" or "Alphabetic (single-byte)" is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in "CapsLock" → "Mode released" → "Shift" each time you press ＊.
- Entered characters are always upper case in "CapsLock mode". In "Shift mode", only the first character is entered in upper case, and subsequent characters will be in lower case. Entered characters are always lower case when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in "Shift mode", the mode is released.

*1: Candidates are switched between "゛" (dakuten) and "゜" (han-dakuten) when a reading is entered.
*2: Pressing for 1 second or longer will enter a carriage return mark " ↵ ".
*3: After confirming a reading and characters, "、", "。", "?", "!", "・" and "Space" appear as well as in Mode 1 (5-touch input).
*4: Lower case "ワ" can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*5: This symbol appears as "￣" in double-byte input mode.
*6: The mode changes in order from "CapsLock mode" → "Released" → "Shift mode".

Symbols and Special Characters

■ Full pitch 1





■ Full pitch 2

① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫
⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ Ⅰ Ⅱ Ⅲ Ⅳ
Ⅴ Ⅵ Ⅶ Ⅷ Ⅸ Ⅹ ㍉ ㌔ ㌢ ㍍ ㌘ ㌧
㌃ ㌶ ㍑ ㌍ ㌦ ㌣ ㌫ ㍊ ㌻ ㎜ ㎝
㎞ ㎎ ㎏ ㏄ ㎡ 平成 ㍾ ㍽ № ㏍ ℡
㊤ ㊥ ㊦ ㊧ ㊨ ㈱ ㈲ ㈹ 明治 大正 昭和 ≒ ≡
∫ ∮ Σ √ ⊥ ∠ ∟ ⊿ ∵ ∩ ∪ 💔* ☎*

■ Half pitch

! " # $ % & ' ( ) * +
, − . ／ : ; ＜ = ＞ ? @ [
¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。「 」
、 ・ ー ゛ ゜

*: "💔" and "☎" appear when entering SMS message body.

■ Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting "きごう" to display the symbol candidates then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the following characters then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと, あっとまーく	@
いこーる	＝
えん	¥
おす	↑
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() 〔〕 [] ｛｝ 〈〉 《》 「」 『』 【】 ‘’ “” () 〈〉 [] ｛｝ 【】

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	：
こんま	，
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	〆
たす	＋
どう	ヽヾゝゞ〃々
ぱーせんと	％

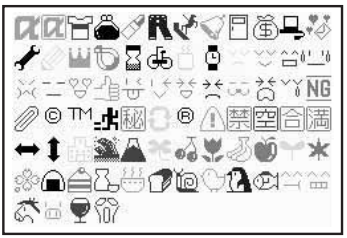
Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	－
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

■ Pictograph 1



■ Pictograph 2



Continued on next page

■ Decorate PI (Pictograph D)





© Disney

NOTE

◆ Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if they are not supported. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

■ Smiley Face

Reading	Smiley Face
ありがとありがとう	m(_)m
ばんざい	＼(^0^)／
わーい	(^0^)
わーい	(^∀^)
わーい	(*^□^*)
わーい	o(^∀^o)(o^∀^)o
わーい	(≧▼≦)
おーい	(^0^)／
ぶい	(^^)v
ぎゃはは	(^Q^)/^
あは	(o^o^o)
にこ	^0^；
にこ	(^-^)
にこ	(*^_^*)
にこ	(o‘∀‘o)
にこ	(o^∀^o)
にこ	(‘∀’●)
にこ	(●^-^●)
にこ	(o^∀^o)
ちゅ	(^3^)/
ちゅ	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
わくわく	o(^-^)o
ういんく	(^_-)
さよなら	(^_^)/~
さよなら	(_Д^)ノ~~
がんば	p(^^)q
ね	(^_^)b
ぽりぽり	(^^)ゞ
ひやあせ	(^o^；
あせあせ	(;^_^A
びくっ	(*_*)
どき	((◎)-◎;)
え	(@_@;)
めがてん	(▪▪;)

Reading	Smiley Face
はてな	(▪▪?)
きらーん	(☆。☆)
しくしく	(T_T)
さよなら	(T_T)/~
いたた	(>_<)
いたた	(>＜)
えーん	(;_;)
えーん	(ToT)
えーん	Ω Å Ω;
えーん	(ノД<。)°
えーん	°。(p> Λ <q)。°°
えーん	(T ω T)
なぜ	(?_?)
がーん	(￣□￣;)!!
がーん	(＿＿;)
がーん	Σ(￣□￣;)
えへん	(￣^￣)
む	(−＿−メ)
む	o(￣^￣o)
いかり	(`´)
むか	(;-_-+
むか	(`へ´)
むか	(ˆへˆ;)
こそこそ	(▪_▪|
じーっ	(-_-)
きこえない	|(-_-)|
こまったもんだ	(￣～￣)ξ
ぷたー	)^o^(
こあら	(−Q−)
いっぷく	(^|^)y~
いっぷく	(^_^)y-~~~
ほし	☆彡
ねてる	(-_-)zz
ねむい	＼(^o^)／

Reading	Smiley Face
ねむい	(o_-)ノ
めも	φ(..)
うん	(°_°)(。_。)
かんぱい	(^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^)
ども	＼(^_^)(^_^)／
がまん	(;´∩`)
こんにちは	ゞ(=^▽^=)ノ
こんにちは	(▪∀▪)ノ
こんにちは	(●´∀`●)/
いいな	(o>ω<o)
いいな	(@°▽°@)
いいな	(m’□’m)
うーん	(￣～￣;)
てれる	(／_＼;)
てれる	(*/ω＼*)
てれる	(//∀//)
てれる	(≧ω≦)
しあわせ	°+。(*´∀`)。+°
しあわせ	ヽ(´▽`)/
しあわせ	(*´∀`*)
なかよし	^一^)人(^一^
ごめん	(*c*)
いじいじ	φ(.. ;)
いじわる	Ψ(`∀´#)
よろしく	☆＼(▽⌒*)
こまった	＞＜
やだ	(○>_<)
へこむ	(`´)
へこむ	(´ω`)
びっくり	(o Д O;)
びっくり	w(° 0 °)w
だっしゅ	ε=ε=ε=┌(▪_▪)┘

NOTE

◆ Face symbols can be entered from "Face Mark" under the Text entry (edit) function menu. →p.449

Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Current communication \ Newly established communication	Voice call		Videophone call		Using i-mode*7	Using i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Dialing	Receiving	Dialing	Receiving			Send	Receive
During a voice call	△*1	△*2	×	△*3	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△*3	—	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
During i-mode*7	○	○	△*5	△*11	—	○	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△*6	×	×*4
During 64K data communication	×	△*3	×	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
During a PushTalk call	×	△*10	×	×	×	×	×	×*4

Current communication \ Newly established communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		PushTalk	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Dialing	Receiving
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△*3	×	×*12
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×*12	×	△*3	×	×
During i-mode*7	○	○	×	×	×	×	△*8	△*9
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	—	—	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	×	×	×	×*13	×

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to make another call.

*2 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.463

*3 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.463

Continued on next page

*4 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode Center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing "Check new messages" after the current communication ends.
*5 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.
*6 : You cannot communicate via i-αppli software.
*7 : Includes i-Channel site view and communication via Full Browser or ToruCa.
*8 : Make a PushTalk call after disconnecting the current i-mode.
*9 : When "Set i-mode arrival act" under "i-mode settings" (p.227) is set to "PushTalk preferred", receiving a PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.
*10 : If "PushTalk arrival act" is set to "Answer", answering an incoming voice call ends PushTalk communication. →p.104
*11 : If "V-phone while packet" is set to "V-phone priority", answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
*12 : It is logged as a missed call.
*13 : Only when you are a caller, you can make a call to add members.

Multitask Combination Patterns

Function / Currently	Mail	i-mode Menu/ i-Channel list	i-αppli	Various Settings	Data box	LifeKit	Service	Phone book entry	Own data	Original menu
Launching Mail group	○*1	○	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching i-mode group	○*25	×	○*26	○*3	○*27	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching i-αppli group	○	○*21 *28	×	○*3	○*22	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○*5	×	○*10	○	○
Launching Tools group*14	○	○	○*13	○*3	×*17 *18	×*19	○*15	×	×	○
Music Group	○*23	○*24	×	○*3	○*24	○*3	○*15 *24	○*10 *24	○	○
During a voice call	○*2	○*2	×	×*4	×	×*7 *19	○*2*9 *15*16	○*2 *10	○*2 *11	○*2
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×*6 *20	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	○*4	×	○*8	○*9*15 *16	○*10	○*11	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×*4 *12	×	×*3 *19	○*9*15 *16	○*10	○*11	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.
*1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" cannot be used simultaneously.
*2 : It is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.
*3 : Some functions are unavailable.
*4 : Only "Pause dial", "Keypad sound" and "IC card lock" are available.
*5 : "Received Ir data", "SD-PIM", "Voice announce" and "UIM operation" are unavailable.
*6 : "Voice memo (in-call)" is available only when you press and hold ▼(MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer. However, it is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.
*7 : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "GPS", "Data Security serv.", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "My Profile", "Voice memo (in-call)", "Access reader", "Dictionary" and "IC card lock" are available. However, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
*8 : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "GPS", "Data Security serv.", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "My Profile", "Access reader", "Dictionary" and "IC card lock" are available. However, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
*9 : "Voice Mail" messages cannot be played. The special number (p.470) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).

*10: "Restrictions" is unavailable.
*11: "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "DL dictionary" are unavailable.
*12: Only "Ntfy switch-mode" is available.
*13: i-αppli cannot be used while a track is played on "Music player" or "Music channel".
*14: The function is unavailable when "Receive Ir data", "SD-PIM" or "UIM operation" is selected.
*15: "Chaku-moji" is unavailable.
*16: "Caller ID Notification" is unavailable.
*17: Only "Music player" is available.
*18: If you perform infrared data exchange or iC communication during positioning with the GPS function, you will be out of the service area and the positioning will be canceled.
*19: The Position location, Location notification and Location request are available.
*20: The Location notification and Location request are available.
*21: i-motion, Chaku-Uta-Full® and Music channel cannot be downloaded.
*22: Editing, registering and copying still images to microSD, editing, forwarding and copying/moving movies to microSD, moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to microSD memory card
*23: Read out mail function is not available. In addition, playing sounds such as melodies attached to files is not possible.
*24: Playing sounds such as melodies and i-motion is not possible.
*25: You cannot save images, such as files attached to a mail or added onto a template, on the microSD memory card while activating Full Browser (Viewer type).
*26: i-αppli (including standby screen type) is not available while Full Browser (Viewer type) is activated.
*27: While activating Full Browser (Viewer type), functions below are unavailable; images for copying/editing/adding location information on microSD, i-motion for editing/sending or receiving in OBEX moving between FOMA terminal and microSD memory card (10M bytes), music for copying/moving between FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.
*28: Full Browser (Viewer type) is not available.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service	Phone number
Directory Assistance Service (pay service: service and call charges) * A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided.	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay service: telegram charges)	(No area code) 115
Time (pay service)	(No area code) 117
Weather (pay service)	Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency	(No area code) 110
Fire department/ambulance emergency	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay service: service and call charges)	(No area code) 171
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 90 yen (94.5 yen tax included) for each call. (As of April, 2007)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability of the arms or hands. For further details call 116 NTT inquiries from general subscriber phones. (As of April, 2007)
- This FOMA terminal supports "緊急通報位置通知" (Emergency Location Report). When calling 110, 118 or 119 from the FOMA terminal, your current location (location information) is automatically notified to a concerned organization such as police office.
  The location information may not be correctly sent depending on your current location or the condition of the signal reception. When you notify your location information, the name of the organization that the location information has been sent appears on the standby screen.
  If you dialed with "184" attached not to notify the caller information, your location information and caller ID is not notified. However, when the concerned organization judges the information is necessary for protection of a human life, your location information and caller ID may be acquired. Where and when to start the support of "緊急通報位置通知" (Emergency Location Report), differ in every local organization.
- When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, first inform that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for another ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

Continued on next page

◆ If you are using a "Call Forwarding" service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of the general phone or mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
◆ Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 02*3
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- Desktop Holder N13
- Battery Pack N16
- Back Cover N20
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- In-Car Holder 01*4
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*3
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case S 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

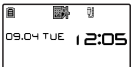
*1: To connect to FOMA N904i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
*2: To connect/charge FOMA N904i with USB, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.
*3: For overseas use, a compatible conversion plug adapter is required.
*4: To attach FOMA N904i to the In-Car Holder, attach to "third position" shown as ② on the list of "In-Car Holder 01 Manual".

Movie Playing Software

● To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
● Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/
  • To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
  • See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

● Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
"Updating Software?" →p.518

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out?	p.41 p.45
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	● The battery has run out. Recharge battery. 	p.43 p.45
The "  " icon appears and I hear a busy tone	● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.46

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	● Is Original lock for "Keypad dial" under "Dial/sending mail" set? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.168 p.171 p.177
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is "  " displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	p.51 p.51 p.46 —
I cannot receive calls or the ring tone does not sound	● Are any of the following functions set? Restrictions •Call rejection •Call acceptation •Call forwarding •Voice Mail Ring time (sec.) •Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID •Unknown: Reject •Payphone: Reject •User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Original lock for "Incoming call" under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0 second"? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"? ● Is "0 second" set as the ring time for Record message?	 p.177 p.179 p.180 p.178 p.132 p.77 p.168 p.180 p.458 p.461 p.462 p.462 p.74 p.81
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	● Is "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time (sec.)" set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	p.179
The records of Dialed calls/ Redial, Sent address disappear automatically	● Is "Restrict dialing" under "Restrictions" set?	p.177
The neuropointer does not move quickly	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.146
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.128
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.138
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.147
It takes long to display or play a movie/i-motion or a Chaku-Uta-Full®	● Is the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta Full® saved in "Movable contents" folder? It may take long to display or play the data saved in the "Movable contents" folder.	—
Cannot copy or move a movie/ i-motion or a Chaku-Uta-Full® to microSD memory card	● Is the Chaku-Uta-Full® saved partially? ● Is the replay restriction (number of times, period, time limit) of the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta-Full® invalid?	p.402 p.403
A PDF document is not properly displayed	● PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	● It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	● Does the PDF file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.385

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot copy a PDF document to the microSD memory card	● Was the PDF document downloaded by page?	p.385
A document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by Document viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes time to display a document	● It may take time to display a large-sized document.	—
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	● Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. ● If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.128 p.120 p.120 p.120 p.119 p.120
A string appears instead of image, i-motion, music or Music Channel	● The following indicate that the image, i-motion, music or Music Channel cannot be selected for the function. Select data that will not display the following: "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data"	p.342 p.351 p.397 p.402
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes.	p.147 p.120 p.120 p.119 p.120
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)?	p.41 p.43 p.44
The key does not sound when I press it	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode?	p.129 p.132
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.	p.73 —
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything (e.g. a sticker) obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.25 — — p.74
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.74

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Pressing the external keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"? ● If there is a sticker placed on the display or keys, it may accidentally press the keys when the FOMA terminal is closed.	p.171 p.174 —
Pressing the Assist key does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded Pressing the Assist key for 1 second or longer does not start the music player	● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"?	p.79 p.171 p.174
The date is displayed in Japanese	● Is "Japanese" selected as the language?	p.149
The display is hard to see	● Is Brightness under Backlight set to "Level 1"? ● Is "Info notice setting" set to "ON"?	p.140 p.139
The display light of the display or keypad does not turn on	● Is Lighting under Backlight set to "OFF"? ● Press and hold 5 for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding 5 for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message.	p.140 —
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then.	—
Battery life is short	● Is the battery pack at the end of it's life? The lifespan of the battery pack may be shortened depending on usage environment. ● Battery life will depend on how the FOMA terminal is used. ● If there is a sticker placed on the display or keys, it may press the keys when the FOMA terminal is closed, decreasing usage time.	— — —
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding ⏻ for 1 second or longer	● Data checking may take time (e.g. if the phonebook is full of data).	p.118
Nothing appears on the indicator display	● Is "Indicator display" set to "OFF"?	p.139
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time (sec.)" is set to "ON".	p.179
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform "Reset total".	p.432
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender's name stored in the phonebook	● Did you correctly store the sender's phone number on the phone number line ( ) of the phonebook?	p.107
A message is not automatically filtered	● If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	p.268 p.268
A message is not automatically received	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	p.256 p.276
Cannot install the N904i communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	● If you have set USB mode setting to "microSD mode", "Print mode" or "MTP mode", set it to "Communication mode".	p.374
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli and i-Channel cannot be connected	● Is "Host selection" set to something other than "i-mode"? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	p.228 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	● Is "Mail/Msg. ring time" set to "OFF"? ● Is Original lock for "Disp. recv. mail/msg." under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? ● Is "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred"?	p.132 p.168 p.276

Continued on next page

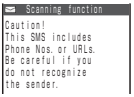
Problem	Points to check	Refer to
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	● Is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.262 p.268
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and " (white)" does not disappear	● Does " " appear on the folder of mail-connected i-αppli in the Inbox? Or is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.262 p.268 p.292
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS A message appears when I retry	● SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message.	–
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the "Image tuning" setting may suppress flickering.	p.200
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with "Image tuning" set to "Mode 1(50Hz)" or "Mode 2(60Hz)". Restore the tuning to "Auto" if it is not.	p.200
Still images or movies look blurred	● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot.	p.199
" " when I try to display an image or " " appears in the demo or preview	● " " may appear when the image data is corrupted.	–
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the microSD reader/writer function.	–
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time.	–

■ For overseas use

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
" " or "select net" does not disappear from the screen, and international roaming service cannot be used	● Are you out of international roaming service area or is the reception poor? ● See the international service guide such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" to check if the area or operator is available. ● Turn off the FOMA terminal then turn it back on the first time you use the service after you move from Japan to overseas. ● Launch "NW search mode" to search for a compatible operator.	– – – p.480
A voice call or videophone call cannot be received	● Is "Bar incoming when roam" set to "Activate"? ● Is "V-phone while packet" set to "V-phone priority"?	p.482 p.88
The other party's caller ID is not notified The notified caller ID is not the other party's The FOMA terminal does not perform operations using phonebook data or Caller ID Notification	● If the used network or operator does not notify caller ID, even notified caller IDs do not appear on the FOMA display. Depending on the used network or operator, the notified caller ID may be different from the other party's.	–

If Any Error Message Appears

● Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode Center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"“●▲■.ne.jp”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信できません（555）Unable to send. “●▲■.ne.jp” is not available temporarily." * Domain name may differ depending on recipient.	● There is a problem with the lines or the lines are busy. Please try again later.	—
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	● You cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli is protected. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli, release the mail security.	p.176
"Activating mail security Unable to delete"	● You cannot delete mail-connected i-αppli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli is protected. To delete both the mail-connected i-αppli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete a mail-connected i-αppli only, select "NO" when you receive a message asking whether to delete a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli.	p.176
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set.	p.177
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward an i-mode message. Press ● to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press "Cancel" on the authentication screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press ● to return to the previous page.	—
"Cannot dial by Number B in abroad Dial by Number A"	● Appears when making a phone call from overseas when 2in1 is set to B mode. Select OFF for "Caller ID Notification" to make calls without caller ID with Number A.	—
"Cannot reset by this Ext. IC card"	● This message appears when you put the FeliCa mark close to an unregistered contactless IC card during user authentication with the IC card authentication function.	p.173
"Cannot save attached file"	● This message appears when you receive a mail attached a file which cannot be stored via infrared data communication, OBEX communication or copy from the microSD memory card.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you execute "Copy & add this" for a schedule with the same data and time as an existing schedule entry or when you receive it via infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection.	—
"Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender."	● This message appears when "Message scan" under "Scanning function" is set to "ON" and try to display a SMS contained phone number or URL in the message. Press ● if you want to display a SMS message after checking its source. 	p.524

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site. ● This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. A TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new messages is set all OFF"	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in "Set check new messages". Select items to check in "Set check new messages".	p.278
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and retry.	p.48
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" under Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.228 —
"Connection interrupted"	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears even when the reception is good and " " appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later.	p.212 —
"Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?"	● This message appears when you select "NO" or "Terminate i-αppli" in response to the message "Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?". Select "YES" to continue i-αppli communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select "Terminate i-αppli".	—
"Could not read"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Data in B mode phonebook is unavailable"	● PushTalk is not available as "Phonebook 2in1 setting" of the phonebook data is set to "B". Switch the "Phonebook 2in1 setting" to "A" and try again.	p.466
"Data in IC-card is full Unable to download Delete service?" "Data in IC-card is full Unable to run Delete service?" "Data in IC-card is full Unable to upgrade Delete service?"	● This message appears when you attempt to download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but the space is not enough on the IC card. Select "YES" to display already registered Osaifu-Keitai services, space (bytes) allocated by removing the service, and necessary area size. Select a service to remove, follow the message and launch i-αppli to remove the service.	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	● The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer.	—
"Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?"	● This message appears when the number of communications that are using i-αppli and have been established in a given time is extremely large. Select "YES" to continue to make i-αppli communication, or "NO" to quit the communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select "Terminate i-αppli".	—
"Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission"	● This message appears when the number of communications established from the i-αppli standby screen in a given time is extremely large. Press CLR to select whether to permit communication from the i-αppli standby screen or whether to exit the i-αppli standby screen.	p.302

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Dial/Receive calls activating Original lock"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation in Original lock set to "Dial/sending mail" or "Incoming/Mail disp.".	p.168
"Download failed"	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
"Editing now Cannot delete"	● This message appears when you attempt to delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
"Enter correct Network Security Code"	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.158
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	● This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—
"Error Register forwarding number"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call Forwarding" from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.461
"Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls"	● Appears when 5 or more members are selected to be dialed. Call again after selecting 4 or less members.	—
"Failed to Copy all"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Failed to Copy this"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Format microSD for your phone"	● There is an error e.g. the microSD memory card is not formatted. Reformat the microSD memory card.	p.373
"Frame number of this page is not supported"	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser or picsel browser.	—
"Function cannot operate any more"	● Exit another function before operating.	—
" "i-αppli To" function is not set"	● When you attempt to launch software from a site, message, the infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader, IC card or ToruCa, it does not launch because the specified software is not permitted to be linked.	p.301
"i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error" "Software terminated due to security error"	● This message appears when the i-αppli or the i-αppli standby screen (including the i-αppli DX) terminated because you attempted to perform an unauthorized operation.	p.297 p.303
"Input error (205)"	● This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press ● to reset the entered text (The set or entered contents are sent. This operation does not cancel sending).	—
"Insert microSD"	● This message appears when the microSD memory card is not inserted correctly or may be damaged. Check that the microSD memory card is properly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.366
"Insert UIM"	● This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	p.38
"Invalid address"	● The address contains a "," and is invalid. Delete any ",". ● The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, "#" and "*". Delete any characters or spaces other than numbers, "#" and "*".	— — —
"Invalid UIM Auto start not possible"	● This message appears when you attempt to automatically launch i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.39
"Invalid UIM download not possible" "Invalid UIM start not possible" "Invalid UIM Unable to delete" "Invalid UIM Unable to save" "Invalid UIM Upgrade failed"	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card (UIM) is not registered in FeliCa.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Invalid UIM Requested service not available"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.39 p.39
"Invalid UIM Requested software failed to start"	● This message appears when you attempt to select and launch i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.39
"Invalid URL"	● This message appears when you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL on the "Home URL" screen or entering a URL on the "Enter URL" screen. Enter a URL correctly.	p.218 p.228 p.331
"Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?"	● This message appears when you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit with "Auto reading setting" set to "OFF". Select "YES" to use the auto reading function.	p.311
"Memory full Cannot move"	● This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer.	p.164
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. ● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press ● to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select "No", and enter an available memory number or use ⊙ to select Auto to add it.	p.163 p.116
"Memory shortage"	● This message appears when the software cannot be launched due to memory shortage.	—
"Memory shortage Quit"	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the number of tasks running or the combination of character types.	—
"Memory shortage Return to Standard type menu" "Memory shortage Return to Viewer type menu"	● Processing cancelled due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to Standard type menu screen or Viewer type menu screen.	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the i-mode menu.	—
"Message too long to add header & signature"	● This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/signature added.	—
"Message too long to add header"	● This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added.	—
"Message too long to add signature"	● This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added.	—
"No data"	● This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	—
"No requested software"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for already deleted i-αppli. ● This message appears if there is no corresponding software when the i-αppli is launched from a mail message, the infrared data exchange function, the bar code reader or IC card.	— —
"No response"	● This message appears when the user authentication fails due to its timeout restriction with the IC card authentication function.	p.173
"No response (408)"	● No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
(During infrared data exchange/ iC communication) "No response Retry?"	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. For infrared data exchange, place the terminals so that their infrared data ports face each other. For iC communication, check the FeliCa mark and retry. Select "YES" and press ● to try again.	p.379

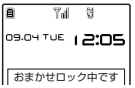
Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"No Switch"	● This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party's status and retry.	p.55
"Not correspond contents"	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents unsupported by the FOMA terminal.	–
"Other function active Cannot start" "Other function active Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running.	–
"Out of service area"	● This message appears when you attempt to use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move until "  " appears, then use the i-mode service.	p.212
"Page is not found (404)"	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	–
"Password is not correct (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	–
"PIN1 code blocked"	● This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ● to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock.	p.160
"Please wait"	● The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	–
"Please wait for a while (packet)"	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	–
"PUK blocked"	● This message appears when you attempt to power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.159
"Reading UIM Cannot start"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	–
"Receiving failed Channel information cannot display"	● This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after resetting the i-Channel, changing the i-Channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-Channel information cannot be obtained. Move until "  " appears, then retry to display the channel list screen.	p.237
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	● Check the microSD memory card.	p.370
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion whose playback period has expired. Select "YES" to delete the Chaku-Uta-Full®.	–
"Replay period has expired"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion whose playback period has expired.	–
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". ● This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website.	– p.215
"Root certificate is not valid"	● This message appears when you receive a TLS/SSL certificate with the "Certificate" set to "Invalid". Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.232
"Service is not registered"	● The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	– –

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Service is used by the previous software Unable to download Delete a service?" "Service is used by the previous software Unable to update Delete a service?"	● When the same service has been already downloaded, you cannot download, upgrade or start a new service unless you delete the existing service. The service to be deleted will be displayed if you select "YES", and delete the existing service.	—
"Services are full Musics of overwritten service can not play Overwrite?"	● Appears when limit is reached for music service (subscription required) registrations. Select "YES" to overwrite service with the oldest playback time limit. Music downloaded from the overwritten service will not playback.	—
"Size of this page is not supported"	● The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode, Full Browser or picsel browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. ● This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character.	— —
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	● The software cannot be launched because the mail-connected i-αppli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu.	p.262 p.268
"Software is stopped because of error"	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	● This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid.	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	● It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press ● to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.	—
"Some mail not sent (561)"	● Appears when there is a recipient that cannot be sent to when replying with i-mode mail to multiple recipients.	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	● This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection.	—
"SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection.	—
"Syntax error" "Syntax error (XXX)"	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in "XXX".	—
"Talking now Cannot start" "Talking now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call.	p.417 p.501 p.502
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO".	p.215
"The data may not be replayed"	● This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4).	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". ● This message appears when you attempt to access an SSL website but the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.	— p.47
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	● This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO".	—
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion with no playback count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the Chaku-Uta-Full®.	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no playback count remaining.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"This data is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when you attempt to acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	● This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO".	—
"This software contains an error" "This software contains an error Unable to download"	● This message appears when the software data contains an error and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when the software you attempt to download is incompatible with the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.38
"Time out"	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in "Set connection timeout", has elapsed. Retry later.	p.228
"TLS/SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.216
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	● The playback period or time limit of the partly-downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® has expired. The remaining data cannot be downloaded. The partly-saved data will be deleted.	—
"Unable to receive"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Unable to support this card"	● The FOMA terminal does not support this microSD memory card. Use a compatible microSD memory card.	p.365
"Unable to use PushTalk from Call history of Number B"	● This message appears when 2in1 is set to Dual mode and you attempt to dial PushTalk from Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls or Number B.	—
"Unable to use PushTalk in B mode"	● When 2in1 is set to B mode, PushTalk is not available. Switch to A mode and try again.	p.466
"Unable to use PushTalk in Number B"	● PushTalk is not available as "2in1/Multi Num." in "Dial setting" in the function menu of the phonebook detail screen is set to "Number B". Switch the "2in1/Multi Num." in "Dial setting" to "Number A" and try again.	p.466
"Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed"	● The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide limit) is exceeded.	—
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.149 p.219 p.228 p.331
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Usage is currently restricted Try again later"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
"Wrong password"	● This message appears when you enter a wrong password on the password entry screen in viewing or downloading a PDF document.	p.223 p.384
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.158
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select "YES" to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.232

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● The site requests the user certificate, but the validity period has expired. Select "YES", and you may be able to continue. It is recommended to download a new certificate.	p.232
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● The site requests the user certificate. Select "YES" to send the certificate, otherwise "NO".	–
"おまかせロック中です"	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off. 	p.162

NOTE

◆ The mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers being sent will be used to identify you by the IP (information service provider), to provide customized information and to determine whether content provided by the IP can be used on your terminal.

◆ Your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

● Make sure that you save the warranty included when you purchase the FOMA terminal. Check the contents, the information about "the shop and date of purchase", etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty is valid for one year from the date of purchase written on the warranty.

● The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.

● Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-αppli are not transferred to a repaired mobile phone due to copyright law.

* You can store data such as phonebook on the microSD memory card on your FOMA terminal.

* You can store data used by i-motion and i-αppli on the microSD memory card on your FOMA terminal.

* Using the Data Security Service (a pay service requiring subscription) allows you to store data such as phonebook on your FOMA terminal in the Data Security Center.

* If you have a PC, you can transfer the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474), the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the "Malfunction Checklist" in this manual.
If you still have problems, call the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- Repairs will be made free of charge based on the provisions of the warranty.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges will apply even when the mobile phone is still under warranty if the warranty card is not submitted, or if malfunction or damage is the result of mishandling by the subscriber.
- Charges will apply even within the warranty period for repairs resulting from use of devices and accessories not specified by DoCoMo.

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired for the following reasons

Mobile phones cannot be repaired in the following cases: the water exposure detection sticker shows water exposure; tests determine that corrosion has occurred due to water exposure, condensation, or perspiration; or the circuit board has been damaged or altered. These cases are not covered by the warranty, and any repairs that may be possible will be carried out at the subscriber's expense.

After the warranty period has expired

Repairs can be carried out upon request but at the subscriber's expense.

Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure, part repairs may not be able to be performed owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

Important

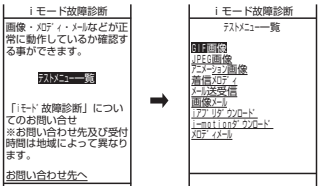
- Do not attempt to modify phones or accessories.
  - Modification may result in fire, injury, or malfunction.
  - Technical standards have been established by law in order to prevent radio wave interference and network disruption. Mobile phones or cards that do not meet these technical standards cannot be used.
  - Repairs to mobile phones that have been modified (disassembled, altered, painted, etc.) will only be carried out if the user agrees to have the mobile phone restored to its original state in line with DoCoMo standards. Requests for repair of modified mobile phones may be rejected.
  - If malfunction or damage occurs as a result of modification, charges will apply even if the mobile phone is still under warranty.
- Do not peel off the manufacturer's specification sticker put on the FOMA terminal.
  The manufacturer's specification sticker certifies that the mobile phone meets technical standards. It may not be possible to carry out repairs if the specifications cannot be confirmed because the sticker has been removed, altered, etc.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker, lower section of the display.
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your FOMA terminal may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with a substitute instead of repairing.
  Data including downloaded images/ring tones and user-created data will be transferred only in the course of repairs. (In addition, there may be cases where data cannot be transferred depending on the malfunction.)
  * It may take time or be unable to transfer depending on the amount of data stored on the FOMA terminal.

About the i-mode malfunction check site

You can check by yourself whether your FOMA terminal is properly sending and receiving mail and downloading images and melodies.



- To connect to the iモード故障診断サイト("i-mode malfunction check site")
  - i-mode site: "iMenu" → お知らせ ("Information") → サービス・機能 ("Service/Function") → ｉモード ("i-mode") → ｉモード故障診断 ("i-mode malfunction check")

Site connect QR code

- Packet communications charges do not apply for the i-mode malfunction check.
  * Charges apply when accessing from overseas.
- Test items will differ depending on FOMA terminal model. Test items may change.
- To check operations for each test item, perform the test after carefully reading the warnings on the site.
- When connecting to the i-mode malfunction check test site, and when conducting the mail send test, your FOMA terminal's information (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode malfunction check server). The information sent is used only for i-mode malfunction check.
- After the check, if you feel that there is a malfunction, call the "Technical inquiries" number described on the back of the manual.

<Software Update>

Updating Software

Check if your FAMA terminal needs an update, and if necessary, download and update the required software via packet communications.

The latest information regarding software updates can be viewed on the DoCoMo website or in "お知らせ" (News) under iMenu.

- You can receive notices when software update is required by setting "Update notification (p.519) to "Enable".
- Packet communications charges do not apply to perform software updates.
- Software may be updated in the following two methods: Now update and Timer update
  Now update: The software update is performed at once.
  Timer update: A time and date can be designated to perform the software update automatically.

- You can update software even if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Software updates (downloading and rewriting) may take time.
- Software updates are performed via SSL communications with the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). It is therefore necessary to have a valid certificate. (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure is on. How to operate→p.232).
- Make sure that the mobile phone battery is fully charged when performing software updates.
- It is recommended that you perform software updates when the handset is stationary and in a location with good signal quality (three bars for the antenna icon).
  * If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a location with good signal quality.
- Updating software with the "PIN1 code entry set" set to "ON" displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make/receive calls or perform communication until you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
  - While PIN lock is set
  - When the PUK code is locked
  - When the date and time are not set
  - When you receive a call
  - When you receive mail, a message or SMS
  - During a voice call
  - During a videophone call
  - During a PushTalk call
  - During i-mode communication
  - During 64K data communication
  - During packet communication
  - While Dial lock is set
  - While Omakase Lock is set
  - While Keypad lock is set
  - While Self mode is set
  - While Original lock is set
  - When you are out of range
  - When packet dialing is restricted
  - During international roaming
  - When you are using mova terminal for Dual Network Service
  - When using the microSD reader/writer
  - While another function is running
- You cannot make or receive calls or use communication or other functions while updating software. However, you can receive voice calls while downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, the message "No update is needed Please continue to use as before" appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode Center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to "ON" and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent is used only for updating software.
- If the update fails, the message "Rewrite failed" will appear and all operations will become unavailable. In this case, please visit for advice at a repair counter designated by DoCoMo.
- Software update cannot be used overseas.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- ◆ It is possible to perform software updates while keeping your Phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data and other data saved on the phone intact. However, note that in some cases data cannot be protected depending on the condition of your mobile phone (malfunction, damage, water exposure, etc.). It is recommended that you back up important data. However, not that some data such as downloaded data may not be able to be backed up.
- ◆ When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon "UPDATE" (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select "UPDATE" and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Receive software update notifications

Default setting: Disable

When "Update notification" is set to "Enable", UPDATE (update notification icon) appears on the standby screen when a software update is required.

Continued on next page

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Software Update"▶Enter your security code

2 "Update notification"▶"Change setting"

■ **To check settings**
▶"Confirm setting"▶"YES"

3 "Enable"▶"YES"

■ **To disable receiving of update notifications**
▶"Disable"▶"YES"



Software Update function list

NOTE

◆ UPDATE (Update notification icon) appears when there is a notification from DoCoMo, if update is failed or "Initialize" is performed.

Running Software Update

To run Software update, you can select the UPDATE (Update notification icon) that appears on the standby screen or from the menu screen.

● Select UPDATE (Update notification icon) and run Software update

1 On the standby screen select ▶●▶UPDATE

2 "YES"

■ **To delete UPDATE without running Software update**
▶"NO"▶"YES"



3 Enter your security code▶Check the notes▶Check whether software update is required

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



■ **When "Update notification is disabled Enable update notification?" appears**
▶"YES" or "NO"
Select "YES" to set "Update notification" (p.519) to "Enable", select "NO" to set to "Disable".

4 The check result appears

■ **When "Update is needed" appears**
▶Select "Now update" or "Reserve"
Select "Now update" to update the software immediately. →p.521
Select "Reserve" to update on the set time. →p.522



Check result

■ **When "No update is needed" appears**

▶●

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.



● Running Software Update from the menu

1 "Software update function list" (p.520)▶"Update"

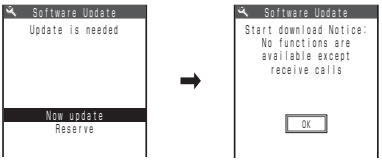
Proceed to step 3 (p.520) in "Select UPDATE and run Software update".

Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 Check result screen (p.520)▶"Now update"▶Press ● when "Start download" appears

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press ●.



2 After download is finished and the message "Download is complete Rewrite software" appears, press ●

Software update will start.

Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press ●. It may take long to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been completed. When the message "Software update is complete" appears, press ●. Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update is carried out automatically without having to select any menus.
- The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
  In this case, select "Reserve" to perform the reserved update.



Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

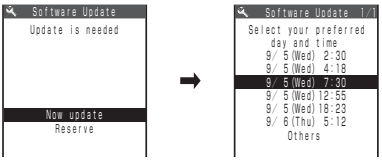
If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: To reserve 7:30 on September 5 (Wednesday)>

1 Check result screen (p.520)▶"Reserve"▶Select date and time

■ **If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown**

▶"Others"→p.522

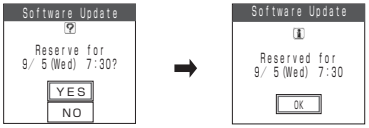


2 Check the selected date and time▶"YES"

Software update is reserved.

■ **If you want to change the date and/or time**

▶"NO"



The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as "Updating software immediately <Now update>" (p.521).



NOTE

- The reserved time for software update will be based on the server's time.
- When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- Software update may not launch at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- If the scheduled time is reached while you are on the phone or receiving a call or message, software update launches after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- If you perform "Initialize" (p.440) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not launch at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

● If you select "Others"

You can select the desired date and time if you select "Others" in the date/time selection screen on p.522.

1 Select a desired date

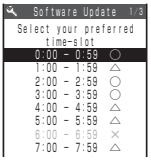
On the selection screen, the status of availability for reservation of each day is shown as below:

○ : Available
△ : Almost full
No mark : Full



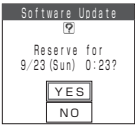
2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, the status of availability for reservation of each time zone is shown as below:
○: Available
△: Almost full
×: Full
Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting "YES" will communicate with the server again. Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: To cancel the reservation after checking it>

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Software Update"▶Enter your security code▶"Update"

2 "Cancel"

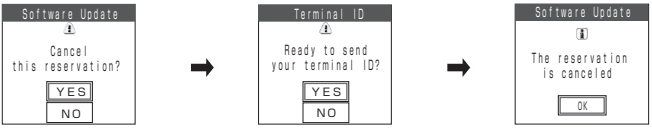
■ **To accept the reserved date and time**
▶"OK"

■ **To change the date and time**
▶"Change"
After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting "Others"→p.522



3 When the message "Cancel this reservation?" appears, select "YES"

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.
NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.
When the message "The reservation is canceled" appears, press ●. The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program launch where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. →p.524
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

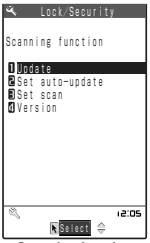
Default setting	Scan: ON Message scan: ON

Setting the scanning function to "ON" will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

Setting Message scan to "ON" will check SMS messages automatically.

1 (MENU)▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Scanning function"

The "Scanning function" screen appears.



Scanning function

2 "Set scan"▶"Scan" or "Message scan"▶"ON"

■ **If a message appears asking whether to change the settings**

▶"YES"

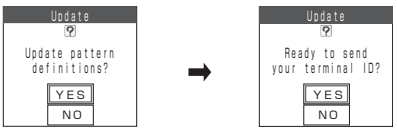
* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels. →p.525

NOTE

◆ Even if "Message scan" is set to "ON", the Voice Mail notice is not subject to check.

Updating pattern data <Update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.524)▶"Update"▶"YES"▶"YES"



* If no pattern data update is required, the message "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" appears. Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

◆ Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode, packet communication or international roaming, or while another function is running.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.524)▶"Set auto-update"▶"ON"▶"YES"▶"YES"**

Viewing the scan results

■ Viewing scanned problems



The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.
The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:
From 1 to 9998: The remaining count appears as it is.
9999 or more: "Other:9999" appears regardless of the count.

■ Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
(Set) ..... Continues operation.	(Cancel) ...Cancels and ends operation. (Skip) .....Continues operation.	(Set)..... Cancels and ends operation.	(Delete) .... Deletes data and ends operation. (Back) ..... Cancels and ends operation.	(Set) ..... Deletes data and ends operation.

NOTE

◆ A message other than the above may appear depending on the condition.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.524)▶"Version"**

Specifications

Items		FOMA N904i	
Size		Height 104 mm x Width 49 mm x Thickness 18.9 mm (When folded)	
Weight		Approx. 113g (Battery pack attached)	
Continuous standby time		Stationary: Approx. 610 hours In transit: Approx. 460 hours	
Continuous talk time		Voice Communications: Approx. 180 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.	
Charging Time		AC Adapter: Approx 120 min. DC Adapter: Approx 120 min.	
Color LCD	Type	Display (Internal): TFT LCD 262,144 colors Indicator Display (External): Organic EL 1 color	
	Size	Display (Internal): Approx. 3.0 inches Indicator display (External): Approx. 0.9 inches	
	Pixels	Display (Internal): 409,920 pixels (480x854 dots) Indicator Display (External): 6,144 pixels (96x64 dots)	
Imaging device	Type	Front Camera: CMOS	Rear Camera: CMOS
	Size	Front Camera: 1/8 inches	Rear Camera: 1/3.2 inches
	Effective Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 mill. pixels	Rear Camera: Approx. 3.2 mill. pixels
Camera	Maximum Recorded Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 mill. pixels	Rear Camera: Approx. 3.2 mill. pixels
	Digital Zoom	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2X	Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9X
Record	Still Image	Approx. 360*1	
	Continuous mode	4 to 20*2	
	Still image file type	JPEG	
	Movie record time	Save to terminal: Approx. 276 sec.*3 Save to microSD memory card (64M): Approx. 120 min.*3	
	Movie file type	MP4	
Music Playback	Continuous playback time	i-motion	Approx. 420 min.*4
		Chaku-Uta-Full®	Approx. 1440 min.*4*5
		SD-Audio	Approx. 1260 min.*4*5
		Windows Media Audio (WMA) file	Approx. 1200 min.*5
Memory	Chaku-Uta®	Approx. 10M bytes*6*7*8	
	Chaku-Uta-Full®	Approx. 80M bytes*9	

*1: Image size: SubQCIF (128x96 dots) Quality (Quality setting): Fine File size:10K bytes
*2: Varies depending on image size.
*3: Record time for 1 item under the following conditions.
<Phone>
Image size: SubQCIF (128x96 dots) Quality (Quality setting): Normal File size: Under 2M bytes
Movie type set: Normal
<microSD memory card (64M bytes)>
Image size: SubQCIF (128x96 dots) Quality (Quality setting): Normal File size: Long time
Movie type set: Normal
*4: File type: AAC format
*5: Background play supported
*6: Available memories of Secret folder is up to 10M bytes.
*7: Data with 10M bytes size is preinstalled at the time of purchase.→p.340
*8: Shared with i-motion
*9: Shared with PDF data and Screen memo

Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal

Item		Store/Register	Protect
Phonebook		Up to 1000*1	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
To Do list		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Inbox	1,000 max.*2*3*4	1,000 max.*2
	Outbox	400 max.*2*3*4	200 max.*2
	Draft	20 max.*2	—
Deco-mail template		45 max.*2*5	—
Message	MessageR	100 max.*2	50 max.*2
	MessageF	100 max.*2	50 max.*2
Bookmark	i-mode	100*6	—
	Full Browser	100*6	—
Screen memo		100 max.*2	50 max.*2
i-αppli		200 max.*2	—
	Mail-connected i-αppli	5	—
ToruCa		100 max.*2	—
Still Image		480 max.*2*4	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max.*2*6	—
Chara-den		10*5	—
Melody		400 max.*2	—
Kisekae Tool		100 max.*2*5	—
PDF data		400 max.*2	—

*1: Up to 50 phonebooks can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
*2: Actual storable or registerable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.
*3: Up to 20 more received or sent SMS messages can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM). →p.288
*4: Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.
*5: Pre-installed data are included.
*6: Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes or saving onto a microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.474) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any data loss. Take notes, save data to a microSD memory card or use DoCoMo keitai datalink to save data to your PC just in case.

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N904i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA N904i model phone is 0.708 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
NEC: http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/ (in Japanese only)
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html (only in Japanese)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications
** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*** : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Declaration of Conformity

The product "FOMA N904i" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1 (b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/index.html (Japanese only).

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.
Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.901 W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

*: The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

**: The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

***: Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories are subject to the Japan Export Administration Regulations (the "Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and its related regulations). When exporting this product and its accessories, take the required steps at your expense and under your responsibility. For more details, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry (METI).

Index/Quick Manual

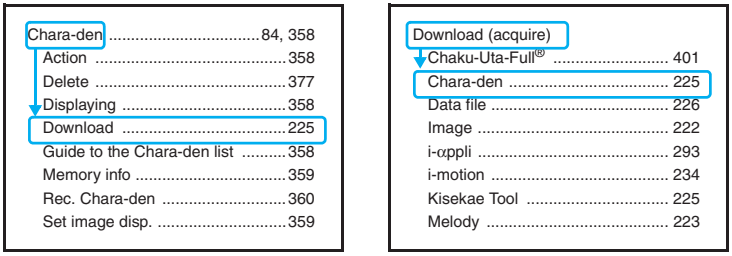
Index 530
Quick Manual 538

Index

Index search

● This Index functions as an alphabetical content list as well. This provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot find the item you are looking for, use another keyword to search.

<Example: To download Chara-den>



● "Function" index is included following "Alphabet/Numeric" section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.36).

Alphabet/Numeric

A

AC adapter 43
Access reader 206
Access site (program)
  View site 213
Accessories 504
Activate notice call 459
Add
  Bookmark 219
  Mail member 254
  Original menu 144
  Phonebook (Phone) 107
  PushTalk phonebook 99
  Schedule 423
  To Do list 427
Adding items to the original menu 144
Additional service 470
Address list 275
Add, edit and delete folder
  Bookmark 220
  Data box 375
  Mail 268
  microSD 376
  ToruCa 309
Adjust volume
  GPS function (notification tone) 130
  i-αppli vol. 296
  Ring volume 74
  Volume 74
After-sales service 516
Alarm 419, 422
  Actions 420
  Check 421
  Stop 421
Answer hold 75
Answer setting 73
Assist key 418
  Reading out alarm details 419
  Reading out mails 419
AT commands 474
Auto Deco-mail 249
Auto dial setting 437
Auto focus 191
Auto reading setting (ToruCa) 311
Auto redial as voice (videophone) 85
Auto reset total cost 432
Auto timer 203
Automatic answer 438
Automatic display 122
Auto-start set (i-αppli) 300
Auto-start time (i-αppli) 300

B

Background play 412
Backlight 140
Bar code reader 204
Bar incoming when roam 482
Battery 41
  Charging 43
  Getting the best out of the battery pack 42
  Life 42
Battery level 45
Battery pack 41
BGM play 401
Bookmark 219
  Add 219
  Delete 220, 221
  Edit title 220
  Folder 220
  No. of bookmarks 220, 221
  View 219

C

Cable connection (data transfer) 379
Calculator 434
Calendar 137
Call
  Making 51
  Receiving 70
Call acceptation 177
Call data 432
Call Forwarding 177
Call Forwarding Service 461
Call rejection 177
Call setting w/o ID 178
Call Waiting 459
Caller ID Notification 48
Caller ID Request service 462
Camera 183
  Access reader 206
  Auto timer 203
  Bar code reader 204
  Brightness 192
  Color mode set 199
  Front camera 184
  Guide to the shooting screen 188
  Image shooting 191
  Image size 185
  Image tuning 200
  Light 203
  Movie shooting 197
  Photo mode 199
  Rear camera 184
  Shake correction 200
  Shooting menu 189
  White balance 199
  Zoom 202
Cancel
  Mail security 176
  Manner mode 133
  Public mode (Driving mode) 77
  Public mode (power off) 78
  Restrictions 177
  Secret data only mode 163
  Secret mode 163

CD-ROM for FOMA N904i 474
Certificate 232
Certificate host 233
Chaku-moji 63
Chaku-Uta-Full®
Play 401
Save 402
Chance capture 201
Change CHR code 214
Changing the font size 445
Changing the window 445
Changing voice call/videophone call 55
Character input set 445
CHG input size 445
Clear learned 453
Guidance 444
Mode 1 (5-touch) 445
Mode 2 (2-touch) 454
Mode 3 (T9 input) 454
T9 change mode 455
Word prediction 447
Character stamp 350
Chara-den 84, 358
Action 358
Delete 377
Displaying 358
Guide to the Chara-den list 358
Memory info 359
Rec. Chara-den 360
Set image disp. 359
Using 358
Chara-den
Download 225
Charge sound 131
Charging 43
Chat group 284
Chat mail 281
Chat group 284
Chat member 281
Composing chat mail 282
Receiving chat mail 283
Settings 285
Check messages (Voice Mail) 459
Check missed calls 79
Check new messages 230, 257
Check new SMS 288
Check settings 228
Checkbox 34, 216
Choku-Den 121
Clear learned 453
Clock Alarm Tone set 131
Clock display 149
Code number
i-mode password 158, 218
Network security code 158
PIN1 code and PIN2 code 158
Security code 158
Color mode set (camera) 199
Common phrases 501
Component names and functions 24
Components 22
Compose message 243
Continuous mode 194
Continuous standby time 42
Continuous talk time 42
Copy
Copy to microSD 371, 376
Copy to phone 372, 377
Phonebook 116
SMS 289
Text 452
Copyright 20
Copy/cut text 452

D

Data box 340
Data Communication 471
Data Security Center 181
Data Security Service 181
Exchanging history 124
Image 346
Mail 273
Phonebook 123
DC adapter 43
Decorate PI 247
Create 298
Decorate PI Pocket 300
Entering 243, 449
List 500
Decoration 87
Deco-mail 247
Delete
Bookmark 220, 221
Chara-den 377
Desktop icon 151
Dialed calls 61
Document 377
Draft mail 253
Image 377
i-αppli 303
Kisekae Tool 377
Melody 377
MessageR/MessageF 231, 232
Movie 377
PDF data 377
Phonebook 116
PushTalk phonebook 102
Received calls 61
Received mail 271, 274
Redial 61
Screen memo 222
Sent mail 272, 274
SMS 287
Text 450
ToruCa 310
URL 219
VP message 84
Description of icon 28
Desktop 149
Desktop holder 44
Desktop icon 149
Access data or function 150
Add 149
Notice 152
Desktop theme
Change 151
Dial lock 161
Release 161
Set 161
Dialed calls 60
Dictionary 435
Discern connect 119
Discern group 119
Display
Backlight 140
Changing the menu display 141
Channel list 237
Clock 149
Color, background 141
Display setting 135
Font 148
Guide 28
Image (My picture) 342
Indicator display 139
Mail 262
My Profile 48
Phonebook image 138
ToruCa 261, 309
Website 218, 328
Display design 141
Display home 214
Display operator name 481
Display setting 87, 135
Display software info 294
Disp. call/receive No. 155
Disp. phonebook image 138
DoCoMo keitai datalink 474
Document viewer 389
Delete 377
Guide to the document list 390
Operations 390
Scroll 391
Text search 391
View 389
Download dictionary 453
Download (acquire)
Chaku-Uta-Full® 401
Chara-den 225
Data file 226
Image 222
i-αppli 293
i-motion 234
Kisekae Tool 225
Melody 223
PDF data 223
User certificate 232
DPOF setting 394
Draft (mail) 242, 253
Dual Network Service 462

E

Earphone 132
Earphone/microphone with switch ...436
Edit
Draft mail 253
Image 348
Movie 356
Phonebook 116
Edit image 348
Brightness 349
Change size 349
Character stamp 350
Correct backlight 349
Frame 350
Marker stamp 350
Refresh skin tone 349
Retouch 349
Rotate 349
Trimming 351
Edit movie 356
Trim i-motion 357
Emotion-expressing mail 256
English Guidance 463
Entering common phrases 451

Entering face symbols 449
Entering pictographs 449
Entering text 443
Changing the window 445
Common phrases 451
Copy 452
Cut 452
Delete 450
Face symbols 449
Guidance 444
Insert 448
Insert/Overwrite mode 448
Kuten code 452
Line feed 448
Overwrite 448
Paste 452
Pictograph 449
PI•SB input mode 449
Quote data 451
Single-byte/Double-byte 447, 454
Space (Blank) 448
Symbols 449
Undo 450
Upper case/Lower case 447
Erase
Record message 83
Voice announce 432
Voice memo 83
Error messages 509
Exit standby screen (i-αppli) 303
External keys guard 174
External microphone 436

F

Face authentication 174
FeliCa 306
FirstPass 232
Flash movies 217
Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) 436
Making a call 437
Receiving a call 437
FM transmitter 413
FM frequency setting 413
Folder tree (list)
Data box 340
Mail 263
microSD memory card 367
FOMA card (UIM) 38
Functional differences 40
insert/remove 38
Manufacturer number 215
Operational restriction function 39
PIN codes 38
Settings after exchange 40
Types 40
Font 148
Font size 148, 227, 276
Forwarding image 378
Frame (Edit image) 350
Frame (Full Browser) 333
Frame (Image shooting) 196
Full Browser 327
Standard type 331
Viewer type 328
Function menu 36

G

GPS function 313
i-αppli 317
LCS client 323
Location history 324
Location request 321
Position location 315
Position settings 316
Tone/Vibrator 130
ゼンリン♠地図 + ナビN(ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) 317
Group setting 110
Guide to the screen 28
Chapter list 400
Chara-den list 358
Folder list screen (mail) 263
Mail detail screen 264
Mail list screen 263
MessageR/MessageF screen 230
Music channel player screen 398
Music list 403
Music player screen 405
PDF list 385
PushTalk talking screen 94
Shooting screen (camera) 188
Standard type screen (Full Browser) 332
Text entry (edit) screen 444
Videophone screen 50
Viewer type screen (Full Browser) 329

H

Handling with care 18
Hands-free 59
Hands-free switch (videophone) 87
Header/Signature 277
Holding 76
Holding (while ringing) 75
Home URL 228
Host selection 228

I

IC card 306
IC card authentic. 172
IC card content 307
IC card Illumination 148
IC card lock 311
Face authentication 174
Set/release 311
iC communication 378
Data to be transferred 380
Send all/Receive all 382
Send one/Receive one 381
iC transfer service 306
Icon 28
Desktop icon 149
Discern connect 120
Display 28
Document viewer 390
Emotion-expressing mail 256
Icons on the standby screen 154
Image type 343
Indicator display 28
i-αppli 296
Kisekae Tool 364
Mail 263, 264
Melody 362
MessageR/MessageF 230
Music 403
PDF data 385
Received calls 62
Rec. Chara-den screen 360
Redial/Dialed calls 62
Shooting screen 188
Standard type (Full Browser) 332
Videophone call 50
Viewer type (Full Browser) 328
Icons setting 154
Illumination 147
Illumination in talk 148
Image
Add folder 375
Delete 377
Delete folder 375
Display 216, 342
Edit image (See "Edit image")
Guide to the Picture list 342
Guide to the Title list 342
Memory info 345
Move 345
Original animation 347
Save at DSC 346
Viewer settings 344
Image shooting
AF lock 192
Auto focus 191
Auto timer 203
Continuous mode 194
Framed photography 196
Light 203
Shooting settings 202
Zoom 202
Image tuning 200
iMenu 213
Inbox (mail) 242, 262
in-car hands-free 69
Incoming call lamp setting (during a call) 148
Incoming call lamp setting (receiving) 147
Incoming Call Mng 463
Indicator display 30
Icon 28
Sample images 30
Setting 139
Info notice setting 79
Infrared data exchange 378
Data to be transferred 380
Infrared data port 379, 384
Infrared remote control 384
Send all/Receive all 382
Send one/Receive one 381
Initial setting 46
Initialize (see "Reset")
Insert mode 448
Inserting symbols 449
Intellectual property right 20
International calls 56
International roaming 476
Internet 218
Internet connection 218
Int'l dial assistance 58, 479
ISP connection 228
i-αppli 291
Auto start 300
Auto-start info 301
Auto-start set 300
Auto-start time 300

Change mld./img. 296
Delete 303
Download 293
Icon info 296
Launch 295
Launch (from another function) 301
mail-connected i-αppli 292
microSD data 304
Network set 295
Pre-installed programs 297
Quit 295
Security error history 297
See P.book/hist 296
Software info 296
Stand-by net 295
Stored data 292
Trace info 295
Upgrade 303
i-αppli action info 301
i-αppli DX 292
i-αppli end stand-by info 303
i-αppli standby screen 302, 303
i-αppli To function 301
i-αppli To setting 301
i-αppli vol. 296
i-Channel 236
Display 237
Setting 238
i-melody 223
i-mode 212
Adding phonebook entries 217
Exit 213
Handling Flash movies 217
Host selection 228
Start 212
i-mode FeliCa 306
i-mode mail (see mail)
i-mode malfunction check 518
i-mode menu 212
i-mode password 158, 218
i-mode settings 227
i-motion 234, 351
Details 235
Guide to preview and title list 352
i-motion auto replay 235
Play 234, 351
Save 235
Sound effects 128
Standard type 234
Streaming type 234
i-motion mail 252, 261

J

JAN code 204
Jumping forward/back to a page (site) 216

K

Key
Key names and functions 24
Operation by long press 26
Keypad lock 171
Keypad sound 129
Kisekae Tool 364
Delete 377
Download 225
Guide to the package list 364
Set package 144
Kuten code 452

L

Last URL 215
Light menu 35
Location info 314

M

Mail 239
Add folder 268
Adding addresses 245
auto receive 254
Auto-sort 268
Broadcast mail 245
Change rcv. type 244
Changing the display mode on the list screen 266
Changing the font size in the message body 266
Compose 243
Copy 273, 274
Creating/sending attached files 252
Decomail-picture 493
Delete folder 268
Delete received mails 271, 274
Delete receiver 244
Delete sent mails 272, 274
Draft 242, 253
Edit 272, 274
Edit folder name 268
Emotion/Keyword notice 281
Emotion-expressing mail 256
Filter 270, 272
Forward 259
Guide to the folder list screen 263
Guide to the mail detail screen 264
Guide to the mail list screen 263
Header 277
Inbox 242, 262
Move trash box 271, 274
No. of messages for draft mails 253
No. of messages for received mails 271
No. of messages for sent mails 272
Open folder 268
Outbox 242, 262
Preview 244
Protect ON/OFF for sent mails 272, 274
Protect/Unprotect on received mails 270, 273
Quotation marks 277
Receive 254
Receive option 256
Receiving/saving attached files 260
Reply 258
Reply with quote 258
Resend 274
Retrieving the selective received attached file 259
Save 253
Save at DSC 273
Saving address, adding phonebook entry 259
Search mail 270, 272
Secret code 115
Secret folder 164
Outgoing 243
Signature 277
Sort 270, 272
Sort folder 268
Speed photo mail 246
Template list 495
Mail list disp. 276
Mail member 254
Mail menu 242
Mail security 176
Mail settings 276
Mail To function 227
Mail/Msg. ring time 132
Main menu 31
Malfunction checklist 504
Manner mode 132
Manner mode set 133
Manufacturer number 215
Marker stamp 350
Melody 361
Add folder 375
Delete 377
Delete folder 375
Download 223
Guide to the melody list 362
Memory info 363
Move 363
Operations during playback 362
Play melody 361
Playlist playback 364
Memory info
Chara-den list 359
Image list 345
i-αppli list 296
Melody list 363
Movie list 352
Movie shooting 199
PDF list 388
Photo mode, Continuous mode 193
Menu display set 141
Menu function list 486
Message auto-display 227
Message display 276
Message list display 228
Message service (MessageR/F)
Check new messages. 230
Delete 231
Filter 231
Guide to the screen 230
No. of messages 231
Receive 229
Sort 231
Protect ON/OFF 231
View 229, 231
microSD data (i-αppli) 304
microSD memory card 365
Check microSD 370
Copyable data 369
Data preview 369
Delete image 345, 346
Delete movie 353
Display images 342
DPOF setting 394
Folder tree 367
Format 373
Insert 366
microSD info 370, 371
Number of files storable 368
Playing movies 351
Remove 366
microSD reader/writer 373
Missed calls display 179
Missed Info (Illumination) 147

Mobile phone manufacturer number 215
Movable contents 357
Move
Movable contents 357
SMS (to FOMA card (UIM)) 289
SMS (to FOMA terminal (Phone)) 289
Movie 351
Add folder 375
Delete 377
Delete folder 375
Guide to the preview 352
Guide to the title list 352
Memory info 352
Move 352
Operations during playback 354
Playing movies 351
Playlist playback 356
Movie playing software 504
Movie shooting
Auto timer 203
Chance capture 201
Light 203
Picture voice 201
Shooting settings 198, 202
Voice mode 202
Zoom 202
Multi access 416
Combination patterns 501
Multi Number 465
Multitask 417
Activate 418
Combination patterns 502
End 418
Switch 418
Music channel 396
BGM play 412
Guide to player screen 398
Operation with assist key 411
Operations on the music channel player screen 398
Play 397
Setting up program 396
Music player 401
BGM play 412
Guide to music list 403
Guide to player screen 405
Operation with assist key 411
Operations on the player screen 406
Play 402
Playlist 407
My document 384
My Menu 218
My picture 342
Guide to the Picture list and Title list 342
My Profile 48, 428

N

Network security code 158
Network service 457
Neuropointer 27, 146
Initialize 440
Noise reduction 69
Notice designate calls 433
Alarm 433
Check the details 433
No. of memos
Screen memo 221
No. of messages
Mail 253, 268, 271, 272
MessageR/MessageF 231
Template 251
No. of ToruCa 309
Ntfy switch-mode 88
Nuisance Call Blocking 462
NW search mode 480

O

OBEX 378
OFF
Call acceptation 177
Call Forwarding 177
Call rejection 177
Restrict dialing 177
Voice Mail 177
OFFICEED 470
Omakase Lock 161
Options 22, 504
Original animation 347
Original lock 167
Original manner 133
Original menu 36, 144
Osaifu-Keitai 306
IC card lock 311
Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 306
Read/Write data 306
Use Osaifu-Keitai 307
Outbox (mail) 242, 262
Overseas use 475
Making a call 479
Receiving a call 480
Overwrite mode 448
Own dictionary 453

P

Packet communication 472
Password (see "Code number")
Paste text 452
Pause dial 67
PDF data 223, 384
Clip page 388
Delete 377
Download 223
Guide to the PDF list 385
i-mode bookmark 387
Operations 386
Scroll 387
Text search 387
View 384
Petit message 88
Phone To function 226
Phonebook 105
Add to phonebook (from another screen) 110
Add to phonebook (Phone) 107
Delete data 116
Edit phonebook 116
Group setting 110
Make a Call 111
PushTalk phonebook 99
Save at DSC 123
Search phonebook 111
Search phonebook (Specifying a method) 112
Secret code 115
Storage status 118
Photo mode 199
PictBridge print 392
Pictographs 499
Picture voice 201
PIN lock 159
Release 160
Set 159
PIN setting 159
PIN1 code enter 160
PIN1/PIN2 codes 158
Change 159
PI•SB input mode 449
Play
i-motion 351
Melody 361
Music channel 397
Record message 82
Track (music player) 402
Voice announce 431
Voice memo 82
VP message 83
Play/Erase message 82
PLMN setting 481
Portrait right 20
Power saver mode 140
Precautions 12
Prefer attachment 276
Prefix setting 68
Pre-installed data
Common phrases 501
Marker stamp 496
Template 495
Decomail-picture 493
Frame 493
i-αppli program 297
PDF data 386
Ring tone, melody, Chaku-motion 127
Stand-by display 493
Print 392
Print (image) 392
Priority
Alarm 421
Auto-sort 269
Chara-den 109
Incoming call lamp 147, 255, 287
Nuisance Call Blocking 182
Receiving image 138
Ring tone 128, 255, 287
Screen 137
Vibrator 129
Privacy angle 139
Protect
Mail 270, 272, 273, 274
MessageR/MessageF 231, 232
Screen memo 221, 222
Public mode (Driving mode) 77
Public mode (power off) 78
Pull-down menu 216
Push signal 67
PushTalk 93
Adding a member (during a PushTalk call) 96
End 98
Guide to the PushTalk talking screen 94
Making 95
PushTalkPlus 94
Receive (Participate) 97
Setting 103
PushTalk phonebook 99

Add 99
Delete 102
Making 101

Q

QR code 204
Quality alarm 131
Quick Manual 538
Quick message 82

R

Radio button 216
Random melody 126
Read out message 262
Rules for reading out 279
Set 276
Rear panel display 30
Receive from R/W (ToruCa) 311
Receive option 256
Receive option setting 276
Received address list 275
Received calls 62
Receiving display 276
Reconnect signal 69
Record message 80, 82
Erase 83
Play 82
Set 81
Record VP messages 83
Redial 60
Registered trademark 20
Reject unknown 180
Release
Dial lock 161
Discern connect/Discern group 119
i-αppli standby screen 303
IC card lock 311
Keypad lock 172
Original lock 167
PIN lock 160
Protect of the received mail 270, 273
Protect sent mail 272, 274
Secret data 164
Self mode 180
Reload 217
Remote Control 464
Remote monitoring 90
Reset 281
Auto reset total cost 432
Clear learned 453
Initialize 440
Reset desktop 151
Reset i-mode settings 228
Reset last URL 228
Reset mail address 241
Reset Mail settings 281
Reset My profile 429
Reset org. menu 144
Reset settings 438
Reset Std. type set. 336
Reset total 432
Reset viewer type set. 331
Reset i-mode settings 228
Reset last URL 228
Reset settings 438
Reset total 432
Restrict dialing 177
Restrictions 177
Ring time (sec.) 179
Ring volume 74
Roam. Guidance 481

S

SAR 528
Save
Content (Screen memo) 221
Document (mail) 261
Image (mail) 260
Image (site, MessageR/MessageF) 222
i-motion (mail) 261
Mail 244, 253
Melody (mail) 260
Other files (mail) 261
PDF data (mail) 261
Template 251
Tool data (mail) 261
ToruCa (mail) 261
Save image 222
Scanning function 524
Schedule 138, 423
Changing the display mode 424
User icon settg. 425
Screen memo 221
Adding phonebook entries 222
Delete 222
Display 221
Edit title 221, 222
No. of memos 221
Save 221
Save image 222
Protect ON/OFF 221, 222
Scroll
Document viewer 391
i-mode 215, 227
Mail 276
PDF data 387
Standard type (Full Browser) 333
ToruCa 311
Viewer type (Full Browser) 329
SD-PIM 369
Secret data only mode 163
Secret folder 164
Secret mode 163
Security code 158
Change 159
Entering 34
Security Scan (Scanning function) ...524
Select image (videophone) 85
Select language 46
Select microphone 438
Select ring tone 126
Self mode 180
Send DTMF tone 54
Sent address list 275
Service Numbers 463
Services available 503
Service(Int.)
Call Forwarding(Int.) 482
Voice Mail (Int.) 482
Caller ID req.(Int.) 483
Remote access(Int.) 483
Roam.Guidance (Int.) 482
Session number 383
Set
Home 214
Set as home URL 214
Set auto-update (Scanning function) 525
Set check new messages 278
Set connection timeout 228
Set hold tone 76
Set i-αppli stand-by 302
Set image disp. 227, 335
Set in-call arrival 464
Set mute seconds 179
Set time 47
Setting SMS Center 288
Setting when folded 73
Shoot
Chance capture 201
Chara-den 360
Continuous mode 194
Framed photography 196
Movie 197
Picture voice 201
Still image 191
Showing your phone number 48
Silent
i-αppli vol. 296
Ring volume 74
Alarm setting 419
Smiley Face Symbols 500
SMS input char. 287
SMS report req. 287
SMS valid per. 287
SMS (Short Message) 286
Compose 286
Delete 287
Forward 288
Move/copy to your FOMA card (UIM) ...288
Preview 287
Receive 287
Reply 288
Save 287
Send 286
SMS report 286
UIM operation 116
Software key 26
Software list 295
Software Update 518
Sound effect 128
Surround 128
3Dsound 128
Sound effect (i-mode) 228
Speed photo auto disp. 276
Speed photo mail 246
SSL certificate 232
Standard type (Full Browser) 331
Changing display mode 332
Displaying a desired portion of the entire page 334
Frame 333
Multi window 333
Scroll 333
Setting 335
Switching from i-mode 334
TLS/SSL 328
Uploading images 334
Using the landscape screen 333
Stand-by display 137
Start attachment (auto) 227, 276
Store
Common phrases 451
Own dictionary 453
Personal data (My Profile) 428
Storing common phrases 451

Storing/Showing My Profile 429
Sub-address setting 69
Super silent 133
Symbols and Special Characters 498

T

Template 250
Text box 216
Text memo 434
ToruCa 307
  Acquire 308
  Display 309
  Set 311
To Do list 427
Trademark 20
Trimming 351
Turning on the light 203
Turning the FOMA terminal on/off 45
Two-touch dialing 122

U

UIM operation 116
Unprotect
  Protect MessageR/MessageF 231, 232
  Protect screen memo 221, 222
Update pattern data 524
URL 218
  Delete 219
  Enter URL 218
  URL history 219
  URL 214
USB mode setting 374
Use phone information 227, 229
User certificate 232
Using menus 32

V

Vibrator (vibration) 129
Videophone call 50
  Auto redial as voice 85
  Chara-den 84
  Connect to external device 89
  Decoration 87
  Hands-free 59
  Hands-free switch 87
  Making 52
  Petit message 88
  Receiving 71
  Remote monitoring 90
  Select image 85
  Videophone screen 50
  Visual check 86
  Visual prefer. 85
  Zoom 86
View
  Document viewer 389
  MessageR\MessageF 231
  PDF data 384
  Site 213
View an SSL page 215
Viewer settings 344
Viewer type (Full Browser) 328
  Changing display mode 329
  Cookie 336
  Referer 337
  Scrolling 329
  Setting 331
  TLS/SSL 328
  Tool bar 330
  Uploading images 330
  Using the landscape screen 329
  View pos. display 330
Visual check 86
Visual preference (videophone) 85
Voice announce 431
Voice clock 80
Voice Mail 177, 458
Voice memo 82, 430
Voice memo (in-call) 430
Voice memo (in-standby) 430
Voice mode 202
Volume 74
VP message 83
  Erase 84
  Play 83
V-phone while packet 88

W

Wake-up display 135
Warranty 516
WEB mail 243
Web To function 227
Website 218
White balance 199
Word prediction 447
WORLD CALL 56
World watch 48
WORLD WING 40, 476

Y

Your phone number 48

Z

Zoom 202

Numerals, etc.

186(show)/184(hide) 66
2in1 466
3D animation
  Emotion-expressing mail 256
  Chaku-moji 63
  Desktop icon 153
3D display setting 153
3D sound 128
64K data communication 472
ゼンリン🏠地図 + ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) 317
みんなNらんど 213

Function menu

This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.

Voice/Videophone Calls
- Country Code set 58
- IDD Prefix setting....59
- Other ID (Remote monitoring) 90
- Voice/Videophone ringing....70
- In-call....52
- Videophone in-call....53
- Phone number entry....51
- Play/Erase VP msg.....84
- Prefix setting....69
- Pause dial....67
- Create message....64
- Play/Erase VP msg. (Record message)....83
- Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls (list/detail)....61

PushTalk
- PushTalk phonebook 102

A phonebook entry
- Group setting 111
- Choku-Den list....122
- Choku-Den detail....122
- Exchanging history (Data Security serv.) 124
- Phonebook list....113
- Phonebook detail....114
- UIM operation (copy) 118
- UIM operation (delete) 118

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings
- Original theme (Menu display set)... 143
- Original menu (Menu display set)... 144
- Kisekae Tool set list....145
- Contents checking (Kisekae Tool setting) 146
- Desktop icon/Theme selection 151

Security Settings
- Face authentic. 175
- Category list/Group list....171
- Function list....171
- Restrictions....178
- IC card authentic. 173

Camera
- Access reader 209
- Detail checking 196
- Image checking 193
- Photo mode....192
- Movie checking 200
- Movie mode....198
- Reading data list (Access reader) 209
- Reading data list (Access reader) 205
- Reading data detail (Access reader) 209
- Reading data detail (Bar code reader) 205
- Continuous shooting checking.....195
- Continuous mode 192
- Recording start (Picture voice) 202

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel
- Screen memo list....221
- Screen memo detail....222
- Sites....214
- Channel list....237
- Message list....231
- Message detail 232
- Bookmark 220
- Bookmark folder list....220
- Enter URL (Internet connection) ...219

Mail
- Address/Subject 245
- Emotion/Keyword notice 281
- Group member list....284
- Received address list 275
- Inbox folder list....268
- Received mail list....270
- Received mail detail 273
- New mail....244
- New SMS....287
- Speed photo mail image....246
- Sent address list....275
- Outbox folder list....268
- Sent mail list 272
- Sent mail detail....274
- Chat....282
- Chat group list 284
- Chat member....281
- Template....251
- Template preview....251
- Draft mail list....253
- Message....245
- Mail member list 254
- Mail member detail 254

i-αppli
- Security error history 297
- Software list....295
- End stand-by info....303
- microSD data list 304

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
- ToruCa list....310
- ToruCa display....310
- ToruCa folder list....309
- IC card content 307

GPS Function
- Location history list 325
- LCS client 323
- microSD client list....324
- microSD client detail....324
- microSD client folder....324

Full Browser
- Standard type 334
- Viewer type....330

Display/Edit/Organization
- Edit image....349
- Image list 344
- Chara-den list 359
- Chara-den player 359
- Rec. Chara-den (image/movie) 361
- Original animation list....348
- Original animation playback....348
- Data list (SD-PIM)....371
- Data detail (SD-PIM) 371
- Movie list....352
- Edit movie....356
- Document list....391
- Document view 392
- Package list 365
- File list (SD-PIM) 370
- Folder list (My document) 375
- Folder list (My picture) 375
- Folder list (Melody) 375
- Folder list (i-motion)....375
- Program folder list screen....356
- Categories (SD-PIM) 370
- My picture....345
- Melody list (Melody)....362
- Melody list (i-motion) 363
- i-motion stopped (pause)....355
- microSD folder list (Picture)....376
- PDF data 388
- PDF list....388

Music Channel/Playback
- Playlist 404
- Chapter list 400
- Music list....408
- Playlist music list....408
- Music channel....400
- Music channel player....399
- Music player....406

Other Useful Functions
- Alarm....423
- Voice announce....432
- Reference result (list/detail) (dictionary)....435
- Reference result (detail) (dictionary)....436
- Reference history (dictionary) 435
- Dictionary 435
- Schedule list 426
- Schedule....423
- Text memo 434
- My Profile....429
- To Do list....428
- To Do list detail 428

Entering Text
- Download dictionary 454
- Common phrase list....452
- Common phrases folder list....452
- Text entry (edit)....450
- Own dictionary....453

Network service
- Additional service/Additional guidance....470
- Multi Number setting....465
- Check setting....459

Overseas use
- PLMN setting....481

Quick Manual

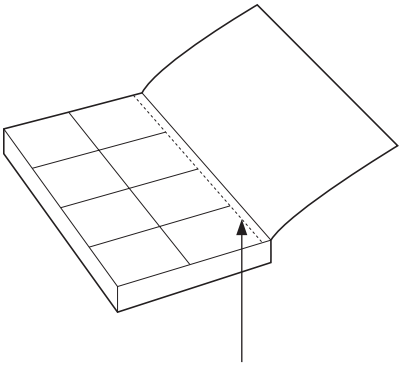
How to use the Quick Manual

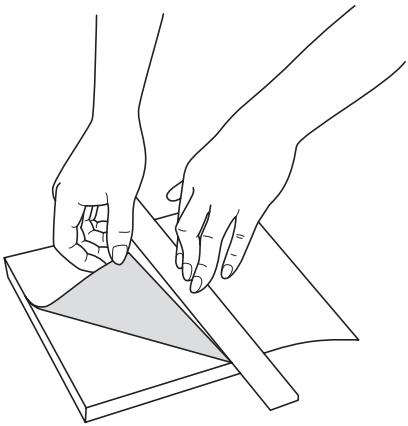
The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
To use the Quick Manual bound in this manual, cut the pages along the cutting line and fold them as shown below. Take along Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) with you when using international roaming (WORLD WING) abroad.

■ How to cut

Cut the Quick Manual pages along the cutting line.
Use a ruler to cut along the cutting line as shown below.
Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages.

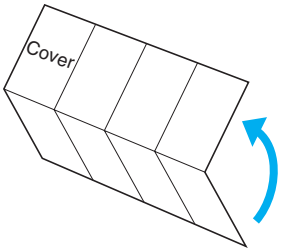
* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting with scissors, etc.

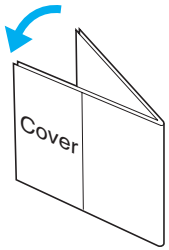




■ How to fold

Fold along the fold line to see the cover page as shown below.





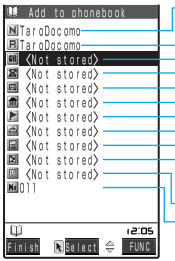


NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N904i
Quick Manual

○For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>
From DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone
(No area code) 151 (toll free) (in Japanese only)
*You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
From an ordinary (landline) phone
0120-005-250 (in English)
*Can be called from mobile phones and PHS phones.
●Check the phone number before dialing.
○For malfunction
From DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone
(No area code) 113 (toll free) (in Japanese only)
*You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
From an ordinary (landline) phone
0120-800-000 (in Japanese only)
*Can be called from mobile phones and PHS phones.
●Check the phone number before dialing.
●For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.

Adding Data to Phonebook



1 (MENU)➔"PHONE BOOK"➔"Phonebook"➔(FUNC)➔"Add to phonebook"

● **To add data from the Received calls**
On the standby screen➔(Call)➔Select the received calls➔(FUNC)➔"Add to phonebook"

● **To add data from the Redial**
On the standby screen➔(Redial)➔Select a redial➔(FUNC)➔"Add to phonebook"

2 **Select a phonebook➔Enter a name➔Check the reading of the name**

3 **Select any item to enter its contents**

■Group (01 to 19, none)
<Not stored>➔Select a group

■Phone number (up to 4)
<Not stored>➔Enter phone number➔Select an icon

■Mail address (up to 3)
<Not stored>➔Enter mail address➔Select an icon

■Address
<Not stored>➔Enter zip code➔Enter address

■Location information
<Not stored>➔Add location information

■Birthday
<Not stored>➔Enter birthday

■Memorandums
<Not stored>➔Enter memorandums

■Image
<Not stored>➔Select the Photo mode or image

■Chara-den
Not stored>➔Select Chara-den

■Memory number. (000 to 999)
No➔Enter memory number

4 (Mail) **(Finish)**
Only name, reading, group, phone number and mail address can be stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

■PushTalk phone number
The PushTalk phone number is stored if the entry is to be stored in the "All Phonebook".

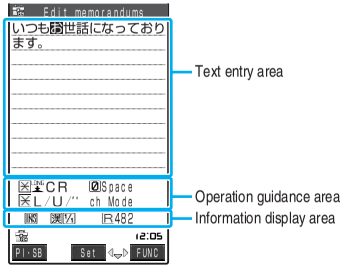
Editing/Deleting Phonebook Data

■Editing the phonebook data
Open the Phonebook detail screen➔(FUNC)➔"Edit phonebook"➔Edit the desired items➔(Mail)(Finish)➔"YES" (for the UIM phonebook, press (Mail)(Finish), then "Overwrite"➔"YES")

■Deleting the phonebook data
Open the Phonebook list screen➔(FUNC)➔"Delete data"➔"Delete this"➔"YES" (Select "YES" again depending on the phonebook)

Input Methods and Modes

■Text entry screen



■Input mode
漢...Kanji/Hiragana
カ...Katakana
123...Number
区...Kuten code mode

A...Alphabetic

■Selecting the text entry method
(MENU)➔"SETTINGS"➔"Other settings"➔"Character input set"➔"Input mode"➔Select any item

■Switching the text entry method
(Mail)(PI・SB) (for 1 second or longer) (several times)

■Switching the input mode
(ch) (several times)

■Entering dakuten and han-dakuten marks
(*) (several times)

■Entering punctuation marks
(#) (several times)

■Switching between upper and lower cases
Before entering, (FUNC)➔"Upper case" or "Lower case"

■Entering space (blank)
(FUNC)➔"Space"

■Text line feed
Move the cursor to the end of a sentence without a letter followed➔(Clear)
(*) (for 1 second or longer)
(FUNC)➔"Line feed"

■Entering face symbols, symbols and pictographs
(Mail)(PI・SB) (several times)➔Select symbol or face symbol➔Press (CLR) to finish entering
(FUNC)➔"Face Mark"/"Symbols"/"Pictograph"➔Select symbol or character

■Deleting a text
Press (Navi) to move the cursor to the character to be deleted➔(CLR)

Cutting line

Entering a text

Entering "携帯" on the text memo

■Displaying the text entry (edit) screen

(MENU)➔"LIFE KIT"➔"Text memo"➔(✉) (Edit)➔(ch) (several times)➔Switch to "Kanji/Hiragana input mode"➔

Press け➔2 four times, い➔1 twice, た➔4 once, then い➔1 twice.

■Character conversion

(i) (Convert)➔(↓)➔(↓)➔Select the conversion candidate "携帯"

Camera

■Image shooting

(MENU)➔"LIFE KIT"➔"Camera"➔"Photo mode"➔(●) or ▼[📷]➔(●)

■Continuous mode

(MENU)➔"LIFE KIT"➔"Camera"➔"Photo mode"➔(i) (FUNC)➔"CHG camera-mode"➔"Continuous mode"➔"Auto" or "Manual"➔(●) or ▼[📷]➔(i) (FUNC)➔Select the saving method

■Movie shooting

(MENU)➔"LIFE KIT"➔"Camera"➔"Movie mode"➔(●) or ▼[📷]➔(●) or ▼[📷]➔(●)

Playing back the images, movies or melodies

■Displaying image

(MENU)➔"DATA BOX"➔"My picture"➔Select a folder➔Select an image

■Playing movies

(MENU)➔"DATA BOX"➔"i-motion"➔Select a folder➔Select a movie

■Playing back melody

(MENU)➔"DATA BOX"➔"Melody"➔Select a folder➔Select a melody

Using Music Player

■Playing music

(MENU)➔"DATA BOX"➔"Music"➔Select a folder➔Select a track

Making/Receiving a Videophone Call

■Making a videophone call

Enter the other party's phone number➔(✉) (Vphone)➔To end the call, press (📞)

■Receiving a videophone call

When a FOMA terminal rings and the incoming call lamp flashes

(✉) (Vphone) or (📞) or (●)➔To end the call, press (📞)

- (✉) (Vphone) or (📞): Send your image to the other party
- (●) (Subst.): Send the substitute image to the other party

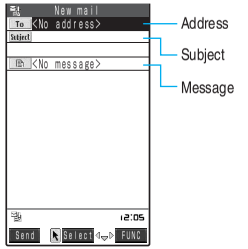
■Operations during a call

(✉): Switches hands-free (ON/OFF)

(●): Switches camera (Front camera/Rear camera)

i-mode mail

Composing/Sending message



■Opening the New mail screen

(MENU)➔"Mail"➔"Compose message"

■Entering an address

"To"➔Select the address entry method

■Entering a subject

"Subject"➔Enter a subject

■Entering the message body

"✎"➔Enter the message body

■Sending the mail

(✉) (Send)➔To end the sending, press (●)

Attaching Files

■Attaching an image, i-motion, melody, PDF, document or ToruCa

Open the New mail screen➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Attach file"➔Select an item➔Select a folder➔Select data

■Attaching a phonebook

Open the New mail screen➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Attach file"➔Phonebook➔"Phone"➔Search for a phonebook entry➔Select a phonebook entry

■Attaching oMy Profile

Open the New mail screen➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Attach file"➔"My Profile"➔Enter your security code➔(●)

■Attaching schedule

Open the New mail screen➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Attach file"➔"Schedule"➔Select an item➔Select data➔(●)

■Attaching bookmark

Open the New mail screen➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Attach file"➔"Bookmark"➔Select an item➔Select a folder➔Select data➔(●)

Receiving i-mode mail

"📱 (white)" flashes➔The reception results screen appears.➔Select"New"

Other mail functions

■Replying mail

Display mail to reply➔(✉) (Reply)➔"✎"➔Enter the message body➔(✉) (Send)➔To end the sending, press (●)

■Forwarding mail

Display mail to forward➔(i) (FUNC)➔"Forward"➔"To"➔Select the address entry method➔(✉) (Send) ➔To end the sending, press (●)

Check new messages

(MENU)➔"Mail"➔"Check new messages"

Menu function list

(MENU)**Menu**

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
MAIL	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	WEB mail	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages ((✉) (for 1 second or longer))	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
i-MODE	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen Memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	i-Channel ((ch))	
	MessageR/F	

Cutting line

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
i-MODE	Check new messages ((✉) (for 1 second or longer))	
	Client certificate	
	i-mode settings	
	Full Browser	
i-αPPLI	Software list ((i) ((R)) (for 1 second or longer))	
	microSD data	
	Auto-start set	
	i-αppli action info	
SETTINGS	Kisekae Tool setting	
	Incoming call	Ring volume (**MENU 50**)
		Select ring tone (**MENU 13**)
		Sound effect (**MENU 64**)
		Vibrator (**MENU 54**)
		Illumination (**MENU 89**)
		Manner mode set (**MENU 20**)
		Disp. phonebook image
		Answer setting (**MENU 58**)

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
SETTINGS	Incoming call	Mail/Msg. ring time (**MENU 68**)
		Ring time (sec.) (**MENU 90**)
		Info notice setting (**MENU 65**)
		Record message (**MENU 5 5**)
		Disp. call/receive No.
	Talk	Noise reduction (**MENU 76**)
		Quality alarm (**MENU 75**)
		Reconnect signal (**MENU 77**)
		Illumination in talk
		Set hold tone
		Setting when folded (**MENU 18**)
	Dialing	Pause dial (**MENU 84**)
		Sub-address setting
		Prefix setting
		Auto dial setting
		Int'l dial assistance
	Videophone	Visual preference
		Select image
		Auto redial as voice

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
SETTINGS	Videophone	Remote monitoring
		Display setting
		Ntfy switch-mode
		Hands-free switch
		V-phone while packet
	Display	Display setting (**MENU 56**)
		Backlight (**MENU 70**)
		Display design (**MENU 86**)
		Indicator display (**MENU 93**)
		Font (**MENU 66**)
		Desktop icon (**MENU 63**)
		3D display setting
		Select language (**MENU 15**)
		Original menu (**MENU 52**)
		Menu Display set (**MENU 57**)
		Viewer settings
		Automatic display (**MENU 47**)
		Icons (**MENU 36**)
		Icons setting
		Privacy angle
	Call time/Charge	Call data (**MENU 61**)
		Notice designate calls

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	
SETTINGS	Call time/Charge	Reset total (**MENU 60**)	
		Auto reset total cost	
	Clock	Set time (**MENU 31**)	
		Clock display (**MENU 39**)	
		World watch	
		Alarm setting	
		Clock Alarm Tone set	
	Lock/ Security	Lock	Dial lock
			Original lock
		IC card lock	
		Keypad lock	
		Face authentication	
		Self mode	
		Secret mode (**MENU 40**)	
		Secret data only mode (**MENU 41**)	
		Reject unknown	
		Call setting w/o ID (**MENU 10**)	
		Change security code (**MENU 29**)	
		IC card authentic.	
		PIN setting	
		Scanning function	

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
SETTINGS	Connection setting	Set connection timeout
		Set check new messages
		Host selection (**MENU 81**)
		SMS center selection
		Certificate
		Certificate host
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info
		End stand-by display
		i-αppli vol.
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W
		Auto reading setting
		Scroll
	External connection	USB mode setting
		Earphone (**MENU 51**)
		Select microphone
		Automatic answer (**MENU 94**)
	Network setting	NW search mode
		Display operator name
	Other settings	Keypad sound (**MENU 30**)
		Charge sound
		IC card Illumination
		Battery level(**MENU 71**)
		External keys guard (**MENU** ✱ (for 1 second or longer))

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
SETTINGS	Other settings	Character input set (**MENU 35**)
		Neuropointer
		Reset settings (**MENU 23**)
		Initialize
		Software Update
DATA BOX	My picture (**MENU 46**)	
	Music	
	i-motion	
	Melody (**MENU 16**)	
	My document	
	Chara-den	
	Kisekae Tool	
	Document viewer	
LIFE KIT	Music Channel	
	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data (**MENU 79**)	
	ToruCa	
	IC card content	
	IC card lock	
	SD-PIM	
	Camera	
	GPS	
	Data security serv.	
	Schedule (**MENU 45**)	
	Alarm (**MENU 44**)	
	To Do list (**MENU 95**)	

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
LIFE KIT	Text memo (**MENU 42**)	
	Calculator (**MENU 85**)	
	Play/Erase msg. ((f) (MEMO/CHECK))	
	Play/Erase VP msg.	
	Voice memo* (**MENU 43**)	
	Voice announce (**MENU 91**)	
	UIM operation	
	My Profile (**MENU 0**)	
	Forwarding image	
	Access reader	
	Dictionary	
SERVICE	Chaku-moji	
	Caller ID Notification (**MENU 17**)	
	Voice Mail	
	Call Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	2in1 setting	
	Nuisance Call Blk	
	Caller ID Request	
	Incoming Call Mng	

*: "Voice memo" may appear as the menu item depending on the menu theme.

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
SERVICE	Set in-call arrival	
	Remote Control	
	Dual Network	
	English Guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service Numbers	
	Multi Number	
	Roam. Guidance	
	Bar incoming when roam	
	Service(Int.)	
PHONE BOOK	Phonebook	
	PushTalk	
OWN DATA	Received calls (**MENU 24**)	
	Dialed calls	
	Mail member (**MENU 97**)	
	Chat group	
	Choku-Den	
	Common phrases (**MENU 38**)	
	Own dictionary (**MENU 82**)	
	DL dictionary	

Cutting line

<Other settings>

● Manner mode: (#) (for 1 second or longer) (Set/Release with each press)

● Public mode (Driving mode): (*) (for 1 second or longer) (Set/Release with each press)

Network Services

Voice Mail service

■Activating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Voice Mail"➜"Activate"➜"YES"➜"YES"➜Enter the ring time (seconds)

■Deactivating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Voice Mail"➜"Deactivate"➜"YES"

■Playing messages

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Voice Mail"➜"Play messages"
➜"YES"➜Follow the voice instructions

Call Waiting

■Activating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Call Waiting"➜"Activate"➜"YES"

■Deactivating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Call Waiting"➜"Deactivate"➜"YES"

■Answering other incoming call during a call

To answer other incoming call, press (Talk) or (●)

To switch the call, press (Talk)

Call Forwarding service

■Activating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Call Forwarding"➜"Activate"➜Register a forwarding number and the ring time, and then select "Activate"➜"YES"

■Deactivating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Call Forwarding"➜"Deactivate"➜"YES"

Caller ID Request service

■Activating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Caller ID Request"➜"Activate"➜"YES"➜"OK"

■Deactivating

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Caller ID Request"➜"Deactivate"➜"YES"➜"OK"

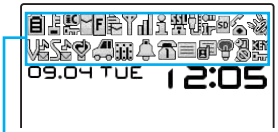
Services Available on the FOMA Terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)*1	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay) 8 am to 10 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)	(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)	Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency*2	(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency*2	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)	(No area code) 171

*1: A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided.

*2: Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

Main icons



Icon display area

: Battery level

: Dial lock set

: IC card lock set

(white): Unread mail kept

(white): Unread messageF kept

(white): Mail kept at the i-mode Center

: Signal strength

i-mode in progress

SSL-compatible page shown

: Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected or hands-free compatible device unconnected

: Ir data exchange in progress

: microSD memory card inserted

: During a voice call

: GPS location being positioned

: Vibrator set

: Ring volume set to "Silent"

: In Manner mode

: In Public (Driving) mode

: Music channel reservation set

/ : Alarm set

to , : Voice Mail message kept

to : Record message set

to : Record message (Record VP message) set

: Backlight set to "OFF"

: Keypad lock set/waiting

: External keys guard set to "ON"

<Emergency contact numbers for loss, etc.>

Omakase Lock

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. You do not need to pay for the charge if you subscribe to this service when or while you temporarily stop using the FOMA terminal.

Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

Available 24 hours a day

* This function can also be set/released in the My DoCoMo website on a PC or other machine.

Other Contact Numbers

<Number: >

<Number: >

<Number: >

* Check the phone number before dialing.

Cutting line

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N904i

Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

○**For lost, stolen, accumulated amount settlement overseas**

<DoCoMo Information Center> (available 24 hours a day)

●**For a DoCoMo mobile phone**

International Access Code of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged if you call from a landline phone etc.

* When calling from N904i, dial +81-3-5366-3114.
(Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

●**From a landline phone etc. <Universal Number>**

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151**

* Local call charges may be applied in the country or region you stay.

* For the Universal Number International ID Code (Table 1), see p.12, and for the International Access Codes of major countries (Table 2), see p.13.

○**For malfunction overseas**

<Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (available 24 hours a day)

●**For a DoCoMo mobile phone**

International Access Code of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged if you call from a landline phone etc.

* When calling from N904i, dial +81-3-6718-1414.
(Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

●**From a landline phone etc. <Universal Number>**

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600**

* Local call charges may be applied in the country or region you stay.

* For the Universal Number International ID Code (Table 1), see p.12, and for the International Access Codes of major countries (Table 2), see p.13.

Before Using Overseas

This FOMA terminal is available in 3G roaming service areas.

Preparation Articles

- WORLD WING-compatible FOMA card (UIM) (except blue)
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional)/ FOMA AC Adapter 02 (optional)

Settings for Using Overseas

■Setting i-mode

(MENU)➜"i-MODE"➜"iMenu"➜"English iMenu"➜"Options"➜"International Settings"➜"i-mode services Settings"➜"YES"➜
Enter i-mode password➜"Select"

■Setting remote control

- This setting is required to be made in Japan.

(MENU)➜"SERVICE"➜"Remote control"➜"Activate"➜"YES"

■Setting World watch

(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Clock"➜"World watch"➜"Time zone"➜Select a time zone or the summer time

■Displaying the world watch

(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Clock"➜"Clock display"➜"Display type"➜"World watch ON"➜"YES"

Communications services overseas

- Voice and videophone calls
- i-mode mail
- i-mode (including full browser)
- SMS (Short Message)
- i-Channel

Setting the Search Mode of the Operator

■Changing the operator automatically or manually

(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Network setting"➜"NW search mode"➜"Auto" or "Manual"
Subsequently, select an operator if "Manual" is set

■Re-searching available operators

(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Network setting"➜"NW search mode"➜"Network re-search"
Subsequently, select an operator if "Manual" is set

Setting an Operator to Be Preferably Connected

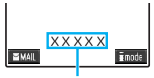
(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Network setting"➜"NW search mode"➜"PLMN setting"➜Highlight an operator whose priority is to be changed➜(FUNC)➜"Change priority"➜Highlight a position to move to➜●➜(Finish)➜"YES"

Setting Display of the Operator Name

(MENU)➜"SETTINGS"➜"Network setting"➜"Display operator name"➜"Display ON" or "Display OFF"

■Display

The currently accessed operator name is displayed in the task icon area.



Connecting roaming operator's name

Setting after Returning to Japan

When you return to Japan and turn on the FOMA terminal, the network will be automatically searched and set as the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

"Setting the Search Mode of the Operator"→p.4

Making a Call

Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)

■Making a call to a country registered in "Int'l dial assistance"

Enter a phone number➜(FUNC)➜"Int'l call"➜Select a country➜ or (Yahoo!)

■Beginning with the country code to make a call

On the standby screen, dial + (for 0 1 second)➜Country code➜Area code (long distance code)➜Phone number➜ or (Yahoo!)

Making a local call abroad

Enter a phone number➜ or (Yahoo!)

Cutting line

Receiving a Call

When a voice/videophone call arrives, press 

Network Service

Setting the roaming guidance

- This setting is required to be made in Japan.
  MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Roam. Guidance"➔"Activate" or "Deactivate"➔"YES"

Barring Incoming Call When Roaming

- This setting is required to be made in Japan.
  MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Bar incoming when roam"➔"Activate" or "Deactivate"
  Subsequently, select "Bar All incoming" or "Data calls Barring" if "Activate" is set➔"YES"➔Enter your network security code

Voice mail (for overseas use)

MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Service(Int.)"➔"Voice Mail (Int.)"➔Select from the following functions

- "Activate"
- "Deactivate"
- "Play messages"
- "Set ring time"*
- "Setting"

➔"YES"➔Follow the voice instructions

*: As of April 2007, this function is not available.

Call Forwarding (for overseas use)

MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Service(Int.)"➔"Call Forwarding (Int.)"➔Select from the following functions

- "Activate"
- "Deactivate"
- "Setting"*

➔"YES"➔Follow the voice instructions

*: As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

Roaming guidance (for overseas use)

MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Service(Int.)"➔"Roam.Guidance(Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the voice instructions

Setting the Remote Control (for overseas use)

MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Service(Int.)"➔"Remote access(Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the voice instructions

* As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

Caller ID Request service (for overseas use)

MENU➔"SERVICE"➔"Service(Int.)"➔"Caller ID req.(Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the voice instructions

* As of April, 2007, this function is not available.

Country Codes of Major Countries

Enter the following country codes to make international calls or for "Int'l dial assistance".

(As of April, 2007)

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	1	Germany	49
United Kingdom	44	Turkey	90
Italy	39	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7
China	86		

* For details of other countries including their country codes, check DoCoMo "International Services website".

International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)

(As of April, 2007)

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/0021/0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

* See DoCoMo "International Services website" for the latest information.

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2)

(As of April, 2007)

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Taiwan	00
United States of America	011	China	00
Argentina	00	Denmark	00
United Kingdom	00	Germany	00
Israel	014	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
Australia	0011	Hungary	00
Austria	00	Philippines	00
Holland	00	Finland	990
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Portugal	00

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Switzerland	00	Hong Kong	001
Sweden	00	Malaysia	00
Spain	00	South Africa	09
Thailand	001	Luxemburg	00

* The universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.
* See DoCoMo "International Services website" for the latest information.

For inquiries

See "For lost, stolen, accumulated amount settlement overseas" on the top page of this Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) or "For malfunction overseas" on p.1, for details on lost, stolen, charge accumulation or malfunction overseas.

- Enter the "International Access Code" or "Universal Number International ID Code" of the country where you stay, before each phone number for inquiries. See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" for the details on "International Access Code" and "Universal Number International ID Code".

* The universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.

Cutting line

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, consider the feelings of others.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

■ In a location where it is prohibited to use mobile phones

It is prohibited to use mobile phones in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:

• An airplane • A hospital

* Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.

■ Driving

Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.

* Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).

■ In a crowded place such as rush-hour train where somebody may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter-defibrillator nearby

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter-defibrillator if used in close proximity.

■ In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum

Using the FOMA terminal in a public place where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

■ If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.

■ Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode]→p.132, 133

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)]→p.77, 78

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator]→p.129

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message]→p.80

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.458) and Call Forwarding service (p.461).

Printed versions of this document were reproduced on recycled paper. Please recycle this document when you are done with it.

DoCoMo e-site welcomes requests for brochures as well as various procedures such as change of your address or billing plan.

i-mode: i Menu⇒料金&お申込・設定⇒ドコモeサイト **Packet communication free**

PC: My DoCoMo(http://www.mydocomo.com/)⇒各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)

※To access e-site via i-mode, your "Network security code" is required.
※The packet communication fee is free when accessing e-site via i-mode. However, accessing from overseas will be charged.
※To access e-site via PC, "DoCoMo ID" and "Password" are required.
※If you have no "Network security code", "DoCoMo ID" and "Password" with you or unfortunately forgot them, please feel free to contact inquiries shown below.
※Some contracts may not be available for accessing e-site.
※You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

For inquiries
< DoCoMo Information Center >

■**From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:**

(No prefix)**151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■**From an ordinary (landline) phone:**

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■**From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:**

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■**From an ordinary (landline) phone:**

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
●For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

For lost, stolen, accumulated amount settlement overseas
DoCoMo Information Center (24 hours) (Only in Japanese)

For a DoCoMo mobile phone

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (Toll free)

*Long distance call to Japan will be charged if you call from a landline phone etc.

※When calling from N904i, dial +81-3-5366-3114.
(Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

From a landline phone etc.

<Universal number>

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

*Local call charges may be applied in the country or region you stay.

※Refer to p.478 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)/Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2).

For malfunction overseas
Network Technical Support and Operation Center (24 hours)

For a DoCoMo mobile phone

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (Toll free)

*Long distance call to Japan will be charged if you call from a landline phone etc.

※When calling from N904i, dial +81-3-6718-1414.
(Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

From a landline phone etc.

<Universal number>

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

*Local call charges may be applied in the country or region you stay.

※Refer to p.478 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)/Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2).

●If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen overseas, contact NTT DoCoMo and suspend the subscription immediately.
●If your FOMA terminal has been damaged overseas, take it to a repair counter designated by NTT DoCoMo after returning to Japan.



Don't forget your cellular phone … or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

Li-ion

To protect the enviroment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.

This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'07.5(1st Edition)
MDT-000073-EAA0

FOMA® N904i

Manual for Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal 1
Before Using 3
Checking the Procedure 4
Setting the PC 7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 14
How to Set Various Settings 20
Executing Set Data Communication 26
Optimizing Communication Settings 29
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 30
Setting up Dial-up Network 31
Setting up Dial-up 38
AT Command List 49

About Manual for Data Communication

This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N904i and how to install "N904i communication setting file (drivers)" and "FOMA PC setting software" provided in the CD-ROM.

Operations on Windows

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6Mbps and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps.* Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

- When you use packet communication with DoCoMo PDA "sigmarion Ⅲ" or "musea", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving. It is not compatible with FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area communication.

* : The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving outside FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

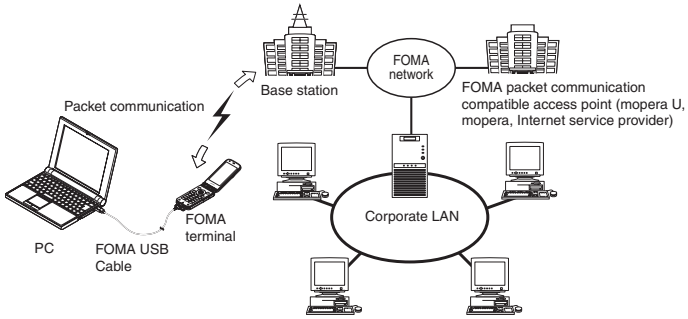
● 64K data communication

Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".

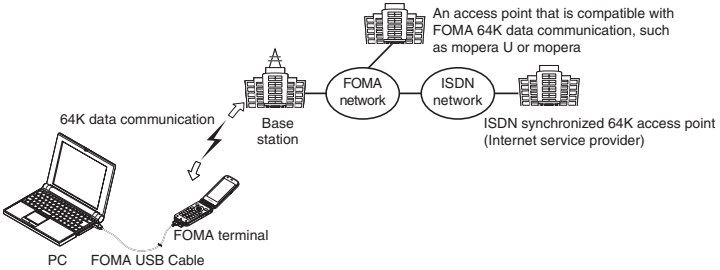
- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available. When you use access points for "mopera", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U".

- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available.



NOTE

● Packet communication and 64K data communication are not available overseas.
● This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a pay service for which you need to apply. "mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) under the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is only in Japanese.) To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe Reader help.

Required conditions for performing packet and 64K data communication

The following conditions are required to perform communication using the FOMA terminal:

- Your PC is compatible with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You are in the FOMA service area.
- For packet communication, the access point supports FOMA packet communication.
- For 64K data communication, the access point supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

However, depending on congestion of the base station or weaker signal strength, you cannot perform communication even when the above conditions are satisfied.

Before Using

Operational environment

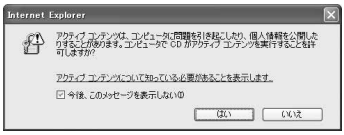
The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*1	• Windows 2000 (Japanese version) • Windows XP (Japanese version) • Windows Vista (Japanese version)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher*2 • Windows Vista: 512M bytes or higher*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or higher*2

*1： The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.
*2： The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the warning screen as shown right may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software. Click "はい" (Yes).

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



NOTE

- You can transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". Update "musea" when you connect it to a FOMA terminal. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- "FOMA USB Cable" (optional) or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" (optional)
- CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i"

NOTE

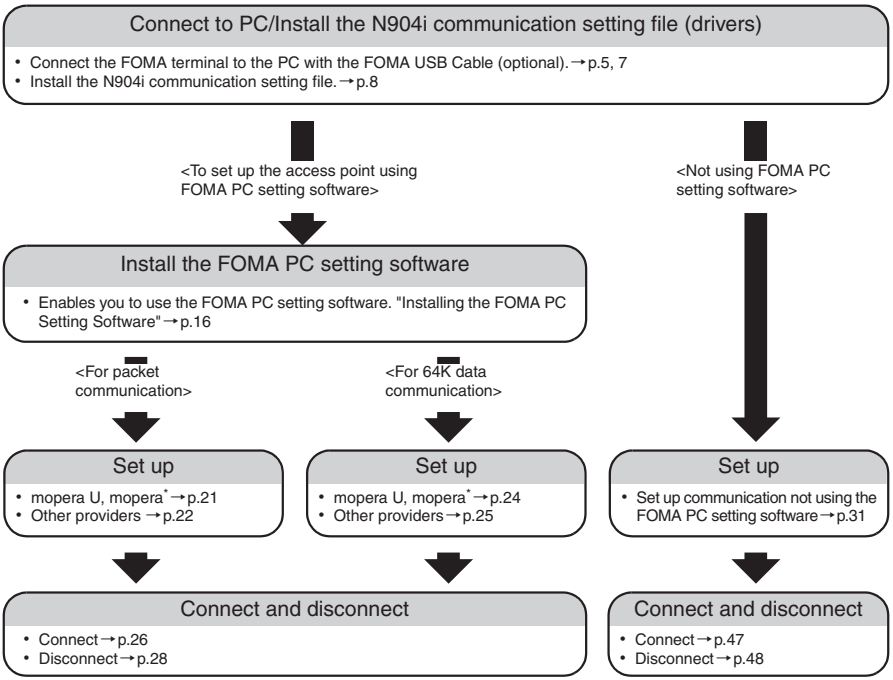
- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.
- This manual gives an example when you use "FOMA USB Cable".

Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.
For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to "Communication mode"

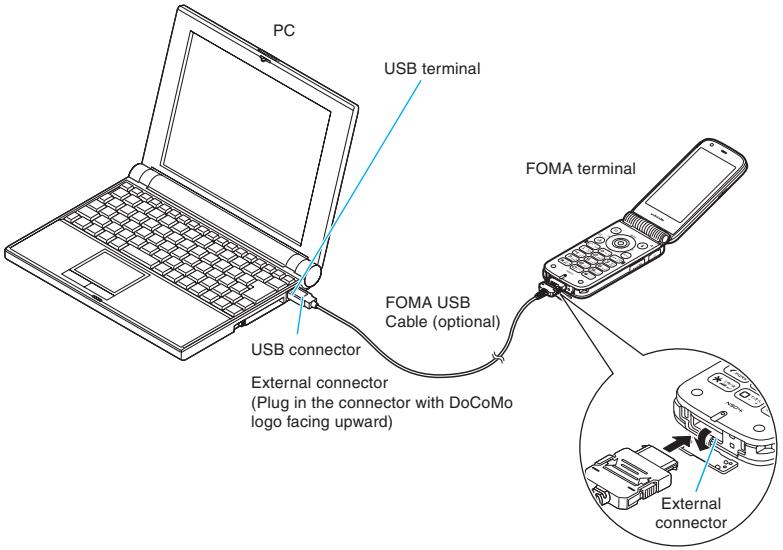
Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Before connecting to PC, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"External connection"▶"USB mode setting"▶"Communication mode"

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC

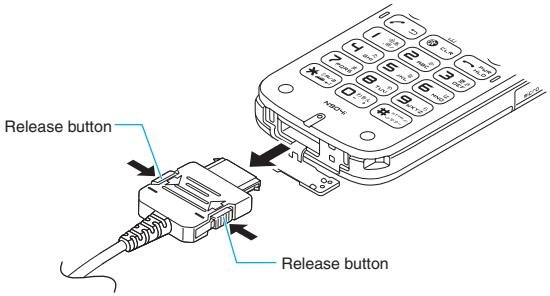
" " changes to " " on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

● " " appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N904i communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the N904i communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and " " appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC

2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable

3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N904i communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click "✕" to close the screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i" is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 3.
If this screen appears while you are installing the N904i communication setting file, click "✕" as well.



3 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

4 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC

"新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

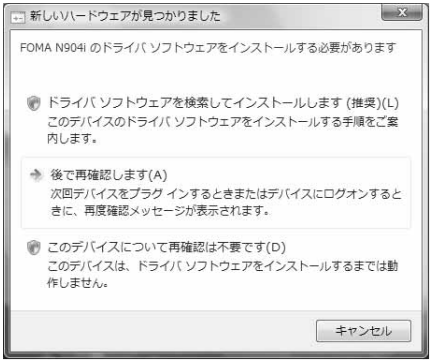
Installing the N904i communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N904i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N904i communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
  For Windows Vista, refer to the following.
  For Windows XP, proceed to p.10.
  For Windows 2000, proceed to p.11.

For Windows Vista

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Select "ドライバソフトウェアを検索してインストールします（推奨）" (Search for and install the driver software optimal for the device (Recommended))

The screen for user account management appears.

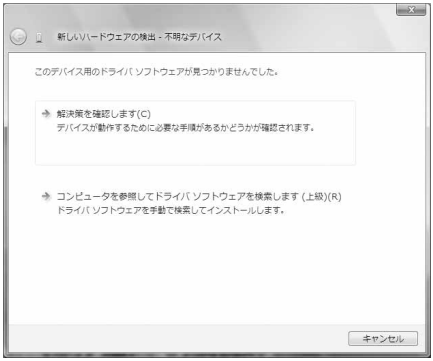
3 Click "続行" (Continue)

4 Select "オンラインで検索しません" (Do not search for a driver software online)

5 Select "ディスクはありません。他の方法を試します" (No disc in the drive. Try another search method)

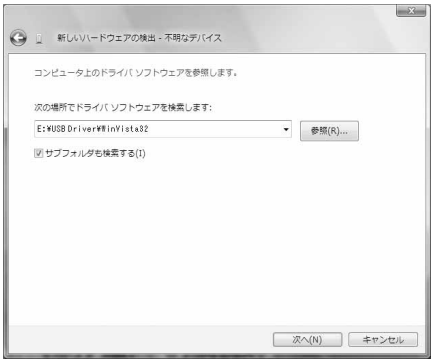


6 If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears, select "コンピュータを参照してドライバソフトウェアを検索します" (Search computer for the optimal driver software)



7 Specify the folder to search and click "次へ" (Next)

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver　WinVista32".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.



8 When a message "このデバイス用のソフトウェアは正常にインストールされました。" (The device has been installed normally) appears, click "閉じる" (Close)

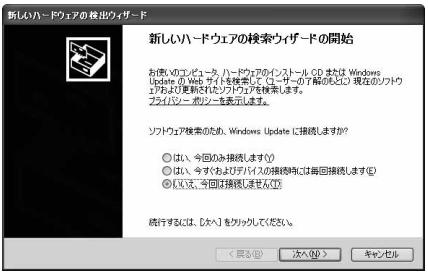
9 Install other drivers

See Steps 1 to 8 and install all other 3 drivers (p.12).
If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 8, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.12).

For Windows XP

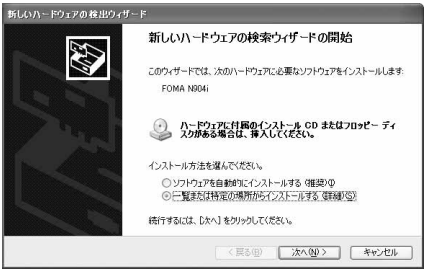
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.

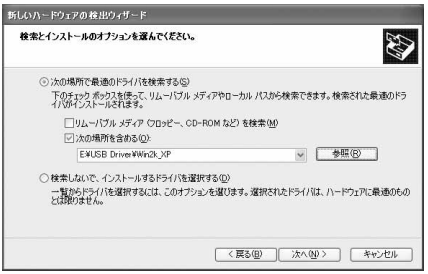


2 Select "いいえ、今回は接続しません" (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）" (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click "次へ" (Next)



4 Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する" (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the "リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROMなど）を検索" (Search for a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the "次の場所を含める" (Include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click "次へ"(Next)



The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2k_XP".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is "E".

5 When the message "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了" (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

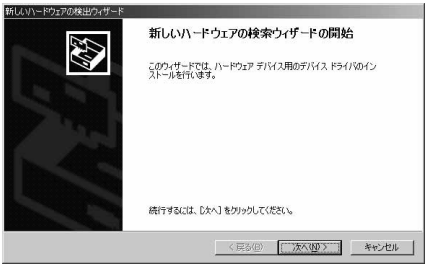
6 Install other drivers

See Steps 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.12). If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.
When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。" (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.12).

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）" (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Check the "場所を指定" (Specify the search location) box and click "次へ" (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click "OK"

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2k_XP".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click "次へ" (Next)

In this case, the driver's name appears as "FOMA N904i".

7 When the message "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了" (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

8 Install other drivers

See Steps 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.12). If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.12).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N904i communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows Vista and Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) →"設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

2 Click the "システム" (System) icon in "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス" (Performance and maintenance)

For Windows Vista

Open "システムとメンテナンス" (Systems and maintenance) in the "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Open "システム" (System) in the "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

3 Open the device manager

For Windows Vista

Select "デバイスマネージャ " (Device Manager) and click "続行" (Continue)

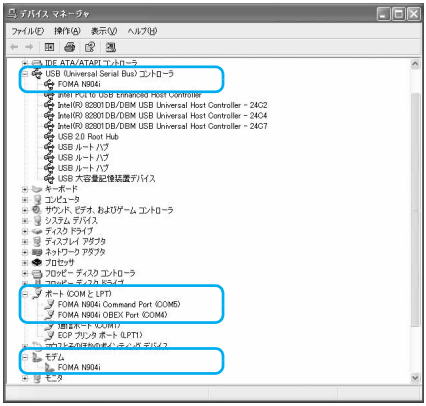
For Windows XP and 2000

Click the "ハードウェア" (Hardware) tab and click "デバイスマネージャ " (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under "ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ" (Universal Serial Bus Controller) or "USB（Universal Serial Bus）コントローラ" (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), "ポート（COMとLPT）" (Ports (COM& LPT)) and "モデム" (Modems).

Check the driver name and proceed to "About the FOMA PC Setting Software" (p.14).



Device name	Driver name
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N904i
ポート(COMとLPT)	• FOMA N904i Command Port • FOMA N904i OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N904i

NOTE

● When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.13) to delete the N904i communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N904i communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling N904i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click "スタート" (Start)→"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)→"プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

For Windows Vista

Click "スタート" (Start)→"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)→"プログラムのアンインストール" (Uninstall a program)

3 Select "FOMA N904i USB" and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

For Windows Vista

Select "FOMA N904i USB" and click "アンインストールと変更" (Uninstall/Change) and then "続行" (Continue).

4 Click "OK" to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click "キャンセル" (Cancel).

5 Click "はい" (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you click "いいえ" (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When "FOMA N904i USB" is not displayed in the "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:
  ①Insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N904i" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
  ②Open "スタート" (Start)→"マイコンピュータ" (My Computer)
  For Windows Vista, open "スタート" (Start)→"コンピュータ" (Computer)
  ③Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
  ④Open "USB Driver"→"Win2k_XP" folder in the CD-ROM
  For Windows Vista, open "USB Driver"→"WinVista32" folder
  ⑤Double-click "n904i_un.exe" *
  *：It is displayed as "n904i_un" depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.31



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for "FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) together.

通信設定最適化 (Optimize communication settings)

Optimizes the communication settings of a PC before using "FOMA packet communication".
To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings.

接続先（APN）の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.
As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
cid [Context Identifier] … a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the old version of FOMA PC setting software (version 4.0.0 or older, hereafter referred to Previous FOMA PC setting software) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

Procedures ranging from installation of the FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1
Installing software

Install the "FOMA PC setting software"

See p.16 for installation details.
When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, uninstall it before installing the "FOMA PC setting software Ver4.0.0".
When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, you cannot install the "FOMA PC setting software Ver4.0.0".
If a screen appears indicating that "Previous W-TCP setting software" or "Previous APN setting software" is installed, see p.17.

STEP 2
Setting preparation

Make preparations for making various settings

Before making various settings, ensure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been properly recognized by the PC.
See p.5 for how to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.
See "Setting the PC" (p.7) for how to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal properly.
If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, you cannot make various settings nor perform communication.
In this case, see p.8 and install the communication setting file.

STEP 3
Various settings

Set according to the communication method you use

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera" →p.21
Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers" →p.22
Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera" →p.24
Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers" →p.25
For other settings, see p.29 or the following pages.

STEP 4
Connecting

Connect to the Internet

See p.26 for the executing communication.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. →p.3
- When installing the "FOMA PC setting software", be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

This screen will automatically appear.
Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended to run the menu. If your PC does not meet the recommended operational environment, or the menu screen does not appear even when you insert the CD-ROM, use the following procedure:

① Open "スタート" (Start) → "マイコンピュータ" (My Computer)
② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
③ Double-click "index.html"



2 Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト" (Data Link Software/Various Settings Software)

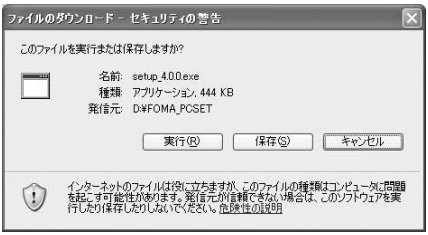
3 Click "インストール" (Install) of "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

When clicking "インストール" (Install), the warning screen as shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software.

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.

When the "ファイルのダウンロードーセキュリティの警告" (Download file－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行" (Execute).
For Windows Vista, click "実行" (Execute) and then "続行" (Continue).



When the "Internet Explorerーセキュリティの警告" (Internet Explorer－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行する" (Execute).
For Windows Vista, click "実行" (Execute) and then "続行" (Continue).



4 Click "次へ" (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation.
If a screen appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.17.

5 Upon confirming the user agreement of "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "はい" (Yes) to agree to it

If you click "いいえ" (No) and then click "はい" (Yes), the installation is canceled.

6 Click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows XP and 2000, select whether or not you want "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) to reside in the task-tray.
If you let it reside in the task-tray, click "次へ" (Next) with "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked and continue with the installation. Even after installation, you can change the settings by selecting "メニュー" (Menu) → "通信設定最適化をタスクトレイに常駐させる" (Let Optimize communication settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



If you let it reside in the task-tray, the 通信設定最適化 (Optimize communication settings) icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

7 Select the installation location and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change the location, click "参照" (Reference), specify the location and click "次へ" (Next).

8 Check the name of program folder and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click "次へ" (Next).



9 Click "完了" (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open "アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click "OK", the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click "OK", and the install is interrupted. Open "アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of "FOMA PC setting software" is installed.

<If the "キャンセル" (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click "いいえ" (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click "はい" (Yes).

Confirming the version information of the FOMA PC setting software

1 Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows Vista and Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Program) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

2 Open "メニュー" (Menu) → "バージョン情報" (Version information) of the toolbar

The version information of the FOMA PC setting software is displayed.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- When uninstalling the "FOMA PC setting software", be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

For Windows XP and 2000, before starting the uninstallation process of the "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings. For Windows Vista, proceed to Step 2.

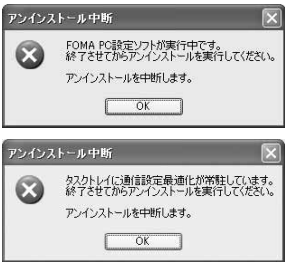
(1) Disable the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) in the task-tray

Right-click the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) icon in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select "終了" (End).



(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start uninstallation

For Windows Vista

Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムのアンインストール" (Uninstall a program)

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove programs)

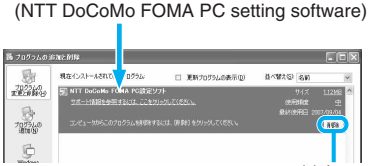
For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "削除" (Delete)

For Windows Vista

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "続行" (Continue)



For Windows 2000

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

4 Check the program name to be deleted and click "はい" (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click "完了" (Finish)

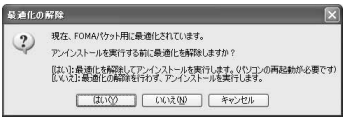
Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.



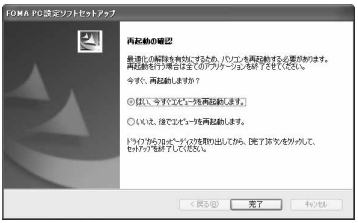
NOTE

● Canceling "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings)

For Windows XP and 2000, this screen appears when "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is performed. Usually, click "はい" (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of communication settings optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N904i communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

1 Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

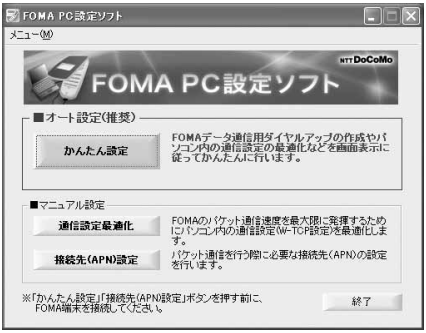
This operation screen appears when the software is started.

For Windows Vista and Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Program) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera"

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 3.6Mbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" will be used as a provider. (When you use "mopera", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving.)
  Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 3.6Mbps for receiving and up to 384kbps for sending.* Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
  *: The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving outside FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if "packet communication" is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "パケット通信（HIGH-SPEED対応端末）" (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED phone)) and click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows Vista

Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

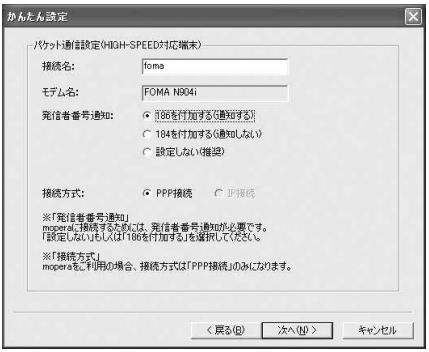
3 Select "『mopera U』への接続" ('mopera U' access) or "『mopera』への接続" ('mopera' access) and click "次へ" (Next)

See p.22 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Click "OK"

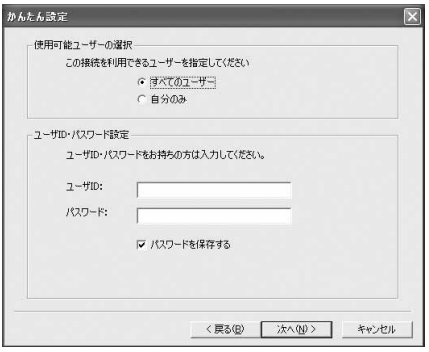
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method ("PPP接続" (PPP connection)) and click "次へ" (Next)



You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
Select the connection method in the "接続方式" (Connection method) column.
mopera U supports both "PPP接続" (PPP connection) and "IP接続" (IP connection).
mopera supports "PPP接続" (PPP connection) only. Note that this FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.
Select "設定しない" (OFF) or "186を付加する" (Add 186) for the caller ID settings. The optimal connection method for mopera U is automatically set.

6 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)



You can leave user ID and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

For Windows Vista

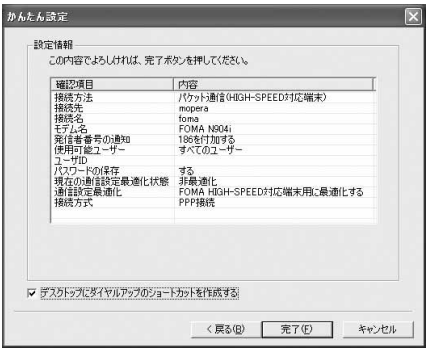
Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)
Proceed to Step 8.

7 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

Optimize the communication settings of a PC to use FOMA packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



9 Click "OK"

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click "はい" (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.26

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers"

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "パケット通信（HIGH-SPEED対応端末）" (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED phone)) and click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows Vista

Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Click "OK"

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

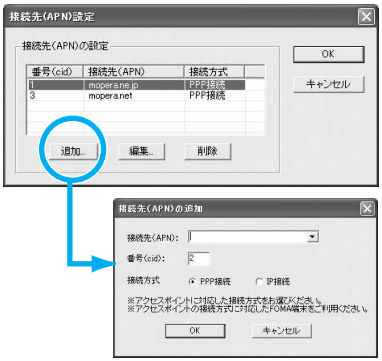
5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen "パケット通信設定" (Packet communication setting) appears.
Enter any name in "接続名" (Connection name).
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.
"APN:mopera.net" is specified for the mopera U connection and "APN:mopera.ne.jp" for the mopera connection by default in "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.



6 Click "接続先（APN）設定" (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
Open the "接続先（APN）の追加" (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the "追加" (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click "OK".
The "接続先（APN）設定" (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



7 Select the Access point (APN) and click "OK"

The screen of Step 5 reappears.
The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)) and click "次へ" (Next)

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for "IP address" and "Name server". If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user ID and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)
Proceed to Step 11.



10 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

Optimize the communication settings of a PC to use FOMA packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



⑫ Click "OK"

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click "はい" (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.26

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera"

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized. The charges are based on the amount of time you connected.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if "64K data communication" is used for a long time.

① Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

② Select "64Kデータ通信" (64K data communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

③ Select "『mopera U』への接続" ('mopera U' access) or "『mopera』への接続" ('mopera' access) and click "次へ" (Next)

See p.25 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

④ Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click "次へ" (Next)

The "64Kデータ通信設定" (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to "FOMA N904i".
Select "設定しない" (OFF) or "186を付加する" (Add 186) for the caller ID settings.

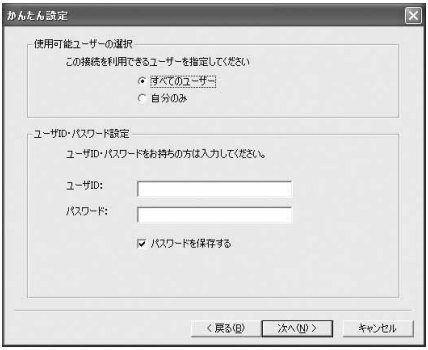


⑤ Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user ID and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When "すべてのユーザー " (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)



6 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



7 Click "OK"

Execute communication. →p.26

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers"

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "64Kデータ通信" (64K data communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click "次へ" (Next)



Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- "接続名" (Connection name) (optional)
- "モデムの選択" (Modem Selection) (FOMA N904i)
- "電話番号" (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for "IP address" and "Name server". If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

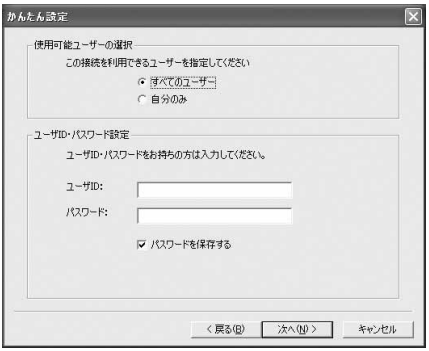
5 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user ID and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)



6 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



7 Click "OK"

Execute communication.→p.26

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

For Windows Vista

Open "スタート" (Start) → "接続先" (Access point), select the access point and click "接続" (Connection)

Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication)→"ネットワーク接続" (Network connections) →Open the access point

Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

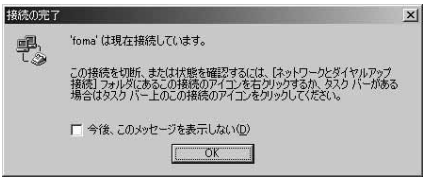
2 Click "ダイヤル" (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) and click "ダイヤル" (Dial).
Check "パスワードを保存する" (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.

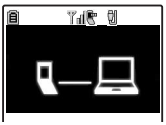


3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click "OK"

The screen on the right may not appear depending on the settings or the OS.
This "接続" (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled or when using Windows Vista.



● During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

● " " appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.



NOTE

● When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created.
Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

For Windows Vista

Open "スタート" (Start) → "接続先" (Access point)
Select the dial-up currently connected.

2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)



NOTE

● The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

● Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N904i" is not recognized by the PC.	· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3). · Check if the N904i communication setting file (drivers) is installed. · Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. · Check if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · Check if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Optimizing Communication Settings

"通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is a "TCP parameter setup tool" to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when "Packet communication" is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal on Windows XP or 2000.

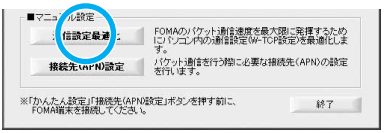
Setting up and canceling optimization

The procedure for setting up and canceling optimization from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

Click "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program.



(2) If you are operating from the task-tray

Click the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) icon in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



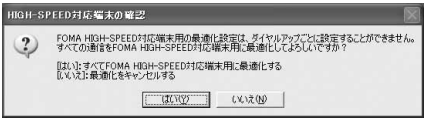
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized

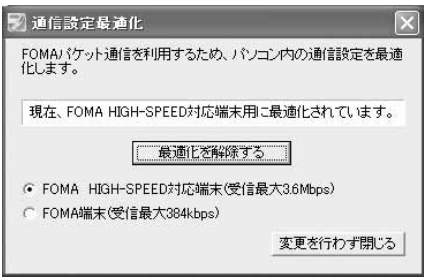
Select "FOMA HIGH-SPEED対応端末 （受信最大3.6Mbps）" (FOMA HIGH-SPEED phone (up to 3.6Mbps for receiving)) and click "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting).
"HIGH-SPEED対応端末の確認 (Confirmation for HIGH-SPEED phone)" screen appears. Click "はい" (Yes) to optimize the system settings.





(2) If the system settings have been optimized

When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

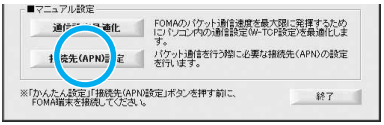


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

● As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

1 After starting "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
  Click "追加" (Add) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "編集" (Edit) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "削除" (Delete) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
  You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click "削除" (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains "mopera.net").

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function
Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click "ダイヤルアップ作成" (Create dial-up).
When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click "はい" (Yes). After finishing writing into the FOMA terminal, the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.
Enter any connection name you want and click "ユーザID・パスワードの設定" (Set up User ID/Password).
Enter the user ID and password, select an accessible user, and click "OK". You can leave the user ID and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) on the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click "OK".
After entering the settings, click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to "Setting up Dial-up" (p.38).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the "Data communication" and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to "FOMA N904i" (Modem) built in after installing the N904i communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

Preparation

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

To check the COM port on Windows Vista

1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

2 Open "ハードウェアとサウンド" (Hardware and Sound) → "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel

3 If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen is displayed, enter "市外局番／エリアコード" (Area code) and click "OK"

4 Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N904i" and click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.

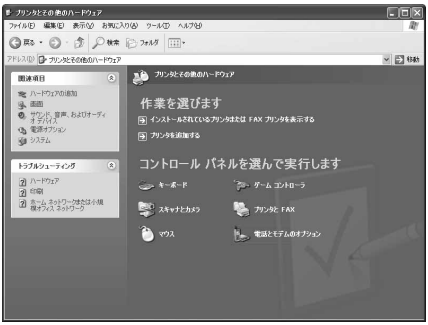


● To check the COM port on Windows XP

1 Open "スタート" (Start)→"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)



2 Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) from "プリンタとその他のハードウェア" (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen is displayed, enter "市外局番／エリアコード" (Area code) and click "OK"**

4 **Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N904i" and click "OK"**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)**

2 **Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel**



3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"**

4 Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N904i" and click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1：mopera.ne.jp　cid3：mopera.net　cid2, 4 to 10：not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using "Hyper terminal" that comes with Windows.

- Windows Vista is not compatible with "Hyper terminal". For Windows Vista, set with compatible software. (Follow the instructions for the setting of the software.)

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.*1
- APN is administered by "cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)". Specifying "＊99＊＊＊<cid number>＃" as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying "＊99＊＊＊1＃" as the access point number for the mopera connection or "＊99＊＊＊3＃" for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1：Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2：To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC

3 Click "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the "今後、このメッセージを表示しない" (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click "はい" (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the "名前" (Name) column and click "OK"

"sample" is entered here as an example.



6 Select "FOMA N904i" from "接続方法" (Connection method), and click "OK"

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.

If a COM port of "FOMA N904i" can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click "OK".
In this example, "COM3" is selected. See "Checking the COM port" (p.31) to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N904i" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If a COM port of "FOMA N904i" cannot be selected

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

(1) Select "ファイル" (File) menu → "プロパティ " (Properties)

(2) Select "FOMA N904i" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column of the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab on the "sampleのプロパティ " (sample Properties) screen

(3) Uncheck "国/地域番号と市外局番を使う" (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)

(4) Click "OK"



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press ↵

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN"

<cid>： Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

"PPP"： Enter "PPP" as it is.

"APN"： Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" ↵.



8 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

""sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？ " (Are you going to save the connection "sample"?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.36. In this case, if you enter ATE1 ↵, AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=3 to "mopera.net" (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT= ↵ (to reset all cid)

  AT+CGDCONT=〈cid〉 ↵ (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - Display the current settings.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT? ↵

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (p.50) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal)

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of "AT ＊DGPIR=<*n*>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=1 ↵

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=2 ↵



3 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to "Notify" to use DoCoMo's internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.
The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter "＊99＊＊＊3#" as the number of access point for mopera U or "＊99＊＊＊1#" for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter "＊8701" as the number of access point for mopera U or "＊9601" for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows Vista

1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "接続先" (Access point)

2 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします" (Set up the connection or network)

3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします" (Set up dial-up connection) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 If the modem selection screen appears, click "FOMA N904i モデム" (FOMA N904i modem)

The modem selection screen appears only if there are multiple modems.



5 Select the "ダイヤルアップの電話番号" (Phone number for dial-up) and enter the number of the access point

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns as this screen.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



6 Click "接続" (Connect)

After a connection test, network connection is established.

7 If the "ネットワークの場所の設定" (Set network location) screen appears, click any point of the screen, click "続行" (Continue) and then "閉じる" (Close)

8 Disconnect the dial-up connection

"How to disconnect"→p.48

9 Open "スタート" (Start) → "接続先" (Access point)

10 Right-click the icon created for the dial-up and click "プロパティ" (Properties)



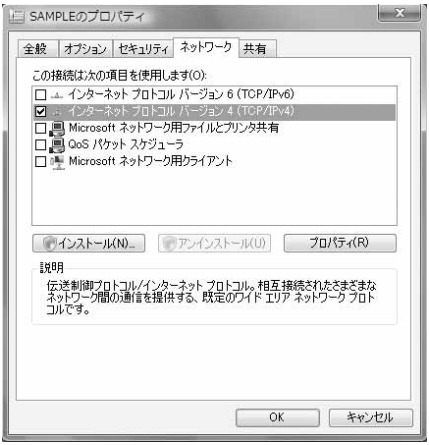
11 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N904i" (Modem - FOMA N904i) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



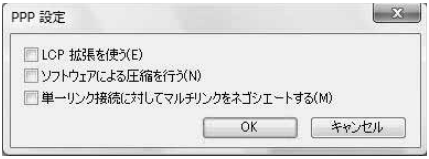
12 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

Check only "インターネット プロトコル バージョン4（TCP/IPv4）" (Internet Protocol version 4 (TCP/IPv4)) in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します" (Use the following items for this connection). Check "QoS パケットスケジューラ" (QoS Packet Scheduler) if instructed by the provider.



13 Click the "オプション" (Options) tab and click "PPP設定" (PPP settings)

14 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"



15 Click "OK"

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "新しい接続ウィザード" (New connection wizard)**

2 **When the "新しい接続ウィザード" (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)**



3 **Select "インターネットに接続する" (Connect to the Internet) and click "次へ" (Next)**

4 **Select "接続を手動でセットアップする" (Set up the connection manually) and click "次へ" (Next)**

5 **Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する" (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click "次へ" (Next)**

6 **If the "デバイスの選択" (Select the device) screen appears, select only "モデム－FOMA N904i (COMx)" (Modem－FOMA N904i (COMx)), and click "次へ" (Next)**

The "デバイスの選択" (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in "Checking the COM port" (p.31).

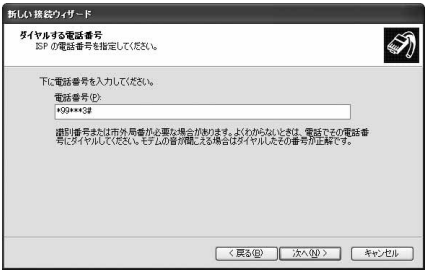


7 **Enter any name you want in the "ISP名" (ISP Name) and click "次へ" (Next)**



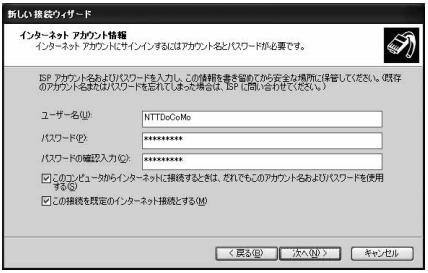
8 Enter the number of the access point in the "電話番号" (Telephone Number) column and click "次へ" (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



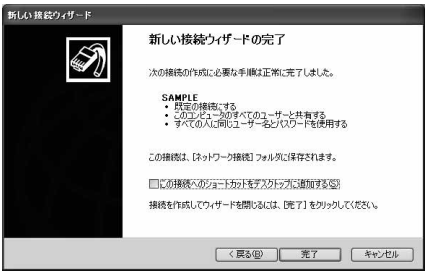
9 Click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name), "パスワード" (Password) and "パスワードの確認入力" (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



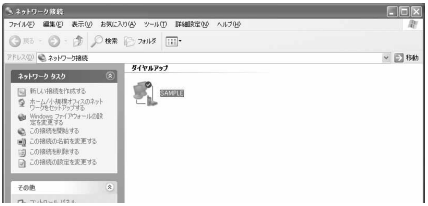
10 Click "完了" (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connections)

12 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open "プロパティ" (Properties) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N904i" (Modem - FOMA N904i) is checked in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



14 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select "インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します" (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of "QoSパケットスケジューラ" (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click "設定" (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"



17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click "OK"

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and Dial-up connections)**

2 **Double-click "新しい接続の作成" (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections**



3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"**

The "所在地情報" (Address Information) screen appears only when "新しい接続の作成" (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 **When the "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click "OK"**

5 **When the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)**

6 **Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する" (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click "次へ" (Next)**

7 **Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します" (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click "次へ" (Next)**

8 **Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します" (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click "次へ" (Next)**

9 **Confirm that the "インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する" (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has "FOMA N904i" and click "次へ" (Next)**

If "FOMA N904i" is not selected, select "FOMA N904i".

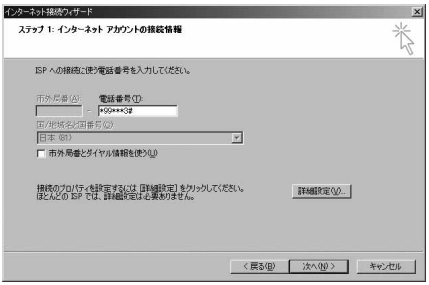
If no other modem than "FOMA N904i" has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 **Enter the number of the access point in the "電話番号" (Telephone number) column and click "詳細設定" (Advanced settings)**

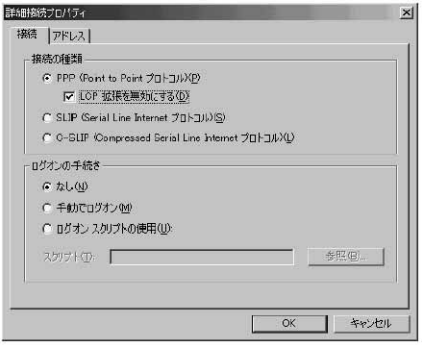
Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



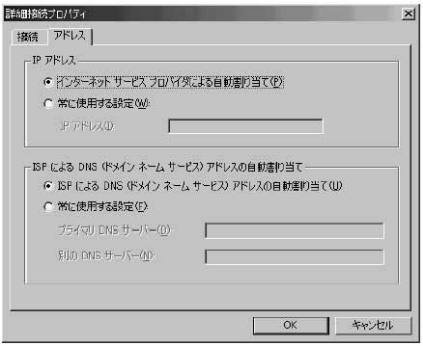
11 Set up the "接続" (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the "アドレス" (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "接続の種類" (Connection Type) and "ログオンの手続き" (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the "アドレス" (Address) tab as shown on the right and click "OK"

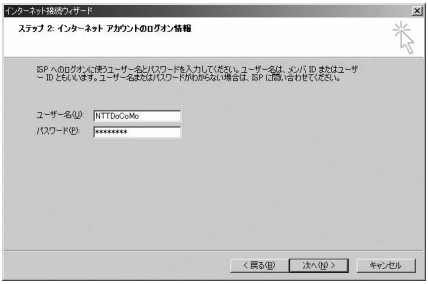
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "IPアドレス" (IP address) and "ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て" (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



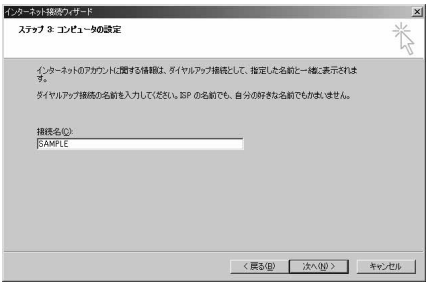
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click "次へ" (Next)

14 Click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns as this screen.



15 Enter any name you want in the "接続名" (Connection name) and click "次へ" (Next)



16 Select "いいえ" (No) and click "次へ" (Next)

17 Click "完了" (Finish)

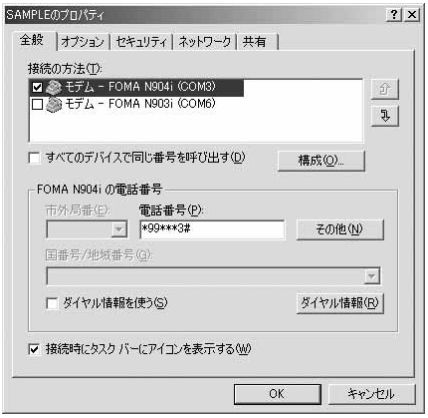
18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open "プロパティ" (Properties) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



19 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N904i" (Modem - FOMA N904i) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only "インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click "設定" (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"



23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click "OK"

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

"Connecting the devices"→p.5

2 Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.41 to select "ネットワークタスク" (Network task) → "この接続を開始する" (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click "ダイヤル" (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail.
If this message does not appear, check "Setting up Dial-up Network" (p.31) and "Setting up Dial-up" (p.38).
See p.27 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

For Windows Vista

Open "スタート" (Start) → "接続先" (Access point)
Select the dial-up currently connected.

2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
  [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
  [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.
- Dialing or AT command dialing from an external device uses Number A regardless of the mode in 2in1.
  <Memory dial>
  Dialing to a phone number in Memory dial for A mode is available from Number A, even in B mode.
  <Redial>
  Dialing to the most recent record in Dialed calls is available from Number A, regardless of the mode setting.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for "FOMA N904i (モデム)" (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0 : CD is always ON. *n*=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. *n*=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	*n*=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. *n*=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F*n*	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT&W*n*	Stores the current settings.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT＊DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0：FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT＊DANTE ＊DANTE:3 OK AT＊DANTE=? ＊DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT＊DGANSM=*n*	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	*n*=0：Disables the incoming call reject (AT＊DGARL)/permit setting (AT＊DGAPL) (initial value). *n*=1：Enables the incoming call reject setting. *n*=2：Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT＊DGANSM? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGANSM=0 OK AT＊DGANSM? ＊DGANSM:0 OK
AT＊DGAPL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGAPL? ：Displays incoming call permission list.	AT＊DGAPL =0,1 OK AT＊DGAPL? ＊DGAPL:1 OK AT＊DGAPL =1 OK AT＊DGAPL? OK
AT＊DGARL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGARL? ：Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT＊DGARL =0,1 OK AT＊DGARL? ＊DGARL:1 OK AT＊DGARL =1 OK AT＊DGARL? OK
AT＊DGPIR=*n*	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/ receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.37)	*n*=0：Uses APN as it is (initial value). *n*=1：Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*=2：Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT＊DGPIR? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGPIR =0 OK AT＊DGPIR? ＊DGPIR:0 OK
AT＊DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT＊DRPW ＊DRPW:0 OK AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> bcs: 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. bcl: 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=*n*,1,0 *n*=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) *n*=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,134),(1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.61).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.58	p.58
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.58	p.58
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.59	p.59
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <*n*>, <stat> *n*: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (initial value) *n*=1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXX",177, "123",136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	*n*=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract. *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting. +CLIR:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2 : Unknown *m*=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CNUM:,<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,2,<oper> mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically) mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>) mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator mode=3 : Mapping is not performed. mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.) <oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC · · · octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC · · · octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC · · · octet 3 bits 5 to 8	AT+COPS=0 OK AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"),(3,,,"44F002"),,(0,1),(2) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/ receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN：READY：PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN：SIM PIN：PIN1 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PIN2：PIN2 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PUK：PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN: SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*= 0 : Not display (initial value). *n*= 1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD＊99＊＊＊1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING：SYNC +CRING：AV64K ：GPRS “PPP” ,,, “<APN>” AT+CRC? ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC ：0 OK (PPPoverUD received) +CRING：SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING：AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING：GPRS “PPP” ,,,” 〈APN〉”
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG? ：Displays the current setting. +CREG ：<*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG ：1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG ：1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=<*n*>,"<str>"[,0] *n*=0 : Does not send mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) *n*=1 : Sends mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] Mid result: *m*=0 : The settings completed *m*=1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, ∗ can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1," ∗ 148 ∗ 1 ∗ 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 ∗ 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD =? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area： +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N904i).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N904i OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	*n* : DCE by DTE *m* : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: *n*,*m* =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*= 0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*= 1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*= 0 : Echo back absent. *n*= 1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI*n*	Displays the ID code.	*n*=0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo". *n*=1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). *n* =3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. *n* =4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN904i OK
ATO*n*	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0 : Displays the result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic answer (initial value). *n*=1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Sets an escape character.	*n*=43 : Initial value. *n*=127 : Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13 : Initial value (Only *n*=13 can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10 : Initial value (Only *n*=10 can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8 : Initial value (Only *n*=8 can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS8=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30=*n* [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	*n*=0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) *n*=0 - 255 Where *n* is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103=*n* [&F]	Sets the called sub address character.	*n*=0 : * *n*=1 : / (initial value) *n*=2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104=*n* [&F]	Sets the calling sub address character.	*n*=0 : # *n*=1 : % (initial value) *n*=2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	*n*=0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. *n*=1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*=0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*=1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

· ATT (Tone setting)
· ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

- **Outline**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

  <cid>* : 1 ~ 10

  <APN>* : Any value

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.
  <APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

- **Command execution example**

  Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

  AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"

  OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

  There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  <cid>* : 1～10

  <Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 384

  <Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 3,648

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 384 or 3,648, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,,3648
OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 384kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384
OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 3,648kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,3648
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

・**Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

・**Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

・**Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

・**Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 2).
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.34), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT ✻ DGAPL/AT ✻ DGARL/AT ✻ DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT ✻ DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W ↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.
133	CONNECT 3648000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 3,648,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ Communication protocol result codes

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (p.57) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* command (p.55) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set

・ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21

・ATX1, AT¥V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal→ Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 384kbps for sending, and maximum 3,648kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/384/3648

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21 5

＊：If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

FOMA® N904i

Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter “digits 1-3 of the kuten code” then “digit 4”.

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(スペース)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	°	´	¨	＾	￣	_	ヽ	ヾ
012	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	―	‐	／
013	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	‘	’	“	”
014	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝	〈	〉
015	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】	＋	－
016	±	×	÷	=	≠	＜	＞	≦	≧	∞
017	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	¥	$	¢
018	£	%	#	&	*	@	§	☆	★	○
019	●	◎	◇	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼
020	※	〒	→	←	↑	↓	〓			
021										
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩	∧	∨	¬	⇒	⇔	∀
024	∃									
025										
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	#	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					◯					

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
030										
031										
032										
033										
034										
035										
036										
037										
038										
039										
040										
041										
042										
043										
044										
045										
046										
047										
048										
049										
050										
051										
052										
053										
054										
055										
056										
057										
058										
059										
060										
061										
062										
063										
064										
065										
066										
067										
068										
069										
070										
071										
072										
073										
074										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
075	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З	И	Й
076	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У
077	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э
078	Ю	Я								
079										
080										
081										
082										
083										
084										
085										
086										
087										
088										
089										
090										
091										
092										
093										
094										
095										
096										
097										
098										
099										
100										
101										
102										
103										
104										
105										
106										
107										
108										
109										
110										
111										
112										
113										
114										
115										
116										
117										
118										
119										
120										
121										
122										
123										
124										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
125										
126										
127										
128										
129										
130										
131										
132										
133										
134										
135										
136										
137										
138										
139										
140										
141										
142										
143										
144										
145										
146										
147										
148										
149										
150										
151										
152										
153										
154										
155										
156										
157										
158										
159										
160										
161										
162										
163										
164										
165										
166										
167										
168										
169										
170										
171										
172										
173										
174										
175										
176										
177										
178										
179										
180										
181										
182										
183										
184										
185										
186										
187										
188										
189										
190										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
191										
192										
193										
194										
195										
196										
197										
198										
199										
200										
201										
202										
203										
204										
205										
206										
207										
き										
207										
208										
209										
210										
211										
212										
213										
214										
215										
216										
217										
218										
219										
220										
221										
222										
223										
224										
225										
226										
く										
226										
227										
228										
229										
230										
231										
232										
け										
232										
233										
234										
235										
236										
237										
238										
239										
240										
241										
242										
243										
こ										
243										
244										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	糊	伍	瑚	侯	向	庚	晃	溝	耕	講
246	顧	蜘	咬	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱	衡
247	御	乞	効	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞	行
248	股	五	梧	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
249	袴	鼓	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	洪	紘
250	鬩	伎	慌	合	国	惚	此	昆		
251		巧	拘	江	紅	紅	航	硫	号	告
252										
253										
254										
255										
256										
257										
258										
259										
260										
261										
262										
263										
264										
265										
266										
267										
268										
269										
270										
271										
272										
273										
273										
274										
275										
276										
277										
278										
279										
280										
281										
282										
283										
284										
285										
286										
287										
288										
289										
290										
291										
292										
293										
294										
295										
296										
297										
298										
299										
300										
301										
302										
303										
304										
305										
306										
307										
308										
309										
310										
311										
312										
313										
314										
315										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	す									
315									筒	諏
316									推	水
317				厨	翠	逗	衰		錘	随
318				図	粋	崇	顔	摺	据	杉
319				酢	睡	髄	管	澄		
320				須	炊	瑞	椙			
	せ									
320					世	成	逝	威	窃	占
321					性	牲	請	惜	責	設
322					成	生	逝	威	赤	窃
323					性	牲	請	惜	責	設
324					誠	隻	席	脊	折	先
325					姓	正	誠	隻	績	績
326					征	清	誓	席	脊	折
327					征	清	誓	席	脊	折
328					姓	正	誠	隻	績	績
329					征	清	誓	席	脊	折
	さ									
330										
331										
332										
	そ									
332										
333										
334										
335										
336										
337										
338										
339										
340										
341										
342										
	た									
343										
344										
345										
346										
347										
348										
349										
350										
351										
352										
353										
354										
	ち									
354										
355										
356										
357										
358										
359										
360										
361										
362										
363										
	つ									
363										
364										
365										
366										
	て									
366										
367										
368										
369										
370										
371										
372										
373										
	と									
373										
374										
375										
376										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	投	灯	討	闘	流	凸	屯			
378	搭	燈								
379	宕	盗	答							
380				謄	働	胴	特	突	惇	
381				豆	動	同	道	洞	峠	
382				踏	萄	督	椴	噸		
383				鐙	憧	憧	徳	橡	噸	
384				独	読	栃	瀞	曇		
385				東	頓	西	呑			
386				当	胴	吞	鈍			
	な									
386						奈	楢			
387						鍋				
388										
	に									
388						弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389					二	乳	韮			
390					日	尿				
391					虹	廿	如			
	ぬ〜の									
390										
391										
392										
393										
	は									
393										
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402										
403										
404										
405										
	ひ									
405										
406										
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413										
414										
415										
	ふ									
415										
416										
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422										
	へ									
422										
423										
424										
425										
426										
	ほ									
426										
427										
428										
429										
430										
431										
432										
433										
434										
435										
436										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	ま									
436			摩							妹
437			槙	又		磨		麻	埋	鮪
438	昧	枚	毎	万	蔓	幕	魔	枕	沫	迄
439	鱒	檫	慢			抹	末			
440					満					
	み									
440					味	未	魅	巳	岬	密
441	蜜		湊	蓑		脈	妙	箕	眠	
	む									
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
	め									
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
	も									
444										妄
445							摸	模	茂	黙
446	孟	毛	猛	網	耗		蒙	儲	木	問
447	目	杢	勿	尤	戻		物	賞	問	悶
448	紋	門	匁				籾			
	や									
447										弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	愉
449	鑓			也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	
	ゆ									
449										由
450			愈	癒			宥			幽
451	悠	憂	裕	揖	諭	輸	友	猶	勇	湧
452	祐			遊	有	郵	雄	融	涌	優
	よ									
452										予
453							容			庸
454							妖	溶	用	
455	余	与	誉	擁	預	傭	幼	踊	陽	
456	揚	揺	拠	耀	楊	様	洋	謡	翌	翼
	ら									
456	窯	羊	欲	来	蓉	要	沃	翌	沿	抑
457										酪
458	螺	裸	来	嵐	頼	沙	雷	絡	落	
	り									
458	乱	卵			欄	藍	蘭	覧		吏
459										利
460					璃					立
461	履	李	梨	理	里	離	陸	率	粒	
462	律	痢	裏	裡	流	溜	琉	硫	隆	僚
463	隆	掠	略	侶	慮	旅	虜	亮	療	倫
464	両	竜	龍	侶	梁	涼	猟	瞭	緑	麟
465	糧	凌	涼	涙	量	陵	領	力	隣	
466					琳	臨	輪	隣		
	る									
466										励
467					類	れ	伶	例	冷	麗
468	瑠		涙	礼	苓	令	隷	零	霊	齢
469	嶺	怜	麗	列	劣	鈴	裂	廉	恋	
470	齢	暦	連	錬	聯	烈				
	ろ									
470										路
471				呂						漏
472			婁	弄	朗	老	魯	賂	浪	緑
473	肋	牢	篭	聾	蝋		櫓	炉	麓	
	わ					論	郎	楼	六	
473										惑
474				倭	和					湾
475				亘	鰐					
476	枠		鷲							椀
477	碗		腕							
478										
479										
480				丕	乂					
481				丐	仇	乞	仆	仏	仔	仕
482				仍	仄	仂	仗	仟	仙	仝
483				仞	仭	仞	仟	仡	仮	仲
484				仰	仲	仳	仵	伉	伊	伍
485				伜	伴	伯	伶	伸	伺	似
486				佃	但	佇	佗	佚	佛	伽
487				佯	佰	佳	併	侃	侑	侘

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
488	侵				修	俔	俊	俐	俑	俎
489	俘	俛	俟	俤	俥	俦	俪	俫	俯	俱
490	俳	俸	俺	俾	倆	倉	個	倌	倍	倏
491	倔	倖	倚	倣	倥	倨	倩	倬	倭	俵
492	俸	倦	倅	倆	倫	倒	倔	倣	倚	倖
493	倹	偀	偁	偃	偉	偖	倾	偂	偏	偐
494	偕	偘	偖	偸	偬	偭	偶	偵	偽	傀
495	傅	傍	傑	傘	備	傚	傔	傖	傘	傅
496	傲	傳	傴	傷	傾	僂	僅	働	像	僊
497	僑	僕	僖	僚	僥	僧	僭	僮	僵	僻
498	僻	僿	儀	儁	儂	儆	儉	儋	儌	儒
499	儔	儕	儖	儘	儚	儛	儜	儞	儡	儢
500	儲	儳	儵	儷	儺	儻	儼	儾	儿	兀
501	元	兄	充	兆	先	光	克	免	児	兌
502	兎	兒	兔	児	兜	兢	入	全	八	公
503	六	共	兵	具	典	兼	内	円	冂	冉
504	冊	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冗	写	冠	冢
505	冤	冥	冦	冪	冫	冱	冲	决	冴	冶
506	冷	凄	准	凋	凌	凍	凖	凛	凜	凝
507	凞	几	凡	処	凧	凩	凪	凭	凰	凱
508	凵	函	刀	刃	刄	刊	刋	刎	刑	刔
509	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剄	剋	剌	剔	剖
510	剛	剞	剟	剣	剤	剥	剩	剪	剰	剱
511	剳	剴	創	剷	剽	剿	劀	劃	劇	劈
512	劉	劍	劒	劔	力	劣	労	勁	勃	勅
513	勇	勉	勍	勐	勒	動	勗	勘	務	勛
514	勝	勞	勠	勢	勣	匆	匈	匍	匐	匏
515	匕	匙	匝	匠	匡	匣	匪	匯	匱	匳
516	匹	区	医	匿	区	十	千	卅	升	午
517	卑	卒	卓	協	単	卍	卑	卒	卓	協
518	単	卑	卒	卓	協	南	単	博	卜	卞
519	占	卦	卮	卯	印	危	即	却	卵	卷
520	卸	卹	卻	卽	厄	厓	厖	厘	厚	原
521	厠	厦	厩	厭	厳	去	参	叉	及	友
522	双	収	叔	取	受	叛	叟	叡	叢	口
523	古	句	叩	只	叫	召	叭	叮	可	台
524	史	右	叶	号	司	吃	各	合	吊	同
525	名	后	吏	吐	向	君	吝	吠	否	含
526	呂	吭	吸	呈	周	味	呑	呟	呪	呵
527	咎	呻	呼	命	咏	哀	咨	咤	咸	咽
528	哲	哨	哭	哽	唁	唄	唆	唇	唔	哺
529	唯	唳	唸	唹	唾	啀	啄	商	啅	啌
530	問	啓	啗	啜	喋	喀	善	喊	喝	喘
531	喞	喩	喪	喫	喬	喰	単	喧	喨	喩
532	喰	喱	喴	喵	喃	善	喚	喝	喟	喞
533	喩	嗄	嗅	嗟	嗜	嗣	嗤	嗦	嗷	嗽
534	嗾	嘔	嘖	嘗	嘘	嘛	嘩	嘱	嘲	嘴
535	嘶	嘸	嘻	嘿	噂	噌	噎	噐	噛	噤
536	器	噴	噸	噺	噫	噤	噪	噯	噬	噱
537	噸	噺	嚀	嚊	嚇	嚏	嚔	嚙	嚢	嚥
538	嚮	嚴	嚶	囀	囁	囂	囃	囀	囃	囁
539	囚	四	囘	囮	囲	図	囹	圀	国	圃
540	圄	圉	圏	園	圍	圓	団	圏	圑	土
541	圦	圧	在	圭	地	圻	圷	圸	圻	均
542	坏	圾	圿	垈	垉	垌	垓	垠	垣	垳
543	垵	埆	埇	埈	埋	埒	埔	埖	埜	埠
544	埣	埦	埧	埭	埴	埵	執	埸	培	基
545	埼	堀	堂	堅	堆	堊	堋	堎	堕	堙
546	堡	堤	堪	堯	堰	報	場	堵	堺	塀
547	塁	塊	塋	塑	塒	塔	塗	塘	塙	塚
548	塞	塡	塢	塩	塵	塾	塽	塿	墅	墎
549	墓	墜	増	墟	墨	墫	墳	墹	墺	墻
550	墾	壁	壅	壆	壇	壊	壌	壎	壑	壓
551	壕	壗	壙	壜	壞	壟	壠	壡	壢	壣
552	壤	壥	壧	壨	壮	壱	売	壴	壷	壹
553	壺	壻	壼	壽	夂	夆	変	夊	夏	夐
554	夔	夕	外	夘	多	夜	夢	夥	大	夭
555	央	夲	夷	夸	夾	奁	奄	奇	奈	奉
556	奎	奏	奐	契	奓	奔	奕	奘	奚	奠
557	奢	奥	奩	奪	奬	奮	女	奴	奸	妁
558	妃	妄	妊	妍	妓	妖	妙	妣	妨	妬
559	妹	妻	妾	姀	姆	姉	姐	姑	姓	始
560	姙	姚	姜	姝	姞	姦	姨	姪	姫	姶
561	姻	姿	娃	娑	娘	娚	娜	娟	娠	娥
562	娩	娯	娵	娶	娼	婀	婁	婆	婉	婊
563	婚	婢	婦	婪	婬	婷	婿	媄	媒	媚

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
564	愴	愾	愽	慂	慇	慌	慄	慈	慉	慊
565	慣	慷	慙	慚	慟	慢	慣	慥	慧	慨
566	慫	慴	慵	慷	慾	憂	憊	憎	憐	憑
567	憖	憘	憙	憚	憤	憧	憫	憬	憮	憲
568	憶	憺	懊	懈	懃	懆	懇	懌	懋	懐
569	懣	懦	懲	懴	懶	懸	戁	戃	戈	戉
570	戍	戔	戝	戞	戟	戡	戢	戦	戩	戮
571	戯	戴	戸	戻	戽	扁	扇	扈	扉	扎
572	扑	扒	打	扔	払	扞	扠	扣	扨	扮
573	扱	扳	扶	批	扼	找	承	技	抂	抃
574	抄	抉	把	抑	抒	抓	投	抖	抗	折
575	抛	抝	披	抬	抱	抵	抹	押	抽	担
576	拆	拇	拈	拉	拋	拌	拍	拎	拐	拒
577	拓	拔	拗	拘	拙	招	拝	拠	拡	括
578	拭	拮	拯	拱	拳	拵	拶	拷	拾	拿
579	持	挂	指	挈	按	挌	挑	挖	挘	挙
580	挟	挨	挫	振	挺	挽	挿	捌	捍	捏
581	捐	捕	捗	捜	捧	捨	捩	据	捲	捶
582	捷	捺	捻	掀	掃	掄	掉	掌	掎	掏
583	掘	掠	採	探	掣	接	控	推	掩	措
584	掬	掲	掴	掵	掻	掾	揀	揃	揄	揆
585	揉	揖	揚	換	揩	揣	揩	揮	揵	揶
586	揺	搆	搏	搖	搗	搜	搦	搬	搭	搴
587	携	搾	摂	摑	摎	摘	摠	摧	摩	摯
588	摳	摸	摺	撃	撈	撒	撓	撕	撙	撚
589	撞	撤	撥	撫	播	撮	撰	撲	撻	撼
590	擁	擂	擅	操	擒	擔	擘	擠	擡	擢
591	擦	擧	擬	擯	擱	擲	擴	擶	擺	擽
592	擾	攀	攅	攆	攉	攏	攐	攔	攘	攜
593	攝	攣	攤	攪	攫	攬	攴	攵	攷	攸
594	攻	攼	放	政	故	敍	敏	救	敔	敕
595	敖	敗	敘	教	敝	敞	敢	散	敦	敬
596	数	敲	整	敵	敷	敺	敻	斁	斂	斃
597	斉	斌	斎	斐	斑	斗	料	斛	斜	斟
598	斡	斤	斥	斧	斫	斬	斯	新	斷	方
599	於	施	旁	旃	旄	旅	旆	旋	旌	旎
600	族	旒	旗	既	日	旦	旧	旨	早	旬
601	旭	旱	旻	昂	昃	昆	昇	昉	昊	昌
602	明	昏	易	昔	昕	昜	昞	星	映	春
603	昧	昨	昭	是	昴	昵	昶	昼	時	晁
604	晋	晃	晏	晒	晒	晟	晦	晨	晩	普
605	晰	晴	晶	暁	暃	暇	暈	暉	暎	暑
606	暖	暗	暘	暝	暢	暦	暫	暮	暱	暴
607	暸	暹	暼	暾	曁	曄	曇	曉	曖	曙
608	曜	曝	曠	曦	曩	曰	曲	曳	更	曷
609	曹	曼	曽	曾	替	最	月	有	朋	服
610	朏	朔	朕	朗	望	朝	期	朦	木	未
611	末	本	札	朮	朱	朴	朶	机	朽	杁
612	杉	李	杏	材	村	杓	杖	杜	杞	束
613	杠	条	来	杭	杯	杰	東	杵	杷	松
614	板	枇	析	枉	枋	枌	枓	枕	林	枚
615	果	枠	枡	枢	枩	枯	枳	枴	架	枷
616	柁	柄	柊	柏	某	柑	柘	柚	柞	柢
617	柩	柬	柮	柳	柵	柾	柿	栂	栃	栄
618	栓	栖	栗	校	栩	株	栫	栴	栽	栻
619	桁	桂	桃	桐	桑	桓	桔	桙	桝	桟
620	桧	桶	桾	梁	梅	梏	梓	梔	梗	梛
621	條	梟	梠	梢	梣	梧	梨	梭	梯	械
622	梱	梵	梶	棄	棊	棋	棍	棒	棔	棕
623	棗	棘	棚	棟	棠	森	棧	棨	棲	棹
624	棺	椁	椄	椅	椋	植	椎	椏	椒	椙
625	椚	椛	検	椢	椣	椥	椦	椨	椪	椰
626	椴	椶	椹	椽	椿	楂	楊	楓	楔	楕
627	楚	楝	楞	楠	楡	楢	楣	楤	楦	楨
628	楫	業	楮	楯	楳	楴	楷	楸	楹	楼
629	楽	概	榁	榊	榎	榑	榔	榕	榖	榛
630	榜	榧	榱	榴	榻	榾	榿	槁	槃	槇
631	槊	構	槌	槍	槎	槐	槓	様	槙	槝
632	槞	槧	槨	槫	槭	槲	槶	槻	槽	槿
633	樂	樅	樊	樋	樌	樒	樓	樔	樗	標
634	樞	樟	模	樣	権	横	樫	樮	樵	樶
635	樸	樹	樺	樽	樾	橂	橄	橇	橈	橋
636	橘	橙	橡	橢	橦	橲	橸	橿	檀	檄
637	檎	檐	檗	檜	檞	檠	檣	檪	檬	檮
638	檳	檸	檻	櫁	櫂	櫃	櫆	櫈	櫌	櫑
639	櫓	櫚	櫛	櫞	櫟	櫢	櫧	櫨	櫪	櫱

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640		爨	悟	狃	倏	猾	獷	爬	犋	爭	鬮	爛	爐	爍	爿
641	爲	犁	狆	狄	狽	獏	獨	獰	獱	獲	玃	牆	牀	牋	牘
642	牲	狗	狽	猜	猛	獅	獄	猴	猶	獨	狡	牋	牒	牖	犂
643	犂	犠	狀	狼	猥	獏	默	犹	琥	珱	珸	瑯	瑣	瑰	瑶
644	瑾	璋	璽	瓊	瓣	瓧	甌	甑	甜	畩	畷	畳	畸	畿	瘀
645	癆	癇	癘	瘢	瘠	瘡	瘧	瘟	瘤	瘭	瘰	瘻	癄	癈	癌
646	癒	癘	癜	癠	癡	癢	癨	癪	癧	癬	癰	癲	癶	皃	皈
647	皐	皎	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂	盍	盖	盒
648	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦
649	睨	睚	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿
650	瞼	瞽	瞿	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矧	矩	矮	矼	砌	砒
651	砦	砧	砲	破	砺	砿	砥	砠	硅	硫	硬	硲	硼	碁	碌
652	碎	碑	碓	碣	碧	碪	碯	碵	碼	碾	磁	磅	磆	磊	磋
653	磐	磔	磚	磧	磨	磬	磯	磴	磽	礁	礎	礒	礙	礦	礪
654	礫	礬	礱	祀	祁	祇	祈	祉	祓	祕	祖	祗	祚	祝	神
655	祟	祠	祢	祥	禊	禍	禎	福	禔	禕	禖	禘	禦	禧	禮
656	禳	禹	禺	秉	秕	秘	秡	秤	秦	秩	秬	秭	秲	秴	秸
657	稍	稘	稙	稠	稟	稱	稻	稾	稷	穀	穉	穎	穡	穢	穩
658	穽	窃	窕	窖	窗	窘	窟	窠	窩	窪	窮	窰	窶	竅	竇
659	竍	竏	竕	竚	竝	竟	竡	竢	竦	竭	竰	笂	笆	笊	笋
660	笏	笑	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙
661	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥
662	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹
663	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛
664	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符
665	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳
666	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞
667	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵
668	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘
669	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
670	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶
671	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙
672	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥
673	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹
674	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛
675	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符
676	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳
677	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞
678	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵
679	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘
680	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
681	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶
682	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙
683	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥
684	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹
685	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛
686	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符
687	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳
688	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞
689	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵
690	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘
691	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
692	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶
693	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙
694	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥
695	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹
696	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛
697	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符
698	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳
699	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞
700	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵
701	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘
702	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
703	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶
704	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙
705	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥
706	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹
707	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛
708	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符
709	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳
710	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞
711	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵
712	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘
713	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
714	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶
715	笹	笳	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠	笥	符	笵	笶	笹	笳	笘	笙

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
716	鱚	艤	艫	艱	艦	艙	芒	芝	芒	苔
717	苴	苞	茆	苳	苴	茉	苳	苔	茲	茖
718	荀	茆	茘	荳	荵	荷	荼	荾	莖	莟
719	莢	莧	菫	菫	菴	萃	菷	菽	萇	萠
720	萸	萼	落	葛	葱	葆	葉	葡	董	葦
721	葭	蒄	蒋	蒐	蒔	蒟	蒡	蒭	蒲	蒹
722	蒻	蒼	蓁	蓆	蓊	蓋	蓍	蓐	蓑	蓖
723	蓙	蓚	蓜	蓬	蓮	蓼	蓿	蔀	蔑	蔔
724	蔕	蔗	蔘	蔟	蔡	蔣	蔦	蔬	蔭	蔵
725	蔽	蕁	蕃	蕈	蕉	蕊	蕋	蕎	蕏	蕕
726	蕗	蕘	蕙	蕚	蕣	蕤	蕨	蕩	蕪	蕭
727	蕷	蕺	蕻	蕾	薀	薄	薇	薈	薊	薐
728	薑	薔	薗	薙	薛	薜	薤	薦	薨	薩
729	薪	薫	薬	薮	薯	薹	薺	藁	藉	藍
730	藏	藐	藕	藜	藝	藤	藥	藪	藷	藹
731	藺	蘂	蘆	蘇	蘊	蘋	蘓	蘖	蘗	蘚
732	蘞	蘢	蘭	蘯	蘰	蘿	虎	虐	虔	虚
733	虜	虞	虢	虧	虫	虱	虹	虻	虼	蚊
734	蚋	蚌	蚓	蚕	蚣	蚤	蚩	蚪	蚫	蚯
735	蚰	蚶	蚶	蚺	蛄	蛆	蛇	蛉	蛎	蛔
736	蛙	蛛	蛞	蛟	蛩	蛭	蛸	蛹	蛻	蛾
737	蜀	蜂	蜃	蜆	蜈	蜉	蜊	蜍	蜑	蜒
738	蜘	蜚	蜜	蜥	蜴	蜷	蜻	蜿	蝋	蝌
739	蝎	蝓	蝕	蝗	蝙	蝟	蝠	蝣	蝦	蝨
740	蝮	蝴	蝶	蝸	蝿	螂	螟	螢	螫	螻
741	螽	蟀	蟄	蟆	蟇	蟋	蟐	蟒	蟠	蟡
742	蟯	蟲	蟷	蟹	蟻	蟾	蠅	蠍	蠏	蠑
743	蠖	蠡	蠢	蠣	蠧	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠻	血
744	衂	衄	衆	衒	行	衍	衒	衙	衛	衝
745	衲	衵	衽	衾	衿	袁	袋	袍	袒	袖
746	袗	袙	袢	袮	袰	袱	裄	裏	裍	裔
747	裕	裘	裙	補	裝	裟	裡	裨	裲	裳
748	裴	裵	裸	裹	褂	褊	褌	褐	褒	褓
749	褕	褙	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襃	襄	襞
750	襠	襤	襦	襪	襭	襯	襲	襴	襷	襾
751	覃	覆	覇	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覦	覩
752	覯	覲	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧
753	觴	訃	訐	訌	訛	訝	訟	訣	訥	訪
754	設	許	訳	訴	訶	詆	詈	詐	詒	詔
755	評	詛	詞	詣	詬	詭	詮	詰	話	該
756	詳	詼	詿	誂	誄	誅	誆	誇	誉	誌
757	認	誑	誒	誓	誕	誘	誚	語	誠	誡
758	誣	誤	誥	誦	誨	說	誰	課	誹	誼
759	調	諄	談	請	諏	諒	論	諚	諜	諞
760	諠	諡	諢	諤	諦	諧	諫	諭	諮	諱
761	諳	諶	諷	諸	諺	諾	謀	謁	謂	謄
762	謌	謎	謐	謔	謖	謗	謙	謚	講	謝
763	謠	謡	謦	謨	謫	謬	謳	謹	謾	譁
764	譌	譎	證	譖	譚	譛	譜	譟	譫	譬
765	譱	譲	譴	譽	讀	讃	讌	讎	讐	讒
766	讓	谿	豁	豆	豈	豊	豌	豎	豐	豕
767	豚	象	豢	豪	豫	豬	豹	豺	貂	貅
768	貌	貍	貎	貔	貘	貝	貞	貢	貧	貨
769	販	貪	貫	責	貯	貰	貲	貳	貴	貶
770	買	貸	貺	費	貼	貽	貿	賀	賁	賂
771	賃	賄	賅	資	賈	賊	賎	賑	賓	賚
772	賛	賜	賞	賠	賢	賣	賤	賦	賭	賮
773	賴	賺	賻	購	賽	賾	贄	贅	贈	贋
774	贍	贏	贐	贔	贖	赤	赦	赧	赫	赭
775	走	赳	赴	起	趁	趂	趄	超	越	趙
776	趣	趨	足	趺	趾	跂	跋	跌	跏	跖
777	跚	跛	距	跟	跡	跣	跨	跪	跫	跬
778	路	跳	踉	踊	踏	踐	踝	踞	踟	踠
779	踢	踰	踵	踴	蹂	蹄	蹇	蹈	蹉	蹊
780	蹌	蹐	蹕	蹙	蹟	蹠	蹣	蹤	蹲	蹴
781	躁	躄	躅	躇	躊	躋	躍	躑	躓	躔
782	躙	躡	躪	軀	軅	軈	車	軋	軌	軍
783	軒	軟	転	軣	軫	軸	軻	軼	軽	軾
784	較	輅	輊	輌	輒	輓	輔	輙	輜	輝
785	輟	輦	輪	輬	輭	輯	輳	輸	輻	輾
786	輿	轂	轄	轅	轆	轉	轌	轍	轎	轗
787	轜	轟	轡	轢	轣	轤	辛	辜	辞	辟
788	辣	辧	辨	辮	辰	辱	農	辺	辻	込
789	迚	迯	迴	迹	迺	迸	迷	迸	迯	迴
790	迷	迸	迯	迴	迹	迺	迸	迷	迯	迴
791	迷	迸	迯	迴	迹	迺	迸	迷	迯	迴

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
792	鑓	鏐	鏑	鏘	鏝	鏤	鏥	鏨	鏩	鏸
793	鏺	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐓	鐔	鐙	鐚	鐡	鐫
794	鑒	鑞	鑠	鑢	鑰	鑵	鑼	鑽	鑾	鑿
795	閂	閇	閊	閏	閖	閘	閙	閠	閧	閭
796	閲	閹	閻	閼	閾	闃	闇	闌	闍	闔
797	闖	闘	闞	闥	阡	阨	阪	阯	陂	陌
798	陏	陋	陜	陦	陲	陬	隍	隕	隗	隘
799	隙	隠	隣	隧	隨	險	隰	隲	隴	隶
800	隹	雎	雋	雉	雍	雎	雑	雖	雘	雙
801	雛	雜	雫	雰	雲	霄	霆	震	霈	霊
802	霑	霓	霖	霙	霜	霞	霤	霧	霪	霰
803	露	霹	靉	靆	靈	靑	靖	靜	靠	靡
804	靫	靭	靱	靴	靹	鞁	鞄	鞆	鞋	鞍
805	鞘	鞜	鞣	鞦	鞨	鞳	鞴	韃	韆	韈
806	韋	韓	韜	韭	韮	韲	音	韶	韻	響
807	頁	頂	頃	頌	頎	頏	預	頑	頒	頓
808	頗	領	頚	頡	頤	頬	頭	頴	頷	頸
809	頻	頽	顆	顋	顎	顒	顔	顕	顗	願
810	顛	類	顥	顧	顫	顯	顰	顱	風	颪
811	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃	飆	飩	飫	餃	餅
812	餉	養	餌	餐	餒	餓	餔	餘	餡	餝
813	餞	餤	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅	饐
814	饋	饑	馮	馴	馼	駁	駄	駅	駆	駈
815	駐	駑	駒	駕	駘	駙	駟	駭	駮	駱
816	駲	駸	駻	駾	騁	騅	騎	騏	騒	験
817	騙	騨	騫	騰	騮	騶	騷	騾	驀	驂
818	驍	驎	驕	驗	驚	驛	驟	驢	驤	驥
819	髀	髄	髏	髑	髓	體	髙	髜	髟	髢
820	髣	髦	髪	髫	髭	髯	髱	髴	髷	髻
821	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬨	鬩	鬮	鬯
822	鬱	鬲	鬻	鬼	魁	魂	魃	魄	魅	魍
823	魎	魑	魔	魘	魚	魯	魴	魵	魸	鮁
824	鮃	鮆	鮎	鮑	鮒	鮓	鮖	鮗	鮟	鮠
825	鮨	鮪	鮭	鮮	鮴	鮹	鯀	鯆	鯉	鯊
826	鯏	鯑	鯒	鯔	鯖	鯛	鯡	鯢	鯣	鯤
827	鯨	鯱	鯲	鯵	鯷	鯽	鯿	鰂	鰆	鰈
828	鰉	鰊	鰌	鰍	鰐	鰒	鰔	鰕	鰙	鰛
829	鰡	鰤	鰥	鰧	鰭	鰮	鰯	鰰	鰲	鰺
830	鰻	鰾	鱁	鱇	鱈	鱒	鱗	鱚	鱠	鱧
831	鱶	鱸	鱹	鱺	鳥	鳧	鳩	鳫	鳬	鳰
832	鳳	鳴	鳶	鳷	鳽	鳾	鴃	鴆	鴈	鴉
833	鴎	鴒	鴕	鴛	鴟	鴣	鴦	鴨	鴪	鴫
834	鴬	鴻	鴾	鵁	鵄	鵆	鵈	鵐	鵑	鵙
835	鵜	鵝	鵞	鵠	鵡	鵤	鵥	鵬	鵯	鵲
836	鵺	鵼	鵾	鶇	鶉	鶏	鶒	鶖	鶚	鶛
837	鶡	鶤	鶩	鶫	鶯	鶲	鶴	鶸	鶺	鶻
838	鶽	鶿	鷁	鷄	鷆	鷉	鷏	鷓	鷔	鷗
839	鷙	鷚	鷞	鷟	鷦	鷭	鷯	鷲	鷴	鷸
840	鷺	鷽	鸇	鸊	鸌	鸍	鸏	鸐	鸑	鸒